JVC

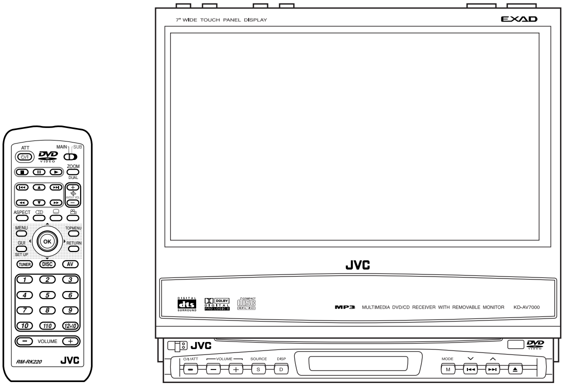
ENGLISH
ESPAÑOL
FRANÇAIS

DVD RECEIVER WITH MONITOR
RECEPTOR DVD CON MONITOR
RECEPTEUR DVD ET MONITEUR

KD-AV7000

EXAD

Detachable


7" WIDE TOUCH PANEL DISPLAY
EXAD
JVC
MULTIMEDIA DVD/CD RECEIVER WITH REMOVABLE MONITOR
KD-AV7000
RM-RK220

MP3 DIGITAL dts SURROUND DOLBY DIGITAL PRO LOGIC II COMPACT disc DIGITAL VIDEO DVD VIDEO™

- This unit is equipped with the display demonstration. To cancel it, see page 14.
- Esta unidad está equipada con demostración en la pantalla. Para cancelarla, consulte la página 14.
- Cet appareil est équipé d’une fonction de démonstration des affichages. Pour l’annuler, référez-vous à la page 14.

For installation and connections, refer to the separate manual.
Para la instalación y las conexiones, refiérase al manual separado.
Pour l’installation et les raccordements, se référer au manuel séparé.

INSTRUCTIONS
MANUAL DE INSTRUCCIONES
MANUEL D’INSTRUCTIONS

For customer Use:

Enter below the Model No. and Serial No. which are located on the top or bottom of the cabinet. Retain this information for future reference.

Model No.

Serial No.

LVT1171-001A
[J]

Thank you for purchasing a JVC product.
Please read all instructions carefully before operation, to ensure your complete understanding and to obtain the best possible performance from the unit.

INFORMATION (For U.S.A.)

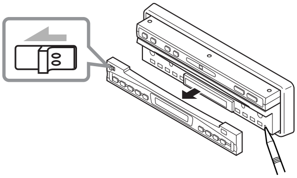
This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

– Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
– Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
– Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
– Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

After installing the unit, reset it before use following the procedure below:

How to reset your unit

Detach the control panel (see page 77), then press the reset button on the main unit using a ball-point pen or a similar tool.
This will reset the built-in microcomputer.



Your preset adjustments—such as preset channels or sound adjustments—will also be erased.

- *The monitor will go into its place if opened.*

IMPORTANT FOR LASER PRODUCTS

1. CLASS 1 LASER PRODUCT
2. CAUTION: Do not open the top cover. There are no user serviceable parts inside the unit; leave all servicing to qualified service personnel.
3. CAUTION: Visible and invisible laser radiation when open and interlock failed or defeated. Avoid direct exposure to beam.

CAUTIONS:

- Do not insert any disc of unusual shape—like a heart or flower; otherwise, it will cause a malfunction.
- Do not expose discs to direct sunlight or any heat source or place them in a place subject to high temperature and humidity. Do not leave them in a car.

For safety....

- Do not raise the volume level too much, as this will block outside sounds, making driving dangerous.
- Stop the car before performing any complicated operations.

Temperature inside the car....

If you have parked the car for a long time in hot or cold weather, wait until the temperature in the car becomes normal before operating the unit.

WARNINGS

- **DO NOT install any unit in locations where;**
  - **– it may obstruct the steering wheel and gearshift lever operations, as this may result in a traffic accident.**
  - **– it may obstruct the operation of safety devices such as air bags, as this may result in a fatal accident.**
  - **– it may obstruct visibility.**
- **DO NOT operate any unit while manipulating the steering wheel, as this may result in a traffic accident.**
- **The driver must not watch the monitor while driving.**
  If the driver watches the monitor while driving, it may lead to carelessness and cause an accident.
- **If you need to operate the main unit while driving, be sure to look ahead carefully or you may be involved in a traffic accident.**
- **If the parking brake is not engaged, "DRIVER MUST NOT WATCH THE MONITOR WHILE DRIVING." appears on the monitor, and no playback picture will be shown.**
  - **– This warning appears only when the parking brake wire is connected to the parking brake system built in the car (refer to the Installation/Connection Manual).**

CAUTIONS on the monitor

- **This product has a fluorescent lamp that contains a small amount of mercury. It also contains lead in some components. Disposal of these materials may be regulated in your community due to environmental considerations.**
  For disposal or recycling information please contact your local authorities, or the Electronic Industries Alliance: http://www.eiae.org./
- The monitor built in this receiver has been produced with high precision, but it may have some ineffective dots. This is inevitable and is not malfunction.
- Do not expose the monitor to direct sunlight.
- When the temperature is very cold or very hot...
  - – Chemical changes occur inside, causing it to malfunction.
  - – Pictures may not appear clearly or may move slowly. Pictures may not be synchronized with the sound or the picture quality may decline in such environments.

CAUTION on Volume Setting:

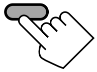
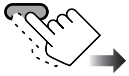
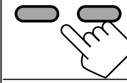
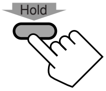
Discs produce very little noise compared with other sources. If the volume level is adjusted for the tuner, for example, the speakers may be damaged by the sudden increase in the output level. Therefore, lower the volume before playing a disc and adjust it as required during playback.

Important!

How to read this manual:

To make the explanations as simple and easy-to-understand as possible, we have adapted the following methods:

- **Some related tips and notes are explained later in the sections "More about This Receiver" (see page 68), but not in the same section explaining the operations.** If you want to know more about the functions, or if you have a doubt about the function, go to the section and you will find the answers.
- Operations are explained only with the illustrations as follows:

	Press briefly.
	Press repeatedly.
	Press either one.
	Press and hold until your desired response begins.

Contents

How to reset your unit 2
Important! (How to read this manual) 3

Introduction—Playable Discs 5

Quick Guide—How to Use the Controls 6
Remote controller 6
Main unit (front) 8

Preparation (Remote Controller—RM-RK220) 9

Operation Methods 10
Basic Operations 12
Setting the clock 13
Changing the source 14
Changing the graphic screen 14
Changing the touch panel color 14
Displaying the level meter 15

Radio Operations 16
Listening to the Radio 17
Storing stations in memory 18
Displaying the preset list 19

DVD/VCD Operations 20
CD/MP3 Operations 21
Basic Disc Operations 22
Changing the aspect ratio 24
Prohibiting disc ejection 24
Selecting MP3 folders 24
Operating the disc menu 25
Replaying the previous scenes 26
Zooming in 26
Selecting subtitles 27
Selecting audio languages 27
Selecting multi-angle views 28
Locating a folder/track using the list 29
Displaying the disc text information 30
Displaying the time information 30
Selecting playback modes 30
Searching for scenes or songs 31

Dual Mode Operations 33
Selecting the sources 33
Adjusting AV OUTPUT volume 34

Surround Mode Operations 35
Introducing surround/DSP mode 36
Turning on and off the surround/DSP mode 37

Sound Modes (iEQ) Operations 39
Selecting preset sound modes 40
Storing your own sound modes 40

Other Sound Adjustments 41
Monitor Adjustments 42
Initial Setup—DVD MENU 43
Initial Setup—MONITOR 45
Initial Setup—ON SCREEN 47
Initial Setup—AUDIO MENU/PSM 49

Other Main Functions 53
Assigning titles to the sources 53
Changing the monitor position/angle 55
Removing the monitor 55

CD Changer Operations 56
Basic CD Changer Operations 57

Advanced CD Changer Operations 58
Selecting disc/folders/tracks 58
Locating a disc/folder/track using the list 58
Displaying the disc text information 59
Selecting playback modes 60
Searching for songs 61

External Component Operations 62
TV Tuner Operations 63
Watching TV programs 64
Storing stations in memory 64
Displaying the preset list 66

Maintenance 67
More about This Receiver 68
Troubleshooting 72
Additional Information 74
Specifications 76

Introduction—Playable Discs

Discs you can play

You can play back the following discs on this unit:

- DVD Video: whose video format is NTSC and whose region code is “1.”
  –DVD-Rs and DVD-RWs recorded in the DVD-Video format can also be played (see page 69).
- Video CD (VCD)/Audio CD
- MP3: CD-Rs or CD-RWs including MP3 files with the file extension code <mp3>. They must be recorded in the format compliant with ISO 9660 Level 1, ISO 9660 Level 2, Romeo, and Joliet.

On some discs, the actual operations may be different from what is explained in this manual.

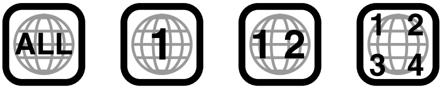
The following discs cannot be played back

DVD Audio, DVD-ROM, DVD-RAM, DVD-RW recorded in the DVD-VR format, CD-ROM, CD-I (CD-I Ready), Photo CD, etc.

- Playing back these discs will generate noise and damage the speakers.

** Note on Region Code*

DVD players and DVD Video discs have their own Region Code numbers. This unit can only play back DVD discs whose Region Code numbers include “1.”



Examples:

If you insert a DVD Video disc of an incorrect Region Code

“REGION CODE ERROR!” appears on the monitor.

- *“DVD Logo” is a trademark of DVD Format/Logo Licensing Corporation registered in the US, Japan and other countries.*

DVD Video—digital audio formats

The System can play back the following digital audio formats.

Linear PCM: Uncompressed digital audio, the same format used for CDs and most studio masters.

Dolby Digital *: Compressed digital audio, developed by Dolby Laboratories, which enables multi-channel encode to create the realistic surround sound.

DTS ** (Digital Theater Systems): Compressed digital audio, developed by Digital Theater Systems, Inc., which enables multi-channel like Dolby Digital. As the compression ratio is lower than for Dolby Digital, it provides wider dynamic range and better separation.

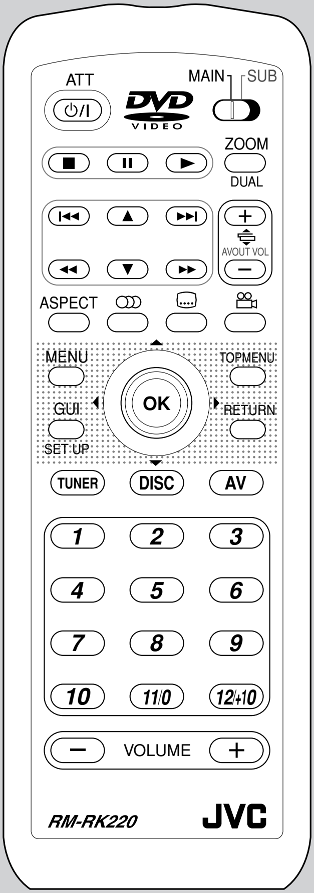
This product incorporates copyright protection technology that is protected by U.S. patents and other intellectual property rights. Use of this copyright protection technology must be authorized by Macrovision, and is intended for home and other limited viewing uses only unless otherwise authorized by Macrovision. Reverse engineering or disassembly is prohibited.

* *Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. “Dolby”, “Pro Logic”, and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.*

** *“DTS” and “DTS Digital Surround” are registered trademarks of Digital Theater Systems, Inc.*

Quick Guide—How to Use the Controls

Remote controller


ATT
⏻/I
MAIN
SUB
DVD VIDEO
ZOOM
DUAL
AV OUT VOL
ASPECT
MENU
TOP MENU
OK
GUI
RETURN
SET UP
TUNER
DISC
AV
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11/0
12/+10
VOLUME
RM-RK220
JVC

General operations

Buttons	To do:
ATT ⏻/I	Turn on the main unit.
	▨ Turn off the main unit.
	Attenuate sounds.
TUNER	Select “TUNER.”
DISC	Select “DISC” and “CD-CH.”
AV	Select external components: TV → AV1 → AV2 →
− VOLUME +	Adjust the volume.
MAIN SUB	Set the main or sub-operation for Dual Mode. *1
ZOOM DUAL	▨ Turn on/off Dual Mode.
+ AV OUT VOL −	Adjust the monitor angle (with MAIN/SUB set MAIN).
	Adjust the AV output level (with MAIN/SUB set SUB).
ASPECT	Change the aspect ratio.
	▨ Display the monitor adjustment screen.
GUI SET UP	Display and erase GUI screen.
	▨ Display Setup Menus.
↑ ← OK → ↓	Change menu items.
	Confirm.

▨ : functions if pressed and held.

*1 *When using Dual Mode, the remote controller operates either main or sub source depending on the MAIN/SUB setting.*

*2 *Only for MP3*

*3 *While playing a DVD, chapter is selected; on the other hands, title is selected before or after playback.*

Tuner operations

Buttons	To do:
TUNER	Select the band.
⏮ ⏭	Start Auto Search.
	Start Manual Search.
▲ ▼	Change preset numbers.
1 2 3 4 5 6	Select preset numbers directly.

Disc operations

Buttons	To do:
▶	Play.
⏸	Pause.
■	Stop.
⏮ ⏭	Select chapters/tracks.
	Search.
▲ ▼	Selects folders. *2
← OK then ↕ OK	
→ OK then ↕ OK	Select tracks. *2
◀◀ ▶▶	Search.
○○	Select audio language.
▭	Select subtitle language.
🎥	Select view angle.
ZOOM DUAL	Zoom the picture.
MENU TOPMENU	Display disc menu.
↑ ↓ ← → OK	Change menu items.
	Confirm.

Disc operations—continued

Buttons	To do:
RETURN	Return to the previous screen while operating the disc menu.
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11/0 12/+10	Select title/chapter/track number. *3

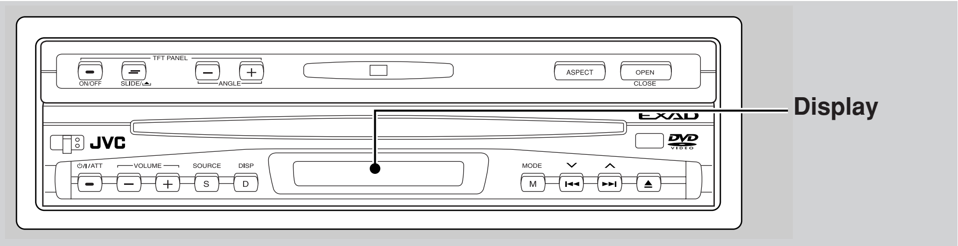
CD changer operations

Buttons	To do:
▲ ▼	Select folders. *2
⏮ ⏭	Select tracks.
	Search.
↕ OK	Change discs.
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11/0 12/+10	Select disc numbers.

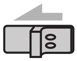
TV tuner operations

Buttons	To do:
⏮ ⏭	Start Auto Search.
	Start Manual Search.
▲ ▼	Change preset channel numbers.
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11/0 12/+10	Select preset channel numbers.

Main unit (front)



General operations

Buttons	To do:
⏻/I/ATT −	Turn on the main unit.
	▨ Turn off the main unit.
	Attenuate sounds.
SOURCE S	Change the sources.
VOLUME − +	Adjust the volume.
DISP D	Change the display information.
	Detach the control panel.

Tuner operations

Buttons	To do:
SOURCE S	▨ Select the band.
∨ ⏮ ∧ ⏭	Start Auto Search.
	▨ Start Manual Search.
MODE M	Change FM reception mode.

Disc operations

Buttons	To do:
⏏	Eject the disc.
∨ ⏮ ∧ ⏭	Select chapters/tracks.
	▨ Search.
MODE M then ∨ ⏮ ∧ ⏭	Display “FOLDER” → select folders. *1

CD changer operations

Buttons	To do:
∨ ⏮ ∧ ⏭	Select tracks.
	▨ Search.
MODE M then ∨ ⏮ ∧ ⏭	(once): Display “DISC” → select discs. (twice): Display “FOLDER” → select folders.*1

TV tuner operations

Buttons	To do:
∨ ⏮ ∧ ⏭	Start Auto Search.
	▨ Start Manual Search.

Monitor operations

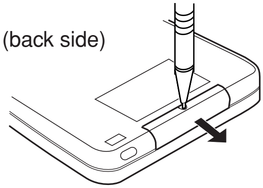
Buttons	To do:
− ON/OFF	Turn on the monitor.
	▨ Turn off the monitor.
OPEN CLOSE	Open the monitor. (See page 55.)
	▨ Close the monitor.
= SLIDE/⏏	Slide in/out the monitor.
	▨ Remove the monitor.
− + ANGLE	Adjust the monitor angle. (See page 55.)
ASPECT	Change the aspect ratio.
	▨ Display the monitor adjustment screen.

▨ : functions if pressed and held.

*1 *Only for MP3*

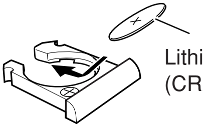
Preparation (Remote Controller—RM-RK220)

1

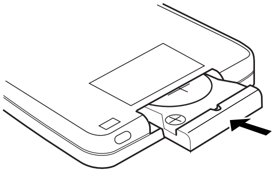


2

With the + side facing upwards



3

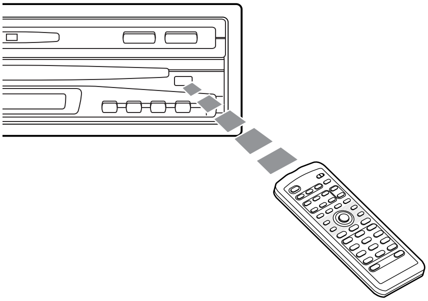


CAUTION:

DO NOT leave the remote controller in a place (such as dashboards) exposed to direct sunlight for a long time. Otherwise, it may be damaged.

WARNINGS on the battery:

- Store the battery in a place where children cannot reach. If a child accidentally swallows the battery, consult a doctor immediately.
- Do not recharge, short, disassemble, or heat the battery or dispose of it in a fire. These behaviors may cause the battery to be overheated, crack or fire.
- Do not leave the battery with other metallic materials. Doing this may cause the battery to give off heat, crack, or start a fire.
- When throwing away or saving the battery, wrap it in tape and insulate; otherwise, the battery may be overheated, crack or fire.
- Do not poke the battery with tweezers or similar tools. Doing this may cause the battery to be overheated, crack or fire.



DO NOT expose the remote sensor on the control panel to strong light (direct sunlight or artificial lighting).

Operation Methods

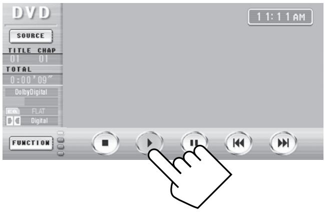
You can operate this unit using three types of operation methods.

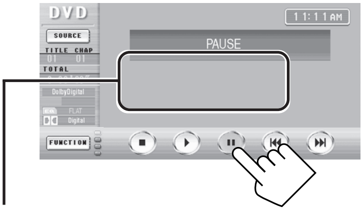
- This instruction manual explains the operations mainly using the Touch Panel Icons shown on the monitor.

- **Using the Touch Panel Icons directly** (See "BLIND CONTROL" on page 46.)

Press the Touch Panel Icons with your finger directly (if you wear a glove, take it off).

Examples: The following is just an example. On the actual monitor screen, the playback picture is shown (while video source is played back).


DVD
11:11 AM
SOURCE
TITLE CHAP
01 01
TOTAL
0:00'09"
DolbyDigital
EQ FLAT
Digital
FUNCTION

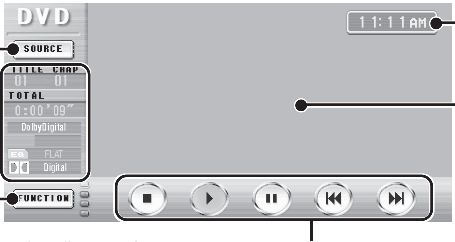

DVD
11:11 AM
PAUSE
SOURCE
TITLE CHAP
01 01
TOTAL
DolbyDigital
EQ FLAT
Digital
FUNCTION

Do not operate the Touch Panel using a ball-point pen or similar tool with the sharp tip (it may damage the Touch Panel).

To erase and display the Touch Panel icons and indications, press the center portion of the monitor screen.

- You can erase them only while viewing the playback pictures.

Ex. DVD playback


DVD
11:11 AM
SOURCE
TITLE CHAP
01 01
TOTAL
0:00'09"
DolbyDigital
EQ FLAT
Digital
FUNCTION

Changes the source.

Clock time indication

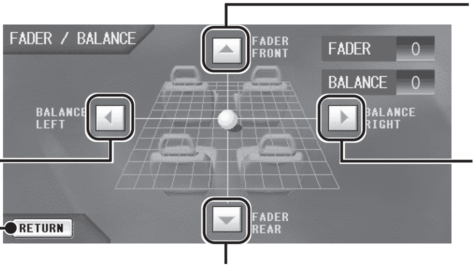
Source and play mode information

Picture view window

Changes the function modes (icons shown to the right change accordingly).

Icons shown on this column change each time you press FUNCTION.

Ex. Fader/balance adjustment


FADER / BALANCE
FADER FRONT
FADER 0
BALANCE 0
BALANCE LEFT
BALANCE RIGHT
RETURN
FADER REAR

Operation icon (FADER FRONT)

Operation icon (BALANCE LEFT)

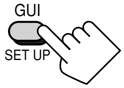
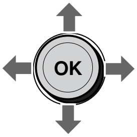
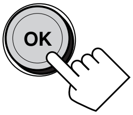
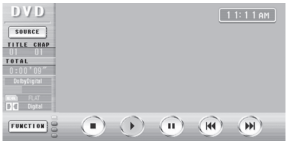
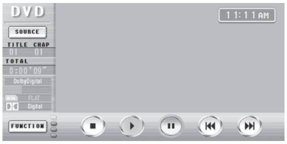
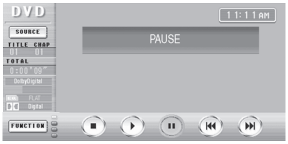
Operation icon (BALANCE RIGHT)

Returns to the previous screen.

Operation icon (FADER REAR)

- **Using the Graphic User Interface (GUI) from the remote controller**
  You can use the Graphic User Interface in the same way as you touch the panel icons.

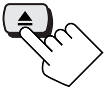
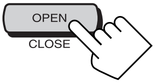
Examples:

1	2	3
		
Display GUI on the monitor (the cursor—yellow frame—appears around the currently selected icon). • While one of the video sources is selected, the GUI function turns on and off at a press of the button.  DVD 11:11AM SOURCE TITLE CHAP 01 01 TOTAL 0:00'09" DolbyDigital FLAT Digital FUNCTION	Move the cursor to an icon you want.  DVD 11:11AM SOURCE TITLE CHAP 01 01 TOTAL 0:00'09" DolbyDigital FLAT Digital FUNCTION	Confirm.  DVD 11:11AM PAUSE SOURCE TITLE CHAP 01 01 TOTAL 0:00'09" DolbyDigital FLAT Digital FUNCTION

To exit from GUI operation mode, press GUI again so that the yellow frame disappears.

- **Using the buttons and controls directly**
  Some operations are only performed by pressing the buttons directly.
  You can also use the buttons and controls on the main unit and remote controller if they have the same or similar name or marks as shown on the touch panel.

Examples:

	To eject a loaded disc.		To eject the monitor or store it in the compartment.

Basic Operations

CAUTION on the monitor :

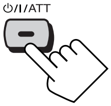
Do not open or close the monitor by hand.

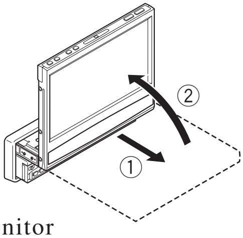
Do not apply any force to the monitor while it is moving.

Such a behavior may damage the monitor loading mechanism.

For turning on the power, use the buttons on the main unit and the remote controller.

1 Turn on the power

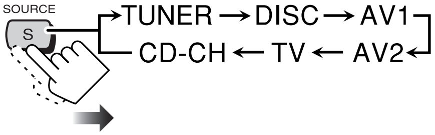




"WAITING" scrolls on the display of the main unit (and the monitor comes out *).

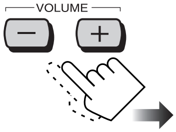
- When the monitor comes out, power comes on to the monitor even if you have turned it off.
- For the space required for the monitor ejection, see page 77.

2 Select the source

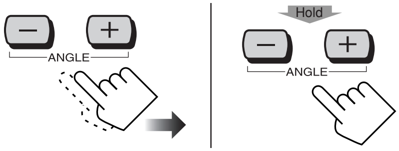


- **DISC**: If a disc is not in the loading slot, you cannot select "DISC" as the source to play.
- **CD-CH/TV**: Without connecting the CD changer or TV tuner unit, you cannot select "CD-CH (CD changer)" or "TV."

3 Adjust the volume

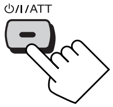


To change the monitor angle:



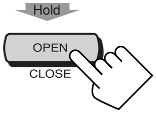
- See page 55 for details.

To drop the volume in a moment (ATT):



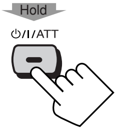
To restore the sound, press it again.

To store the monitor in place:

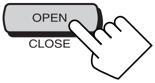


- When the unit is turned off, the power is temporarily turned on.

To turn off the power:



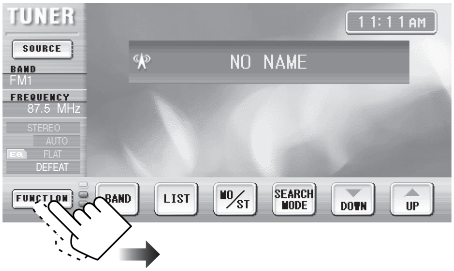
* *This depends on the "AUTO OPEN/CLOSE" setting (see page 46).*
If the monitor does not come out...



Setting the clock

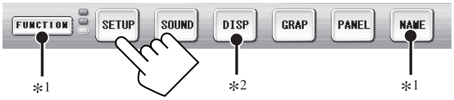
You can also set the clock system to 24 hours or 12 hours.

1 **While playing any source...**

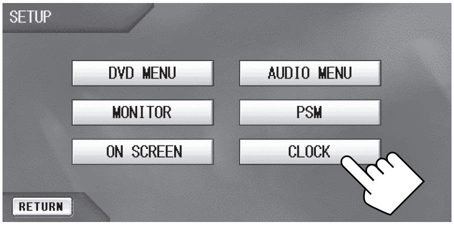

TUNER
SOURCE
BAND
FM1
FREQUENCY
87.5 MHz
STEREO
AUTO
EQ
FLAT
DEFEAT
11:11 AM
NO NAME
FUNCTION
BAND
LIST
MO/ST
SEARCH MODE
DOWN
UP

- If the touch panel icons are not shown on the monitor, touch the center portion of the monitor screen.

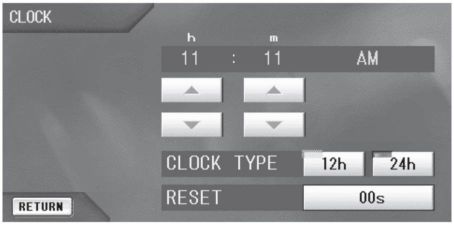
2


FUNCTION
SETUP
SOUND
DISP
GRAP
PANEL
NAME
*1
*2
*1

3

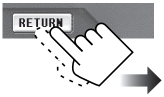

SETUP
DVD MENU
AUDIO MENU
MONITOR
PSM
ON SCREEN
CLOCK
RETURN

4 **Set the clock time.**


CLOCK
h
m
11 : 11 AM
CLOCK TYPE
12h
24h
RESET
00s
RETURN

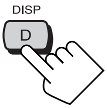
- Press 00s to start the clock time counting exactly from 00 second.

5



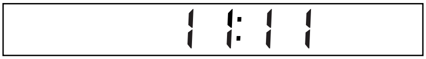
Exit

To display the clock time:



On the main unit

When the unit is turned off, the clock time is displayed on the display of the main unit for a while.



When the unit is turned on...
Each time you press the button, the information shown on the display of the main unit changes.

Information shown on the display differs according to the selected source.

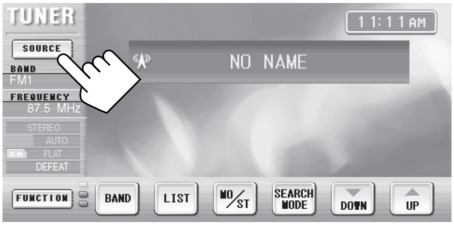
TUNER:	Frequency → Clock → Band&Preset no. →
DISC:	Play time → Clock → Title/Chapter/Folder/Track no. →
AV1/AV2:	Source name → Clock →
TV:	Channel → Clock → TV&Preset no. →
CD-CH:	Elapsed time → Clock → Disc no. → Folder/Track no. →

[*1] It does not appear for some sources.

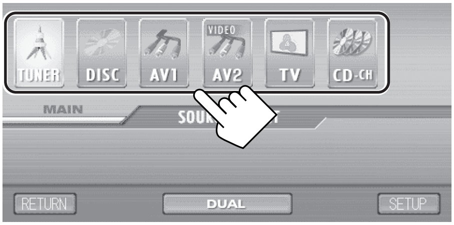
[*2] It will be shaded when not available.

Changing the source SOURCE

1 **While playing any source...**


TUNER
11:11 AM
SOURCE
BAND
FM1
FREQUENCY
87.5 MHz
NO NAME
STEREO
AUTO
EQ
FLAT
DEFEAT
FUNCTION
BAND
LIST
MO/ST
SEARCH MODE
DOWN
UP

2


VIDEO
TUNER
DISC
AV1
AV2
TV
CD-CH
MAIN
SOU
RETURN
DUAL
SETUP

The current source is highlighted.

Newly selected source operation screen appears.

Other icons	Reference pages
MAIN	See page 33.
DUAL	See page 33.
SETUP	See pages 43 – 52.
RETURN	Returns to the previous screen.

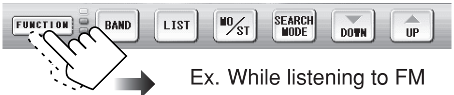
Changing the graphic screen GRAP

You can select one of eight graphics in the picture view window.

- See page 74 for each graphic screen.

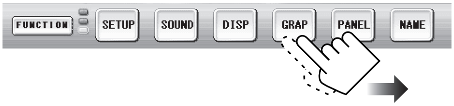
> *When shipped from the factory, display demonstration has been activated, and starts automatically when no operations are done for about 30 seconds (except while playing a DVD/VCD).*
> *To cancel it, select one of the graphic screen.*

1 **While playing any source...**


FUNCTION
BAND
LIST
MO/ST
SEARCH MODE
DOWN
UP

Ex. While listening to FM broadcast.

2

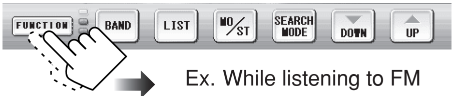

FUNCTION
SETUP
SOUND
DISP
GRAP
PANEL
NAME

- To view the playback picture from any video source, select the screen where the actual playback pictures are shown.

Changing the touch panel color PANEL

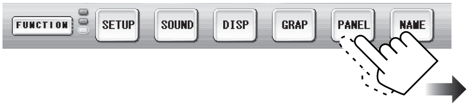
You can change the touch panel color (excluding the picture view window) by selecting from four preset color—blue, silver, red, and black.

1 **While playing any source...**


FUNCTION
BAND
LIST
MO/ST
SEARCH MODE
DOWN
UP

Ex. While listening to FM broadcast.

2

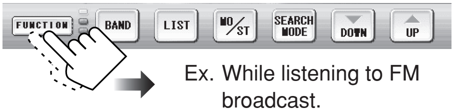

FUNCTION
SETUP
SOUND
DISP
GRAP
PANEL
NAME

Displaying the level meter DISP

You can display the level meter on the graphic screen, by selecting from four preset patterns.

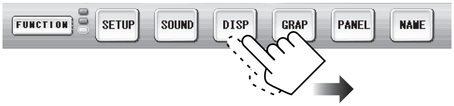
- While viewing the playback picture or display demonstration, you cannot show the level meter.

1 **While playing any source...**



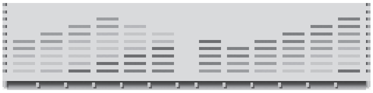
Ex. While listening to FM broadcast.

2

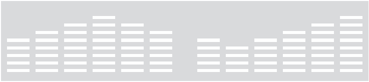


The following level meters are displayed in sequence.

Level meter 1

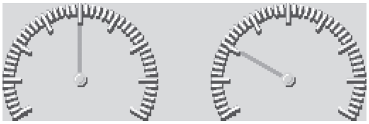


Level meter 2

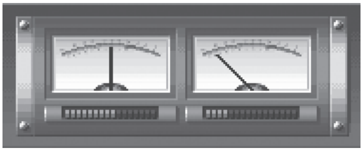


No level meter will appear when no sound comes in.

Level meter 3

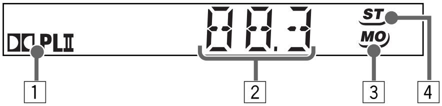


Level meter 4



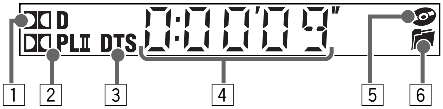
How to read the display of the main unit:

While listening to radio (FM/AM):



1. Lights up when Dolby Pro Logic II is activated (see page 36).
2. Main information—Frequency/Band/Preset no.
3. MO indicator lights when FM reception mode is “MONO.”
4. ST indicator lights while receiving an FM stereo broadcast.

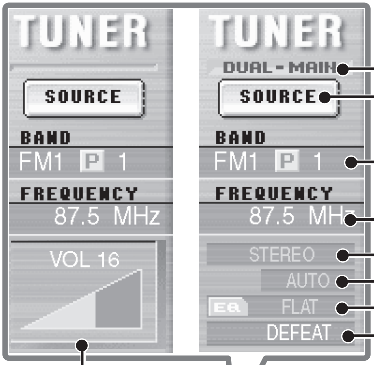
While playing a disc:



1. Lights up when Dolby Digital signal is detected (see page 36).
2. Lights up when Dolby Pro Logic II is activated (see page 36).
3. Lights up when DTS signal is detected (see page 36).
4. Main information—Play time/Title no./Chapter no./Folder no./Track no.
5. Lights up when the disc is detected.
6. Lights up when an MP3 CD is detected.

- You can dim the display and the buttons on the front panel.
  For details see page 46 and also the Installation/Connection Manual (separate volume).

Radio Operations


TUNER
SOURCE
BAND
FM1 P 1
FREQUENCY
87.5 MHz
VOL 16
TUNER
DUAL - MAIN
SOURCE
BAND
FM1 P 1
FREQUENCY
87.5 MHz
STEREO
AUTO
EQ
FLAT
DEFEAT

Dual Mode indicator (see page 33)

SOURCE icon (see pages 14 and 33)

Current band/Preset no.

Station frequency

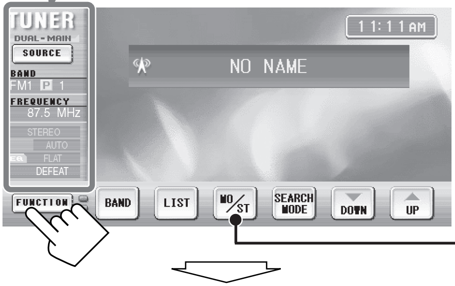
FM reception mode

Search mode

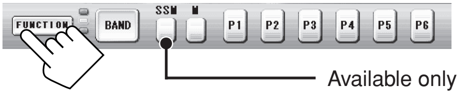
Sound mode (see page 39)

Surround/DSP mode (see page 36)

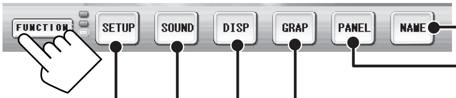
Volume level appears when adjusted.


TUNER
DUAL - MAIN
SOURCE
BAND
FM1 P 1
FREQUENCY
87.5 MHz
STEREO
AUTO
EQ
FLAT
DEFEAT
11:11 AM
NO NAME
FUNCTION
BAND
LIST
MO/ST
SEARCH MODE
DOWN
UP

Not available for AM.


FUNCTION
BAND
SSM
M
P1
P2
P3
P4
P5
P6

Available only after pressing “M” (next to this icon).


FUNCTION
SETUP
SOUND
DISP
GRAP
PANEL
NAME

See page 53.

See page 14.

See page 14.

See page 15.

See page 39.

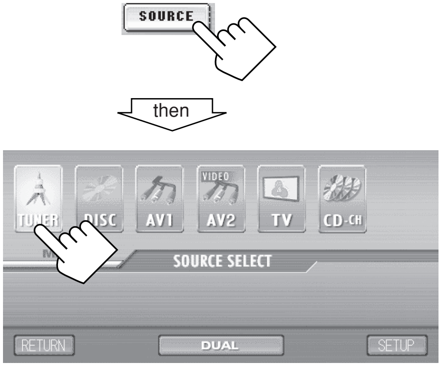
See pages 43 – 52.

Back to the beginning

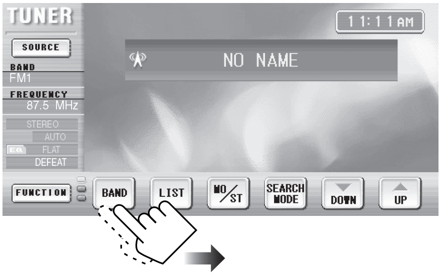
Listening to the Radio

- To tune in to a station using Preset Search, first store your favorite stations into memory (6 stations for each band: see page 18).

1 Select the Tuner

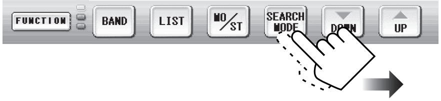

SOURCE
then
TUNER
DISC
AV1
VIDEO
AV2
TV
CD-CH
SOURCE SELECT
RETURN
DUAL
SETUP

2 Select the band (FM/AM)


TUNER
11:11AM
SOURCE
BAND
FM1
FREQUENCY
87.5 MHz
STEREO
AUTO
EQ
FLAT
DEFEAT
NO NAME
FUNCTION
BAND
LIST
MO/ST
SEARCH MODE
DOWN
UP

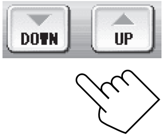
This receiver has three FM bands (FM1, FM2, FM3). You can use any one of them to listen to an FM broadcast.

3 Select Search Mode


FUNCTION
BAND
LIST
MO/ST
SEARCH MODE
DOWN
UP

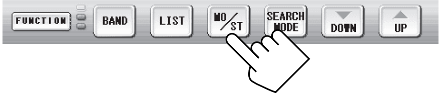
AUTO:	To start Auto Search.
MANUAL:	To start Manual Search.
PRESET:	To select preset station numbers (only possible after storing stations in memory).

4 Tune in to a station



- **For Auto Search,** press either icon once. “Auto Search” begins.
  When a station is received, searching stops.
- **For Manual Search,** press either icon repeatedly (or hold) until a station you want is selected.
- **For Preset Search,** press either icon repeatedly until a preset number you want is selected.

When an FM stereo broadcast is hard to receive:


FUNCTION
BAND
LIST
MO/ST
SEARCH MODE
DOWN
UP

FM reception mode changes to “MONO.” Each time you press the icon, monaural reception mode turns on and off.

- When FM reception mode is “MONO,” reception improves, but stereo effect will be lost.

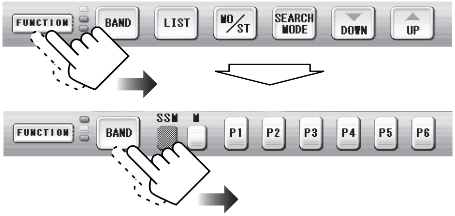
Storing stations in memory

You can preset 6 stations for each band.

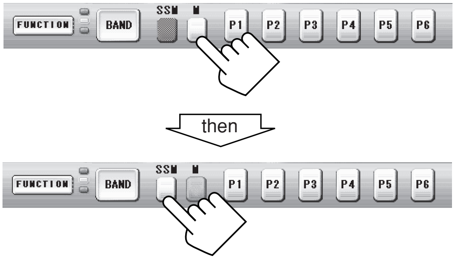
FM station automatic presetting—SSM (Strong-station Sequential Memory)

- This functions only for FM bands.

1 **Select the FM band (FM1 – FM3) you want to store FM stations into.**


FUNCTION
BAND
LIST
MO/ST
SEARCH MODE
DOWN
UP
SSM
M
P1
P2
P3
P4
P5
P6

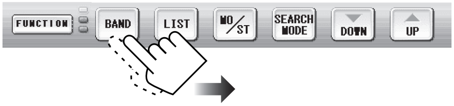
2 **Start SSM.**


FUNCTION
BAND
SSM
M
P1
P2
P3
P4
P5
P6
then

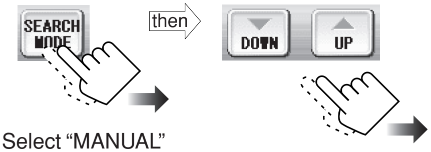
Local FM stations with the strongest signals are searched and stored automatically in the selected FM band.

Manual presetting

1 **Select the band (FM1 – FM3, and AM) you want to store a station into.**

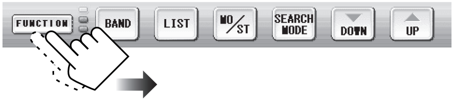

FUNCTION
BAND
LIST
MO/ST
SEARCH MODE
DOWN
UP

2 **Tune in to a station.**

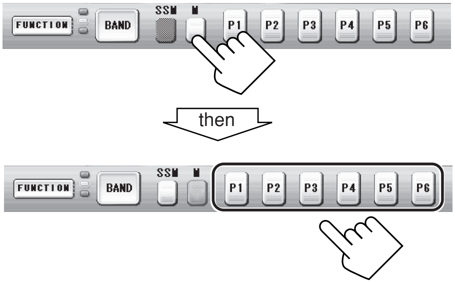

SEARCH MODE
then
DOWN
UP

Select “MANUAL” (or “AUTO”).

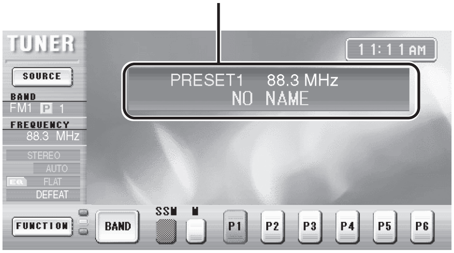
3


FUNCTION
BAND
LIST
MO/ST
SEARCH MODE
DOWN
UP

4 **Store the station into a preset number.**


FUNCTION
BAND
SSM
M
P1
P2
P3
P4
P5
P6
then

Preset station information will be displayed.

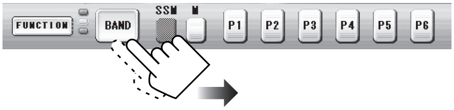

TUNER
SOURCE
BAND
FM1 P 1
FREQUENCY
88.3 MHz
STEREO
AUTO
FLAT
DEFEAT
11:11 AM
FUNCTION
BAND
SSM
M
P1
P2
P3
P4
P5
P6

PRESET1 88.3 MHz
NO NAME

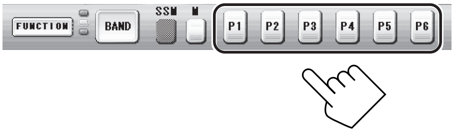
To tune in to a preset station

- See also “Listening to the Radio” on page 17.

1


FUNCTION
BAND
SSM
M
P1
P2
P3
P4
P5
P6

2

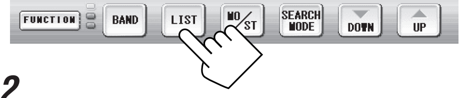

FUNCTION
BAND
SSM
M
P1
P2
P3
P4
P5
P6

Displaying the preset list LIST

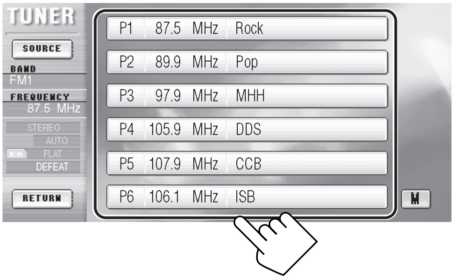
You can store and select the preset stations using the preset list on the monitor screen.

To select a preset station using the preset list

1


FUNCTION
BAND
LIST
MO/ST
SEARCH MODE
DOWN
UP

2

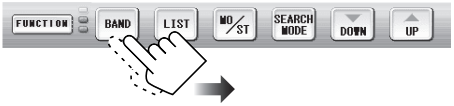

TUNER
SOURCE
BAND
FM1
FREQUENCY
87.5 MHz
STEREO
AUTO
EQ
FLAT
DEFEAT
RETURN
M

P1 87.5 MHz Rock
P2 89.9 MHz Pop
P3 97.9 MHz MHH
P4 105.9 MHz DDS
P5 107.9 MHz CCB
P6 106.1 MHz ISB

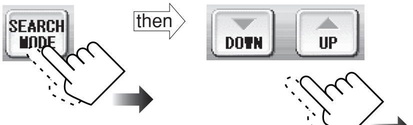
- Preset numbers, station frequencies and assigned names (see page 53) are shown on the list.

To store a station using the preset list

1 **Select the band (FM1 – FM3, and AM) you want to store a station into.**

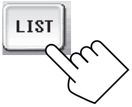

FUNCTION
BAND
LIST
MO/ST
SEARCH MODE
DOWN
UP

2 **Tune into a station.**

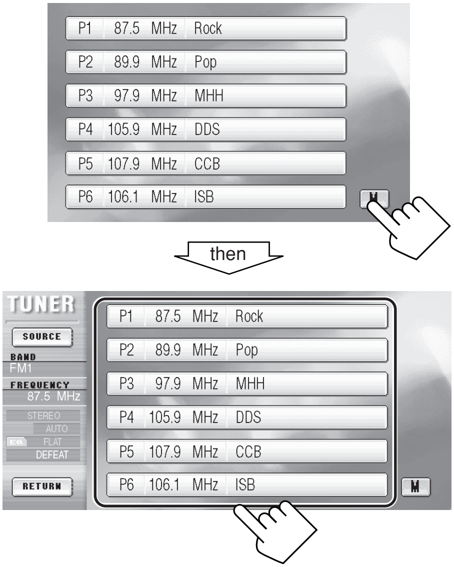

SEARCH MODE
then
DOWN
UP

Select “MANUAL” (or “AUTO”).

3



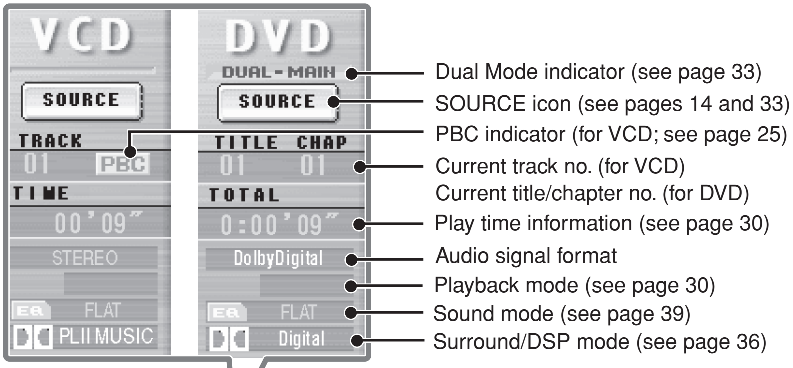
4 **Store the station into a preset number.**


M
then
TUNER
SOURCE
BAND
FM1
FREQUENCY
87.5 MHz
STEREO
AUTO
EQ
FLAT
DEFEAT
RETURN
M

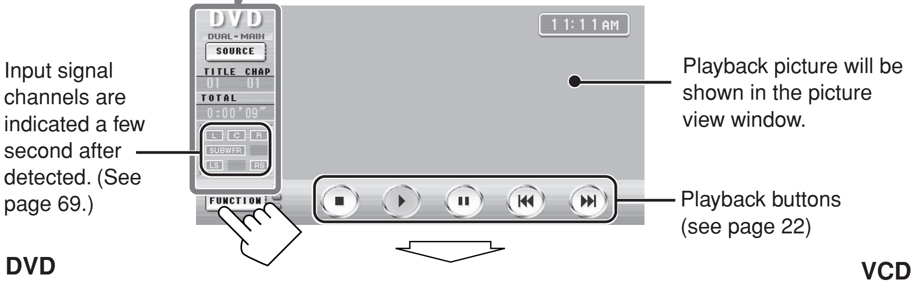
P1 87.5 MHz Rock
P2 89.9 MHz Pop
P3 97.9 MHz MHH
P4 105.9 MHz DDS
P5 107.9 MHz CCB
P6 106.1 MHz ISB

P1 87.5 MHz Rock
P2 89.9 MHz Pop
P3 97.9 MHz MHH
P4 105.9 MHz DDS
P5 107.9 MHz CCB
P6 106.1 MHz ISB

DVD/VCD Operations


VCD
SOURCE
TRACK
01 PBC
TIME
00'09"
STEREO
EQ FLAT
PLII MUSIC
DVD
DUAL-MAIN
SOURCE
TITLE CHAP
01 01
TOTAL
0:00'09"
DolbyDigital
EQ FLAT
Digital

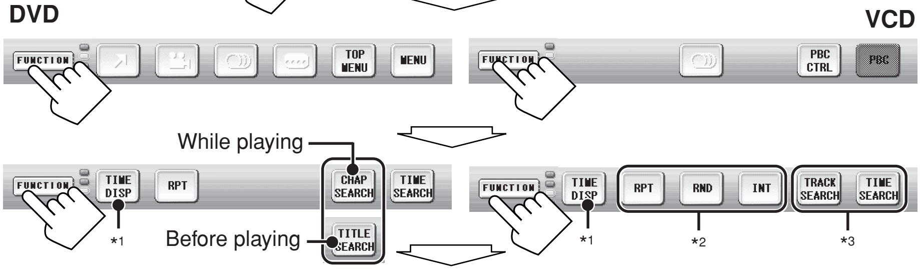
Dual Mode indicator (see page 33)
SOURCE icon (see pages 14 and 33)
PBC indicator (for VCD; see page 25)
Current track no. (for VCD)
Current title/chapter no. (for DVD)
Play time information (see page 30)
Audio signal format
Playback mode (see page 30)
Sound mode (see page 39)
Surround/DSP mode (see page 36)


DVD
DUAL-MAIN
SOURCE
TITLE CHAP
01 01
TOTAL
0:00'09"
L C R
SUBWFR
LS RS
FUNCTION
11:11 AM

Input signal channels are indicated a few second after detected. (See page 69.)

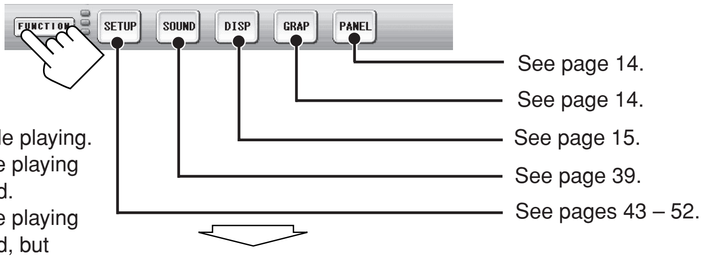
Playback picture will be shown in the picture view window.

Playback buttons (see page 22)


DVD
FUNCTION
TOP MENU
MENU
VCD
FUNCTION
PBC CTRL
PBC
FUNCTION
TIME DISP
RPT
CHAP SEARCH
TITLE SEARCH
TIME SEARCH
FUNCTION
TIME DISP
RPT
RND
INT
TRACK SEARCH
TIME SEARCH
*1
*1
*2
*3

While playing

Before playing

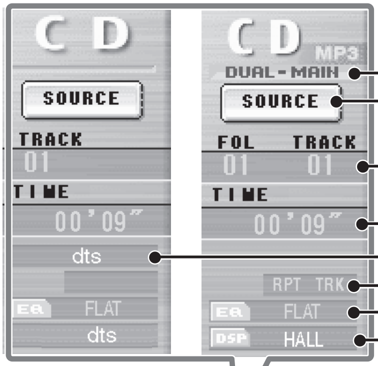

FUNCTION
SETUP
SOUND
DISP
GRAP
PANEL

See page 14.
See page 14.
See page 15.
See page 39.
See pages 43 – 52.

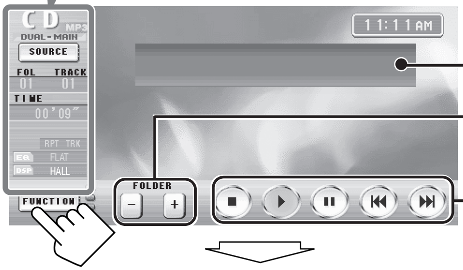
*1 Available only while playing.
*2 Not available while playing with PBC activated.
*3 Not available while playing with PBC activated, but available while not playing.

Back to the beginning

CD/MP3 Operations


CD
SOURCE
TRACK
01
TIME
00'09"
dts
EQ
FLAT
dts
CD MP3
DUAL-MAIN
SOURCE
FOL
TRACK
01
01
TIME
00'09"
RPT TRK
EQ
FLAT
DSP
HALL

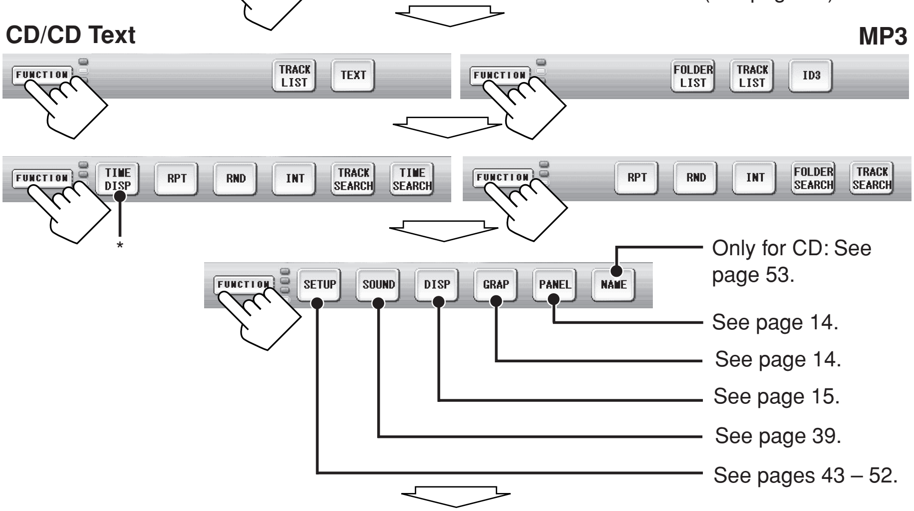
Dual Mode indicator (see page 33)
SOURCE icon (see pages 14 and 33)
Current track no. (for CD)
Current folder/track no. (for MP3)
Play time information (see page 30)
Audio signal format (only for DTS CD)
Playback mode (see page 30)
Sound mode (see page 39)
Surround/DSP mode (see page 36)


11:11 AM
FUNCTION
FOLDER
–
+

Disc text/ID3 tag information area
Only for MP3 (see page 22)
Playback buttons (see page 22)

CD/CD Text

MP3


FUNCTION
TRACK LIST
TEXT
FUNCTION
FOLDER LIST
TRACK LIST
ID3
FUNCTION
TIME DISP
RPT
RND
INT
TRACK SEARCH
TIME SEARCH
*
FUNCTION
RPT
RND
INT
FOLDER SEARCH
TRACK SEARCH
FUNCTION
SETUP
SOUND
DISP
GRAP
PANEL
NAME

Only for CD: See page 53.
See page 14.
See page 14.
See page 15.
See page 39.
See pages 43 – 52.

Back to the beginning

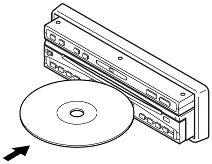
* Available only while playing

Basic Disc Operations

Before performing any operations, observe the following...

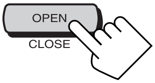
- For DVD playback, change the Setup Menu setting (see page 43).
- If "⊘" appears on the monitor, the disc cannot accept the operation you have tried.
  - – In some cases, "⊘" is not display, but operations will not be accepted.

1 Insert a disc



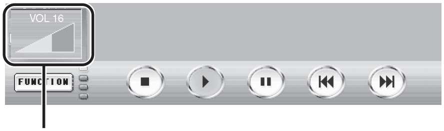
The unit turns on, then draws the disc, and starts playback automatically.

- The monitor does not come out from its compartment if "AUTO OPEN/CLOSE" is set to "OFF" (see page 46).
  If the monitor does not comes out...



- It takes several seconds for the unit to detect a disc type.
- If a disc menu appears, see page 25.

2 Adjust the volume



Volume level appears.

3 Operate the disc

FOLDER – + : Selects the folder (only for MP3).

■ : Stops (see "Stopping play" on page 69).
- VCD/CD/MP3 playback will continue endlessly until you stop it.

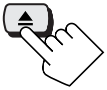
► : Starts playback.

❚❚ : Pauses. To resume playback, press ►.

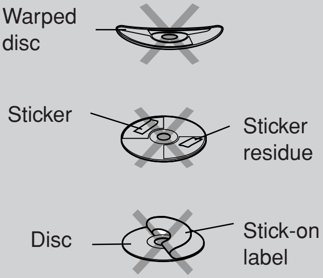
⏮ : Goes back to the beginning of the current chapter/track, then skips to the previous chapters/tracks if pressed repeatedly.

⏭ : Skips to the following chapters/tracks if pressed repeatedly.

To stop play and eject the disc:



Do not use the following discs:



The following marks used in this manual indicate the playable discs.

DVD	VCD with/without PBC	VCD with PBC
CD	MP3	All playable discs

On-screen guide icons

During play, the following guide icons may appear for a while on the monitor.

- The following guide icons are displayed when "GUIDE" is set to "ON" (see page 48).

: Appears at the beginning of a scene containing multi-subtitle languages (only for DVD).

: Appears at the beginning of a scene containing multi-audio languages (only for DVD).

: Appears at the beginning of a scene containing multi-angle views (only for DVD).

▶ : Appears when you press ►.

❚❚ : Appears when you press ❚❚.

▶▶ : Appears when you start forward search (search speed also appears).

◀◀ : Appears when you start reverse search (search speed also appears).

❚▶ : Appears when you start forward slow motion. (Slow motion speed also appears.)

◀❚ : Appears when you start reverse slow motion (slow motion speed also appears) (only for DVD).

To fast-forward or reverse the chapter or track, press **►►** or **◄◄ on the remote controller** while playing a disc.

Each time you press the button, the search speed changes as follows:

x2 ➡ x5 ➡ x10 ➡ x20 ➡ x60*

To resume normal speed, press ►.

If you hold ►►| or |◄◄ while playing a disc, the search speed changes: x2 ➡ x10.

- If you release the button, normal speed playback resumes.

To play back the still picture

Press ❚❚. A still picture appears.

Frame by Frame Playback—You can advance the still picture frame by frame by pressing ❚❚ repeatedly.

To resume normal playback, press ►.

Slow Motion Playback—You can advance or reverse* the still picture in slow motion by pressing **►►** or **◄◄ on the remote controller**. Each time you press the button, the search speed changes as follows:

1/32 ➡ 1/16 ➡ 1/8 ➡ 1/4 ➡ 1/2

To resume normal speed, press ►.

If you hold ►►| or |◄◄ during pause, the slow motion speed changes: 1/32 ➡ 1/8.

- If you release the button, normal speed playback resumes.

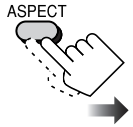
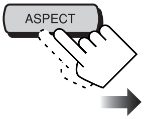
* *Only for DVD.*

Changing the aspect ratio

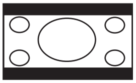
DVD VCD

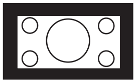
You can change the aspect ratio of the playback pictures.

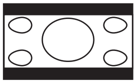
- This function is only possible using the buttons on the main unit or on the remote controller.
- Aspect ratio cannot be changed while the GUI operation mode is activated.

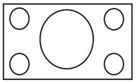
On the remote controller	On the main unit
	

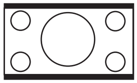
- **When viewing 16:9 video signals:**


FULL

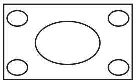

NORMAL

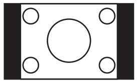

WIDE

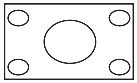

ZOOM

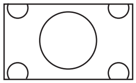

CINEMA

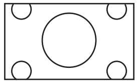
- **When viewing 4:3 video signals:**


FULL


NORMAL


WIDE


ZOOM


CINEMA

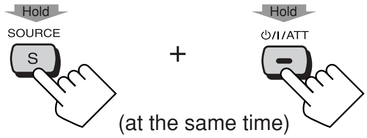
- When you change the aspect ratio, either "RECEIVER" or "CRADLE" (see page 33) appears with the selected aspect ratio. It indicates where the monitor is now loaded. Aspect ratio cannot be set separately for "RECEIVER" or "CRADLE."

Prohibiting disc ejection

ALL

You can lock a disc in the loading slot.

While playing any source...



"NO EJT" appears on the display of the main unit, and the disc cannot be ejected.

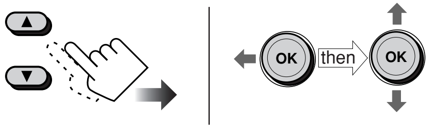
To cancel the prohibition, press the same buttons again.
"EJT OK" appears.

Selecting MP3 folders

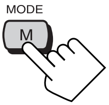
MP3

You can also select the MP3 folder using the buttons on the main unit and on the remote controller.

On the remote controller



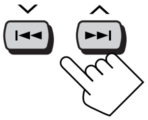
On the main unit



FOLDER ⟷ TRACK

then

While "FOLDER" is displayed on the display of the main unit:

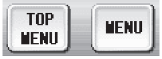


Operating the disc menu

DVD VCD PBC

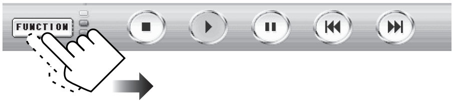
Menu-driven playback is possible while playing back a DVD with menu-driven features or a VCD with the PlayBack Control (PBC) function.

While playing a DVD:

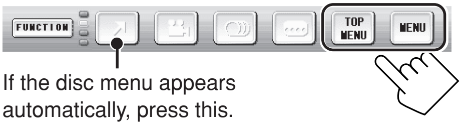

TOP MENU
MENU

DVD discs generally have their own menus or title lists. A title list (TOP MENU) usually contains titles of movies and songs recorded. On the other hand, a menu (MENU) usually contains various information about the disc and playback selections.

1

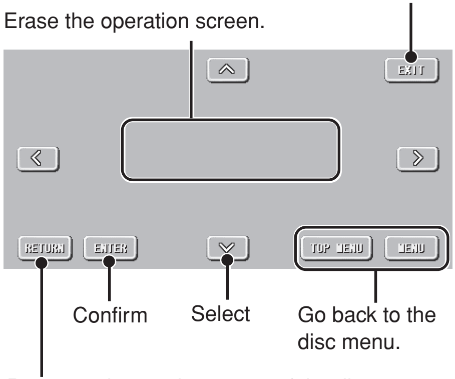


2


FUNCTION
TOP MENU
MENU

If the disc menu appears automatically, press this.

3 **Select an item, then confirm.**


Return to the display in Step 2 above.
Erase the operation screen.
EXIT
RETURN
ENTER
TOP MENU
MENU
Confirm
Select
Go back to the disc menu.
Return to the previous page of the discs menu.

When using the remote controller

1. Press TOPMENU or MENU.
2. Push the cursor controller (OK) up/down/left/right (▲/▼/◀/▶) to select an item.
3. Press OK to confirm.

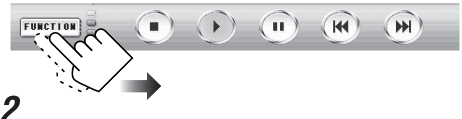
While playing a VCD:

The PBC function allows you to operate the VCD using menus.

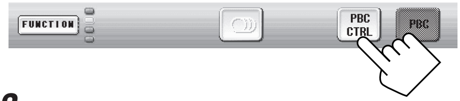
When you start playback, a menu will automatically appear on the monitor.

- A menu may be a list of items, divided screens, or some moving pictures.
- When a VCD with PBC is detected, the PBC indicator appears on the monitor.
- When "►" or "SELECT" is displayed on the monitor, press ► (or OK on the remote controller if pressing ► does not work) to start playback.

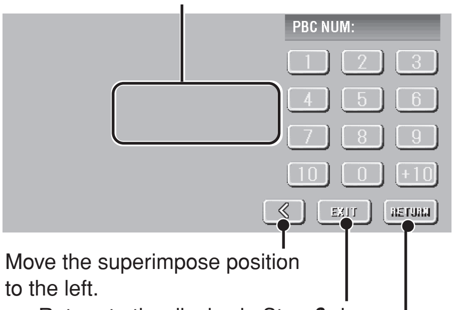
1



2


FUNCTION
PBC CTRL
PBC

3 **Enter a number.**


Erase the operation screen.
PBC NUM:
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
0
+10
EXIT
RETURN
Move the superimpose position to the left.
Return to the display in Step 2 above.
Return to the previous page of the PBC menu.

- To select number 5, press 5.
- To select number 10, press 10.
- To select number 20, press +10, then 10.

When using the number buttons on the remote controller

- *To select number 5, press 5.*
- *To select number 10, press 10.*
- *To select number 23, press +10, +10, then 3.*

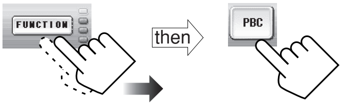
To cancel the PBC playback

You can cancel the menu-driven operations (PBC function) using the remote controller.

1. Press ■ to stop playback.
2. Press number buttons to select a track. Playback without PBC starts from the selected track.
   - You can also use Track Search icon (see page 31) and Time Search icon (see page 32) on the Touch Panel to start playback without PBC.

To resume the PBC function again, press TOPMENU or MENU **on the remote controller**.

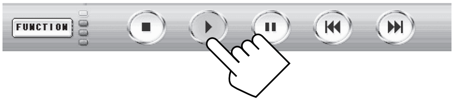
- You can also use PBC icon on the Touch Panel.



Replaying the previous scenes

DVD

You can replay about 10-second portion of the previous scene while playing a DVD—One Touch Replay.



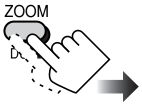
Zooming in

DVD VCD

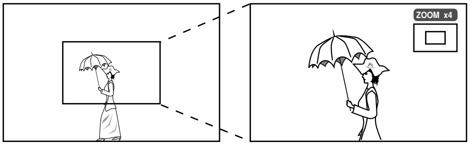
You can zoom into a particular portion of the picture.

- This function is only possible using the remote controller.

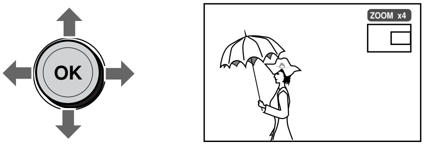
1



➡ x2 ➡ x4 ➡ x8 ➡ x1 ➡ x2 ➡ x4 ➡ x8 ➡ • • • •



2 **Move the zoomed-in portion on the monitor.**



To cancel Zoom, press OK or press ZOOM repeatedly until “ZOOM x1” appears.

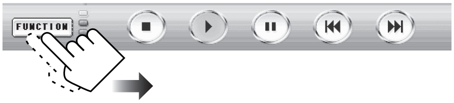
Selecting subtitles

DVD

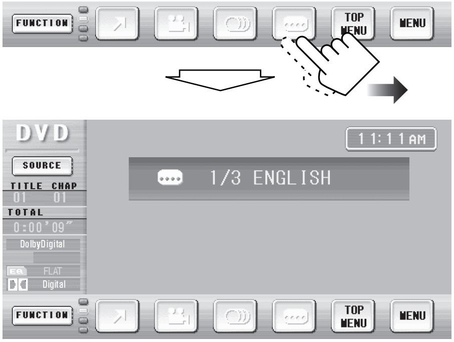
While playing a chapter containing subtitles in different languages, you can select the subtitle language to display on the monitor.

- You can also select the subtitle language using SETUP menu (see page 44).

1

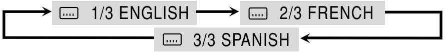


2 **Select a subtitle language you want.**


FUNCTION
TOP MENU
MENU
DVD
11:11 AM
SOURCE
TITLE CHAP
01 01
TOTAL
0:00'09"
DolbyDigital
EQ FLAT
Digital

1/3 ENGLISH

Ex.



1/3 ENGLISH → 2/3 FRENCH → 3/3 SPANISH

Selecting audio languages

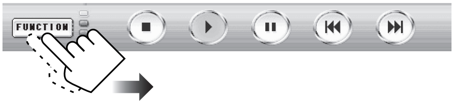
DVD VCD

For DVD: While playing a chapter containing audio languages, you can select the language to listen to.

- You can also select the audio language using SETUP menu (see page 44).

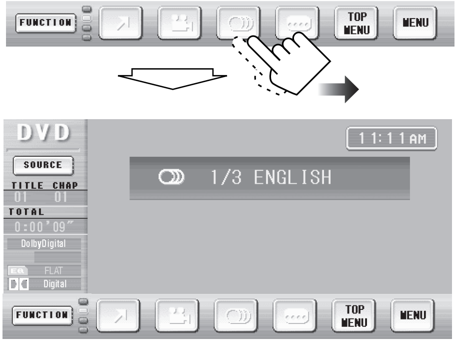
For VCD: While playing a track, you can select the audio channel to play. This is convenient when playing a Karaoke VCD.

1



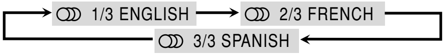
2 **Select an audio language you want.**

When playing DVD:


FUNCTION
TOP MENU
MENU
DVD
11:11 AM
SOURCE
TITLE CHAP
01 01
TOTAL
0:00'09"
DolbyDigital
EQ FLAT
Digital

1/3 ENGLISH

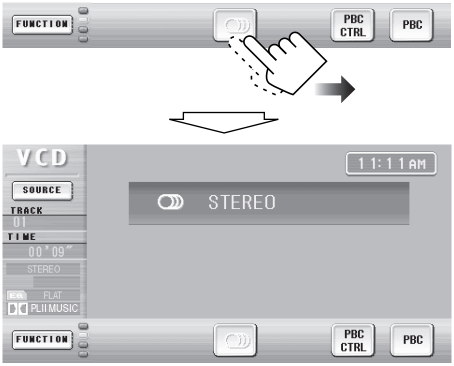
Ex.

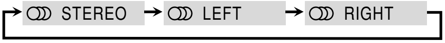


1/3 ENGLISH → 2/3 FRENCH → 3/3 SPANISH

To be continued...

When playing VCD:


FUNCTION
PBC CTRL
PBC
VCD
SOURCE
TRACK
01
TIME
00'09"
STEREO
EQ FLAT
PLII MUSIC
11:11 AM
STEREO


STEREO
LEFT
RIGHT

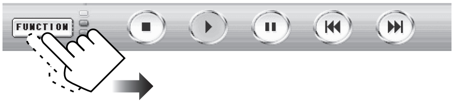
• STEREO:	To listen to normal stereo (left/right) playback.
• LEFT:	To listen to the left audio channel.
• RIGHT:	To listen to the right audio channel.

Selecting multi-angle views

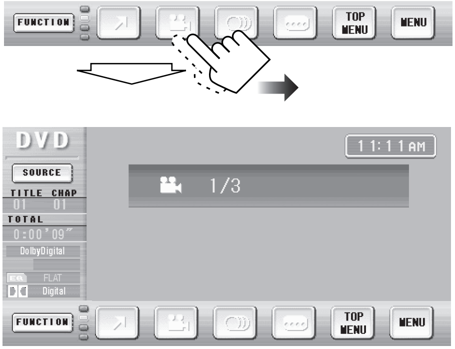
DVD

While playing a disc containing multi-angle views, you can view the same scene at different angles.

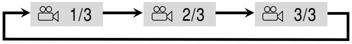
1

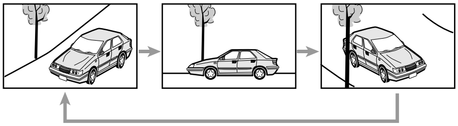


2 **Select a view angle you want.**


FUNCTION
TOP MENU
MENU
DVD
SOURCE
TITLE CHAP
01 01
TOTAL
0:00'09"
DolbyDigital
EQ FLAT
Digital
11:11 AM
1/3

Ex.





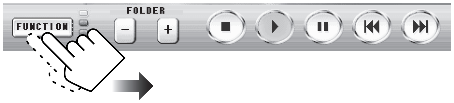
Locating a folder/track using the list FOLDER LIST TRACK LIST

To locate a folder by displaying the folder list

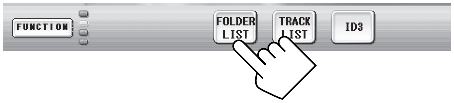
MP3

- This functions only for MP3.

1

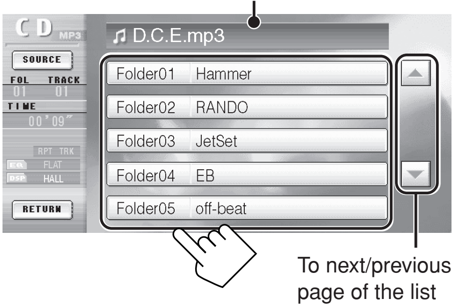

FUNCTION
FOLDER
–
+

2


FUNCTION
FOLDER LIST
TRACK LIST
ID3

3 **Select a folder you want.**

Current track name or ID3 Tag


CD
MP3
SOURCE
FOL
TRACK
01
01
TIME
00' 09"
RPT
TRK
EQ
FLAT
DSP
HALL
RETURN

♫ D.C.E.mp3

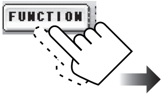
Folder01	Hammer
Folder02	RANDO
Folder03	JetSet
Folder04	EB
Folder05	off-beat

To next/previous page of the list

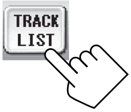
To locate a track by displaying the track list

CD MP3

1

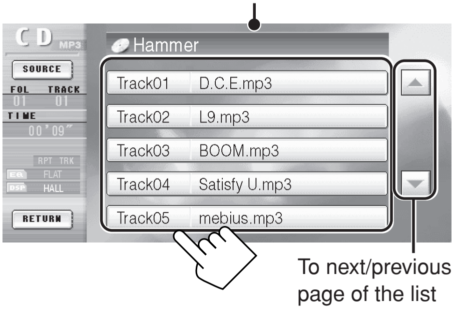


2



3 **Select a track you want.**

Current folder name or ID3 Tag (for MP3)
Disc name (for CD) or CD Text


CD
MP3
SOURCE
FOL
TRACK
01
01
TIME
00' 09"
RPT
TRK
EQ
FLAT
DSP
HALL
RETURN

Hammer

Track01	D.C.E.mp3
Track02	L9.mp3
Track03	BOOM.mp3
Track04	Satisfy U.mp3
Track05	mebius.mp3

To next/previous page of the list

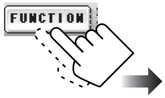
Ex. when playing MP3

Displaying the disc text information TEXT ID3

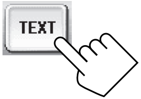
CD MP3

With Auto Scroll or Scroll selected, you can display the text and scroll it on the monitor if it is long and cannot be displayed at a time.

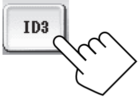
1



2



(For CD)



(For MP3)

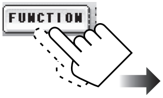
Scroll → Auto Scroll → Off → Scroll

- Scroll: Text on the information area scrolls once.
- Auto Scroll: Text on the information area scrolls every 5 seconds.
- Off: The information area goes off (no text information will be shown).

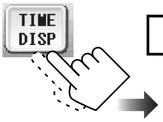
Displaying the time information TIME DISP

DVD VCD CD

1



2



TIME → REM → TOTAL → T.REM → TIME

- TIME: Elapsed playing time of the current chapter/track
- REM: Remaining time of the current chapter/track
- TOTAL: Elapsed title time (for DVD)
  Elapsed disc time (for other discs)
- T.REM: Remaining title time (for DVD)
  Remaining disc time (for other discs)

Selecting playback modes

You can use only one of the following playback modes at a time—Repeat Play, Random Play, and Intro Scan.

- For VCD: While PBC is not in use.

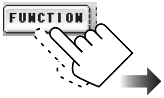
Repeat Play RPT

ALL

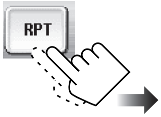
You can repeat playback.

- Repeat Play can be deactivated only for DVD.

1



2



When playing DVD:

REPEAT PLAY CHAPTER → REPEAT PLAY TITLE → REPEAT PLAY OFF → REPEAT PLAY CHAPTER

When playing VCD/CD:

REPEAT PLAY TRACK → REPEAT PLAY OFF → REPEAT PLAY TRACK

When playing MP3:

REPEAT PLAY TRACK → REPEAT PLAY FOLDER → REPEAT PLAY OFF → REPEAT PLAY TRACK

REPEAT PLAY

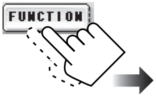
- CHAPTER: Repeats the current chapter.
- TITLE: Repeats the current title.
- TRACK: Repeats the current track.
- FOLDER: Repeats the current folder.
- OFF: For DVD: Cancels Repeat Play.
  For VCD/CD/MP3:
  Repeats the disc.

Random Play RND

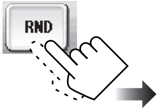
VCD CD MP3

You can play back tracks at random.

1



2



When playing VCD/CD:

RANDOM PLAY DISC → RANDOM PLAY OFF

When playing MP3:

RANDOM PLAY FOLDER → RANDOM PLAY DISC → RANDOM PLAY OFF

RANDOM PLAY

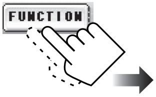
• DISC:	Plays randomly all tracks on the disc.
• FOLDER:	Plays randomly all tracks of the current folder, then moves to the next folder and so on.
• OFF:	Cancels Random Play.

Intro Scan INT

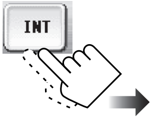
VCD CD MP3

You can play back the first 15 seconds of each track sequentially.

1



2



When playing VCD/CD:

INTRO SCAN TRACK → INTRO SCAN OFF

When playing MP3:

INTRO SCAN TRACK → INTRO SCAN FOLDER → INTRO SCAN OFF

INTRO SCAN

• TRACK:	Plays the beginning of all tracks.
• FOLDER:	Plays the first tracks of all folders.
• OFF:	Cancels Intro Scan.

Searching for scenes or songs

You can use various search functions to find your favorite scenes or songs.

Title/Chapter/Folder/Track Search

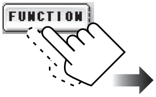
TITLE SEARCH CHAP SEARCH DVD

TRACK SEARCH VCD CD

FOLDER SEARCH TRACK SEARCH MP3

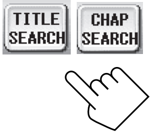
• For DVD:	Title Search before playing, and Chapter Search while playing.
• For VCD:	During stop when PBC is in use.

1

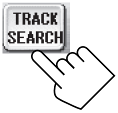


2

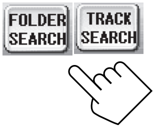
(For DVD)



(For VCD/CD)



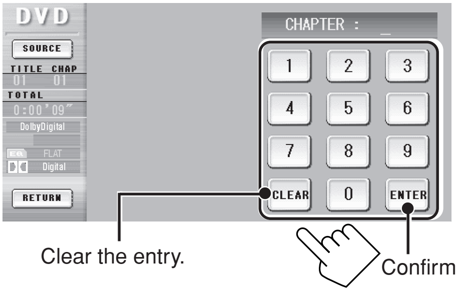
(For MP3)



To be continued...

3 Enter a number, then confirm.

Ex. when playing DVD:


DVD
SOURCE
TITLE CHAP
01 01
TOTAL
0:00'09"
DolbyDigital
FLAT
Digital
RETURN
CHAPTER : _
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
CLEAR
0
ENTER
Clear the entry.
Confirm

When using the number buttons on the remote controller

- *To select number 5, press 5.*
- *To select number 10, press 10.*
- *To select number 23, press +10, +10, then 3.*

> *You cannot select folder using the remote controller.*

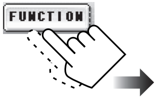
Time Search TIME SEARCH

DVD VCD CD

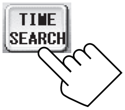
You can start playing a particular point by specifying the elapsed playing time of the current title (for DVD) and of the disc (for VCD/CD).

- For DVD: During play or pause. (For some DVDs: any time)
- For VCD: While not playing with PBC activated.

1

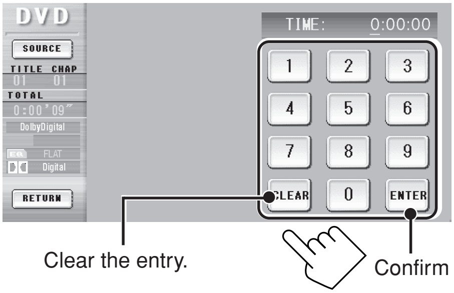


2

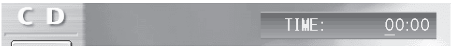

TIME SEARCH

3 Enter a number, then confirm.

Ex. when playing DVD:


DVD
SOURCE
TITLE CHAP
01 01
TOTAL
0:00'09"
DolbyDigital
FLAT
Digital
RETURN
TIME: 0:00:00
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
CLEAR
0
ENTER
Clear the entry.
Confirm

Ex. when playing CD:


CD
TIME: 00:00

Examples (for DVD)

To play back from 2(H):34(M):00(S)
Press number buttons 2, 3, 4, then ENTER.

TIME	2 : 34 :00

To play back from 58(M):00(S)
Press number buttons 0, 5, 8, then ENTER.

TIME	0 : 58 :00

Example (for VCD/CD)

To play back from 23(M):40(S)
Press number buttons 2, 3, 4, then ENTER.

TIME	23 : 40

- You do not have to press “0” to enter the trailing zeros.

Dual Mode Operations

You can play back two different sources as the main source (MAIN) and subsidiary source (SUB).

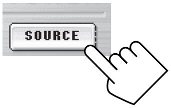
You can listen to the main source through the speakers, while the subsidiary source through the monitor inserted into the cradle or the one connected to the AV OUTPUT jacks.

- For connections of the cradle and an optional monitor, refer to the Installation/ Connection Manual (separate volume).

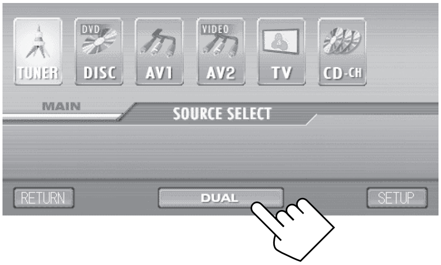
Selecting the sources

To activate Dual Mode and select the subsidiary source

1

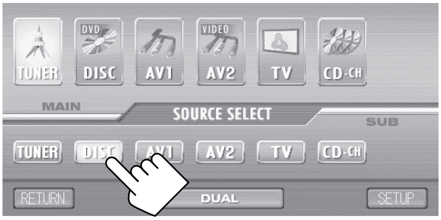


2


DVD
VIDEO
TUNER
DISC
AV1
AV2
TV
CD-CH
MAIN
SOURCE SELECT
RETURN
DUAL
SETUP

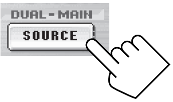
3 **Select the subsidiary source (SUB) you want.**

- The current sources for MAIN and SUB are highlighted.


DVD
VIDEO
TUNER
DISC
AV1
AV2
TV
CD-CH
MAIN
SOURCE SELECT
SUB
TUNER
DISC
AV1
AV2
TV
CD-CH
RETURN
DUAL
SETUP

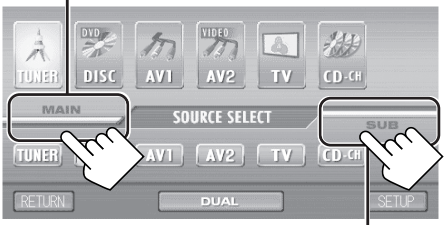
To show the main/subsidiary source operation screen on the monitor

1

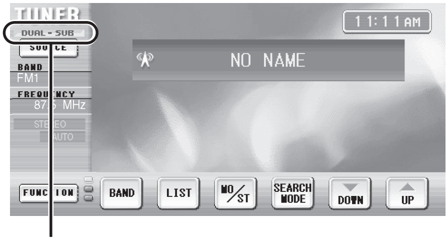

DUAL – MAIN
SOURCE

2

To show the main source operation screen (DUAL–MAIN)


DVD
VIDEO
TUNER
DISC
AV1
AV2
TV
CD-CH
MAIN
SOURCE SELECT
SUB
TUNER
AV1
AV2
TV
CD-CH
RETURN
DUAL
SETUP

To show the subsidiary source operation screen (DUAL–SUB)


TUNER
DUAL – SUB
SOURCE
11:11 AM
NO NAME
BAND
FM1
FREQUENCY
87.5 MHz
STEREO
AUTO
FUNCTION
BAND
LIST
MO/ST
SEARCH MODE
DOWN
UP

Dual Mode indicator (DUAL–MAIN or DUAL–SUB) appears.

Ex. When the subsidiary source operation screen (DUAL–SUB) is displayed.

To cancel the Dual Mode, press DUAL.

Each time you press the icon, Dual Mode is turned on and off alternately.

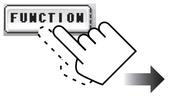
- When Dual Mode is turned off, the main source screen appears.

Adjusting AV OUTPUT volume

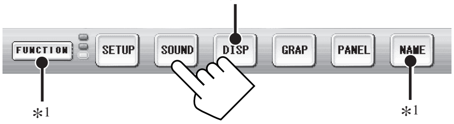
Select an appropriate volume level for the component connected to the AV OUTPUT jacks on the hideaway unit.

- This functions without respect to the Dual Mode setting.

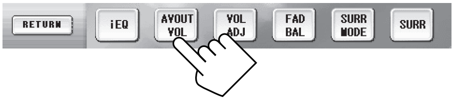
1



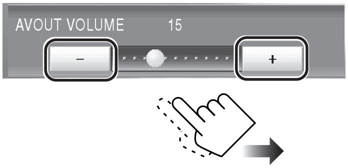
2


*2
FUNCTION
SETUP
SOUND
DISP
GRAP
PANEL
NAME
*1
*1

3


RETURN
iEQ
AVOUT VOL
VOL ADJ
FAD BAL
SURR MODE
SURR

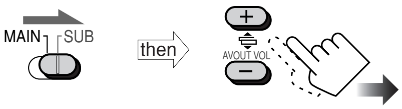
4 **Adjust the AV output volume.**


AVOUT VOLUME
15
–
+

[*1] It does not appear for some sources.

[*2] It will be shaded when not available.

On the remote controller


MAIN
SUB
then
+
AVOUT VOL
–

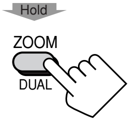
While Dual Mode is in use...

- The playback source does not change to “DISC” though you insert a disc. “DUAL” flashes on the display of the main unit.
- You can only adjust the volume level for the subsidiary source (the other sound adjustments cannot be used for the subsidiary source).

When using the remote controller:

- For Dual Mode operations...
  - – When controlling the monitor connected to the AV OUTPUT jacks, aim the remote controller at the remote sensor on the main unit.
  - – When controlling the monitor inserted into the cradle, aim the remote controller at the remote sensor on the cradle.

To activate Dual Mode

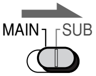

Hold
ZOOM
DUAL

Each time you press and hold the button, Dual Mode turns on and off.

- When Dual Mode is turned on, the source selection screen appears on the monitor (see page 33).

To operate the subsidiary source

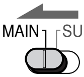
1



2 **Press the source buttons, then the source operation buttons.**

To operate the main source

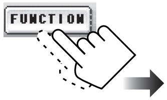
1



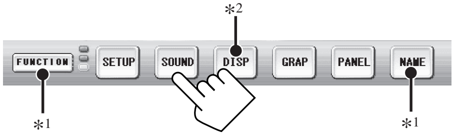
2 **Press the source buttons, then the source operation buttons.**

Surround Mode Operations

1

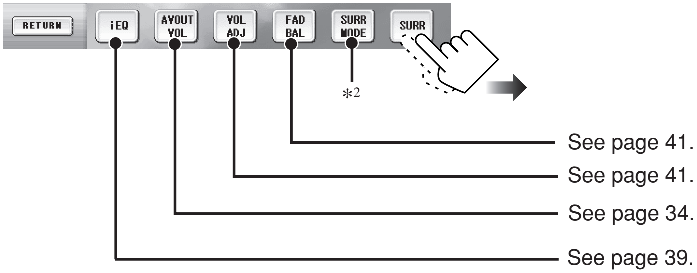


2


*2
FUNCTION
SETUP
SOUND
DISP
GRAP
PANEL
NAME
*1
*1

*1 It does not appear for some sources.
*2 It will be shaded when not available.

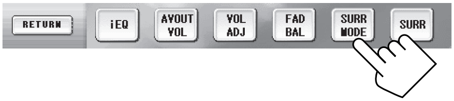
3 **Activate and select the surround mode or DSP mode.**


RETURN
iEQ
AVOUT VOL
VOL ADJ
FAD BAL
SURR MODE
SURR
*2

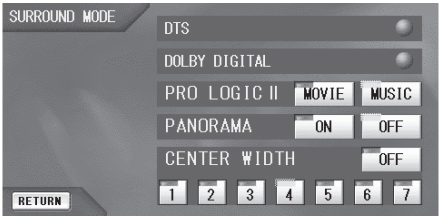
See page 41.
See page 41.
See page 34.
See page 39.

4 **Make adjustment if you want to.**

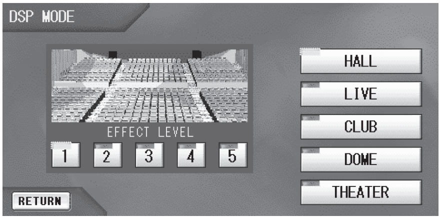
- If neither surround mode nor DSP mode is activated, you cannot make adjustment.


RETURN
iEQ
AVOUT VOL
VOL ADJ
FAD BAL
SURR MODE
SURR

When surround mode is activated:


SURROUND MODE
DTS
DOLBY DIGITAL
PRO LOGIC II
MOVIE
MUSIC
PANORAMA
ON
OFF
CENTER WIDTH
OFF
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
RETURN

When DSP mode is activated:


DSP MODE
EFFECT LEVEL
1
2
3
4
5
HALL
LIVE
CLUB
DOME
THEATER
RETURN

Introducing surround/DSP mode

Surround modes

Dolby Digital

Dolby Digital is a digital signal compression method, developed by Dolby Laboratories, and enables multi-channel encoding and decoding (1ch up to 5.1ch).

Dolby Digital 5.1 CH

Dolby Digital 5.1 CH encoding method records and digitally compresses the left front channel, right front channel, center channel, left surround channel, right surround channel, and LFE channel signals (total 6 channels, but the LFE channel is counted as 0.1 channel. Therefore, called 5.1 channel).
Dolby Digital enables stereo surround sounds, and sets the cutoff frequency of the surround treble at 20 kHz, compared to 7 kHz for Dolby Pro Logic. As such, the sound movement and "being there" feeling are enhanced much more than Dolby Pro Logic.

DTS

DTS is another digital signal compression method, developed by Digital Theater Systems, Inc., and enables multi-channel encoding and decoding (1ch up to 6.1ch).

DTS Digital Surround

DTS Digital Surround is another discrete 5.1-channel digital audio format available on CD, LD, and DVD software.
Compared to Dolby Digital, the DTS Digital Surround format has a lower audio compression rate which enables it to add breadth and depth to the sounds reproduced. As such, DTS Digital Surround features natural, solid, and clear sound.

Dolby Pro Logic II

It is a multi-channel playback format to convert 2-channel software into 5-channel (plus subwoofer). The matrix-based conversion method used for Dolby Pro Logic II makes no limitation for the cutoff frequency of the surround treble and enables stereo surround sound.

- This unit provides two types of Dolby Pro Logic II modes—**Pro Logic II "MOVIE"** and **Pro Logic II "MUSIC**."

MOVIE:	Suitable for playing any Dolby Surround encoded software.
MUSIC:	Suitable for playing any 2-channel stereo software.

No sound may come out of the subwoofer (though the subwoofer is activated) with Dolby Pro Logic II in use. (This depends on your speaker setting—see page 51).

Digital Signal Processor (DSP) mode—reproducing the sound field

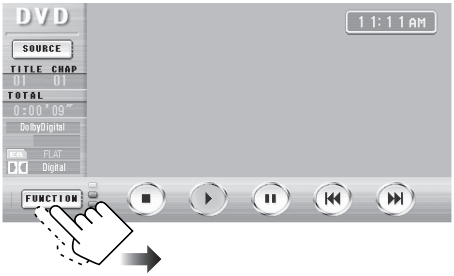
The sound heard in a concert hall, club, etc. consists of direct sound and indirect sound—early reflections and reflections from behind. Direct sounds reach the listener directly without any reflection. On the other hand, indirect sounds are delayed by the distances of the ceiling and walls. These direct sounds and indirect sounds are the most important elements of the acoustic surround effects.
DSP modes can create these important elements, and give you a real "being there" feeling.

Turning on and off the surround/DSP mode SURR MODE SURR

You can use surround or Digital Signal Processor (DSP) mode while playing any source.
However, when playing a multi-channel encoded disc, you cannot apply DSP mode to the playback sounds.

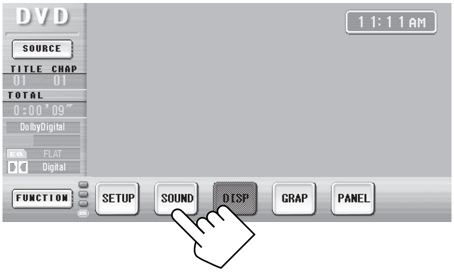
- When “AUTO SURROUND” is set to “ON” (initial setting when shipped from factory), an appropriate surround mode is automatically selected without any setting operation (see page 50).
- To obtain the best possible surround sounds, set the seat position and speaker size correctly (see pages 50 and 51). **If only rear speakers are activated (set to “LARGE” or “SMALL”), surround/DSP mode is defeated (set to “DEFEAT”) and cannot be changed.**

1

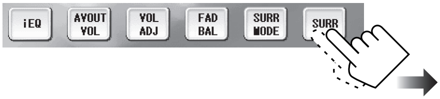

DVD
SOURCE
TITLE CHAP
01 01
TOTAL
0:00'09"
DolbyDigital
EQ FLAT
Digital
11:11 AM
FUNCTION

Ex. When playing DVD.

2


DVD
SOURCE
TITLE CHAP
01 01
TOTAL
0:00'09"
DolbyDigital
EQ FLAT
Digital
11:11 AM
FUNCTION
SETUP
SOUND
DISP
GRAP
PANEL

3


iEQ
AYOUT VOL
VOL ADJ
FAD BAL
SURR MODE
SURR

- **While playing a multi-channel encoded disc:**

Surround On (DSP Off) ←→ DEFEAT (Surround Off)

- **While playing a 2-channel (stereo) disc:**

Surround On (DSP Off) → DSP On (Surround Off) → DEFEAT (Surround/DSP Off) → (back to Surround On (DSP Off))

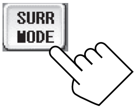
- **Surround On (DSP Off)**
  While playing a multi-channel Dolby Digital encoded disc, “Dolby Digital” is automatically selected.
  While playing a multi-channel DTS encoded disc, “DTS” is automatically selected.
  While playing any other disc, “Dolby Pro Logic II” is automatically selected.
  - You can select either “Dolby Pro Logic II Movie” or “Dolby Pro Logic II Music.”

- **DSP On (Surround Off)**
  Currently selected DSP mode is activated.

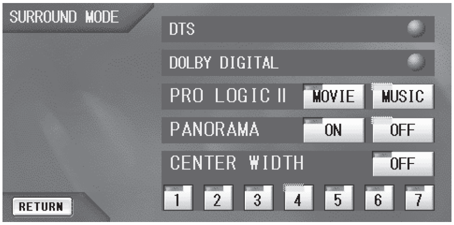
- **DEFEAT (Surround/DSP Off)**
  Both surround and DSP mode is canceled.
  - You cannot go to the next step.

To be continued...

4 **Adjust the selected surround or DSP mode.**



When surround mode is activated:


SURROUND MODE
DTS
DOLBY DIGITAL
PRO LOGIC II
MOVIE
MUSIC
PANORAMA
ON
OFF
CENTER WIDTH
OFF
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
RETURN

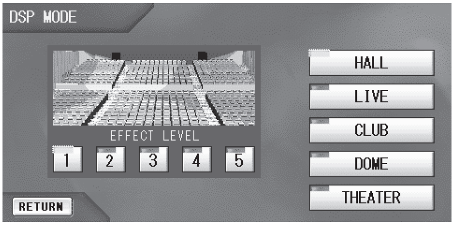
DTS ●
: Selected automatically when multi-channel DTS signal is detected (while playing a DVD or a DTS CD). No further adjustment is allowed.

DOLBY DIGITAL ●
: Selected automatically when multi-channel Dolby Digital signal is detected (while playing a DVD). No further adjustment is allowed.

PRO LOGIC II : Select either "MOVIE" or "MUSIC."
When you select "MUSIC," you can adjust the following items.

- PANORAMA : Select "ON" to add "wraparound" sound effect with side-wall image. To cancel it, select "OFF."
- CENTER WIDTH : Adjust the center image so it may be heard only from the center speaker, only from the left/right front speakers as a "phantom" center image, or various combinations of these speakers. As the number increases, the "phantom" effect becomes stronger. (Normally select "4.") To cancel it, select "OFF."

When DSP mode is activated:


DSP MODE
EFFECT LEVEL
1
2
3
4
5
RETURN
HALL
LIVE
CLUB
DOME
THEATER

Ex. When selecting "HALL."

① Select one of the DSP modes.

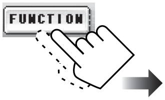
HALL:	Reproduces the spatial feeling of a large shoebox-shaped hall designed primarily for classical concerts.
LIVE:	Reproduces the spatial feeling of a live music club with a low ceiling.
CLUB:	Reproduces the spatial feeling of a rocking dance club.
DOME:	Reproduces the spatial feeling of a stadium with a high ceiling.
THEATER:	Reproduces the spatial feeling of a theater.

② Adjust the effect level (from 1 to 5).
As the number increases, the effect becomes stronger.

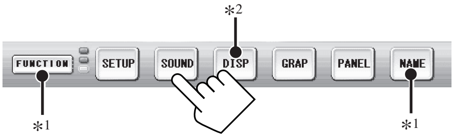
Sound Modes (iEQ) Operations

The following operations are only possible for the main source when using Dual Mode.

1

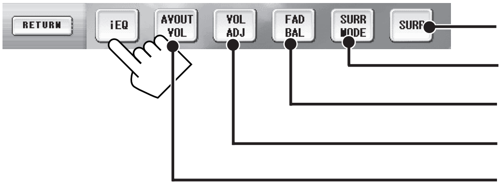


2


FUNCTION
SETUP
SOUND
DISP
GRAP
PANEL
NAME
*2
*1
*1

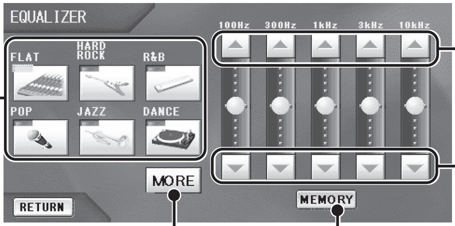
*1 It does not appear for some sources.
*2 It will be shaded when not available.

3


RETURN
iEQ
AVOUT VOL
VOL ADJ
FAD BAL
SURR MODE
SURR

See page 35.
See page 35.
See page 41.
See page 41.
See page 34.

4 **Select one of the preset sound (iEQ) modes (then make adjustment if you want to make your own sound mode).**

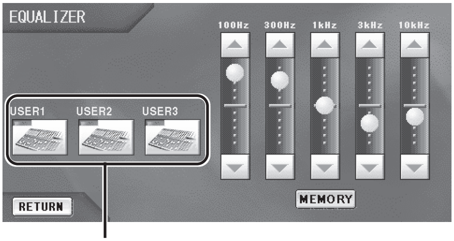

EQUALIZER
100Hz
300Hz
1kHz
3kHz
10kHz
FLAT
HARD ROCK
R&B
POP
JAZZ
DANCE
MORE
RETURN
MEMORY

Select sound modes.

Adjust the level of each frequency band.

Display the other set of the sound modes.

Store your adjustment (display the screen below).


EQUALIZER
100Hz
300Hz
1kHz
3kHz
10kHz
USER1
USER2
USER3
RETURN
MEMORY

Select memory no. to store.

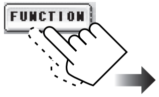
Selecting preset sound modes

You can select a sound mode suitable to the music genre.

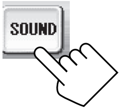
Available sound modes:

- **HARD ROCK / R&B / POP / JAZZ / DANCE / COUNTRY / REGGAE / CLASSIC**
- **USER1 / USER2 / USER3**
- **FLAT** (To cancel the sound mode)

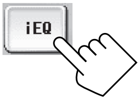
1



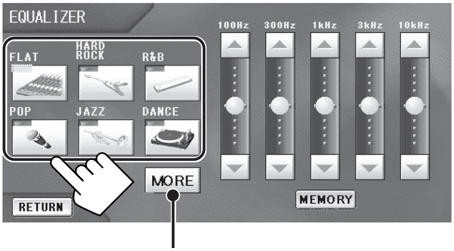
2



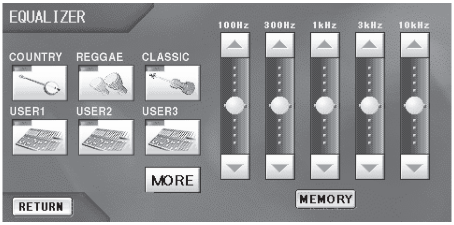
3



4 Select one of the preset sound (iEQ) modes.


EQUALIZER
100Hz
300Hz
1kHz
3kHz
10kHz
FLAT
HARD ROCK
R&B
POP
JAZZ
DANCE
MORE
RETURN
MEMORY

Display the other set of the sound modes (see below).

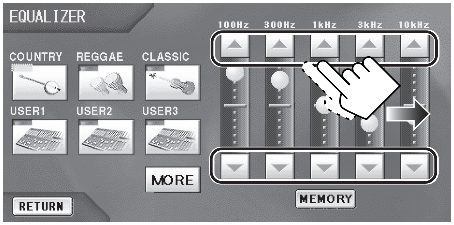

EQUALIZER
100Hz
300Hz
1kHz
3kHz
10kHz
COUNTRY
REGGAE
CLASSIC
USER1
USER2
USER3
MORE
RETURN
MEMORY

Storing your own sound modes

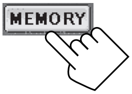
You can adjust the sound modes and store your own adjustments in memory.

1 Repeat steps *1* to *4* on the left column to select a sound mode you want to adjust.

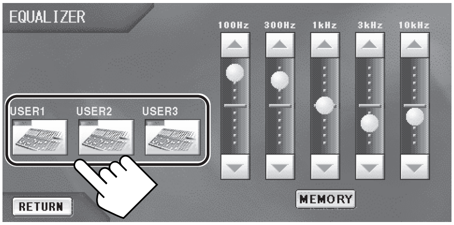
2 Make adjustments as you like.


EQUALIZER
100Hz
300Hz
1kHz
3kHz
10kHz
COUNTRY
REGGAE
CLASSIC
USER1
USER2
USER3
MORE
RETURN
MEMORY

3 After adjustment is finished...



4 Select one of the user sound modes (USER1, USER2, or USER3) you want to store into.

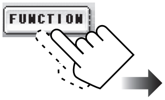

EQUALIZER
100Hz
300Hz
1kHz
3kHz
10kHz
USER1
USER2
USER3
RETURN
MEMORY

For details about the preset settings of each sound mode, see page 74.

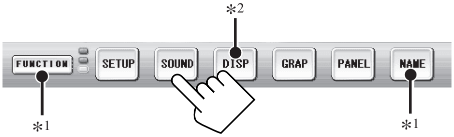
Other Sound Adjustments

Fader/Balance adjustments is only possible for the main source when using Dual Mode.

1

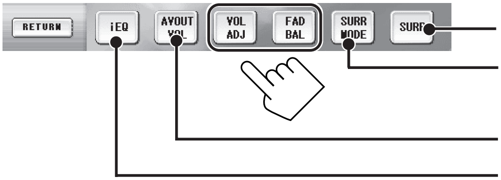


2


*2
FUNCTION
SETUP
SOUND
DISP
GRAP
PANEL
NAME
*1
*1

*1 It does not appear for some sources.
*2 It will be shaded when not available.

3


RETURN
iEQ
AVOUT VOL
VOL ADJ
FAD BAL
SURR MODE
SURR

See page 35.

See page 35.

See page 34.

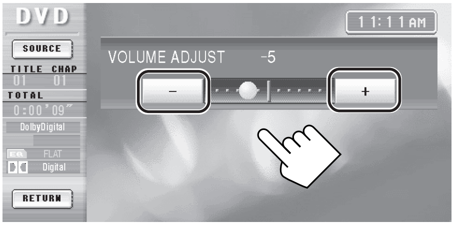
See page 39.

4 **Make adjustment as you like.**

To adjust the input level VOL ADJ

This setting is required for each source except FM.
Once you have made an adjustment, the volume level will automatically changes by adjusted level whenever you change the source.

Adjust to match the input level to the FM sound level.

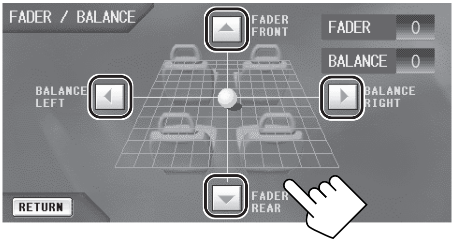

DVD
11:11 AM
SOURCE
TITLE CHAP
01 01
TOTAL
0:00'09"
DolbyDigital
EQ FLAT
Digital
RETURN
–
+

VOLUME ADJUST -5

To adjust fader and balance FAD BAL

Adjust fader—speaker output balance between the front and rear speakers.

Adjust the balance—speaker output balance between the left and right speakers.

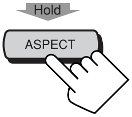

FADER / BALANCE
FADER FRONT
BALANCE LEFT
BALANCE RIGHT
FADER REAR
RETURN

FADER 0
BALANCE 0

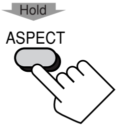
Monitor Adjustments

When no playback picture from the source is displayed, you can only adjust the brightness.

1 Display SCREEN CONTROL screen.

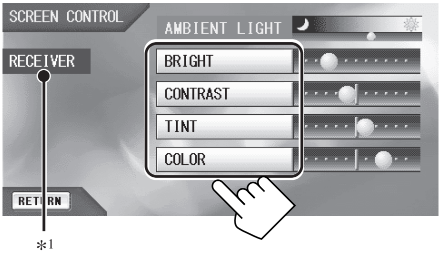

Hold
ASPECT

On the main unit

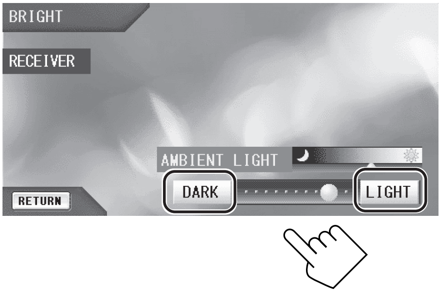

Hold
ASPECT

On the remote controller

2 Select an item to adjust.


SCREEN CONTROL
AMBIENT LIGHT
RECEIVER
BRIGHT
CONTRAST
TINT
COLOR
RETURN
*1

3 Adjust the item.


BRIGHT
RECEIVER
AMBIENT LIGHT
RETURN
DARK
LIGHT

Ex. When adjusting “BRIGHT.”

*1 When you adjust the monitor, either “RECEIVER” or “CRADLE” (see page 33) appears. It indicates where the monitor is now loaded. You cannot store your adjustment separately for “RECEIVER” or “CRADLE.”

Adjustable items

AMBIENT LIGHT

: Indicates the current ambient light level. As this level changes, the monitor adjusts the brightness automatically to match it to the current ambient light level.

BRIGHT

: Adjust the brightness separately for day time (☼) and night time (☾)—(LIGHT/ DARK).

- The monitor can memorize the difference between the ambient light level and adjusted level, and adjusts the brightness automatically, keeping the level difference memorized.

CONTRAST

: Adjust the contrast (DOWN/UP).

TINT

: Adjust the tint if the human skin color is unnatural (RED/GREEN).

COLOR

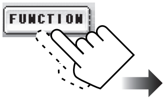
: Adjust the color of the picture—thinner (THIN) or thicker (THICK).

Initial Setup—DVD MENU

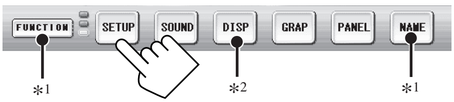
You can preset the initial disc playback conditions.

- While playing, no change can be made on the DVD Menu.

1



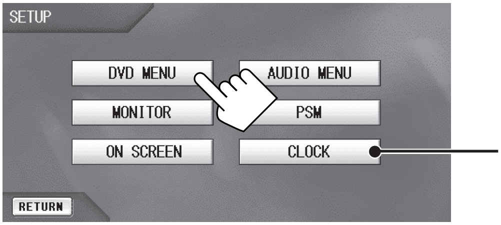
2


FUNCTION
SETUP
SOUND
DISP
GRAP
PANEL
NAME
*1
*2
*1

*1 It does not appear for some sources.

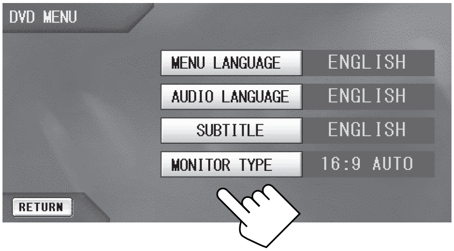
*2 It will be shaded when not available.

3


SETUP
DVD MENU
AUDIO MENU
MONITOR
PSM
ON SCREEN
CLOCK
RETURN

See page 13.

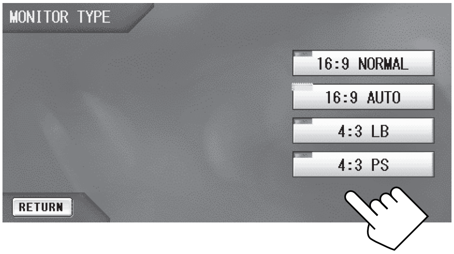
4 **Select the item you want.**


DVD MENU
RETURN

MENU LANGUAGE ENGLISH
AUDIO LANGUAGE ENGLISH
SUBTITLE ENGLISH
MONITOR TYPE 16:9 AUTO

5 **Change the setting.**

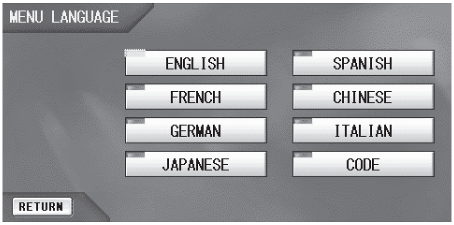
- For details, see the following pages.


MONITOR TYPE
16:9 NORMAL
16:9 AUTO
4:3 LB
4:3 PS
RETURN

Ex. When setting “MONITOR TYPE.”

MENU LANGUAGE

Select the menu language.


MENU LANGUAGE
ENGLISH
SPANISH
FRENCH
CHINESE
GERMAN
ITALIAN
JAPANESE
CODE
RETURN

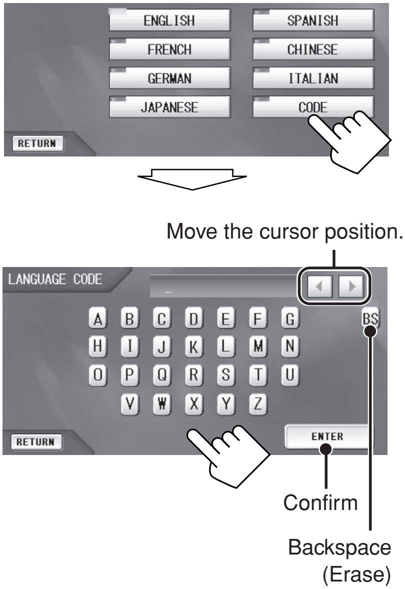
AUDIO LANGUAGE

Select the audio language.

SUBTITLE

Select the subtitle language.
To erase the subtitle, select "OFF."

If the language you want is not listed for the language menu list
See page 75 to find the language codes.


ENGLISH
SPANISH
FRENCH
CHINESE
GERMAN
ITALIAN
JAPANESE
CODE
RETURN
Move the cursor position.
LANGUAGE CODE
A B C D E F G
H I J K L M N
O P Q R S T U
V W X Y Z
BS
RETURN
ENTER
Confirm
Backspace
(Erase)

When the language you have selected is not recorded on a disc, the original language is automatically used as the initial language.

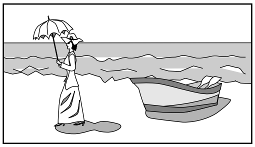
MONITOR TYPE

Select the monitor type of your TV (connected to the AV OUTPUT jacks) to play DVD Video recorded with aspect ratio of 16:9.

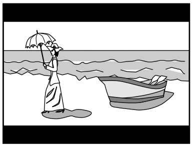
- For the removable monitor of this unit, set this to "16:9 AUTO."

- 16:9 NORMAL:
  Select when the aspect ratio of your TV is fixed to 16:9 (wide TV).
- 16:9 AUTO:
  Select when the aspect ratio of your TV is 16:9 (wide TV), and it is equipped with aspect ratio adjustment function.
- 4:3 LB (Letter Box):
  Select when the aspect ratio of your TV is 4:3 (conventional TV). While viewing a wide screen picture, the black bars appear on the top and the bottom of the screen.
- 4:3 PS (Pan Scan):
  Select when the aspect ratio of your TV is 4:3. While viewing a wide screen picture, the black bars do not appear; however, the left and right edges of the pictures will not be shown on the screen.

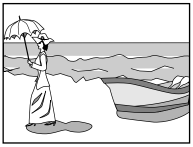
16:9



4:3 LB



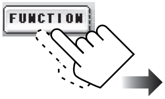
4:3 PS



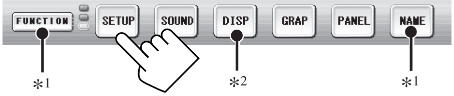
Initial Setup—MONITOR

You can preset the initial monitor conditions.

1

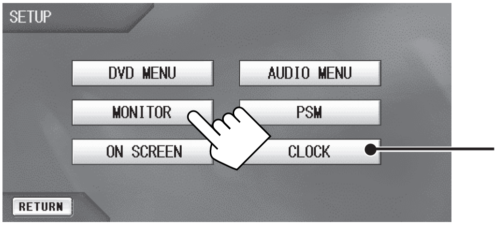


2


FUNCTION
SETUP
SOUND
DISP
GRAP
PANEL
NAME
*1
*2
*1

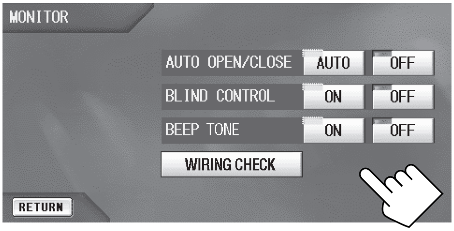
*1 It does not appear for some sources.
*2 It will be shaded when not available.

3

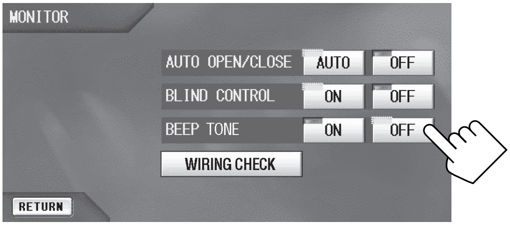

SETUP
DVD MENU
AUDIO MENU
MONITOR
PSM
ON SCREEN
CLOCK
RETURN

See page 13.

4 **Select the item you want.**


MONITOR
AUTO OPEN/CLOSE
AUTO
OFF
BLIND CONTROL
ON
OFF
BEEP TONE
ON
OFF
WIRING CHECK
RETURN

5 **Change the setting.**
- For details, see the following pages.


MONITOR
AUTO OPEN/CLOSE
AUTO
OFF
BLIND CONTROL
ON
OFF
BEEP TONE
ON
OFF
WIRING CHECK
RETURN

Ex. When setting “BEEP TONE” to “OFF.”

AUTO OPEN/CLOSE

AUTO OPEN/CLOSE
AUTO
OFF

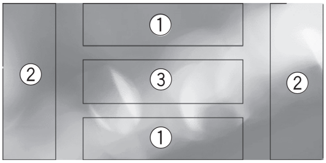
- AUTO: The monitor comes out* or goes in automatically when you turn on or off the power.
- OFF: Cancels this function.

* If you close the monitor before turning off the power, the monitor will not come out next time you turn on the power.

BLIND CONTROL

BLIND CONTROL
ON
OFF

- ON: The monitor works as Touch Panel when playing back pictures on the monitor.



– The boundaries cannot be shown on the monitor screen. This example is just to teach you where to touch on the Touch Panel when you operate on it.

① Upper/lower portions:
Adjust the volume.

② Left/right portions:
- Skips the chapters/tracks for DVD/VCD.
- Searches the chapters/tracks for DVD/VCD.
- Searches for TV channels for TV (see page 63).

③ Center portion:
Turns on and off the on-screen icons. (This also works even if “BLIND CONTROL” is set to “OFF.”)

- OFF: Cancels this function.

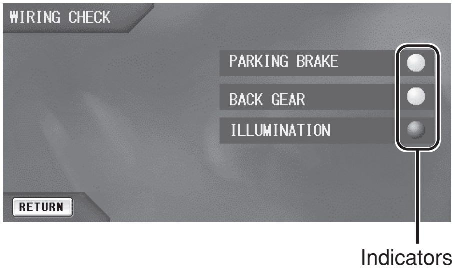
BEEP TONE

BEEP TONE
ON
OFF

- ON: Sound beeps when you operate the unit.
- OFF: Cancels this function.

WIRING CHECK

You can confirm the wiring connection is correctly done for particular functions.



- When the listed wires have been connected and electrical signals are detected through the wires, the corresponding indicators light up.

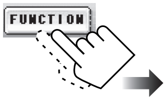
Dimmer function
To use the dimmer function, you need to connect the ILLUMINATION wire to...
- **For Auto Dimmer:** Connect it to the car headlight switch. When you turn on the car lights, dimmer starts working—Auto Dimmer
- **For Constant Dimmer:** Connect it to the car battery (constant 12V). Dimmer works whenever you turn on the power.
- **For Dimmer Off:** Connect it to nowhere.

- See also the Installation/Connection Manual (separate volume).

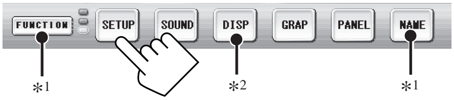
Initial Setup—ON SCREEN

You can preset the initial on-screen conditions.

1



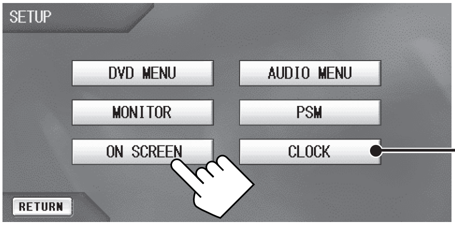
2


FUNCTION
SETUP
SOUND
DISP
GRAP
PANEL
NAME
*1
*2
*1

*1 It does not appear for some sources.

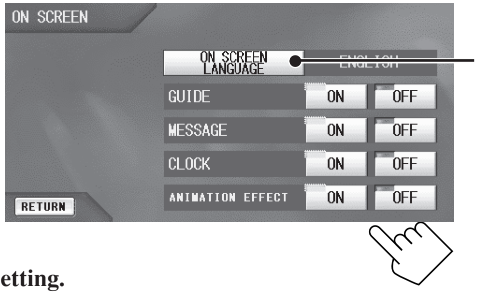
*2 It will be shaded when not available.

3


SETUP
DVD MENU
AUDIO MENU
MONITOR
PSM
ON SCREEN
CLOCK
RETURN

See page 13.

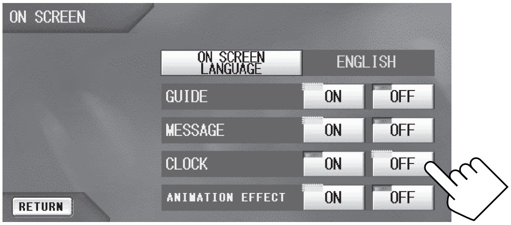
4 **Select the item you want.**


ON SCREEN
ON SCREEN LANGUAGE
ENGLISH
GUIDE
ON
OFF
MESSAGE
ON
OFF
CLOCK
ON
OFF
ANIMATION EFFECT
ON
OFF
RETURN

Language selection screen appears.

5 **Change the setting.**

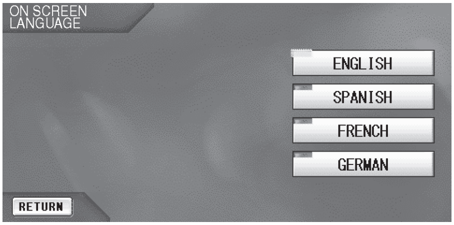
- For details, see the following pages.


ON SCREEN
ON SCREEN LANGUAGE
ENGLISH
GUIDE
ON
OFF
MESSAGE
ON
OFF
CLOCK
ON
OFF
ANIMATION EFFECT
ON
OFF
RETURN

Ex. When setting “CLOCK” to “OFF.”

ON SCREEN LANGUAGE

You can select the language for this Setup Menu and some of the messages displayed on the monitor.


ON SCREEN LANGUAGE
ENGLISH
SPANISH
FRENCH
GERMAN
RETURN

GUIDE

GUIDE
ON
OFF

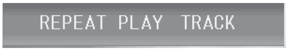
- ON: On-screen guide icons (see page 23) are displayed on the monitor while operating the built-in disc player.
  - – When the TV tuner unit (KV-C1000) is connected, its on-screen display will be shown.
- OFF: Cancels this function.

MESSAGE

MESSAGE
ON
OFF

- ON: Speaker/signal indicators (see page 69) and messages are displayed.

  Messages are displayed on the viewing window of the monitor screen...
  - – When selecting repeat mode, random mode, intro scan, etc.
  - – When starting Time Search, Title Search, Chapter Search, and Track Search.


REPEAT PLAY TRACK

Ex. One of the messages appears when selecting repeat mode.

- OFF: Cancels this function.

CLOCK

CLOCK
ON
OFF

- ON: Display the clock time on the monitor.
- OFF: Cancels this function.

ANIMATION EFFECT

ANIMATION EFFECT
ON
OFF

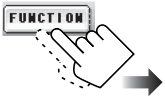
- ON: Source selection screen appears and disappears as if you open or close the curtain.
- OFF: Cancels this function.

Initial Setup—AUDIO MENU/PSM

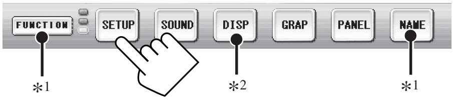
You can preset the initial audio-related conditions and Preferred Setting Modes (PSM).

- You cannot select "AUDIO MENU" when the subsidiary source operation screen is displayed on the monitor (with Dual Mode turned on; see page 33).

1



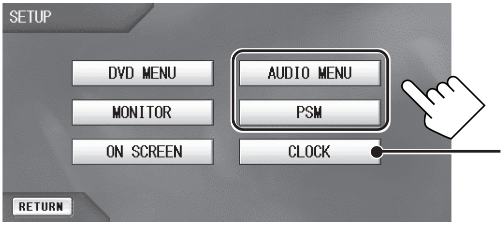
2


FUNCTION
SETUP
SOUND
DISP
GRAP
PANEL
NAME
*1
*2
*1

*1 It does not appear for some sources.

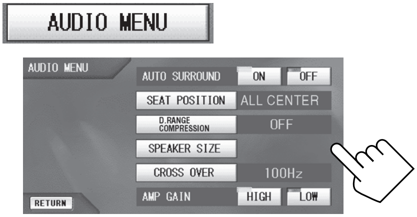
*2 It will be shaded when not available.

3


SETUP
DVD MENU
AUDIO MENU
MONITOR
PSM
ON SCREEN
CLOCK
RETURN

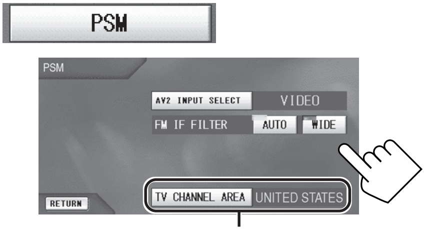
See page 13.

4 **Select the item you want.**



AUDIO MENU

AUTO SURROUND: ON / OFF
SEAT POSITION: ALL CENTER
D.RANGE COMPRESSION: OFF
SPEAKER SIZE
CROSS OVER: 100Hz
AMP GAIN: HIGH / LOW



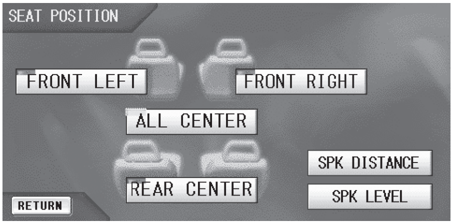
PSM

AV2 INPUT SELECT: VIDEO
FM IF FILTER: AUTO / WIDE
TV CHANNEL AREA: UNITED STATES

Appears when TV tuner unit KV-C1000 is connected.

5 **Change the setting or enter the setting screen.**

- For details, see the following pages.

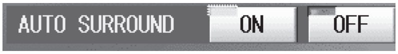

SEAT POSITION
FRONT LEFT
FRONT RIGHT
ALL CENTER
REAR CENTER
SPK DISTANCE
SPK LEVEL
RETURN

Ex. When entering "SEAT POSITION."

AUDIO MENU

AUTO SURROUND

You can activate an appropriate surround mode automatically when a loaded disc is detected.



- ON: An appropriate surround/DSP mode is automatically selected.

  While Dolby Digital multi-channel signals are detected, “Dolby Digital” is automatically selected.

  While DTS multi-channel signals are detected, “DTS” is automatically selected.

  While Dolby Surround (PL II) signals are detected, “Dolby Pro Logic II Movie” is automatically selected.

  While Linear PCM signals are detected (for DVD/CD), “Dolby Pro Logic II Music” is automatically selected.

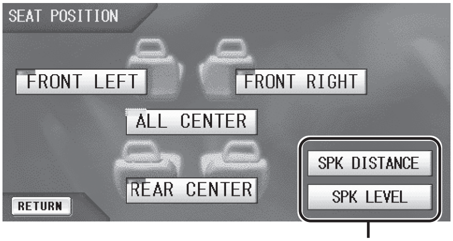
  While other signals are detected, Surround mode is defeated.
- OFF: Cancels this function.

> *Auto Surround does not work for any sources other than “DISC.” When another source is selected, the currently selected Surround or DSP mode is resumed (see page 37).*

SEAT POSITION

Select the listening seat position where you want to locate the sound image.

- Speaker distance and speaker level can be memorized for each position.

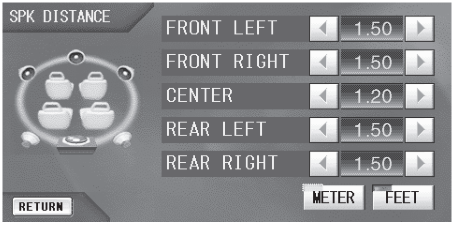


Display sub-setting screens.

FRONT LEFT:	For the front left seat.
FRONT RIGHT:	For the front right seat.
ALL CENTER:	For all front and rear seats.
REAR CENTER:	For the rear seats.

- **SPK DISTANCE** : Displays the SPK DISTANCE screen.

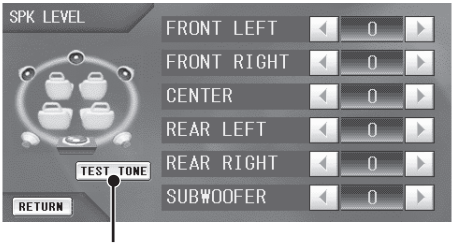
You can adjust the speaker distance from your listening position in meters or feet.



FRONT LEFT	1.50
FRONT RIGHT	1.50
CENTER	1.20
REAR LEFT	1.50
REAR RIGHT	1.50

- **SPK LEVEL** : Displays the SPK LEVEL screen.

You can adjust the speaker level referring to the test tone.



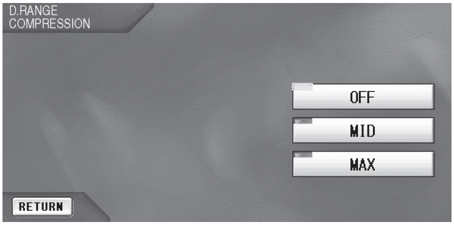
FRONT LEFT	0
FRONT RIGHT	0
CENTER	0
REAR LEFT	0
REAR RIGHT	0
SUBWOOFER	0

Emits the test tone from each speaker in sequence.
To stop, press again.

D (Dynamic). RANGE COMPRESSION

You can enjoy a powerful sound even at a low volume level by compressing dynamic range (difference between the lowest and the highest frequency sounds).

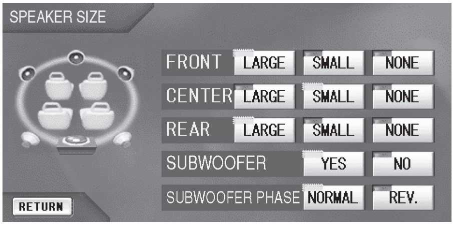
- This takes effect for all the playback sources.


D.RANGE COMPRESSION
OFF
MID
MAX
RETURN

- OFF: Select when you want to enjoy playback with its full dynamic range (no effect applied).
- MID: Select when you want to reduce the dynamic range a little.
- MAX: Select when you want to apply the compress effect fully (useful at a low volume level).

SPEAKER SIZE

Set speaker information correctly.

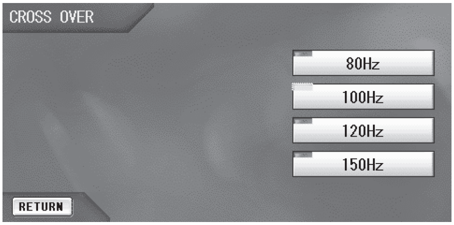

SPEAKER SIZE
FRONT
LARGE
SMALL
NONE
CENTER
LARGE
SMALL
NONE
REAR
LARGE
SMALL
NONE
SUBWOOFER
YES
NO
SUBWOOFER PHASE
NORMAL
REV.
RETURN

- FRONT/CENTER/REAR:
  Set the speaker size properly.
  - LARGE: If the cone speaker size is more than 13 cm (5-$^{1}/_{4}$ in.)
  - SMALL: If the cone speaker size is less than 13 cm (5-$^{1}/_{4}$ in.)
  - NONE: If not used.
- SUBWOOFER:
  Select “YES” (connected) or “NO” (disconnected).
- SUBWOOFER PHASE:
  Select either “NORMAL” or “REV. (reverse)” to obtain better subwoofer sounds.

- *These settings are very related to one another; therefore, one setting is changed, some other settings will be changed automatically and appropriately (see page 73).*
- *Sound comes out of the subwoofer for Dolby Pro Logic II only when either the front speakers or the center speaker is set to “SMALL.”*

CROSS OVER

You can select the crossover frequency for the small speakers used. The signals below the preset frequency level will be sent to the subwoofer (or to the “LARGE” speakers when “SUBWOOFER” is set to “NO”).


CROSS OVER
80Hz
100Hz
120Hz
150Hz
RETURN

AMP GAIN

You can change the maximum volume level of this unit. When the maximum power of the speakers is less than 50 W, select “LOW” to prevent them from being damaged.

AMP GAIN
HIGH
LOW

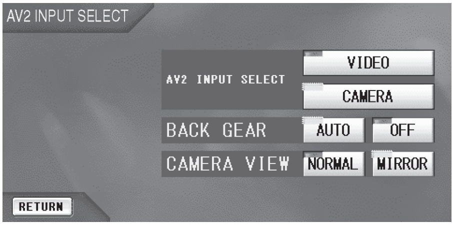
- HIGH: You can adjust the volume level from “0” to “50.”
- LOW: You can adjust the volume level from “0” to “30.”

PSM

AV2 INPUT SELECT

You can determine the use of AV INPUT 2 jacks on the hideaway unit—select either "VIDEO" or "CAMERA."

- When the playback source is "AV2," this setting cannot be changed.


AV2 INPUT SELECT

AV2 INPUT SELECT: VIDEO / CAMERA

BACK GEAR: AUTO / OFF

CAMERA VIEW: NORMAL / MIRROR

- VIDEO: The source "AV2" works for viewing the playback picture through the component connected to the AV INPUT 2 jacks.
- CAMERA: Select this when connecting the rear view camera.
  - – You can set the remaining two items (BACK GEAR/ CAMERA VIEW).

BACK GEAR

- AUTO: The rear view through the rear view camera is automatically displayed on the monitor when you change the gear to the back position.
- OFF: Cancels this function. To watch the rear view, select "AV2" for the source.

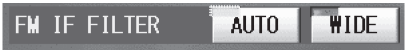
CAMERA VIEW

- NORMAL: You can watch the rear view as the camera takes.
- MIRROR: You can watch the rear view as reflected on the mirror.

While watching the camera view, you can change it to the source playback screen by touching the center portion of the monitor screen. (In this case, you cannot change the aspect ratio and make monitor adjustments—see pages 24 and 42.)

FM IF FILTER

In some areas, adjacent stations may interfere with each other. If this interference occurs, noise may be heard.

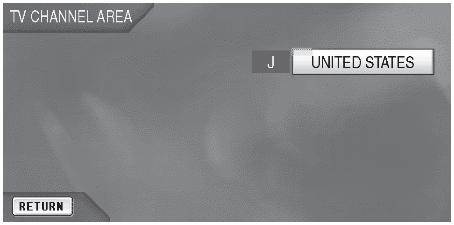

FM IF FILTER: AUTO / WIDE

- AUTO: When this type of interference occurs, this unit automatically increases the tuner selectivity so that interference noise will be reduced. (But the stereo effect will also be lost.)
- WIDE: Subject to the interference from adjacent stations, but sound quality will not be degraded and the stereo effect will not be lost.

TV CHANNEL AREA

This appears when TV tuner unit KV-C1000 is connected.

- No setting is required.


TV CHANNEL AREA

J UNITED STATES

Other Main Functions

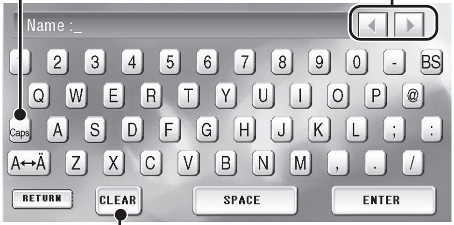
Assigning titles to the sources NAME

Roman alphabet list

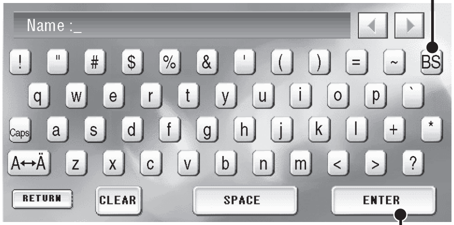
Alternates between upper and lower cases.

Moves the cursor position.

Backspace
(Erase the last entry)


Name :_
2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 - BS
Q W E R T Y U I O P @
Caps A S D F G H J K L ; :
A↔Ä Z X C V B N M , . /
RETURN CLEAR SPACE ENTER

Upper cases


Name :_
! " # $ % & ' ( ) = ~ BS
q w e r t y u i o p `
Caps a s d f g h j k l + *
A↔Ä z x c v b n m < > ?
RETURN CLEAR SPACE ENTER

Lower cases

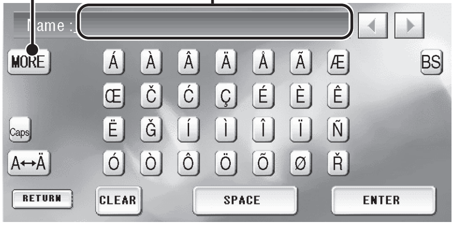
Erase all entered character.

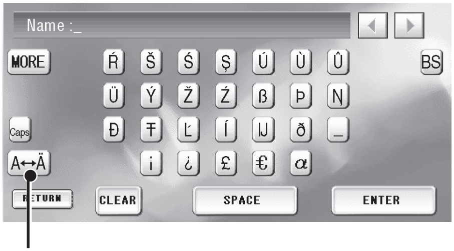
Confirm the entered name.

Accented characters: Upper cases

Display the other page of the character list of the same type.

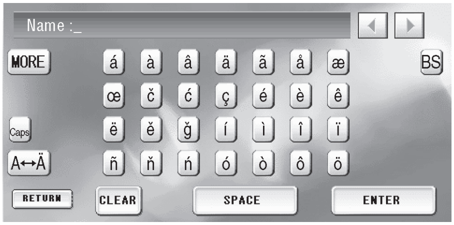
Entered name is displayed.

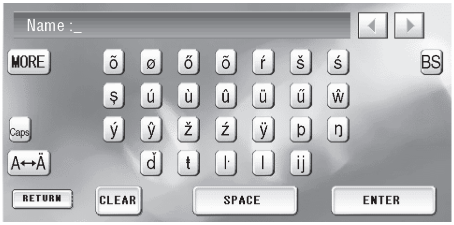

Name :
MORE Á À Â Ä Å Ã Æ BS
Œ Č Ć Ç É È Ê
Caps Ë Ğ Í Ì Î Ï Ñ
A↔Ä Ó Ò Ô Ö Õ Ø Ř
RETURN CLEAR SPACE ENTER


Name :_
MORE Ŕ Š Ś Ş Ú Ù Û BS
Ü Ý Ž Ź ß Þ Ŋ
Caps Đ Ŧ Ľ Í Ĳ ð _
A↔Ä ¡ ¿ £ € α
RETURN CLEAR SPACE ENTER

Alternates between Roman alphabet and accented letter lists.

Accented characters: Lower cases


Name :_
MORE á à â ä ã å æ BS
œ č ć ç é è ê
Caps ë ě ğ í ì î ï
A↔Ä ñ ň ń ó ò ô ö
RETURN CLEAR SPACE ENTER


Name :_
MORE õ ø ő õ ŕ š ś BS
ş ú ù û ü ű ŵ
Caps ý ŷ ž ź ÿ þ ŋ
A↔Ä ď ŧ ŀ l ĳ
RETURN CLEAR SPACE ENTER

You can assign titles to 30 FM/AM, 30 TV stations, and 40 CDs (both in this unit and in the CD changer).

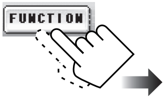
Source	Maximum character number
Stations:	10
CDs:	32

- You cannot assign a title to CD Text and MP3 discs.

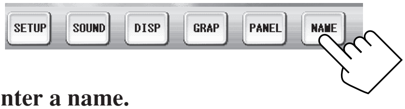
1 **Prepare the source.**

- **For FM/AM stations:** Change "FM" or "AM," then select a station.
- **For a CD in this unit:** Insert a CD.
- **For CDs in the CD changer:** Select "CD-CH," then select a disc number.
- **For TV stations:** Change "TV," then select a TV station.

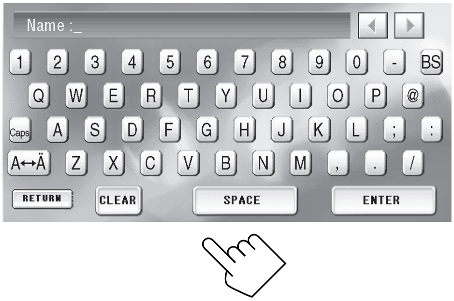
2



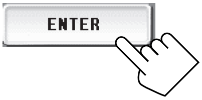
3


SETUP
SOUND
DISP
GRAP
PANEL
NAME

4 **Enter a name.**

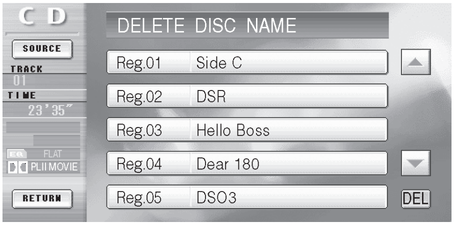

Name :_
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 - BS
Q W E R T Y U I O P @
Caps A S D F G H J K L ; :
A↔Ä Z X C V B N M , . /
RETURN
CLEAR
SPACE
ENTER

5 **Confirm.**



If the "DELETE DISC NAME" or "DELETE STATION NAME" screen appears

The internal memory is full. Delete unwanted names before assignment.

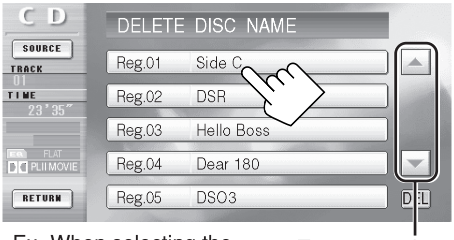

CD
SOURCE
TRACK
01
TIME
23'35"
EQ FLAT
PLII MOVIE
RETURN
DEL

DELETE DISC NAME

Reg.01 Side C
Reg.02 DSR
Reg.03 Hello Boss
Reg.04 Dear 180
Reg.05 DSO3

Ex. When trying a name to a 41st disc.

1 **Select an unwanted name.**


CD
SOURCE
TRACK
01
TIME
23'35"
EQ FLAT
PLII MOVIE
RETURN
DEL

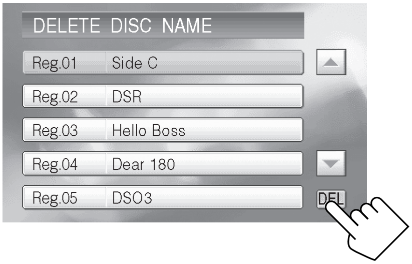
DELETE DISC NAME

Reg.01 Side C
Reg.02 DSR
Reg.03 Hello Boss
Reg.04 Dear 180
Reg.05 DSO3

Ex. When selecting the first registered name.

To next/previous page of the list

2 **Delete.**

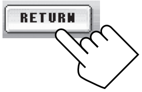


DELETE DISC NAME

Reg.01 Side C
Reg.02 DSR
Reg.03 Hello Boss
Reg.04 Dear 180
Reg.05 DSO3

3 **Repeat the above steps if you want to delete more names.**

4 **Finish.**

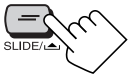


Changing the monitor position/ angle

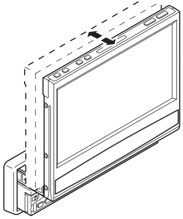
You can change the monitor position and the monitor angle.

- Once you change them, they are stored. The monitor opens at the stored position and angle, next time you eject the monitor.

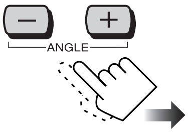
To change the monitor position

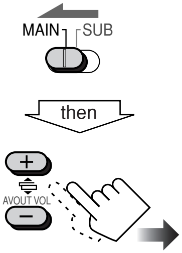


On the main unit



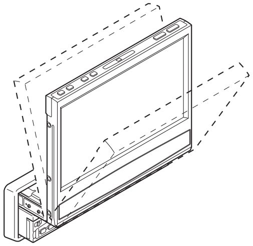
To change the monitor angle





On the main unit

On the remote controller

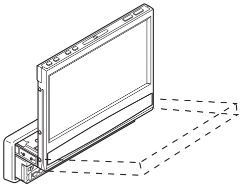


Each time you press the button, the monitor changes its angle step by step.

- By holding the button (+/–), you can easily change the angle to its extreme (+/–).

To operate the car switches behind the monitor, press OPEN once.

The monitor change its angle to the illustrated position for about 30 seconds.



To return to its previous angle within 30 seconds, press OPEN again.

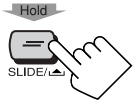
Removing the monitor

When detaching and attaching the monitor, observe the following:

- Be careful not to drop the monitor.
- Be careful not to damage the connectors.

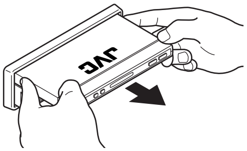
To detach the monitor

1

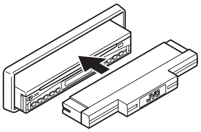


The monitor goes back into its compartment if it has been used, then comes out halfway.

2

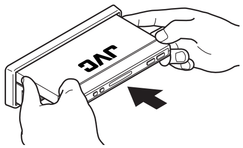


3 **Insert the blind cover to protect the internal mechanism from dust.**

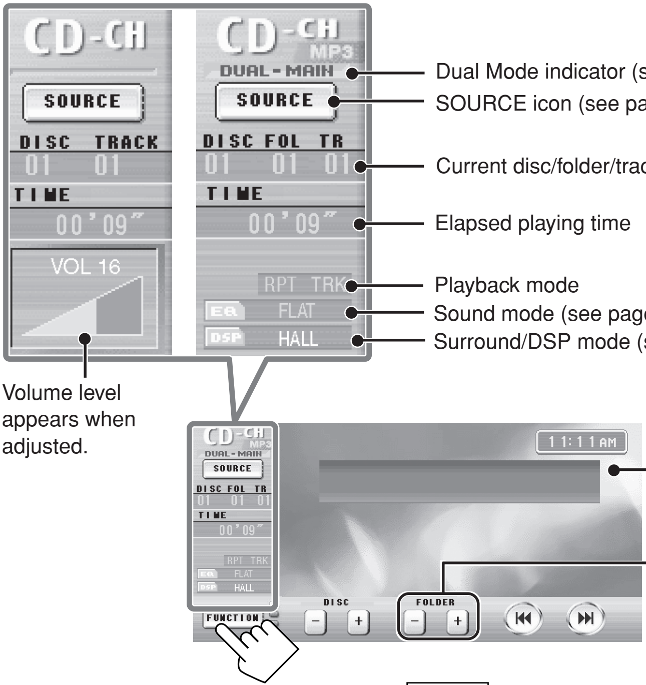


To attach the monitor

Insert the monitor into the compartment with the screen facing down.



CD Changer Operations


CD-CH
SOURCE
DISC TRACK
01 01
TIME
00'09"
VOL 16
CD-CH MP3
DUAL-MAIN
SOURCE
DISC FOL TR
01 01 01
TIME
00'09"
RPT TRK
EQ FLAT
DSP HALL
11:11AM
FUNCTION
DISC
FOLDER

Dual Mode indicator (see page 33)

SOURCE icon (see pages 14 and 33)

Current disc/folder/track no.

Elapsed playing time

Playback mode

Sound mode (see page 39)

Surround/DSP mode (see page 36)

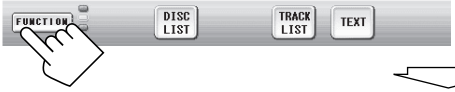
Volume level appears when adjusted.

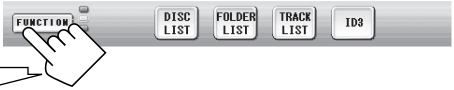
Disc text/ID3 tag information area

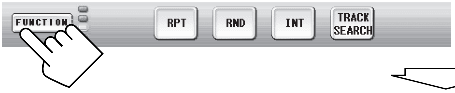
Only for MP3

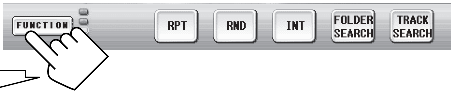
CD/CD Text

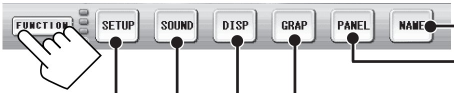
MP3


FUNCTION
DISC LIST
TRACK LIST
TEXT


FUNCTION
DISC LIST
FOLDER LIST
TRACK LIST
ID3


FUNCTION
RPT
RND
INT
TRACK SEARCH


FUNCTION
RPT
RND
INT
FOLDER SEARCH
TRACK SEARCH


FUNCTION
SETUP
SOUND
DISP
GRAP
PANEL
NAME

Only for CD: See page 53.

See page 14.

See page 14.

See page 15.

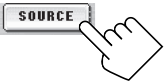
See page 39.

See pages 43 – 52.

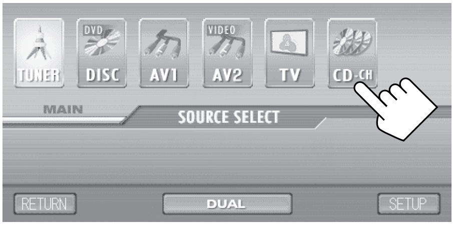
Back to the beginning

Basic CD Changer Operations

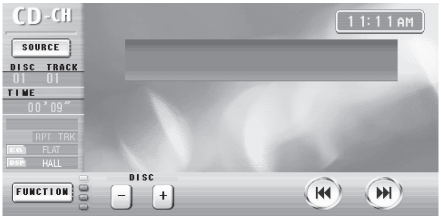
1 Select “CD-CH”



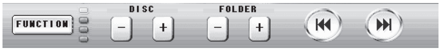
then


DVD
VIDEO
TUNER
DISC
AV1
AV2
TV
CD-CH
MAIN
SOURCE SELECT
RETURN
DUAL
SETUP

Ex. While playing CD/CD Text*


CD-CH
11:11 AM
SOURCE
DISC TRACK
01 01
TIME
00'09"
RPT TRK
EQ FLAT
DSP HALL
FUNCTION
DISC
−
+

Ex. While playing MP3


FUNCTION
DISC
−
+
FOLDER
−
+

2 Operate the disc

DISC − + : Selects the disc.

FOLDER − + : Selects the folder (only for MP3).

⏮ : Goes back to the beginning of the current track, then skips to the previous tracks if pressed repeatedly.

⏭ : Skips to the following tracks if pressed repeatedly.

* *Disc text information recorded in the CD Text can be displayed when a JVC CD Text compatible CD changer is connected.*

It is recommended to use the JVC MP3-compatible CD changer with your unit.

- You can also connect the CH-X series CD changers (except CH-X99 and CH-X100). However, they are not compatible with MP3 discs, so you cannot play back MP3 discs.
- You cannot use the KD-MK series CD changers with this unit.

Before operating your CD changer:

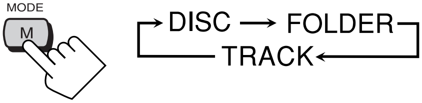
- Refer also to the Instructions supplied with your CD changer.
- If no discs are in the magazine of the CD changer or the discs are inserted upside down, “NO DISC” will appear on the monitor. If this happens, remove the magazine and set the discs correctly.
- If no magazine is loaded in the CD changer, “NO MAGAZINE” will appear on the monitor. If this happens, insert the magazine in the CD changer.

Advanced CD Changer Operations

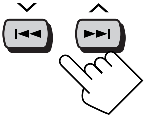
Selecting disc/folders/tracks

You can select the disc, (folder: only for MP3,) and tracks using the buttons on the main unit.

1


MODE
M
DISC
FOLDER
TRACK

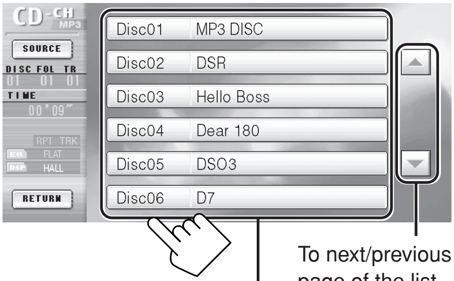
2



When using the remote controller

You can directly select the disc number by pressing the corresponding number buttons (1 – 12).

3 **Select a disc you want.**


CD-CH
MP3
SOURCE
DISC FOL TR
01 01 01
TIME
00'09"
RPT TRK
EQ FLAT
DSP HALL
RETURN

Disc01 MP3 DISC
Disc02 DSR
Disc03 Hello Boss
Disc04 Dear 180
Disc05 DSO3
Disc06 D7

To next/previous page of the list

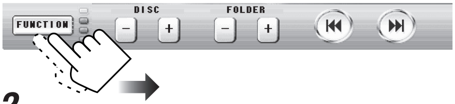
Disc names will be shown once it is recognized.

Locating a disc/folder/track using the list DISC LIST FOLDER LIST TRACK LIST

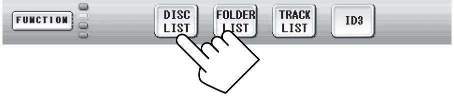
To locate a disc by displaying the disc list

Example: while playing MP3.

1


FUNCTION
DISC
FOLDER
–
+
–
+

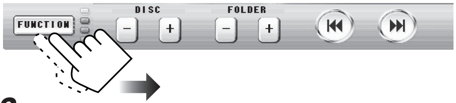
2


FUNCTION
DISC LIST
FOLDER LIST
TRACK LIST
ID3

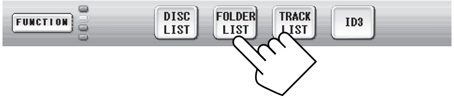
To locate a folder by displaying the folder list

- This functions only for MP3.
- Though you play back the same disc on the CD changer, its folder list may look differently from the one you display while playing it on the main unit. This happens because CD changer can also list up the folder in which no MP3 tracks are recorded.

1

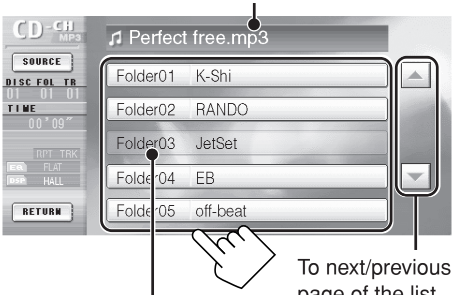

FUNCTION
DISC
FOLDER
–
+
–
+

2


FUNCTION
DISC LIST
FOLDER LIST
TRACK LIST
ID3

3 **Select a folder you want.**

Current track name or ID3 Tag


CD-CH
MP3
SOURCE
DISC FOL TR
01 01 01
TIME
00'09"
RPT TRK
EQ FLAT
DSP HALL
RETURN

Perfect free.mp3

Folder01	K-Shi
Folder02	RANDO
Folder03	JetSet
Folder04	EB
Folder05	off-beat

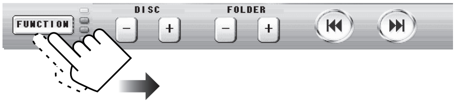
To next/previous page of the list

Shaded when no MP3 files are included. You cannot select this folder.

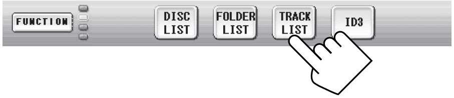
To locate a track by displaying the track list

Example: while playing MP3.

1

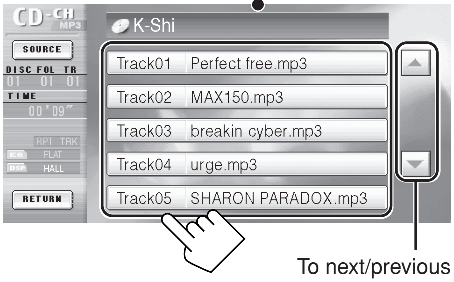

FUNCTION
DISC
FOLDER
−
+
−
+
⏮
⏭

2


FUNCTION
DISC LIST
FOLDER LIST
TRACK LIST
ID3

3 **Select a track you want.**

Current folder name or ID3 Tag (for MP3)
Disc name (for CD) or CD Text


CD-CH
MP3
SOURCE
DISC FOL TR
01 01 01
TIME
00'09"
RPT TRK
EQ FLAT
DSP HALL
RETURN

K-Shi

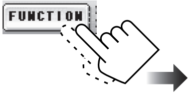
Track01	Perfect free.mp3
Track02	MAX150.mp3
Track03	breakin cyber.mp3
Track04	urge.mp3
Track05	SHARON PARADOX.mp3

To next/previous page of the list

Displaying the disc text information TEXT ID3

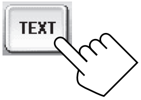
With Auto Scroll or Scroll selected, you can display the text and scroll it on the monitor if it is long and cannot be displayed at a time.

1

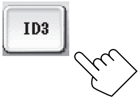


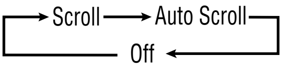
2

(For CD)



(For MP3)




Scroll
Auto Scroll
Off

• Scroll:	Text on the information area scrolls once.
• Auto Scroll:	Text on the information area scrolls every 5 seconds.
• Off:	The information area goes off (no text information will be shown).

Selecting playback modes

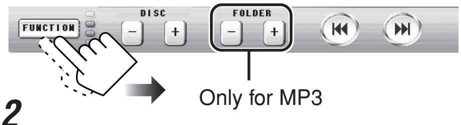
You can use only one of the following playback modes at a time—Repeat Play, Random Play, and Intro Scan.

Repeat Play

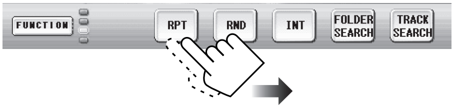
You can repeat playback.

- Repeat Play cannot be deactivated.

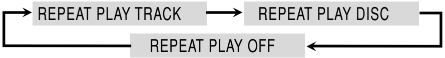
1


FUNCTION
DISC
FOLDER
Only for MP3

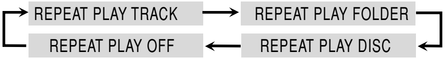
2


FUNCTION
RPT
RND
INT
FOLDER SEARCH
TRACK SEARCH

When playing CD:


REPEAT PLAY TRACK
REPEAT PLAY DISC
REPEAT PLAY OFF

When playing MP3:


REPEAT PLAY TRACK
REPEAT PLAY FOLDER
REPEAT PLAY DISC
REPEAT PLAY OFF

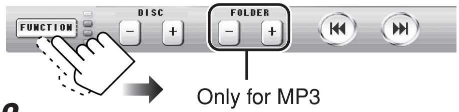
REPEAT PLAY

• TRACK:	Repeats the current track.
• FOLDER:	Repeats the current folder.
• DISC:	Repeats the current disc.
• OFF:	Repeats all loaded discs in the magazine.

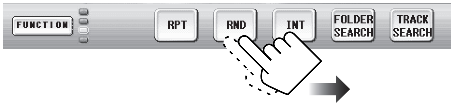
Random Play

You can play back tracks at random.

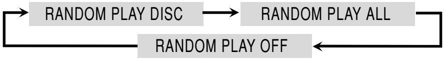
1


FUNCTION
DISC
FOLDER
Only for MP3

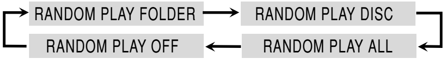
2


FUNCTION
RPT
RND
INT
FOLDER SEARCH
TRACK SEARCH

When playing CD:


RANDOM PLAY DISC
RANDOM PLAY ALL
RANDOM PLAY OFF

When playing MP3:


RANDOM PLAY FOLDER
RANDOM PLAY DISC
RANDOM PLAY ALL
RANDOM PLAY OFF

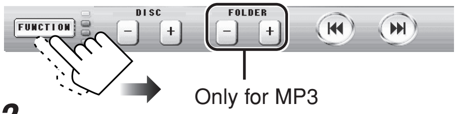
RANDOM PLAY

• FOLDER:	Plays randomly all tracks of the current folder, then moves to the next folder and so on.
• DISC:	Plays randomly all tracks on the current disc.
• ALL:	Plays randomly all tracks of all discs in the magazine.
• OFF:	Cancels Random Play.

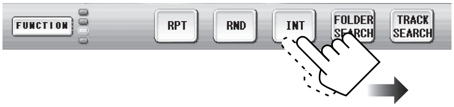
Intro Scan INT

You can play back the first 15 seconds of each track sequentially.

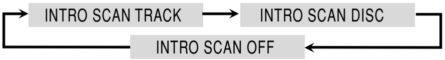
1


FUNCTION
DISC
FOLDER
Only for MP3

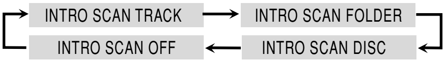
2


FUNCTION
RPT
RND
INT
FOLDER SEARCH
TRACK SEARCH

When playing CD:


INTRO SCAN TRACK
INTRO SCAN DISC
INTRO SCAN OFF

When playing MP3:


INTRO SCAN TRACK
INTRO SCAN FOLDER
INTRO SCAN DISC
INTRO SCAN OFF

INTRO SCAN

- TRACK: Plays the beginning of all tracks of the current disc.
- FOLDER: Plays the first tracks of all folders of the current disc (only for MP3).
- DISC: Plays the first tracks of all discs in the magazine.
- OFF: Cancels Intro Scan.

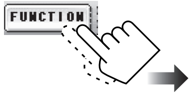
Searching for songs TRACK SEARCH FOLDER SEARCH

You can use search functions to find your favorite tracks (for CD/MP3) and folders (for MP3).

Folder/Track Search

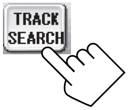
You can select a specific track (for CD/MP3) or folder (for MP3).

1

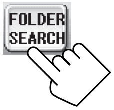


2

(For CD/MP3)

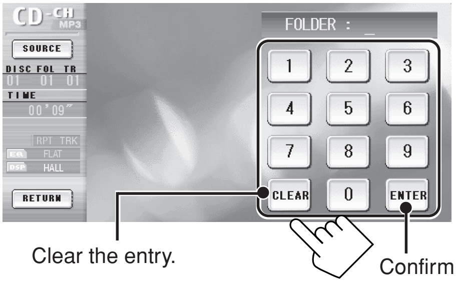

TRACK SEARCH

(For MP3)


FOLDER SEARCH

3 **Enter a number, then confirm.**

Ex. when playing MP3:

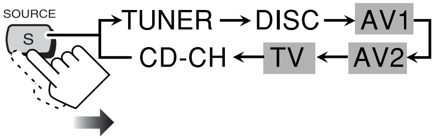

CD-CH MP3
SOURCE
DISC FOL TR
01 01 01
TIME
00'09"
RPT TRK
EQ FLAT
DSP HALL
RETURN
FOLDER : _
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
CLEAR
0
ENTER
Clear the entry.
Confirm

External Component Operations

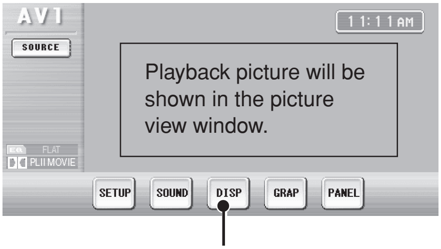
You can connect two video components as the playback components and an optional TV tuner unit (KV-C1000).

- When you connect the video camera as a rear view camera to the AV INPUT 2 jacks to guide you to back the car, set the usage of the AV INPUT 2 jacks correctly (see page 52).
- For connections, see the Installation/Connection Manual (separate volume).

1 Select the external source


SOURCE
S
TUNER
DISC
AV1
AV2
TV
CD-CH

- **AV1**: To watch the playback pictures through the component connected to the AV INPUT 1 jacks.
- **AV2**: To watch the playback pictures through the component connected to the AV INPUT 2 jacks.

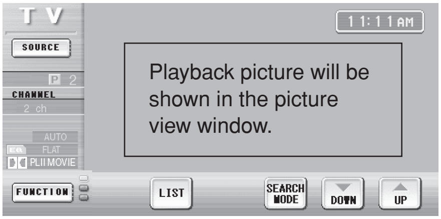

AV1
SOURCE
11:11 AM
FLAT
PLII MOVIE
SETUP
SOUND
DISP
GRAP
PANEL

Playback picture will be shown in the picture view window.

Not available while viewing the playback picture.

Ex. When “AV1” is selected.

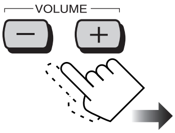
- **TV**: To watch TV programs through the TV tuner unit (KV-C1000).


TV
SOURCE
P 2
CHANNEL
2 ch
AUTO
FLAT
PLII MOVIE
FUNCTION
11:11 AM
LIST
SEARCH MODE
DOWN
UP

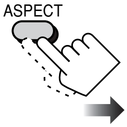
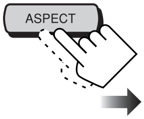
Playback picture will be shown in the picture view window.

To use the TV tuner unit (KV-C1000), see the following pages.

2 Adjust the volume

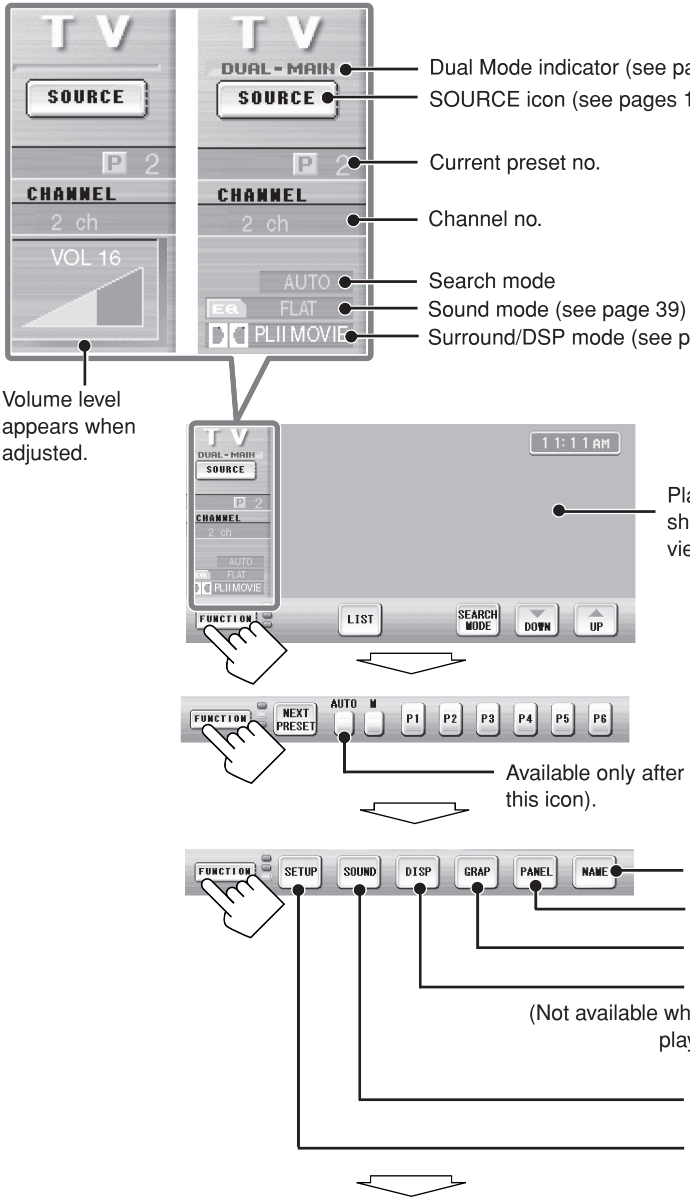


To change the aspect ratio...

On the remote controller	On the main unit
	

- For details, see page 24.
  When you selected “CAMERA” for “AV2 INPUT” (see page 52), you cannot change the aspect ratio of AV2.

TV Tuner Operations


TV
SOURCE
P 2
CHANNEL
2 ch
VOL 16
DUAL-MAIN
AUTO
EQ FLAT
PLII MOVIE
11:11 AM
FUNCTION
LIST
SEARCH MODE
DOWN
UP
NEXT PRESET
AUTO
M
P1
P2
P3
P4
P5
P6
SETUP
SOUND
DISP
GRAP
PANEL
NAME

Dual Mode indicator (see page 33)

SOURCE icon (see pages 14 and 33)

Current preset no.

Channel no.

Search mode

Sound mode (see page 39)

Surround/DSP mode (see page 36)

Volume level appears when adjusted.

Playback picture will be shown in the picture view window.

Available only after pressing “M” (next to this icon).

See page 53.

See page 14.

See page 14.

See page 15.
(Not available while viewing the playback picture.)

See page 39.

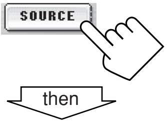
See pages 43 – 52.

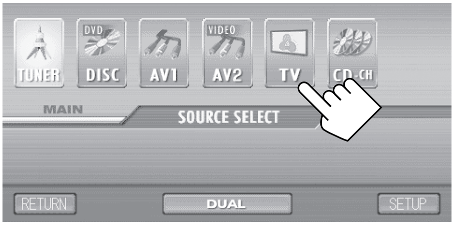
Back to the beginning

Watching TV programs

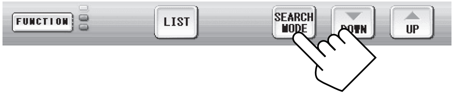
- To tune in to a station using Preset Search, first store your favorite TV stations into memory (12 stations).

1 Select TV


SOURCE
then

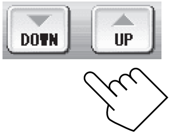

DVD
VIDEO
TUNER
DISC
AV1
AV2
TV
CD-CH
MAIN
SOURCE SELECT
RETURN
DUAL
SETUP

2 Select Search Mode


FUNCTION
LIST
SEARCH MODE
DOWN
UP

AUTO:	To start Auto Search.
MANUAL:	To start Manual Search.
PRESET:	To select preset station numbers (only possible after storing stations in memory).

3 Tune in to a TV station



- **For Auto Search,** press either icon once. "Auto Search" begins.
  When a station is received, searching stops.
- **For Manual Search,** press either icon repeatedly (or hold) until a station you want is selected.
- **For Preset Search,** press either icon repeatedly until a preset number you want is selected.

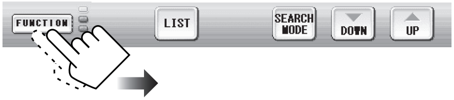
Storing stations in memory

You can preset 12 TV stations.

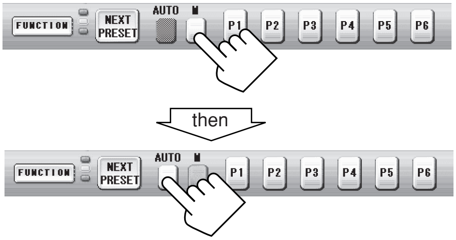
- To tune into a preset station, see "Watching TV programs."

TV station automatic presetting—Auto Memory

1


FUNCTION
LIST
SEARCH MODE
DOWN
UP

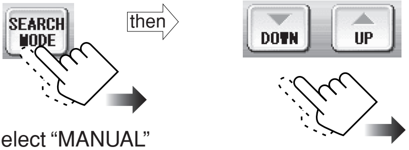
2 **Start Auto Memory.**


FUNCTION
NEXT PRESET
AUTO
M
P1
P2
P3
P4
P5
P6
then
FUNCTION
NEXT PRESET
AUTO
M
P1
P2
P3
P4
P5
P6

Local TV stations with the strongest signals are searched and stored automatically.

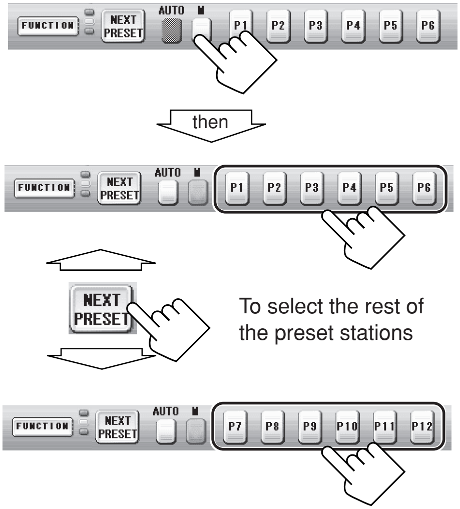
Manual presetting

1 **Tune into a TV station.**


SEARCH MODE
then
DOWN
UP

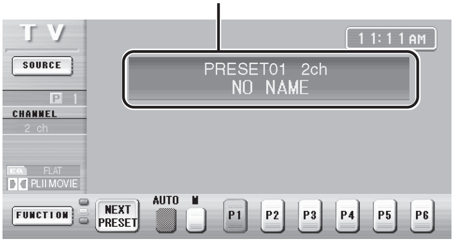
Select “MANUAL” (or “AUTO”).

2 **Store the station into a preset number.**


FUNCTION
NEXT PRESET
AUTO
M
P1
P2
P3
P4
P5
P6
then
NEXT PRESET
P7
P8
P9
P10
P11
P12

To select the rest of the preset stations

Preset station information will be displayed.

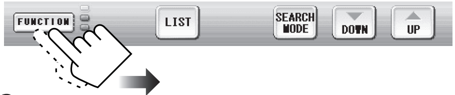

T V
SOURCE
P 1
CHANNEL
2 ch
EQ FLAT
PLII MOVIE
11:11 AM
FUNCTION
NEXT PRESET
AUTO
M
P1
P2
P3
P4
P5
P6

PRESET01 2ch
NO NAME

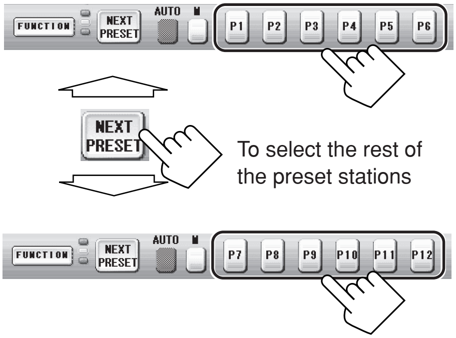
To tune in to a preset station

- See also “Watching TV programs” on page 64.

1


FUNCTION
LIST
SEARCH MODE
DOWN
UP

2 **Select a preset number.**


FUNCTION
NEXT PRESET
AUTO
M
P1
P2
P3
P4
P5
P6
NEXT PRESET
P7
P8
P9
P10
P11
P12

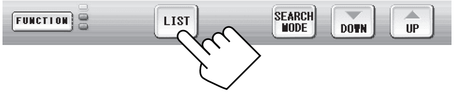
To select the rest of the preset stations

Displaying the preset list LIST

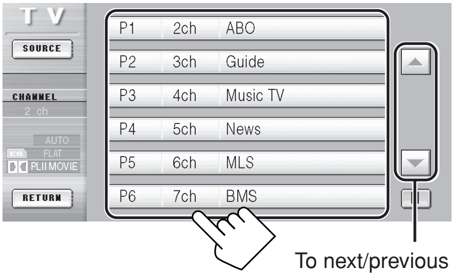
You can store and select the preset station using the preset list on the monitor screen.

To select a preset station using the preset list

1


FUNCTION
LIST
SEARCH MODE
DOWN
UP

2


T V
SOURCE
CHANNEL
2 ch
AUTO
FLAT
PLII MOVIE
RETURN

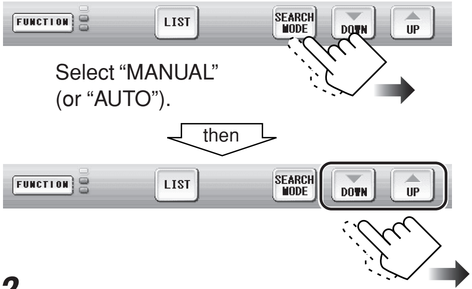
P1	2ch	ABO
P2	3ch	Guide
P3	4ch	Music TV
P4	5ch	News
P5	6ch	MLS
P6	7ch	BMS

To next/previous page of the list

- Preset numbers, channel numbers and assigned names (see page 53) of the preset TV stations are shown on the list.

To store a station using the preset list

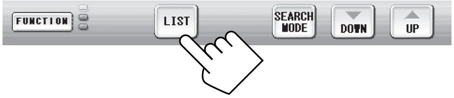
1 **Tune into a TV station.**


FUNCTION
LIST
SEARCH MODE
DOWN
UP
FUNCTION
LIST
SEARCH MODE
DOWN
UP

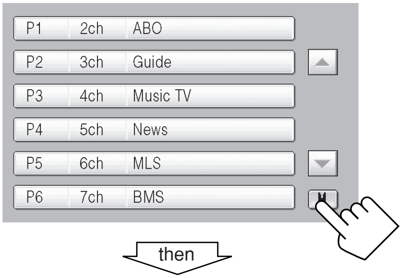
Select "MANUAL" (or "AUTO").

then

2

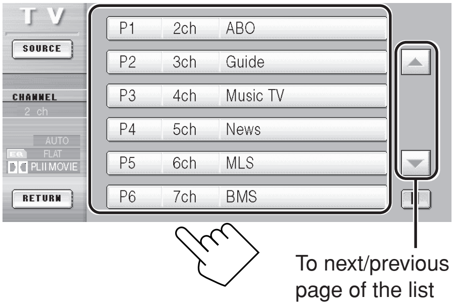

FUNCTION
LIST
SEARCH MODE
DOWN
UP

3 **Store the station into a preset number.**



P1	2ch	ABO
P2	3ch	Guide
P3	4ch	Music TV
P4	5ch	News
P5	6ch	MLS
P6	7ch	BMS

then


T V
SOURCE
CHANNEL
2 ch
AUTO
FLAT
PLII MOVIE
RETURN

P1	2ch	ABO
P2	3ch	Guide
P3	4ch	Music TV
P4	5ch	News
P5	6ch	MLS
P6	7ch	BMS

To next/previous page of the list

Maintenance

How to clean the monitor

When removing stains or dust on the surface, turn off the monitor, then wipe with dry soft cloth.

- Be careful not to scratch the surface when wiping it.
- Do not use the following materials to clean the monitor:
  – Wet cloth
  – Volatile substance such as benzine and thinner
  – Acid detergent, alkaline detergent, and detergent composed of organic substance
- When using chemically processed duster, read its precautions carefully.

How to clean the connectors

Frequent detachment of the monitor will deteriorate the connectors.

To minimize this possibility, periodically wipe the connectors with a cotton swab or cloth moistened with alcohol, being careful not to damage the connectors.

- Attach the blind cover to the main unit whenever the monitor is removed to protect the internal mechanism from dust.

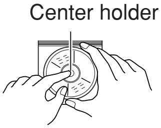
Moisture condensation

Moisture may condense on the lens inside the disc player in the following cases:

- After starting the heater in the car.
- If it becomes very humid inside the car.

Should this occur, the disc player may malfunction. In this case, eject the disc and leave the unit turned on for a few hours until the moisture evaporates.

How to handle discs



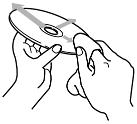
When removing a disc from its case, press down the center holder of the case and lift the disc out, holding it by the edges.

- Always hold the disc by the edges. Do not touch its recording surface.

When storing a disc into its case, gently insert the disc around the center holder (with the printed surface facing up).

- Make sure to store discs into the cases after use.

To keep discs clean

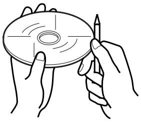


A dirty disc may not play correctly.

If a disc does become dirty, wipe it with a soft cloth in a straight line from center to edge.

- Do not use any solvent (for example, conventional record cleaner, spray, thinner, benzine, etc.) to clean discs.

To play new discs



New discs may have some rough spots around the inner and outer edges. If such a disc is used, this unit may reject the disc.

To remove these rough spots, rub the edges with a pencil or ball-point pen, etc.

More about This Receiver

Operation Methods

- Touch Panel screen goes off if no operations are made on it for about 30 seconds while viewing the playback picture.

Basic Operations

Turning off the power

- If you turn off the power while listening to a disc, disc play will start automatically, next time you turn on the power.

Changing the graphic screen

- If you select one of the graphic screens while playing a video source, no playback picture can be viewed.
- When you change the playback source to one of the video sources, the currently selected graphic screen is temporarily canceled in order to show the playback picture on the picture view window.

Radio Operations

Storing stations in memory

- When SSM is carried out for a band...
  - All stations previously stored for the band are erased and stations are stored newly.
  - Received stations are preset in No.1 (lowest frequency) to No.6 (highest frequency). When SSM is over, the station stored in No.1 will be automatically tuned in.
- When storing a station manually, a previously preset station is erased when a new station is stored in the same preset number.
- Preset stations are erased when the power supply to the memory circuit is interrupted (for example, during battery replacement). If this occurs, preset the stations again.

Basic Disc Operations

General

- In this manual, words “track” and “file” are interchangeably used when referring to MP3 files and their file names.
- When a disc has been already loaded, selecting “DISC” for the playback source starts disc play.

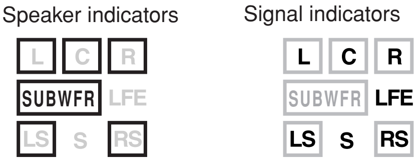
Inserting a disc

- When a disc is inserted upside down, the disc automatically ejects.

Playing a disc

- After loading an MP3 disc, this unit will take a long readout time. This readout time varies among the disc depending on its recording conditions.
- When playing an MP3 disc, sound interruption or skipping may occur. This is caused by the disc played back—its recording condition (missing data, etc.)
- When playing a DVD/VCD, no sound comes out during x5, x10, x20, and x60* Search (* only for DVD).
- Reverse Search stops automatically when it reaches the beginning of the disc. Playback resumes at normal speed.
- For some DVD/VCDs, changing the subtitle language and audio language (or audio channel) without using the disc menu is prohibited.
- One Touch Replay works only within the same title. (For some DVDs, this function does not work.)
- While zoomed in, the picture may look coarse.
- This unit cannot play back the files which have the data such as WMA, WAVE, ATRAC3, MPEG 2.5, etc.

- The speaker/signal indicators appear in the following cases (only for DVD/CD):
  - – When a different type of the digital signal is detected, or
  - – When you start playback or resume playback from pause.



Speaker indicators

Signal indicators

  - – The speaker indicators—frames of “L,” “C,” “R,” “LS,” and “RS” light up, when the corresponding speakers are set to “LARGE” or “SMALL” (see page 51). Sounds come out of the speakers whose speaker indicators is lit on the display.
  - – The SUBWFR indicator lights up when “SUBWOOFER” is set to “YES” (see page 51).
  - – The signal indicators changes its color from white to yellow to indicate the incoming signals—L (front left) / R (front right) / C (center) / LFE (low frequency effect) / LS (left surround) / RS (right surround) / S (monaural surround).

Changing the source

- If you change the source, playback also stops (without ejecting the disc).
  Next time you select “DISC” for the playback source, disc play will start automatically.

Stopping play

- Except for MP3 discs: This unit can remember the end point (until the disc is ejected), and when you start playback again, playback begins from where it has been stopped (Resume play).
- For MP3 discs: This unit can remember the last playing track (until the disc is ejected), and when you start playback again, playback begins from the beginning of the same track.

Ejecting a disc

- If the ejected disc is not removed within 15 seconds, the disc is automatically inserted again into the loading slot to prevent it from dust. (Disc will not play this time.)

Displaying the disc text information

- For MP3: If no ID3 tag is recorded, folder and track names are displayed instead.

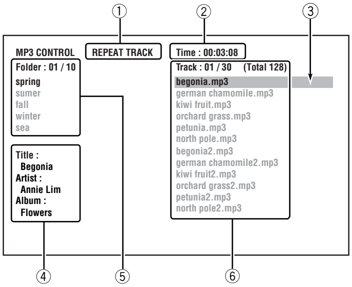
Notes on Recordable (R) and Rewritable (RW) discs

- Use only “finalized” discs.
- For DVD-R/DVD-RW: This unit can play back only discs recorded in the DVD-Video format. (Discs recorded in the DVD-VR format cannot be played.)
- For CD-R/CD-RW: This unit can play back only audio CD (CD-DA) files if a disc includes both audio CD (CD-DA) files and MP3 files.
- This unit can play back multi-session discs; however, unclosed sessions will be skipped while playing.
- Some discs may not play back on this unit because of their disc characteristics, and for the following causes:
  - – Discs are dirty or scratched.
  - – Discs are kept in a place where temperature becomes extremely high.
  - – Moisture condensation on the lens inside the unit.
  - – The pickup lens inside the unit is dirty.
  - – Discs on which the files are written with “Packet Write” method.
  - – There are improper recording conditions (missing data, etc.) or media conditions (stain, scratch, warp, etc.)
- Rewritable discs may require a longer readout time since the reflectance of rewritable discs is lower than that of regular DVD/CDs.
- Do not use following discs:
  - – Discs with stickers, labels, or protective seal stuck to the surface.
  - – Discs on which labels can be directly printed by an ink jet printer.

  Using these discs under high temperatures or high humidity may cause malfunctions or damage to discs.

Notes on MP3 files

- This unit can play back MP3 files only with the extension code <.mp3> (regardless of the letter case—upper/lower).
- This unit cannot play back the files encoded in the following formats—MP3i, MP3 PRO, Layer 1, Layer 2 format.
- This unit can show the names of albums, artists (performer), and tracks of ID3 Tag (Version 1.0 and 1.1).
- This unit can show up to 64 characters on the monitor screen.
- This unit can handle only one-byte characters. Any other characters cannot be correctly displayed.
- This unit can play back MP3 files meeting the conditions below
  - – Bit rate: 8 kbps – 320 kbps
  - – Sampling frequency:
    48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz (for MPEG-1)
    24 kHz, 22.05 kHz, 16 kHz (for MPEG-2)
  - – Disc format:
    ISO 9660 Level 1/ Level 2, Romeo, Joliet, Windows long file name
- The maximum number of characters for file/folder names varies among the disc format used (includes 4 extension characters—<.mp3>).
  - – ISO 9660 Level 1: 12
  - – ISO 9660 Level 2: 31
  - – Romeo/Windows long file name: 128
  - – Joliet: 64
- This unit can recognize 99 folders and 150 files in each folder, which recorded in 10 hierarchies.
- This unit can play back the files recorded in VBR (variable bit rate).
  The files recorded in VBR have a discrepancy in elapsed time display, and do not show the actual elapsed time. Especially, after performing the search function, this difference becomes noticeable.
- Playlist is not available on this unit.
- The search function works but search speed is not constant during search.
- When an optional monitor is connected to the AV OUTPUT terminal, you can view the following MP3 CONTROL screen on the optional monitor.



MP3 CONTROL
REPEAT TRACK
Time : 00:03:08
Folder : 01 / 10
spring
sumer
fall
winter
sea
Title :
Begonia
Artist :
Annie Lim
Album :
Flowers
Track : 01 / 30 (Total 128)
begonia.mp3
german chamomile.mp3
kiwi fruit.mp3
orchard grass.mp3
petunia.mp3
north pole.mp3
begonia2.mp3
german chamomile2.mp3
kiwi fruit2.mp3
orchard grass2.mp3
petunia2.mp3
north pole2.mp3

① Currently activated play mode
② Elapsed playing time of the current track
③ Cursor (highlighted position): Indicates your selection.
④ ID3 Tag information
⑤ Folder column—folder names
(Ex. The first folder is selected out of 10 folders)
  - Only 5 folders can be listed at a time.

⑥ Track column—track names
(Ex. The first track is selected out of 30 tracks in the current folder. 128 tracks are included in the disc)
  - Only 12 tracks can be listed at a time.
  - Only the first 32 characters can be displayed on the monitor.

– While playing a CD, the current track and playback mode information is displayed on the optional monitor.

Dual Mode Operations

Adjusting AV OUTPUT volume

- This adjustment does not affect the volume level of the monitor inserted into the optional cradle (KV-CR100).

Surround Mode Operations

- Dolby Digital disc is not always encoded as multi-channel source. If it is not multi-channel encoded, “Dolby Digital” cannot be selected for surround mode.

Sound Mode (iEQ) Operations

- If you do not want to store your current adjustment, but only to apply the adjustment to the current playback source, press RETURN on the monitor screen to go back to the operation screen of the current source. Adjustment you made remains effective until you select a sound mode.

Other Sound Adjustments

- If fader or balance has been set close to its extreme, appropriate surround/DSP effect may not be obtained.
- If you are using a two-speaker system, set the fader level to “0.”
- You cannot adjust the input level—Volume Adjustment—of the FM stations. If the source is FM, Volume Adjustment will not be used.

Monitor Adjustments

- You may not able to adjust the brightness in the following case:
  - You cannot make it brighter when the ambient light is very bright.
  - You cannot make it darker when the ambient light is very dark.

Initial Setup—DVD MENU

MENU/AUDIO/SUBTITLE LANGUAGE

- When the language you have selected is not recorded on a disc, the original language is automatically used as the initial language. In addition, for some discs, the initial languages settings will not work as you set due to their internal disc programming.
- Language setting change cannot be effective while playing (or pausing). After you change the language setting, eject the disc and insert it (or another disc) again so that your setting takes effect.

MONITOR TYPE

- When you select “16:9 NORMAL” for a picture whose aspect ratio is 4:3, the picture slightly changes due to the process for converting the picture width.
- Even if “4:3 PS” is selected, the screen size may become “4:3 LB” with some DVDs. This depends on how they are recorded.

Initial Setup—AUDIO MENU/PSM

- If you change the “**AMP GAIN**” setting from “HIGH” to “LOW” while the volume level is set higher than “30,” the unit automatically changes the volume level to “30.”

Other Main Functions

Assigning titles to the sources

- When the CD changer is connected, you can assign titles to CDs in the CD changer. These titles can also be shown on the display if you insert the CDs in this unit.

TV Tuner Operations

Storing stations in memory

- When Auto Memory is carried out...
  - All TV stations previously stored are erased and TV stations are stored newly.
  - Received TV stations are preset in No.1 (lowest frequency) to No.12 (highest frequency). When Auto Memory is over, the TV station stored in No.1 will be automatically tuned in.
- When storing a TV station manually, a previously preset TV station is erased when a new TV station is stored in the same preset number.
- Preset TV stations are erased when the power supply to the memory circuit is interrupted (for example, during battery replacement). If this occurs, preset the stations again.

Troubleshooting

What appears to be trouble is not always serious. Check the following points before calling a service center.

General

- **Sound is sometimes interrupted.**
  ⇨ You are driving on rough roads.
  Stop playback while driving on rough roads.
  ⇨ Disc is scratched.
- **Sound cannot be heard from the speakers.**
  ⇨ Connections are incorrect.
- **No sound comes out of the subwoofer (though it is activated—set to "YES").**
  ⇨ If Pro Logic II is activated with the front/center/rear speaker size all set to "LARGE," no sound comes out.
- **Surround/DSP mode is defeated and cannot be activated.**
  ⇨ It is fixed to "DEFEAT" if only rear speakers are activated (set to "LARGE" or "SMALL").

FM/AM broadcast

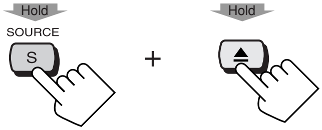
- **SSM automatic presetting does not work.**
  ⇨ Signals are too weak. Store stations manually.
- **Static noise is generated while listening to the radio.**
  ⇨ The antenna is not connected firmly.

Disc playback—DVD/VCD

- **You cannot watch the playback pictures on the additionally purchased monitor (KV-MAV7001) in the optional cradle (KV-CR100).**
  ⇨ If the original monitor is not removed from the main unit, you cannot watch the playback picture while driving.
- **You cannot change the aspect ratio.**
  ⇨ While the GUI operation is in use, you cannot change the aspect ratio.
- **The left and right edges of the picture are missing on the screen.**
  ⇨ "4:3 PS" is selected when viewing on a conventional TV (aspect ratio 4:3). Select "4:3 LB."
- **Audio language or subtitle language cannot be changed.**
  ⇨ For some DVDs and VCDs, changing the language without using the disc menu is prohibited.

Disc playback—CD/CD-R/CD-RW

- **Sounds are skipped or playback stops suddenly.**
  ⇨ Disc is warped or sticker on the disc comes off. Do not play such a disc.
- **Disc cannot be played back.**
  ⇨ Disc is inserted upside down.
- **Tracks on the CD-R/CD-RW cannot be skipped.**
  ⇨ CD-R/CD-RW is not finalized.
- **Disc cannot be ejected.**
- **Disc is not recognized.**
  ⇨ Disc is locked. Unlock the disc (see page 24).
  ⇨ The main unit may function incorrectly. Press SOURCE and ⏏ at the same time for more than 2 seconds to eject the disc.



Disc playback—MP3

- **Disc cannot be played back.**
  ⇨ MP3 tracks do not have the extension code—<.mp3>.
  ⇨ MP3 tracks are not recorded in the format compliant with ISO 9660 Level 1, ISO 9660 Level 2, Romeo, or Joliet.
- **Noise is generated.**
  ⇨ The current track is not an MP3 file (although it has the extension code—<.mp3>).
- **Elapsed playing time is not correct.**
  ⇨ This sometimes occurs during play. This is caused by how the tracks are recorded on the disc.
- **Correct characters are not displayed.**
  ⇨ This unit can only display a limited number of special characters (see the tables on page 53).

Initial setup—AUDIO MENU/PSM

- **“SPEAKER SIZE” settings change.**
  ⇨ Speaker size settings are very much related to one another. For example, if you set the FRONT speakers to “NONE,” you cannot select “NONE” for the REAR speakers.
- **Rear view does not appear when you change the gear lever to the back position.**
  ⇨ “BACK GEAR” is to “OFF.” In this case, you have to select “AV2” for the source to watch the rear view.
  ⇨ “BACK GEAR” is to “AUTO,” but the back gear wire is not connected to the back lamp. To check whether the wiring is correctly done or not, see page 46.

TV tuner operations

- **TV tuner unit does not work at all.**
  ⇨ Press the reset button of the TV tuner unit.
- **“TV IS NOT CONNECTED” appears on the monitor.**
  ⇨ TV tuner unit is disconnected. Connect it again.
- **Auto Memory does not work.**
  ⇨ Signals are too weak. Store TV stations manually.
- **The TV’s main power does not shut off automatically when you change the source from TV to another.**
  ⇨ TV is connected to the TV tuner unit. Connect it to the hideaway unit. Remember that audio/video signals are always transmitted to the TV while it is on.
- **“RESET 8” appears on the display of the main unit.**
  ⇨ This unit is not connected to a TV tuner unit correctly. Connect this unit and the TV tuner unit correctly and press the reset button of the TV tuner unit.

CD changer operations

- **“CD CHANGER IS NOT CONNECTED” appears on the monitor.**
  ⇨ CD changer is disconnected. Connect it again.
- **“NO MAGAZINE” appears on the monitor.**
  ⇨ Magazine is not loaded in the CD changer.
- **“NO FILES” appears on the monitor.**
  ⇨ Playable files are not recorded in the disc.
- **“NO DISC” appears on the monitor.**
  ⇨ No discs are in the magazine or the discs are inserted upside down.
- **“RESET 1” — “RESET 7” appears on the display of the main unit.**
  ⇨ The built-in microcomputer in the CD changer is malfunctioning. Press the reset button of the CD changer.
- **“RESET 8” appears on the display of the main unit.**
  ⇨ This unit is not connected to a CD changer correctly. Connect this unit and the CD changer correctly and press the reset button of the CD changer.

Additional Information

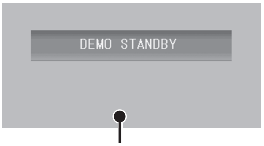
Preset iEQ mode

The table below shows the preset frequency level settings for each iEQ mode.

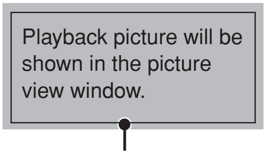
Sound	**Preset equalizing values**				
Mode	100 Hz	300 Hz	1 kHz	3 kHz	10 kHz
FLAT	00	00	00	00	00
HARD ROCK	+03	+02	00	+01	+01
R&B	+03	+02	00	+01	+03
POP	00	+01	00	+01	+02
JAZZ	+03	+02	+01	+02	+02
DANCE	+04	+01	–02	00	+01
COUNTRY	+02	+01	00	+01	+02
REGGAE	+03	00	+01	+02	+03
CLASSIC	+02	+02	00	+01	00
USER1	00	00	00	00	00
USER2	00	00	00	00	00
USER3	00	00	00	00	00

Graphic screens

You can select one of the following graphic screens. For details, see page 14.

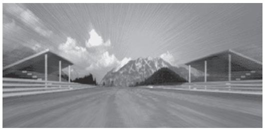


You can activate the display demonstration. To cancel it, select any other graphic screen.



Playback picture will be shown in the picture view window.

While playing a video source (except DVD/VCD), select no graphic screen (in other words, select the actual playback screen); otherwise, you cannot view the playback pictures.



LANGUAGE CODES

Code	Language
AA	Afar
AB	Abkhazian
AF	Afrikaans
AM	Ameharic
AR	Arabic
AS	Assamese
AY	Aymara
AZ	Azerbaijani
BA	Bashkir
BE	Byelorussian
BG	Bulgarian
BH	Bihari
BI	Bislama
BN	Bengali, Bangla
BO	Tibetan
BR	Breton
CA	Catalan
CO	Corsican
CS	Czech
CY	Welsh
DA	Danish
DZ	Bhutani
EL	Greek
EO	Esperanto
ET	Estonian
EU	Basque
FA	Persian
FI	Finnish
FJ	Fiji
FO	Faroese
FY	Frisian
GA	Irish
GD	Scots Gaelic
GL	Galician
GN	Guarani
GU	Gujarati
HA	Hausa
HI	Hindi
HR	Croatian
HU	Hungarian
HY	Armenian
IA	Interlingua
IE	Interlingue
IK	Inupiak
IN	Indonesian
IS	Icelandic
IW	Hebrew
JI	Yiddish
JW	Javanese
KA	Georgian
KK	Kazakh
KL	Greenlandic
KM	Cambodian
KN	Kannada
KO	Korean (KOR)
KS	Kashmiri
KU	Kurdish
KY	Kirghiz
LA	Latin
LN	Lingala
LO	Laothian
LT	Lithuanian
LV	Latvian, Lettish
MG	Malagasy
MI	Maori
MK	Macedonian
ML	Malayalam
MN	Mongolian
MO	Moldavian
MR	Marathi
MS	Malay (MAY)
MT	Maltese
MY	Burmese
NA	Nauru
NE	Nepali
NL	Dutch
NO	Norwegian
OC	Occitan
OM	(Afan) Oromo
OR	Oriya
PA	Panjabi
PL	Polish
PS	Pashto, Pushto
PT	Portuguese
QU	Quechua
RM	Rhaeto-Romance
RN	Kirundi
RO	Rumanian
RU	Russian
RW	Kinyarwanda
SA	Sanskrit
SD	Sindhi
SG	Sangho
SH	Serbo-Croatian
SI	Singhalese
SK	Slovak
SL	Slovenian
SM	Samoan
SN	Shona
SO	Somali
SQ	Albanian
SR	Serbian
SS	Siswati
ST	Sesotho
SU	Sundanese
SV	Swedish
SW	Swahili
TA	Tamil
TE	Telugu
TG	Tajik
TH	Thai
TI	Tigrinya
TK	Turkmen
TL	Tagalog
TN	Setswana
TO	Tonga
TR	Turkish
TS	Tsonga
TT	Tatar
TW	Twi
UK	Ukrainian
UR	Urdu
UZ	Uzbek
VI	Vietnamese
VO	Volapuk
WO	Wolof
XH	Xhosa
YO	Yoruba
ZU	Zulu

Specifications

Main unit

AUDIO AMPLIFIER SECTION

Maximum Power Output:
Front: 50 W per channel
Rear: 50 W per channel
Center: 35 W
Continuous Power Output (RMS):
Front: 19 W per channel into 4 Ω, 40 Hz to 20 000 Hz at no more than 0.8% total harmonic distortion.
Rear: 19 W per channel into 4 Ω, 40 Hz to 20 000 Hz at no more than 0.8% total harmonic distortion.
Center: 15 W into 4 Ω, 40 Hz to 20 000 Hz at no more than 0.8% total harmonic distortion.
Load Impedance: 4 Ω (4 Ω to 8 Ω allowance)
Equalizer Control Range:
Frequencies: 100 Hz, 300 Hz, 1 kHz, 3 kHz, 10 kHz
Level: ±10 dB
Frequency Response: 40 Hz to 20 000 Hz
Signal-to-Noise Ratio: 70 dB

TUNER SECTION

Frequency Range:
FM: 87.5 MHz to 107.9 MHz
AM: 530 kHz to 1 710 kHz

[FM Tuner]

Usable Sensitivity: 11.3 dBf (1.0 µV/75 Ω)
50 dB Quieting Sensitivity: 16.3 dBf (1.8 µV/75 Ω)
Alternate Channel Selectivity (400 kHz): 65 dB
Frequency Response: 40 Hz to 15 000 Hz
Stereo Separation: 35 dB
Capture Ratio: 1.5 dB

[AM Tuner]

Sensitivity: 20 µV
Selectivity: 35 dB

DVD/CD PLAYER SECTION

Signal Detection System: Non-contact optical pickup (semiconductor laser)
Number of channels: 2 channels (stereo)
Frequency Response:
DVD, fs=48 kHz: 16 Hz to 22 000 Hz
DVD, fs=96 kHz: 16 Hz to 44 000 Hz
VCD, CD, MP3: 16 Hz to 20 000 Hz
Dynamic Range: 96 dB
Signal-to-Noise Ratio: 98 dB
Wow and Flutter: Less than measurable limit
MP3 Recording Format:
MPEG 1/2 Audio Layer 3
Max. Bit rate: 320 kbps

REMOVABLE MONITOR

Screen Size: 7 inch wide liquid crystal display
Number of Pixel: 336 960 pixels
(480 vertical × 234 horizontal × 3)
Drive Method:
TFT (Thin Film Transistor) active matrix format
Color System: NTSC
Aspect Ratio: 16:9 (wide)
Allowable Storage Temperature:
–10°C to +60°C (14°F to 140°F)
Allowable Operating Temperature:
0°C to +40°C (32°F to 104°F)
Dimensions (W × H × D):
170 mm × 141 mm × 15 mm
(6-3/4 in. × 5-5/8 in. × 5/8 in.)
Mass: 475 g (1.1 lbs)

GENERAL

Power Requirement:
Operating Voltage: DC 14.4 V
(11 V to 16 V allowance)
Grounding System: Negative ground
Allowable Operating Temperature:
0°C to +40°C (32°F to 104°F)

Dimensions (W × H × D):

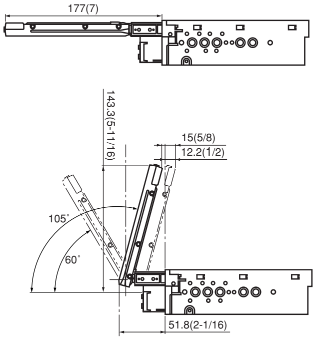
Installation Size:

- With sleeve-mounting plate Type B (standard)
  182 mm × 52 mm × 165 mm
  (7-$^{3}/_{16}$ in. × 2-$^{1}/_{16}$ in. × 6-$^{1}/_{2}$ in.)
- With sleeve-mounting plate Type A
  182 mm × 52 mm × 160 mm
  (7-$^{3}/_{16}$ in. × 2-$^{1}/_{16}$ in. × 6-$^{5}/_{16}$ in.)

Panel Size: 188 mm × 58 mm × 14 mm
(7-$^{7}/_{16}$ in. × 2-$^{5}/_{16}$ in. × $^{5}/_{8}$ in.)

Mass: 2.25 kg (5.1 lbs) (including monitor)

Required space for the monitor ejection



mm (in.)

CAUTION: When ejecting the monitor, keep an open space for the monitor to come out. If not, the monitor may obstruct the steering wheel and gearshift lever operations, as this may result in a traffic accident.

Hideaway unit

Input Terminals:
AV INPUT 1/2:
Audio: 0.5 Vrms (Left/Right)
Video (composite): 1 Vp-p/75 Ω

Output Terminals (Level/Impedance):
AV OUTPUT:
Audio: 2.0 V/20 kΩ load (full scale)
Video (composite): 1 Vp-p/75 Ω
PRE OUT:
Audio: 2.0 V/20 kΩ load (full scale)

Other Terminals:
System integration (TO MAIN UNIT)
FM/AM antenna (FM/AM ANTENNA)
AV bus (AV BUS)
CD changer (TO CHANGER)
Rear view camera/Center speaker
(BACKCAMERA REMOTE/CENTER SPEAKER)
Power cord (POWER)

Dimensions (W × H × D):
230 mm × 35 mm × 181 mm
(9-$^{1}/_{16}$ in. × 1-$^{7}/_{16}$ in. × 7-$^{3}/_{16}$ in.)

Mass: 1.3 kg (2.9 lbs)

Design and specifications are subject to change without notice.

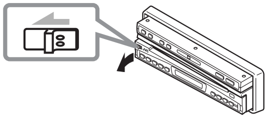
If a kit is necessary for your car, consult your telephone directory for the nearest car audio speciality shop.

About mistracking:

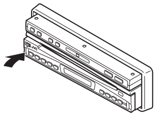
Mistracking may result from driving on extremely rough roads. This does not damage the unit and the disc, but will be annoying.
It is recommended to stop disc play while driving on such rough roads.

Removing the control panel

To detach the control panel



To attach the control panel



Having TROUBLE with operation?

Please reset your unit

Refer to page of How to Reset

Still having trouble??

USA ONLY

Call 1-800-252-5722

http://www.jvc.com

We can help you!

JVC

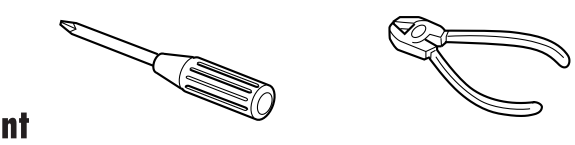
EN, SP, FR

© 2004 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

JVC

LVT1171-002A
[J]

KD-AV7000
Installation/Connection Manual
Manual de instalación/conexión
Manuel d'installation/raccordement



0904MNMMDWJEIN
EN, SP, FR

© 2004 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

ENGLISH

This unit is designed to operate only on **12 V DC, NEGATIVE ground electrical systems**. If your vehicle does not have this system, a voltage inverter is required, which can be purchased at JVC car audio dealers.

WARNINGS

- DO NOT install any unit in locations where;
  - it may obstruct the steering wheel and gearshift lever operations, as this may result in a traffic accident.
  - it may obstruct the operation of safety devices such as air bags, as this may result in a fatal accident.
  - it may obstruct visibility.
- DO NOT operate any unit while manipulating the steering wheel, as this may result in a traffic accident.
- The driver must not watch the monitor while driving.
  If the driver watches the monitor while driving, it may lead to carelessness and cause an accident.
- If you need to operate the main unit while driving, be sure to look ahead carefully or you may be involved in a traffic accident.
- If the parking brake is not engaged, "DRIVER MUST NOT WATCH THE MONITOR WHILE DRIVING." appears on the monitor, and no playback picture will be shown.
  - This warning appears only when the parking brake wire is connected to the parking brake system built in the car.

Notes on mounting the hideaway unit

- Mount on a firm surface, under the front seat or in the trunk.
- Since heat is generated inside the unit, do not mount near inflammable objects. In addition, mount in an area that will not prevent the unit from dissipating heat.
- Do not mount the unit in the places which are subject to heat such as near a radiator, in a glove compartment or in insulated area such as under a car mat that will prevent the unit from dissipating heat.

Notes on electrical connections

- Replace the fuse with one of the specified rating. If the fuse blows frequently, consult your JVC car audio dealer.
- Maximum input of the speakers should be more than 50 W at the rear, 50 W at the front, and 35 W at the center, with an impedance of **4** Ω to **8** Ω.
- **Be sure to ground each unit to the car's chassis.**
- The main unit and the hideaway unit become very hot after use. Be careful not to get burned when removing them.
- To prevent short-circuit, cover the terminals of the UNUSED leads with insulating tape.
- **Take preventative measures to avoid unexpected disconnection of the cords and damage to the cords. This trouble may happen while moving or reclining the seat.**

ESPAÑOL

Esta unidad está diseñada para funcionar con **12 V de CC, con sistemas eléctricos de masa NEGATIVA** solamente. Si su vehículo no posee este sistema, será necesario un inversor de tensión, que puede ser adquirido en los concesionarios de JVC de equipos de audio para automóviles.

ADVERTENCIAS

- NO INSTALE la unidad en los siguientes sitios:
  - Donde pueda obstruir la maniobra del volante de dirección y del cambio de engranajes, con el consiguiente riesgo de accidentes de tráfico.
  - Donde pueda obstruir el funcionamiento de dispositivos de seguridad tales como bolsas de aire, pues podría resultar en un accidente fatal.
  - Donde pueda obstruir la visibilidad.
- NO OPERE la unidad mientras está maniobrando el volante de dirección, pues podría producirse un accidente de tráfico.
- El conductor no debe mirar el monitor mientras conduce.
  Si el conductor mira el monitor mientras conduce puede descuidarse y causar un accidente.
- Si necesita operar el receptor mientras conduce, asegúrese de mirar atentamente hacia adelante para no provocar un accidente de tráfico.
- Si no está aplicado el freno de estacionamiento, aparecerá en el monitor "EL CONDUCTOR NO DEBE MIRAR EL MONITOR MIENTRAS CONDUCE.", y no se mostrará la imagen de reproducción.
  - Esta advertencia aparece únicamente cuando el cable del freno de estacionamiento se encuentra conectado al sistema del freno de estacionamiento incorporado al automóvil.

Notas sobre la instalación de la unidad oculta

- Efectúe la instalación sobre una superficie firme, debajo del asiento delantero o en el portaequipajes.
- Debido a que se genera calor dentro de la unidad, no la instale cerca de objetos inflamables. Asimismo, el sitio de instalación no deberá obstaculizar la disipación de calor de la unidad.
- No instale la unidad en lugares sujetos al calor, como cerca de un radiador, en la guantera o en un sitio aislado, como debajo de la alfombra, por ejemplo, que impidan la disipación del calor.

Notas sobre las conexiones eléctricas

- Reemplace el fusible por otro del régimen especificado. Si el fusible se funde frecuentemente, consulte con su concesionario de JVC de equipos de audio para automóviles.
- La entrada máxima de los altavoces debe ser de más de 50 W en la parte trasera, 50 W en la parte delantera, y 35 W en el centro, con una impedancia de **4** Ω a **8** Ω.
- **La conexión a tierra de esta unidad debe ser realizada al chasis del automóvil.**
- La unidad principal y la unidad oculta estarán muy calientes después del uso. Tenga la precaución de no quemarse al efectuar su desmontaje.
- Para evitar cortocircuitos, cubra los terminales de los cables NO UTILIZADOS con cinta aislante.
- **Tome medidas de prevención necesarias para evitar una desconexión accidental de los cables y daños en los mismos. Esto podría suceder al mover o reclinar el asiento.**

FRANÇAIS

Cet appareil est conçu pour fonctionner sur des sources de courant continu de **12 V à masse NEGATIVE** *seulement. Si votre véhicule n'offre pas ce type d'alimentation, il vous faut un convertisseur de tension, que vous pouvez acheter chez un revendeur d'autoradios JVC.*

AVERTISSEMENTS

- *N'INSTALLEZ aucun appareil dans les endroits suivants;*
  - *où il peut gêner l'accès au volant ou au levier de vitesse car cela peut entraîner un accident de la circulation.*
  - *où il peut gêner la manipulation de dispositifs de sécurité tels que les coussins de sécurité car cela peut entraîner un accident fatal.*
  - *où il peut gêner la visibilité.*
- *NE COMMANDEZ PAS l'appareil lors de la manipulation du volant car cela peut entraîner un accident de la circulation.*
- *Le conducteur ne doit pas regarder le moniteur lorsqu'il conduit.*
  Regarder le moniteur lorsqu'on est au volant réduit considérablement la vigilance du conducteur et multiplie les risques d'accident.
- *Si vous avez besoin de commander l'appareil principal pendant que vous conduisez, continuez de regarder droit devant vous ou vous risquez de causer un accident de la circulation.*
- *Si le frein de stationnement n'est pas mis, "LE CONDUCTEUR NE DOIT PAS REGARDER LE MONITEUR EN CONDUISANT." apparaît sur le moniteur et l'image de lecture n'apparaît pas.*
  - *Cet avertissement apparaît uniquement quand le fil du frein de stationnement est connecté au système de frein de stationnement intégré à la voiture.*

Remarque sur le montage de l'appareil satellite

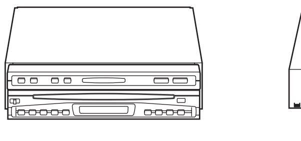
- *Montez-le sur une surface solide, sous le siège avant ou dans le coffre.*
- *Puisque de la chaleur est produite à l'intérieur de l'appareil, ne le montez pas à proximité d'objets inflammables. Par contre, montez-le dans un endroit où la dissipation de la chaleur peut être réalisée sans problème.*
- *Ne montez pas l'appareil dans un endroit sujet à la chaleur, comme près d'un radiateur, dans la boîte à gant ou dans un endroit isolé tel que sous le tapis de sol qui ne permettra pas à l'appareil de dissiper sa chaleur.*

Remarques sur les connexions électriques

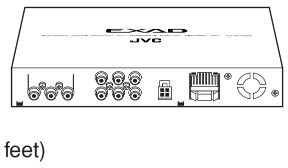
- *Remplacez le fusible par un de la valeur précisée. Si le fusible saute souvent, consulter votre revendeur d'autoradios JVC.*
- *L'entrée maximum des enceintes doit être supérieure à 50 W à l'arrière et à 50 W l'avant et 35 W au centre, avec une impédance de* **4** Ω *à* **8** Ω.
- **Assurez-vous de mettre à la masse chaque appareil au châssis de la voiture.**
- *L'appareil principal et l'appareil satellite deviennent très chauds après l'utilisation. Faites attention de ne pas vous brûler en les retirant.*
- *Pour éviter les courts-circuits, recouvrez les bornes des fils qui ne sont PAS UTILISÉS avec de la bande isolante.*
- **Prenez des mesures préventives pour éviter que des cordons se déconnectent accidentellement ou soient endommagés. Cela peut se produire lorsque vous déplacez ou inclinez le siège.**

Parts list
Lista de piezas
Liste des pièces

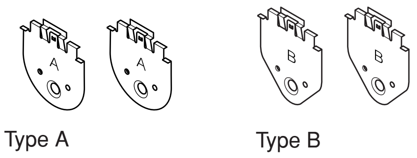
ⓐ Main unit
Unidad principal
Appareil principal



ⓑ Hideaway unit
Unidad oculta
Appareil satellite



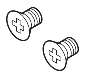
ⓒ Sleeve-mounting plates
Placas de montaje de la manga
Plaques de montage du manchon



Type A
Tipo A
Type A

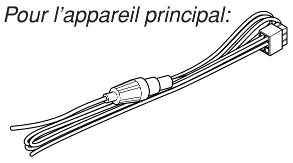
Type B
Tipo B
Type B

ⓓ Fixing screws—M5 x 6 mm (M5 x 1/4 in.)
Tornillos de fijación—M5 x 6 mm (M5 x 1/4 pulgada)
Vis de fixation—M5 x 6 mm (M5 x 1/4 pouces)

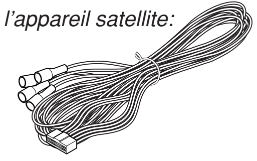


ⓔ, ⓕ
Power cords
Cordones de alimentación
Cordons d'alimentation

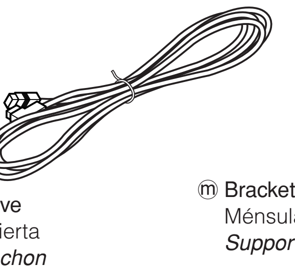
ⓔ For main unit:
Para la unidad principal:
Pour l'appareil principal:



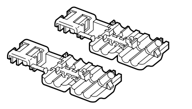
ⓕ For hideaway unit:
Para la unidad oculta:
Pour l'appareil satellite:



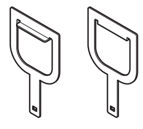
ⓖ AV bus cable—2.5 m (8.3 feet)
Cable AV bus—2,5 m (8,3 pies)
Câble de liaison AV—2,5 m (8,3 pieds)



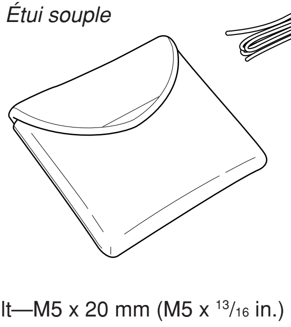
ⓗ Crimp connectors
Conectores de sujeción
Raccord à sertir



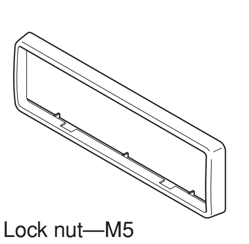
ⓘ Handles
Manga
Poignées



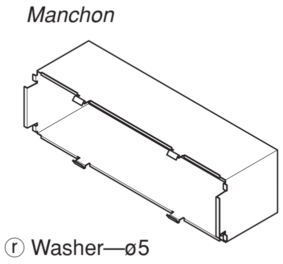
ⓙ Soft case
Estuche bland
Étui souple



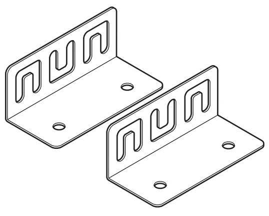
ⓚ Trim plate
Placa de guarnición
Plaque d'assemblage



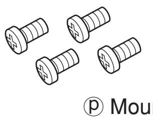
ⓛ Sleeve
Cubierta
Manchon



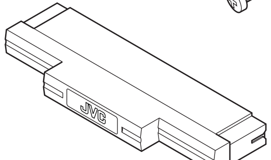
ⓜ Brackets
Ménsulas
Supports



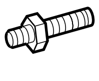
ⓝ Fixing screws—M4 x 8 mm (M4 x 3/8 in.)
Tornillos de fijación—M4 x 8 mm (M4 x 3/8 pulgada)
Vis de fixation—M4 x 8 mm (M4 x 3/8 pouces)



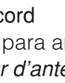
ⓞ Blind cover
Cubierta ciega
Cache



ⓟ Mounting bolt—M5 x 20 mm (M5 x 13/16 in.)
Perno de montaje—M5 x 20 mm (M5 x 13/16 pulgada)
Boulon de montage—M5 x 20 mm (M5 x 13/16 pouces)

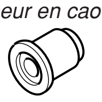


ⓠ Lock nut—M5
Tuerca de seguridad—M5
Ecrou d'arrêt—M5

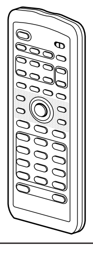


ⓡ Washer—ø5
Arandela—ø5
Rondelle—ø5

ⓢ Rubber cushion
Cojín de goma
Amortisseur en caoutchouc



ⓣ Remote controller
Control remoto
Télécommande

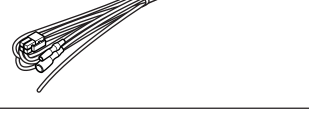


RM-RK220

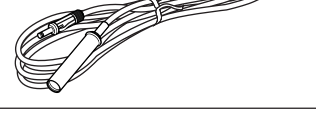
ⓤ Battery
Pila
Pile

CR2025

ⓥ Center speaker/rear camera cord
Cable del altavoz central/cámara trasera
Cordon d'enceinte centrale/caméra de recul



ⓦ Extension antenna cord
Cable de extensión para antena
Cordon prolongateur d'antenne



SYSTEM CONNECTIONS

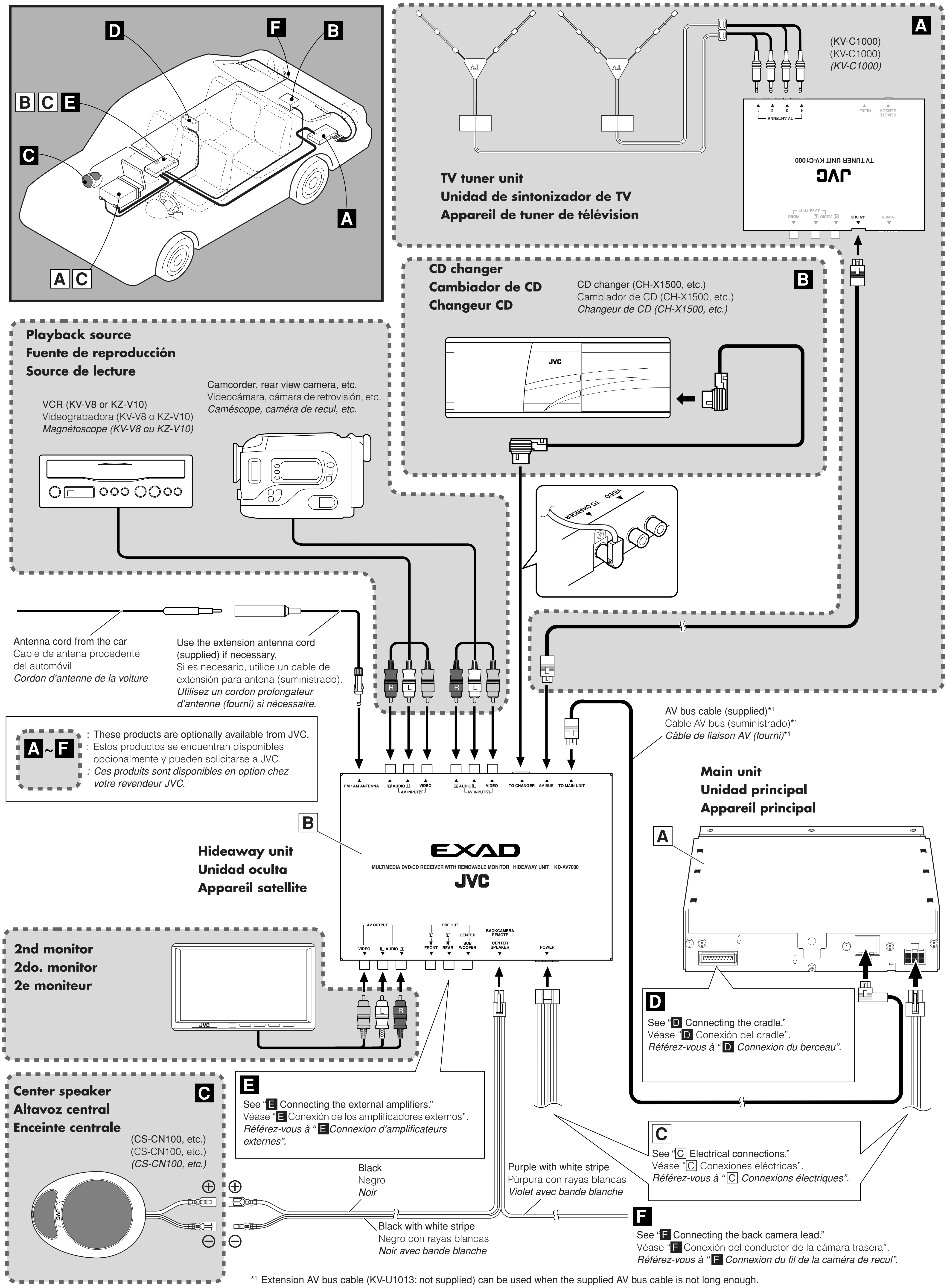
- For A, B, C, D, E, F, more information are given on the following pages.

CONEXIONES DEL SISTEMA

- En las siguientes páginas encontrará más información sobre A, B, C, D, E, F.

CONNEXIONS DU SYSTÈMES

- *Pour A, B, C, D, E, F plus d'informations sont données aux pages suivantes.*


D
F
B
B C E
C
A
A C
A
(KV-C1000)
(KV-C1000)
(KV-C1000)
TV ANTENNA
RESET
REMOTE SENSOR
TV TUNER UNIT KV-C1000
JVC
AV OUTPUT
VIDEO
AUDIO
AV BUS
POWER
TV tuner unit
Unidad de sintonizador de TV
Appareil de tuner de télévision
CD changer
Cambiador de CD
Changeur CD
B
CD changer (CH-X1500, etc.)
Cambiador de CD (CH-X1500, etc.)
Changeur de CD (CH-X1500, etc.)
JVC
Playback source
Fuente de reproducción
Source de lecture
Camcorder, rear view camera, etc.
Videocámara, cámara de retrovisión, etc.
Caméscope, caméra de recul, etc.
VCR (KV-V8 or KZ-V10)
Videograbadora (KV-V8 o KZ-V10)
Magnétoscope (KV-V8 ou KZ-V10)
TO CHANGER
VIDEO
Antenna cord from the car
Cable de antena procedente del automóvil
Cordon d'antenne de la voiture
Use the extension antenna cord (supplied) if necessary.
Si es necesario, utilice un cable de extensión para antena (suministrado).
Utilisez un cordon prolongateur d'antenne (fourni) si nécessaire.
R
L
R
L
A~F
: These products are optionally available from JVC.
: Estos productos se encuentran disponibles opcionalmente y pueden solicitarse a JVC.
: Ces produits sont disponibles en option chez votre revendeur JVC.
AV bus cable (supplied)*1
Cable AV bus (suministrado)*1
Câble de liaison AV (fourni)*1
FM / AM ANTENNA
R AUDIO L
VIDEO
AV INPUT 1
R AUDIO L
VIDEO
AV INPUT 2
TO CHANGER
AV BUS
TO MAIN UNIT
B
Hideaway unit
Unidad oculta
Appareil satellite
EXAD
MULTIMEDIA DVD/CD RECEIVER WITH REMOVABLE MONITOR HIDEAWAY UNIT KD-AV7000
JVC
AV OUTPUT
VIDEO
L AUDIO R
PRE OUT
L R FRONT
L R REAR
CENTER SUB WOOFER
BACKCAMERA REMOTE
CENTER SPEAKER
POWER
Main unit
Unidad principal
Appareil principal
A
2nd monitor
2do. monitor
2e moniteur
JVC
L
R
D
Center speaker
Altavoz central
Enceinte centrale
C
(CS-CN100, etc.)
(CS-CN100, etc.)
(CS-CN100, etc.)
JVC
⊕ ⊕
⊖ ⊖
E
C
F
Black
Negro
Noir
Black with white stripe
Negro con rayas blancas
Noir avec bande blanche
Purple with white stripe
Púrpura con rayas blancas
Violet avec bande blanche

D

See "D Connecting the cradle."
Véase "D Conexión del cradle".
Référez-vous à "D Connexion du berceau".

E

See "E Connecting the external amplifiers."
Véase "E Conexión de los amplificadores externos".
Référez-vous à "E Connexion d'amplificateurs externes".

C

See "C Electrical connections."
Véase "C Conexiones eléctricas".
Référez-vous à "C Connexions électriques".

F

See "F Connecting the back camera lead."
Véase "F Conexión del conductor de la cámara trasera".
Référez-vous à "F Connexion du fil de la caméra de recul".

---

[1] Extension AV bus cable (KV-U1013: not supplied) can be used when the supplied AV bus cable is not long enough.
[1] Es posible usar el cable AV bus de extensión (KV-U1013: no suministrado) cuando el cable AV bus suministrado no sea lo suficientemente largo.
[1] *Un câble prolongateur de liaison AV (KV-U1013: non fourni) peut être utilisé avec le câble de liaison AV fourni si ce dernier n'est pas suffisamment long.*

INSTALLATION

The following illustration shows a typical installation. However, you should make adjustments corresponding to your specific car. If you have any questions or require information regarding installation kits, consult your JVC car audio dealer or a company supplying kits.

A Installing the main unit (in-dash mounting)

INSTALACIÓN

La siguiente ilustración muestra una instalación típica. Sin embargo usted deberá efectuar los ajustes correspondientes a su automóvil. Si tiene alguna pregunta o necesita información acerca de las herramientas para instalación, consulte con su concesionario de JVC de equipos de audio para automóviles o a una compañía que suministra tales herramientas.

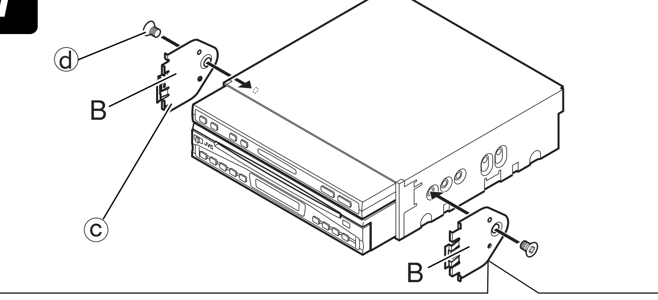
A Instalación de la unidad principal (Montaje en el tablero de instrumentos)

INSTALLATION

L'illustration suivante est un exemple d'installation typique. Cependant, vous devez faire les ajustements correspondant à votre voiture. Si vous avez des questions ou avez besoin d'information sur des kits d'installation, consulter votre revendeur d'autoradios JVC ou une compagnie d'approvisionnement.

A Installation de l'appareil principal (montage encastré)

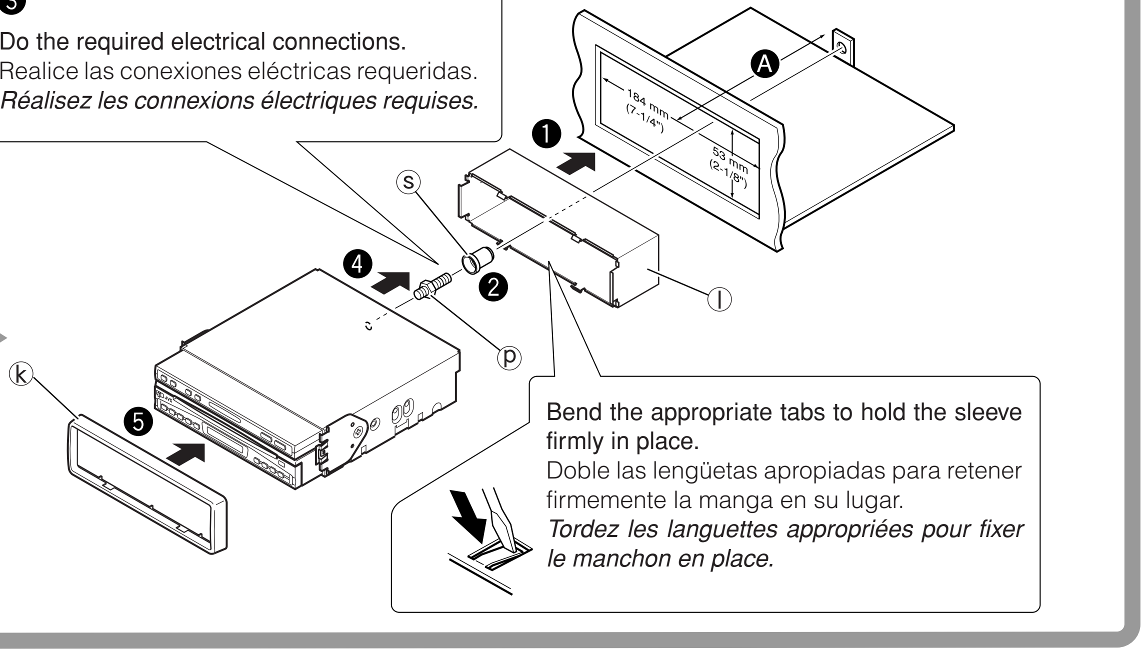
1



Attach the sleeve-mounting plates—either type, corresponding to the depth of the mounting area (Ⓐ : see the next step).
Use Type B when Ⓐ is 165 mm (6-1/2 in.) while use Type A when Ⓐ is less than 165 mm (6-1/2 in.).
Fije las placas de montaje de la manga—del tipo correspondiente a la profundidad del área de montaje (Ⓐ: véase el siguiente paso).
Utilice el Tipo B cuando Ⓐ sea de 165 mm (6-1/2 pulgada) y el Tipo A cuando Ⓐ sea de menos de 165 mm (6-1/2 pulgada).
Fixez les plaques de montage du manchon—le type correspondant à la profondeur de la zone de montage (Ⓐ : voir l'étape suivante). Utilisez le type B si Ⓐ est égal à 165 mm (6-1/2 pouces) et le type A si Ⓐ est inférieur à 165 mm (6-1/2 pouces).

2

❸
Do the required electrical connections.
Realice las conexiones eléctricas requeridas.
Réalisez les connexions électriques requises.



Bend the appropriate tabs to hold the sleeve firmly in place.
Doble las lengüetas apropiadas para retener firmemente la manga en su lugar.
Tordez les languettes appropriées pour fixer le manchon en place.

Removing the main unit

Before removing the main unit, release the rear section.

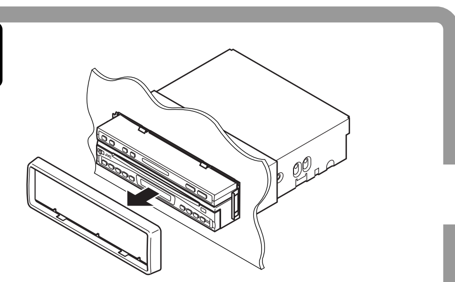
Extracción de la unidad principal

Antes de extraer la unidad principal, libere la sección trasera.

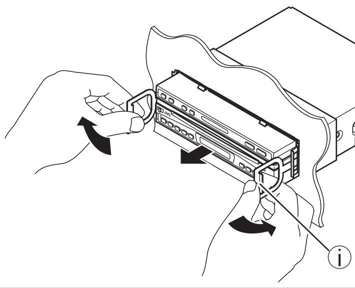
Retrait de l'appareil principal

Avant de retirer l'appareil principal, libérer la section arrière.

1



2

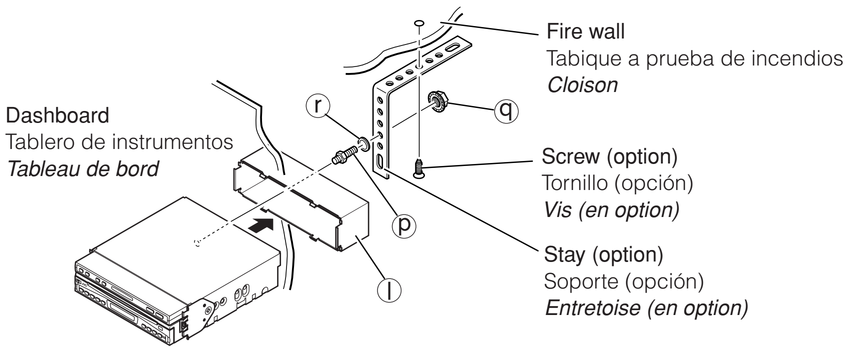


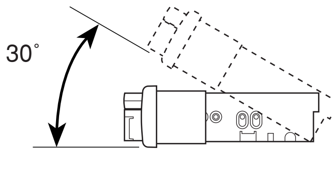
Insert the two handles, then pull them as illustrated so that the unit can be removed.

Inserte las dos manijas y, a continuación, extráigalas de la manera indicada en la ilustración para poder desmontar la unidad.

Insérez les deux poignées, puis tirez de la façon illustrée de façon à pouvoir retirer l'appareil.

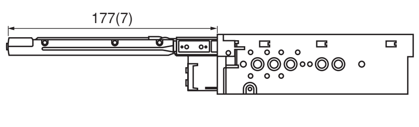
When using the optional stay / Cuando emplea un soporte opcional / Utilisation de l'entretoise en option

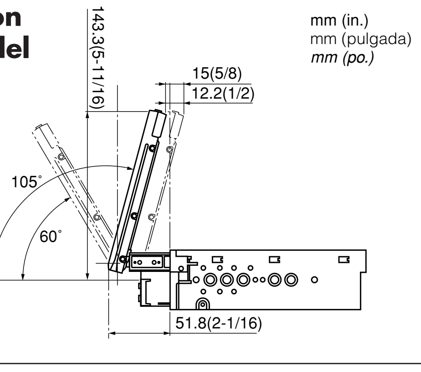




Install the unit at an angle of less than 30˚, taking it into account that the monitor would eject when in use (see below).
Instale la unidad a un ángulo de menos de 30˚, teniendo en cuenta que el monitor debe extraerse para su uso (véase abajo).
Installez l'appareil avec un angle de moins de 30°, en tenant compte du fait que le moniteur doit être déployé lors de son utilisation (voir ci-dessous).

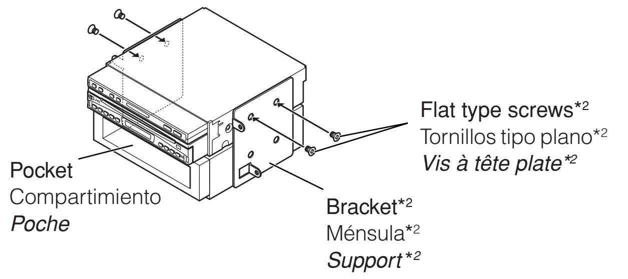
Required space for the monitor ejection
Espacio requerido para la expulsión del monitor
Espace requis pour le déploiement du moniteur



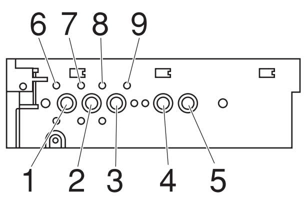


When installing the unit without using the sleeve / Instalación de la unidad sin utilizar la manga / Installation de l'appareil sans utiliser de manchon

In a Toyota for example, first remove the car radio and install the unit in its place.
En un Toyota por ejemplo, primero retire la radio del automóvil y luego instale la unidad en su lugar.
Par exemple dans une voiture Toyota, retirer d'abord l'autoradio et installer l'appareil à sa place.



*2 Not included with this unit.
*2 No suministrado con esta unidad.
**2 Non fourni avec cet appareil.*



Use the following screws
Utilice los siguientes tornillos
Utilisez les vis suivantes

For No.1 – 5 For No.6 – 9	M5 x 8 mm (M5 x 3/8 in.)*2 M4 x 3 mm (M4 x 1/8 in.)*2
Para N˚ 1 – 5 Para N˚ 6 – 9	M5 x 8 mm (M5 x 3/8 pulgada)*2 M4 x 3 mm (M4 x 1/8 pulgada)*2
Pour No 1 à 5 *Pour No 6 à 9*	*M5 x 8 mm (M5 x 3/8 pouces)*2* *M4 x 3 mm (M4 x 1/8 pouces)*2*

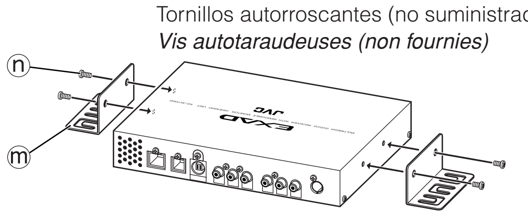
Note : When installing the unit on the mounting bracket, make sure to use screws of proper length refering to the table above. If longer screws are used, they could damage the unit.
Nota : Cuando instale la unidad en la ménsula de montaje, asegúrese de utilizar los tornillos del largo apropiado refiriéndose a la tabla de arriba. Si se utilizan tornillos más largos, éstos podrían dañar la unidad.
Remarque : *Lors de l'utilisation de l'appareil sur le support de montage, assurez-vous d'utiliser des vis d'une longueur correcte en vous référant au tableau ci-dessus. Si des vis plus longues sont utilisées, elles peuvent endommager l'appareil.*

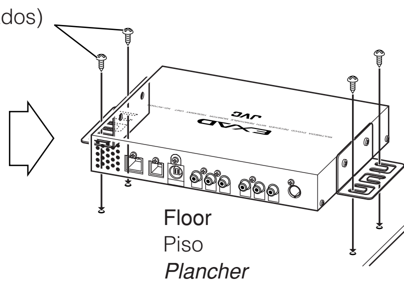
B Installing the hideaway unit (under the front seat)

B Instalación de la unidad oculta (debajo del asiento delantero)

B Installation de l'appareil satellite (sous le siège avant)

Tapping screws (not supplied)
Tornillos autorroscantes (no suministrados)
Vis autotaraudeuses (non fournies)





- Be sure to use the tapping screws (not supplied) of appropriate length so that they will not damage any parts of the car.
- Asegúrese de utilizar tornillos autorroscantes (no suministrados) del largo apropiado para que no produzcan.
- *Assurez-vous d'utiliser des vis autotaraudeuses (non fournies) de la longueur appropriée de façon qu'elles n'endommagent aucune partie de la voiture.*

ENGLISH

C Electrical connections

Before connecting...

- Make sure that the antenna cord from the car is connected to the hideaway unit (see page 2). If the antenna cord is not long enough, use the extension antenna cord (supplied).
- Check the wiring in the car carefully. Incorrect connection may cause serious damage to the units. The leads of the power cord and those of the connector from the car body may be different in color.

1 Connect the colored leads of the power cord in the order specified in the illustration below.

2 Connect the wiring harness to the units.

3 Connect the main unit and the hideaway unit using AV bus cable (supplied).

ESPAÑOL

C Conexiones eléctricas

Antes de la conexión...

- Asegúrese de que el cordón de la antena procedente del automóvil esté conectado a la unidad oculta (véase página 2). Si el cordón de la antena no es de un largo suficiente, utilice un cable de extensión para antena (suministrado).
- Verifique atentamente el conexionado del vehículo. Una conexión incorrecta podría producir daños graves a las unidades. Los conductores del cable de alimentación y los del conector procedentes de la carrocería del automóvil pueden ser diferentes en color.

1 Conecte los conductores de color del cable de alimentación en el orden especificado en la ilustración de abajo.

2 Conecte el mazo de conductores a las unidades.

3 Conecte la unidad principal y la unidad oculta utilizando el cable AV bus (suministrado).

FRANÇAIS

C Connexions électriques

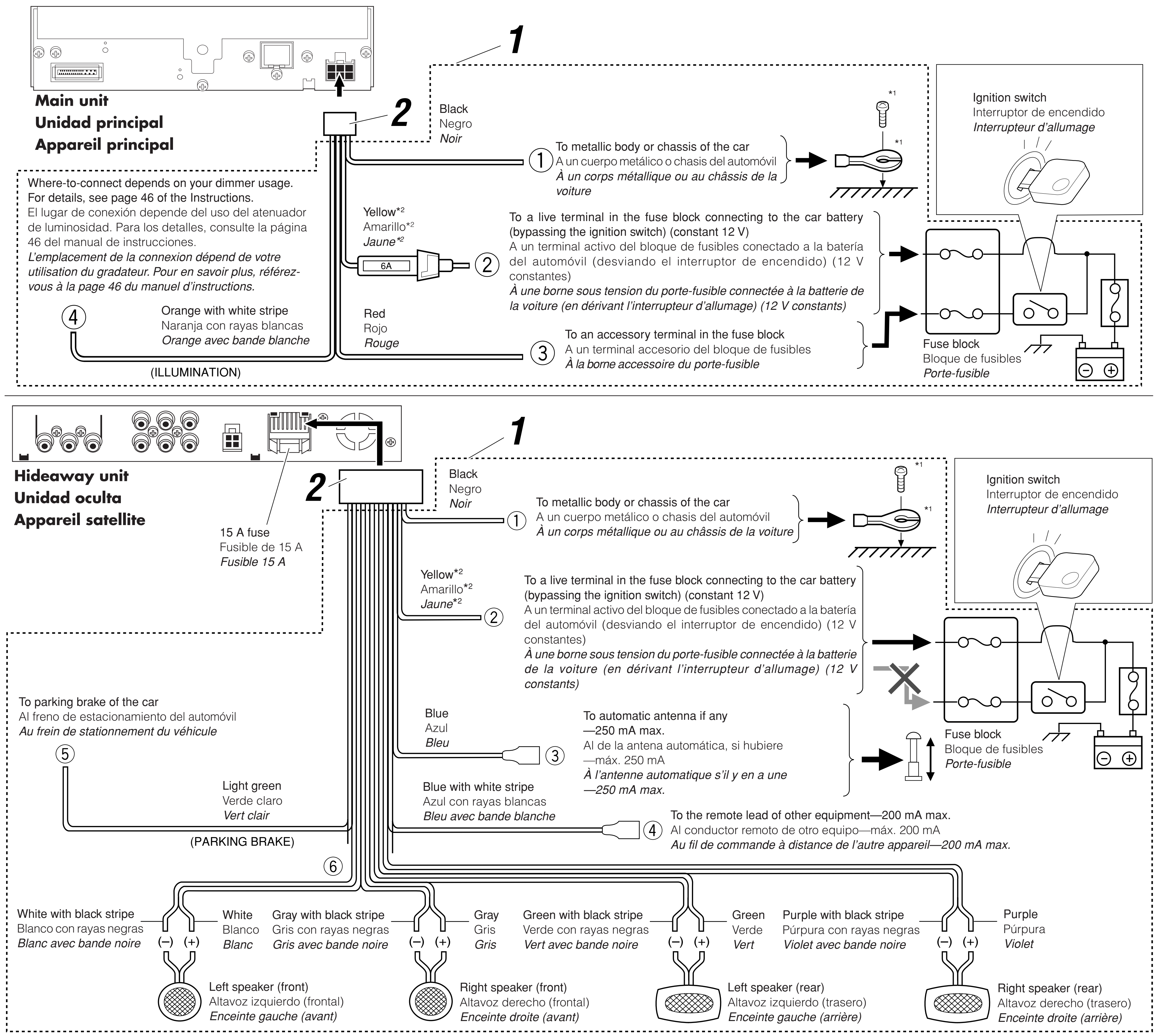
Avant de commencer...

- *Assurez-vous que le cordon d'antenne de la voiture est connecté à l'appareil satellite (voir page 2). Si le cordon d'antenne n'est pas assez long, utilisez un cordon prolongateur d'antenne (fourni).*
- *Vérifiez attentivement le câblage du véhicule. Une connexion incorrecte peut endommager sérieusement l'appareil. Le fil du cordon d'alimentation et ceux des connecteurs du châssis de la voiture peuvent avoir des couleurs différentes.*

1 *Connectez les fils colorés du cordon d'alimentation dans l'ordre spécifié sur l'illustration ci-dessous.*

2 *Connectez le faisceau de fils aux appareils.*

3 *Connectez l'appareil principal et l'appareil satellite en utilisant le câble de liaison AV (fourni).*


Main unit
Unidad principal
Appareil principal
1
2
Black
Negro
Noir
①
To metallic body or chassis of the car
A un cuerpo metálico o chasis del automóvil
À un corps métallique ou au châssis de la voiture
*1
*1
Ignition switch
Interruptor de encendido
Interrupteur d'allumage
Where-to-connect depends on your dimmer usage. For details, see page 46 of the Instructions.
El lugar de conexión depende del uso del atenuador de luminosidad. Para los detalles, consulte la página 46 del manual de instrucciones.
L'emplacement de la connexion dépend de votre utilisation du gradateur. Pour en savoir plus, référez-vous à la page 46 du manuel d'instructions.
Yellow*2
Amarillo*2
Jaune*2
6A
②
To a live terminal in the fuse block connecting to the car battery (bypassing the ignition switch) (constant 12 V)
A un terminal activo del bloque de fusibles conectado a la batería del automóvil (desviando el interruptor de encendido) (12 V constantes)
À une borne sous tension du porte-fusible connectée à la batterie de la voiture (en dérivant l'interrupteur d'allumage) (12 V constants)
④
Orange with white stripe
Naranja con rayas blancas
Orange avec bande blanche
Red
Rojo
Rouge
③
To an accessory terminal in the fuse block
A un terminal accesorio del bloque de fusibles
À la borne accessoire du porte-fusible
Fuse block
Bloque de fusibles
Porte-fusible
(ILLUMINATION)
Hideaway unit
Unidad oculta
Appareil satellite
1
2
15 A fuse
Fusible de 15 A
Fusible 15 A
Black
Negro
Noir
①
To metallic body or chassis of the car
A un cuerpo metálico o chasis del automóvil
À un corps métallique ou au châssis de la voiture
*1
*1
Ignition switch
Interruptor de encendido
Interrupteur d'allumage
Yellow*2
Amarillo*2
Jaune*2
②
To a live terminal in the fuse block connecting to the car battery (bypassing the ignition switch) (constant 12 V)
A un terminal activo del bloque de fusibles conectado a la batería del automóvil (desviando el interruptor de encendido) (12 V constantes)
À une borne sous tension du porte-fusible connectée à la batterie de la voiture (en dérivant l'interrupteur d'allumage) (12 V constants)
To parking brake of the car
Al freno de estacionamiento del automóvil
Au frein de stationnement du véhicule
⑤
Blue
Azul
Bleu
③
To automatic antenna if any —250 mA max.
Al de la antena automática, si hubiere —máx. 250 mA
À l'antenne automatique s'il y en a une —250 mA max.
Fuse block
Bloque de fusibles
Porte-fusible
Light green
Verde claro
Vert clair
Blue with white stripe
Azul con rayas blancas
Bleu avec bande blanche
④
To the remote lead of other equipment—200 mA max.
Al conductor remoto de otro equipo—máx. 200 mA
Au fil de commande à distance de l'autre appareil—200 mA max.
(PARKING BRAKE)
⑥
White with black stripe
Blanco con rayas negras
Blanc avec bande noire
White
Blanco
Blanc
(–) (+)
Gray with black stripe
Gris con rayas negras
Gris avec bande noire
Gray
Gris
Gris
(–) (+)
Green with black stripe
Verde con rayas negras
Vert avec bande noire
Green
Verde
Vert
(–) (+)
Purple with black stripe
Púrpura con rayas negras
Violet avec bande noire
Purple
Púrpura
Violet
(–) (+)
Left speaker (front)
Altavoz izquierdo (frontal)
Enceinte gauche (avant)
Right speaker (front)
Altavoz derecho (frontal)
Enceinte droite (avant)
Left speaker (rear)
Altavoz izquierdo (trasero)
Enceinte gauche (arrière)
Right speaker (rear)
Altavoz derecho (trasero)
Enceinte droite (arrière)

[*1] Not supplied with this unit.

[*2] Before checking the operation of this unit prior to installation, this lead must be connected, otherwise power cannot be turned on.

[*1] No suministrado con esta unidad.

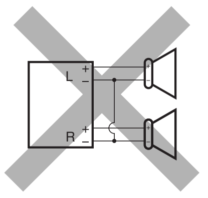
[*2] Antes de comprobar el funcionamiento de esta unidad previa a la instalación, es necesario conectar este cable, de lo contrario no se podrá conectar la alimentación.

[*1] *Non fourni avec cet appareil.*

[*2] *Pour vérifier le fonctionnement de cet appareil avant installation, ce fil doit être connecté, sinon l'appareil ne peut pas être mis sous tension.*

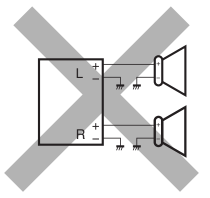
PRECAUTIONS on power supply and speaker connections:

- **DO NOT connect the speaker leads of the power cord to the car battery; otherwise, the units will be seriously damaged.**
- BEFORE connecting the speaker leads of the power cord to the speakers, check the speaker wiring in your car.



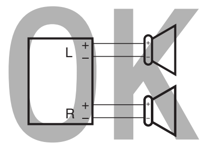
PRECAUCIONES sobre las conexiones de la fuente de alimentación y de los altavoces:

- **NO conecte los conductores de altavoz del cable de alimentación a la batería de automóvil, pues podrían producirse graves daños en las unidades.**
- ANTES de conectar a los altavoces los conductores de altavoz del cable de alimentación, verifique el conexionado de altavoz de su automóvil.



PRECAUTIONS sur l'alimentation et la connexion des enceintes:

- **NE CONNECTEZ PAS les fils d'enceintes du cordon d'alimentation à la batterie; sinon, les appareils seront sérieusement endommagés.**
- *AVANT de connecter les fils d'enceintes du cordon d'alimentation aux enceintes, vérifiez le câblage des enceintes de votre voiture.*



Connecting the parking brake wire

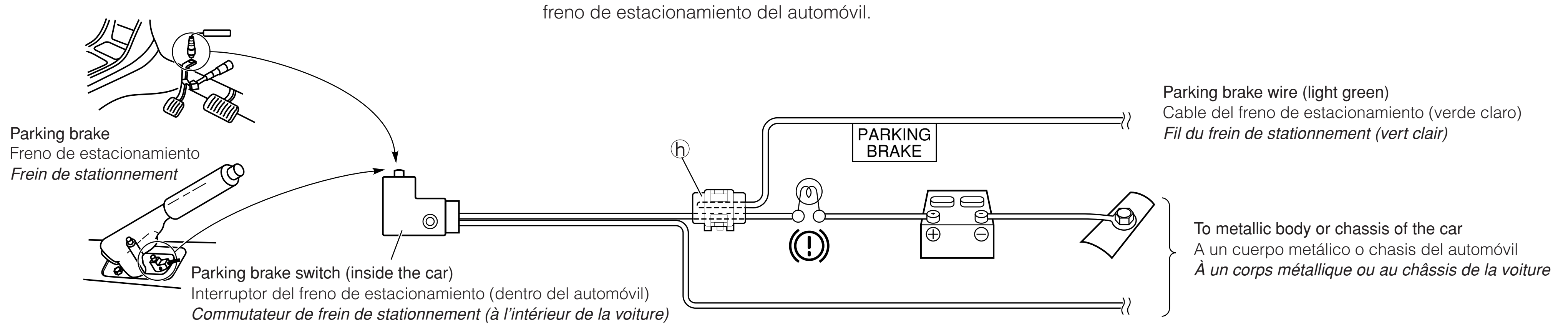
Connect the parking brake wire to the parking brake system built in the car.

Conexión del cable del freno de estacionamiento

Conecte el cable del freno de estacionamiento al sistema de freno de estacionamiento del automóvil.

Connexion du cordon de frein de stationnement

Connectez le fil de frein de stationnement au système de frein de stationnement.



Parking brake
Freno de estacionamiento
Frein de stationnement

Parking brake switch (inside the car)
Interruptor del freno de estacionamiento (dentro del automóvil)
Commutateur de frein de stationnement (à l'intérieur de la voiture)

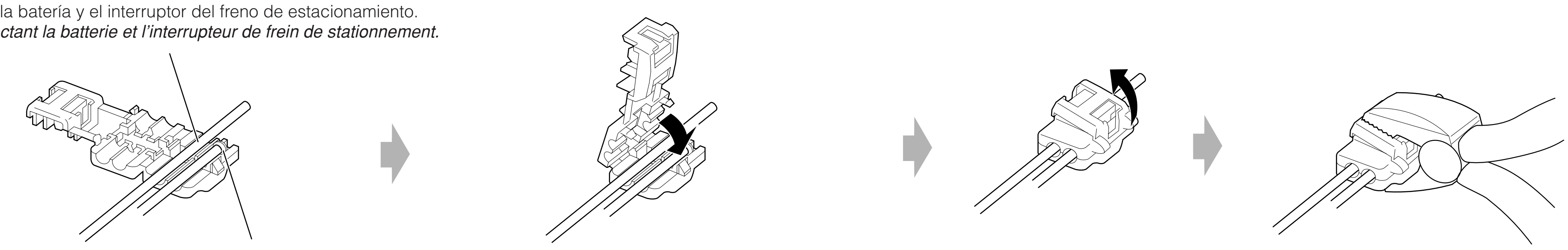
Parking brake wire (light green)
Cable del freno de estacionamiento (verde claro)
Fil du frein de stationnement (vert clair)

To metallic body or chassis of the car
A un cuerpo metálico o chasis del automóvil
À un corps métallique ou au châssis de la voiture

How to connect the crimp connector

Cómo usar el conector de sujeción

Comment utiliser le raccord à sertir



Wire connecting the battery and the parking brake switch.
Conecte la batería y el interruptor del freno de estacionamiento.
Fil connectant la batterie et l'interrupteur de frein de stationnement.

Attach the parking brake wire (light green) to this point.
Conecte el cable del freno de estacionamiento (verde claro) a este punto.
Attachez ici le fil du frein de stationnement (vert clair).

Contact the metallic part of the crimp to the wires inside.
Conecte la parte metálica de la sujeción a los cables de dentro.
Mettez en contact la partie métallique du raccord à sertir et les fils intérieurs.

Pinch the crimp firmly.
Apriete la sujeción con firmeza.
Pincez le raccord à sertir fermement.

D Connecting the cradle

By using the cradle (KV-CR100), you can remove the monitor from the main unit and insert it into the cradle so that the persons sitting on the rear seat can view the playback picture even while the driver are driving your car.

- The driver must not put on the headphones while driving. It is dangerous to shut off the outside sounds while driving.
- Additional monitor (KV-MAV7001) can also be purchased to used so that you do not need to remove the monitor from the main unit.

D Conexión del cradle

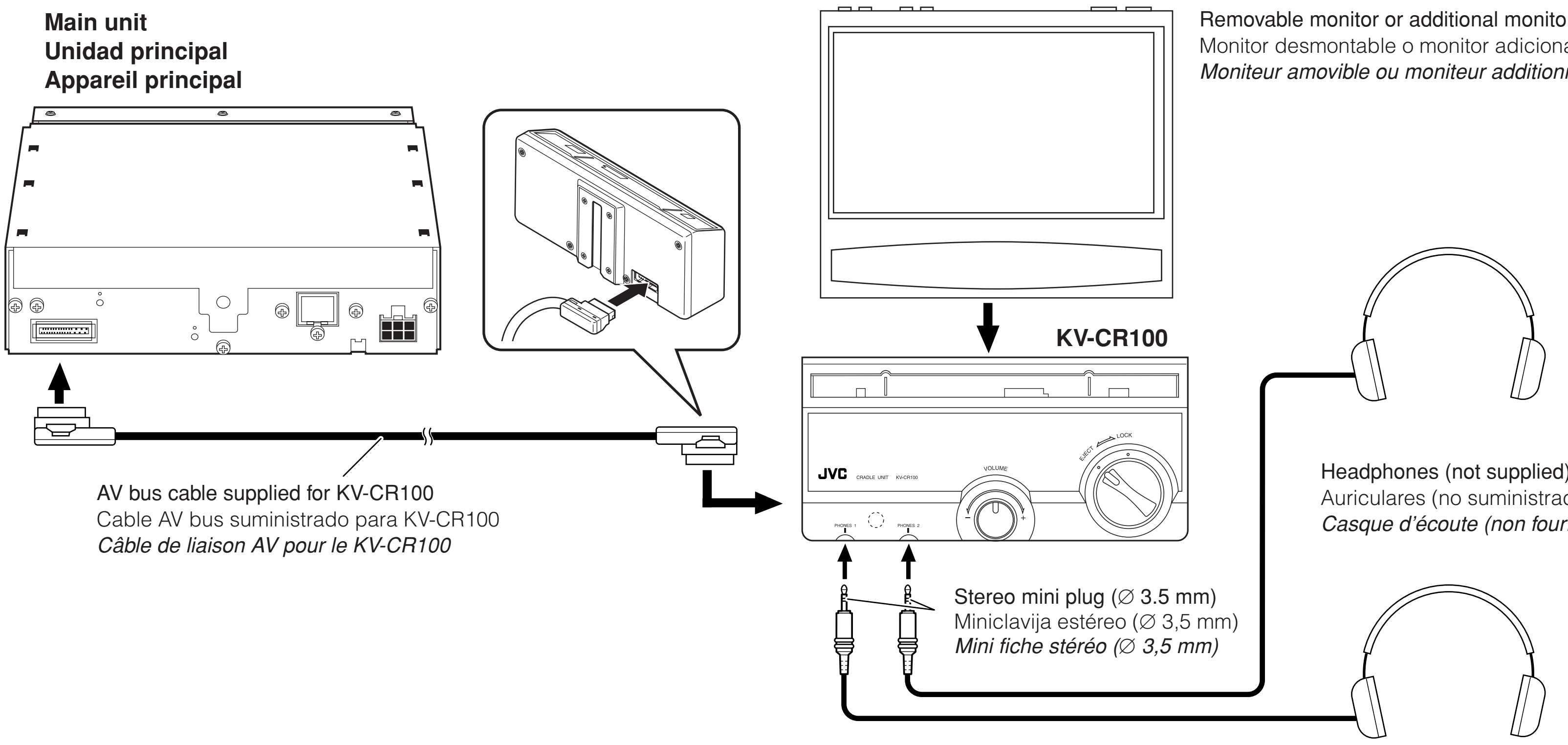
Utilizando el cradle (KV-CR100), podrá retirar el monitor de la unidad principal e insertarlo en el cradle para que las personas que viajan en los asientos traseros se entretenga viendo las imágenes de reproducción mientras el conductor maneja.

- El conductor no debe ponerse los auriculares mientras conduce. Es muy peligroso no escuchar los ruidos exteriores durante la conducción.
- También podrá adquirir un monitor adicional (KV-MAV7001) para no tener que retirar el monitor de la unidad principal.

D Connexion du berceau

En utilisant le berceau (KV-CR100), il est possible séparer le moniteur de l'appareil principal et de l'insérez dans le berceau de façon que les personnes assises sur les sièges arrière puissent voir l'image de lecture même lors que le conducteur conduit la voiture.

- *Le conducteur ne doit pas mettre un casque d'écoute sur ses oreilles quand il conduit. Il est dangereux de bloquer les sons extérieurs quand on conduit.*
- *Vous pouvez aussi acheter un moniteur additionnel (KV-MAV7001) de façon à ne pas avoir à séparer le moniteur de l'appareil principal.*



Main unit
Unidad principal
Appareil principal

Removable monitor or additional monitor KV-MAV7001*3
Monitor desmontable o monitor adicional KV-MAV7001*3
*Moniteur amovible ou moniteur additionnel KV-MAV7001*3*

AV bus cable supplied for KV-CR100
Cable AV bus suministrado para KV-CR100
Câble de liaison AV pour le KV-CR100

Headphones (not supplied)*4
Auriculares (no suministrado)*4
*Casque d'écoute (non fourni)*4*

Stereo mini plug (∅ 3.5 mm)
Miniclavija estéreo (∅ 3,5 mm)
Mini fiche stéréo (∅ 3,5 mm)

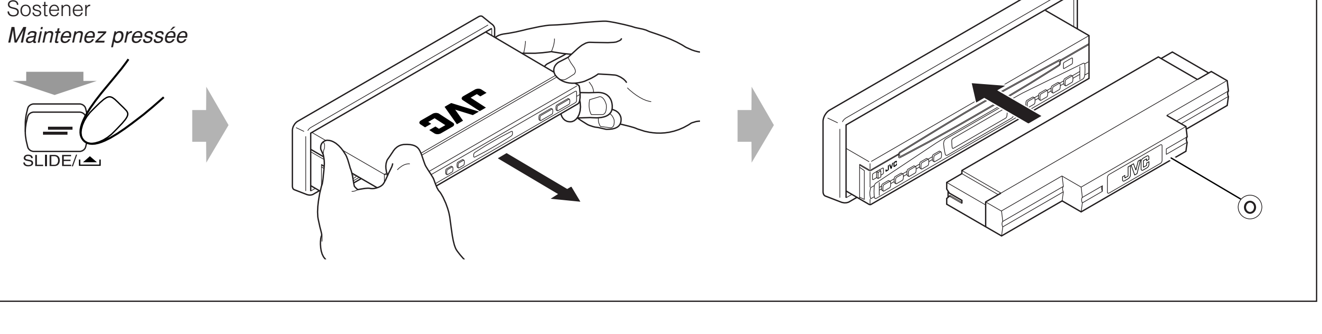
*3 When not in use, store the monitor in the supplied soft case for its protection.
*3 Cuando no lo utilice, guarde el monitor en el estuche blando para fines de protección.
*3 *Quand vous ne l'utilisez pas, conservez le moniteur dans l'étui souple fourni afin de le protéger.*

*4 To listen to source sound while in Dual Mode operations.
See page 33 of the INSTRUCTIONS (separate volume).
*4 Para escuchar el sonido de reproducción de disco mientras se está en operaciones Dual Mode.
Véase la página 33 de las MANUAL DE INSTRUCCIONES (volumen separado).
*4 *Pour écouter le son de lecture des disques lors de l'utilisation du mode Dual Mode.*
Référez-vous à la page 33 du MANUEL D'INSTRUCTIONS (volume séparé).

After removing the monitor from the main unit, insert the blind cover into the main unit to prevent internal dust accumulation.

Después de desmontar el monitor de la unidad principal, inserte la cubierta ciega en la misma para evitar que se acumule polvo en su interior.

Après avoir séparé le moniteur de l'appareil principal, insérez cache sur l'appareil principal avant d'éviter toute accumulation de poussière à l'intérieur de l'appareil.



Hold
Sostener
Maintenez pressée

E Connecting the external amplifiers

You can connect amplifiers to upgrade surround system in the car compartment.

- Connect the PRE OUT terminals of the hideaway unit to the amplifier's line-in terminals.
- **Disconnect the speakers from the hideaway unit, connect them to the amplifier. Leave the speaker leads of the unit unused.**

E Conexión de los amplificadores externos

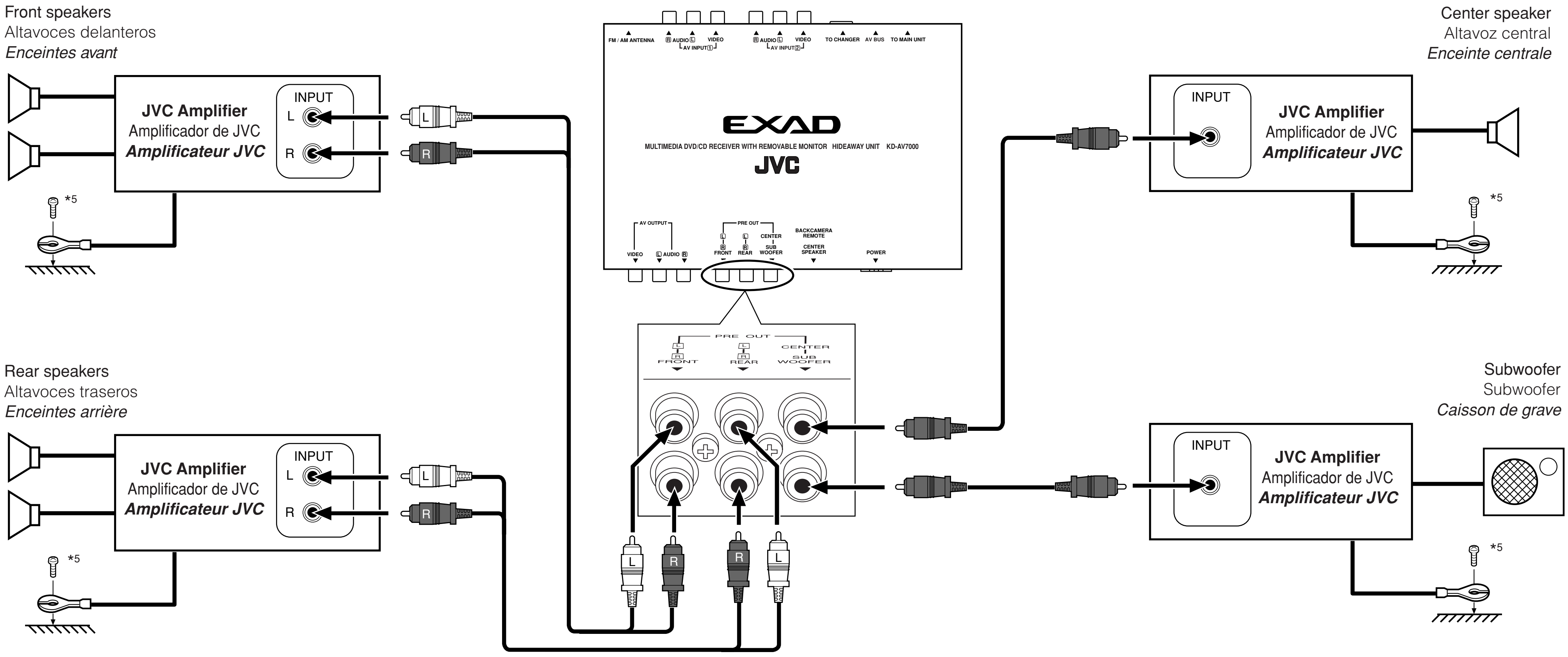
Podrá conectar amplificadores para mejorar el sistema de sonido envolvente del habitáculo de su automóvil.

- Conecte los terminales PRE OUT de la unidad oculta a los terminales de entrada de línea del amplificador.
- **Desconecte los altavoces de la unidad oculta y conéctelos al amplificador. Deje los conductores de los altavoces de la unidad sin usar.**

E Connexion d'amplificateurs externes

Vous pouvez connecter des amplificateurs pour donner plus de puissance au système Surround dans la cabine de votre voiture.

- *Connectez les prises PRE OUT de l'appareil satellite aux prises d'entrée de ligne des amplificateurs.*
- ***Déconnectez les enceintes de l'appareil satellite et connectez-les aux amplificateurs. Laissez les fils d'enceintes de l'appareil inutilisés.***


Front speakers
Altavoces delanteros
Enceintes avant
JVC Amplifier
Amplificador de JVC
Amplificateur JVC
INPUT
L
R
*5
Rear speakers
Altavoces traseros
Enceintes arrière
FM / AM ANTENNA
Ⓡ AUDIO Ⓛ
VIDEO
AV INPUT①
AV INPUT②
TO CHANGER
AV BUS
TO MAIN UNIT
EXAD
MULTIMEDIA DVD/CD RECEIVER WITH REMOVABLE MONITOR HIDEAWAY UNIT KD-AV7000
JVC
AV OUTPUT
Ⓛ AUDIO Ⓡ
PRE OUT
FRONT
REAR
CENTER
SUB WOOFER
BACKCAMERA REMOTE
CENTER SPEAKER
POWER
Center speaker
Altavoz central
Enceinte centrale
Subwoofer
Subwoofer
Caisson de grave

*5 Firmly attach the ground wire to the metallic body or to the chassis of the car—to the place uncoated with paint (if coated with paint, remove the paint before attaching the wire). Failure to do so may cause damage to the unit.

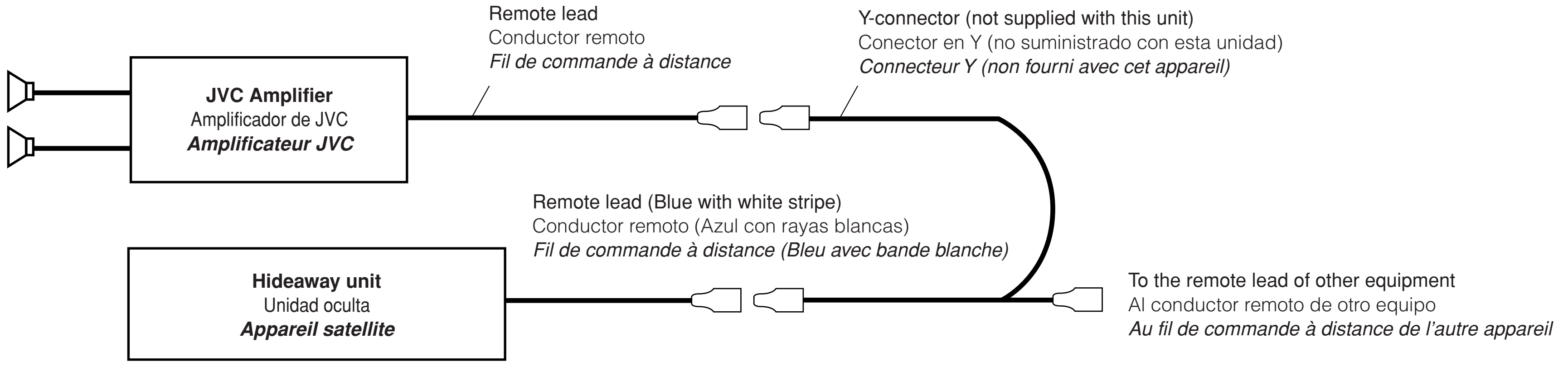
*5 Fije firmemente el cable de tierra a la carrocería metálica o al chasis—a un lugar no cubierto con pintura (si está cubierto con pintura, quítela antes de fijar el cable). De lo contrario, se podrían producir daños en la unidad.

*5 *Attachez solidement le fil de mise à la masse au châssis métallique de la voiture—à un endroit qui n'est pas recouvert de peinture (s'il est recouvert de peinture, enlevez d'abord la peinture avant d'attacher le fil). L'appareil peut être endommagé si cela n'est pas fait correctement.*

If you connect the remote lead (blue with white stripe) to the remote lead of the other equipment, they can be turned on and off automatically with this unit.

Si conecta el conductor remoto (azul con rayas blancas) al conductor remoto del otro equipo, podrán activarse y desactivarse automáticamente junto con esta unidad.

Si vous connectez le fil de commande à distance (bleu avec bande blanche) au fil de commande à distance de l'autre appareil, ils peuvent être mis sous et hors tension automatiquement, en même temps que cet appareil.


Remote lead
Conductor remoto
Fil de commande à distance
Y-connector (not supplied with this unit)
Conector en Y (no suministrado con esta unidad)
Connecteur Y (non fourni avec cet appareil)
JVC Amplifier
Amplificador de JVC
Amplificateur JVC
Remote lead (Blue with white stripe)
Conductor remoto (Azul con rayas blancas)
Fil de commande à distance (Bleu avec bande blanche)
Hideaway unit
Unidad oculta
Appareil satellite
To the remote lead of other equipment
Al conductor remoto de otro equipo
Au fil de commande à distance de l'autre appareil

F Connecting the back camera lead

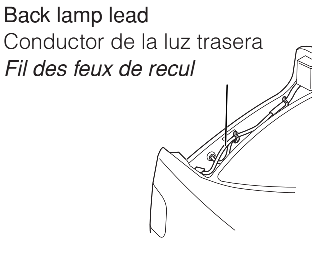
Locate the back lamp lead in the trunk.

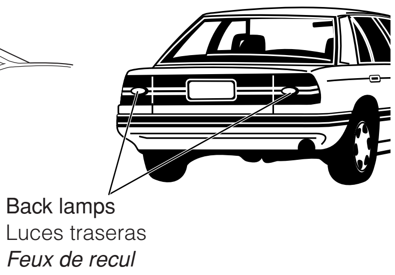
F Conexión del conductor de la cámara trasera

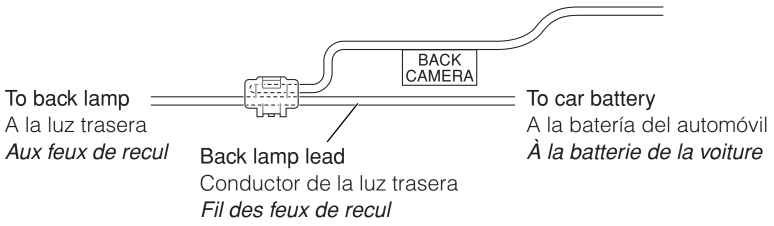
Localice el conductor de la luz trasera en el compartimiento de equipajes.

F Connexion du fil de la caméra de recul

Localisez le fil des feux de recul dans le coffre.


Back lamp lead
Conductor de la luz trasera
Fil des feux de recul


Back lamps
Luces traseras
Feux de recul


To back lamp
A la luz trasera
Aux feux de recul
BACK CAMERA
To car battery
A la batería del automóvil
À la batterie de la voiture
Back lamp lead
Conductor de la luz trasera
Fil des feux de recul

TROUBLESHOOTING

- **The fuse blows.**
  - * Are the red and black leads connected correctly?
- **Power cannot be turned on.**
  - * Is the yellow lead connected?
- **No sound from the speakers.**
  - * Is the speaker output lead short-circuited?
- **Sound is distorted.**
  - * Is the speaker output lead grounded?
  - * Are the "–" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?
- **Noise interfere with sounds.**
  - * Is the rear ground terminal connected to the car's chassis using shorter and thicker cords?
- **Unit becomes hot.**
  - * Is the speaker output lead grounded?
  - * Are the "–" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?

LOCALIZACION DE AVERIAS

- **El fusible se quema.**
  - * ¿Están los conductores rojo y negro correctamente conectados?
- **No es posible conectar la alimentación.**
  - * ¿Está el cable amarillo conectado?
- **No sale sonido de los altavoces.**
  - * ¿Está el cable de salida del altavoz cortocircuitado?
- **El sonido presenta distorsión.**
  - * ¿Está el cable de salida del altavoz conectado a masa?
  - * ¿Están los terminales "–" de los altavoces L y R conectados a una masa común?
- **Perturbación de ruido.**
  - * ¿El terminal de tierra trasero está conectado al chasis del automóvil utilizando los cordones más corto y más grueso?
- **La unidad se calienta.**
  - * ¿Está el cable de salida del altavoz conectado a masa?
  - * ¿Están los terminales "–" de los altavoces L y R conectados a una masa común?

EN CAS DE DIFFICULTES

- **Le fusible saute.**
  - * *Les fils rouge et noir sont-ils connectés correctement?*
- **L'appareil ne peut pas être mis sous tension.**
  - * *Le fil jaune est-il connecté?*
- **Pas de son des enceintes.**
  - * *Le fil de sortie d'enceinte est-il court-circuité?*
- **Le son est déformé.**
  - * *Le fil de sortie d'enceinte est-il à la masse?*
  - * *Les bornes "–" des enceintes gauche (L) et droite (R) sont-elles mises ensemble à la masse?*
- **Interférence avec les sons.**
  - * *La prise arrière de mise à la masse est-elle connectée au châssis de la voiture avec un cordon court et épais?*
- **L'appareil devient chaud.**
  - * *Le fil de sortie d'enceinte est-il à la masse?*
  - * *Les bornes "–" des enceintes gauche (L) et droite (R) sont-elles mises ensemble à la masse?*

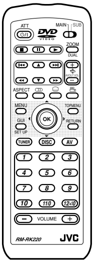
JVC

DVD RECEIVER WITH MONITOR
DVD-RECEIVER MiT MONITOR
RECEPTEUR DVD ET MONITOR
DVD-RECEIVER MET MONITOR

KD-AV7001

EXAD

Detachable


ATT
MAIN
SUB
ZOOM
DUAL
ASPECT
MENU
TOP MENU
OK
RETURN
SET UP
TUNER
DISC
AV
VOLUME
RM-RK220
JVC

7" WIDE TOUCH PANEL DISPLAY
EXAD
JVC
MULTIMEDIA DVD/CD RECEIVER WITH REMOVABLE MONITOR
KD-AV7001
JVC
VOLUME
SOURCE
MODE / DISP

MP3 · DIGITAL dts SURROUND · DOLBY DIGITAL PRO LOGIC II · COMPACT disc DIGITAL VIDEO · DVD VIDEO™ · R·D·S

- This unit is equipped with the display demonstration. To cancel it, see page 14.
- Dieses Gerät ist mit einer Demonstrationsfunktion für das Display ausgestattet. Auf Seite 14 wird beschrieben, wie Sie diese Demonstrationsfunktion deaktivieren können.
- Cet appareil est équipé d’une démonstration des affichages. Pour l’annuler, référez-vous à la page 14.
- Dit toestel heeft een display-demonstratiefunctie. Zie bladzijde 14 voor het annuleren van deze functie.

For installation and connections, refer to the separate manual.
Für den Einbau und die Anschlüsse siehe das eigenständige Handbuch.
Pour l’installation et les raccordements, se référer au manuel séparé.
Bijzonderheden over de installatie en aansluiting van het apparaat vindt u in de desbetreffende handleiding.

INSTRUCTIONS
BEDIENUNGSANLEITUNG
MANUEL D’INSTRUCTIONS
GEBRUIKSAANWIJZING

LVT1172-001A
[E]

ENGLISH
DEUTSCH
FRANÇAIS
NEDERLANDS

Thank you for purchasing a JVC product.
Please read all instructions carefully before operation, to ensure your complete understanding and to obtain the best possible performance from the unit.

IMPORTANT FOR LASER PRODUCTS

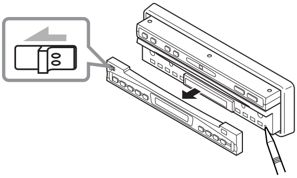
1. CLASS 1 LASER PRODUCT
2. **CAUTION:** Do not open the top cover. There are no user serviceable parts inside the unit; leave all servicing to qualified service personnel.
3. **CAUTION:** Visible and invisible laser radiation when open and interlock failed or defeated. Avoid direct exposure to beam.
4. REPRODUCTION OF LABEL: CAUTION LABEL, PLACED OUTSIDE THE UNIT.

CAUTION : Visible and invisible laser radiation when open and interlock failed or defeated. AVOID DIRECT EXPOSURE TO BEAM. (e)	**ADVARSEL :** Synlig og usynlig laserstråling når maskinen er åben eller interlocken fejler. Undgå direkte eksponering til stråling. (d)	**VARNING :** Synlig och osynlig laserstrålning när den öppnas och spärren är urkopplad. Betrakta ej strålen. (s)	**VARO :** Avattaessa ja suojalukitus ohitettuna tai viallisena olet alttiina näkyvälle ja näkymättömälle lasersäteilylle. Vältä säteen kohdistumista suoraan itseesi. (f)

After installing the unit, reset it before use following the procedure below:

How to reset your unit

Detach the control panel (see page 91), then press the reset button on the main unit using a ball-point pen or a similar tool.
This will reset the built-in microcomputer.



Your preset adjustments—such as preset channels or sound adjustments—will also be erased.

- *The monitor will go into its place if opened.*

For security reasons, a numbered ID card is provided with this unit, and the same ID number is imprinted on the unit’s chassis. Keep the card in a safe place, as it will help the authorities to identify your unit if stolen.

CAUTIONS:

- Do not insert any disc of unusual shape—like a heart or flower; otherwise, it will cause a malfunction.
- Do not expose discs to direct sunlight or any heat source or place them in a place subject to high temperature and humidity. Do not leave them in a car.

For safety....

- Do not raise the volume level too much, as this will block outside sounds, making driving dangerous.
- Stop the car before performing any complicated operations.

Temperature inside the car....

If you have parked the car for a long time in hot or cold weather, wait until the temperature in the car becomes normal before operating the unit.

WARNINGS

- **DO NOT install any unit in locations where;**
  - **– it may obstruct the steering wheel and gearshift lever operations, as this may result in a traffic accident.**
  - **– it may obstruct the operation of safety devices such as air bags, as this may result in a fatal accident.**
  - **– it may obstruct visibility.**
- **DO NOT operate any unit while manipulating the steering wheel, as this may result in a traffic accident.**
- **The driver must not watch the monitor while driving.**
  If the driver watches the monitor while driving, it may lead to carelessness and cause an accident.
- **If you need to operate the main unit while driving, be sure to look ahead carefully or you may be involved in a traffic accident.**
- **If the parking brake is not engaged, "DRIVER MUST NOT WATCH THE MONITOR WHILE DRIVING." appears on the monitor, and no playback picture will be shown.**
  - **– This warning appears only when the parking brake wire is connected to the parking brake system built in the car (refer to the Installation/Connection Manual).**

CAUTIONS on the monitor

- The monitor built in this receiver has been produced with high precision, but it may have some ineffective dots. This is inevitable and is not malfunction.
- Do not expose the monitor to direct sunlight.
- When the temperature is very cold or very hot...
  - – Chemical changes occur inside, causing it to malfunction.
  - – Pictures may not appear clearly or may move slowly. Pictures may not be synchronized with the sound or the picture quality may decline in such environments.

CAUTION on Volume Setting:

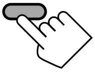
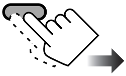
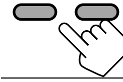
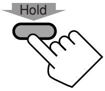
Discs produce very little noise compared with other sources. If the volume level is adjusted for the tuner, for example, the speakers may be damaged by the sudden increase in the output level. Therefore, lower the volume before playing a disc and adjust it as required during playback.

Important!

How to read this manual:

To make the explanations as simple and easy-to-understand as possible, we have adapted the following methods:

- **Some related tips and notes are explained later in the sections "More about This Receiver" (see page 81), but not in the same section explaining the operations.** If you want to know more about the functions, or if you have a doubt about the function, go to the section and you will find the answers.
- Operations are explained only with the illustrations as follows:

	Press briefly.
	Press repeatedly.
	Press either one.
	Press and hold until your desired response begins.

Contents

How to reset your unit 2
Important! (How to read this manual) 3
Introduction—Playable Discs 5
Quick Guide—How to Use the Controls 6
Remote controller 6
Main unit (front) 8
Preparation (Remote Controller—RM-RK220) 9
Operation Methods 10
Basic Operations 12
Setting the clock 13
Changing the source 14
Changing the graphic screen 14
Changing the touch panel color 14
Displaying the level meter 15
Radio Operations 16
Listening to the Radio 17
Storing stations in memory 18
Displaying the preset list 19
Searching for your favorite programme—PTY Search 20
Using the Standby Reception 21
RDS Setup—RDS SET 23
DVD/VCD Operations 25
CD/MP3 Operations 26
Basic Disc Operations 27
Changing the aspect ratio 29
Prohibiting disc ejection 29
Selecting MP3 folders 29
Operating the disc menu 30
Replaying the previous scenes 31
Zooming in 31
Selecting subtitles 32
Selecting audio languages 32
Selecting multi-angle views 33
Locating a folder/track using the list 34
Displaying the disc text information 35
Displaying the time information 35
Selecting playback modes 35
Searching for scenes or songs 36
Dual Mode Operations 38
Selecting the sources 38
Adjusting AV OUTPUT volume 39
Surround Mode Operations 40
Introducing surround/DSP mode 41
Turning on and off the surround/DSP mode 42
Sound Modes (iEQ) Operations 44
Selecting preset sound modes 45
Storing your own sound modes 45
Other Sound Adjustments 46
Monitor Adjustments 47
Initial Setup—DVD MENU 48
Initial Setup—MONITOR 50
Initial Setup—ON SCREEN 52
Initial Setup—AUDIO MENU/PSM 54
Other Main Functions 58
Assigning titles to the sources 58
Changing the monitor position/angle 60
Removing the monitor 60
CD Changer Operations 61
Basic CD Changer Operations 62
Advanced CD Changer Operations 63
Selecting disc/folders/tracks 63
Locating a disc/folder/track using the list 63
Displaying the disc text information 64
Selecting playback modes 65
Searching for songs 66
External Component Operations 67
TV Tuner Operations 68
Watching TV programs 69
Storing stations in memory 69
Displaying the preset list 71
DAB Tuner Operations 72
Listening to the DAB Tuner 73
Selecting ensembles and services 74
Storing services in memory 74
Displaying the preset list 75
Displaying the DAB text 76
Using the Standby Reception 76
Using Announcement Standby Reception 77
DAB Setup—DAB SET 78
Maintenance 80
More about This Receiver 81
Troubleshooting 86
Additional Information 88
Specifications 90

Introduction—Playable Discs

Discs you can play

You can play back the following discs on this unit:

- DVD Video: whose video format is PAL or NTSC and whose region code is "2."
  –DVD-Rs and DVD-RWs recorded in the DVD-Video format can also be played (see page 82).
- Video CD (VCD)/Audio CD
- MP3: CD-Rs or CD-RWs including MP3 files with the file extension code <mp3>. They must be recorded in the format compliant with ISO 9660 Level 1, ISO 9660 Level 2, Romeo, and Joliet.

On some discs, the actual operations may be different from what is explained in this manual.

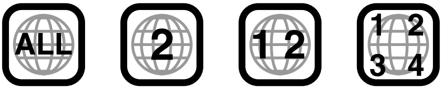
The following discs cannot be played back

DVD Audio, DVD-ROM, DVD-RAM, DVD-RW recorded in the DVD-VR format, CD-ROM, CD-I (CD-I Ready), Photo CD, etc.

- Playing back these discs will generate noise and damage the speakers.

** Note on Region Code*

DVD players and DVD Video discs have their own Region Code numbers. This unit can only play back DVD discs whose Region Code numbers include "2."



Examples:

If you insert a DVD Video disc of an incorrect Region Code

"REGION CODE ERROR!" appears on the monitor.

- *"DVD Logo" is a trademark of DVD Format/Logo Licensing Corporation registered in the US, Japan and other countries.*

DVD Video—digital audio formats

The System can play back the following digital audio formats.

Linear PCM: Uncompressed digital audio, the same format used for CDs and most studio masters.

Dolby Digital *: Compressed digital audio, developed by Dolby Laboratories, which enables multi-channel encode to create the realistic surround sound.

DTS ** (Digital Theater Systems): Compressed digital audio, developed by Digital Theater Systems, Inc., which enables multi-channel like Dolby Digital. As the compression ratio is lower than for Dolby Digital, it provides wider dynamic range and better separation.

MPEG Multichannel: Another compressed digital audio which also enables multi-channel encode to create the realistic surround sound. However, this System downmix the multi-channel singnals into 2 channels (decoded PCM) and play it back.

This product incorporates copyright protection technology that is protected by U.S. patents and other intellectual property rights. Use of this copyright protection technology must be authorized by Macrovision, and is intended for home and other limited viewing uses only unless otherwise authorized by Macrovision. Reverse engineering or disassembly is prohibited.

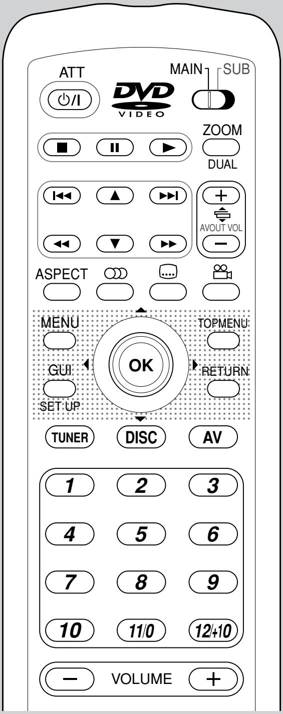
---

* *Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. "Dolby", "Pro Logic", and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.*

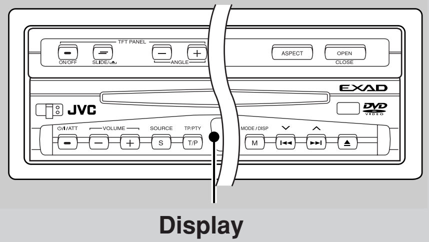
** *"DTS" and "DTS Digital Surround" are registered trademarks of Digital Theater Systems, Inc.*

Quick Guide—How to Use the Controls

Remote controller


ATT
MAIN
SUB
ZOOM
DUAL
AVOUT VOL
ASPECT
MENU
TOPMENU
OK
GUI
RETURN
SET UP
TUNER
DISC
AV
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11/0
12/+10
VOLUME

Main unit


TFT PANEL
ON/OFF
SLIDE
ANGLE
ASPECT
OPEN
CLOSE
EXAD
JVC
ATT
VOLUME
SOURCE
TP/PTY
MODE / DISP
Display

Remote controller

General operations

Buttons	To do:
ATT ⏻/I	Turn on the main unit.
	▨ Turn off the main unit.
	Attenuate sounds.
TUNER	▨ Select “TUNER” and “DAB.”
DISC	Select “DISC” and “CD-CH.”
AV	Select external components: TV → AV1 → AV2 →
– VOLUME +	Adjust the volume.
MAIN SUB	Set the main or sub-operation for Dual Mode. *1
ZOOM DUAL	▨ Turn on/off Dual Mode.
+ AVOUT VOL –	Adjust the monitor angle (with MAIN/SUB set MAIN).
	Adjust the AV output level (with MAIN/SUB set SUB).
ASPECT	Change the aspect ratio.
	▨ Display the monitor adjustment screen.
GUI SET UP	Display and erase GUI screen.
	▨ Display Setup Menus.
OK	Change menu items.
	Confirm.

▨ : functions if pressed and held.

---

*1 *When using Dual Mode, the remote controller operates either main or sub source depending on the MAIN/SUB setting.*

*2 *Only for MP3*

*3 *While playing a DVD, chapter is selected; on the other hands, title is selected before or after playback.*

Tuner operations

Buttons	To do:
TUNER	Select the band.
⏮ ⏭	Start Auto Search.
	Start Manual Search.
▲ ▼	Change preset numbers.
1 2 3 4 5 6	Select preset numbers directly.

Disc operations

Buttons	To do:
▶	Play.
⏸	Pause.
■	Stop.
⏮ ⏭	Select chapters/tracks.
	Search.
▲ ▼	Selects folders. *2
← OK then OK ↑↓	
OK → then OK ↑↓	Select tracks. *2
◀◀ ▶▶	Search.
○○○	Select audio language.
💬	Select subtitle language.
🎥	Select view angle.
ZOOM DUAL	Zoom the picture.
MENU TOPMENU	Display disc menu.
↑ ← OK → ↓	Change menu items.
	Confirm.
RETURN	Return to the previous screen while operating the disc menu.

Disc operations—continued

Buttons	To do:
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11/0 12/+10	Select title/chapter/track number. *3

CD changer operations

Buttons	To do:
▲ ▼	Select folders. *2
⏮ ⏭	Select tracks.
	Search.
↑ OK ↓	Change discs.
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11/0 12/+10	Select disc numbers.

TV tuner operations

Buttons	To do:
⏮ ⏭	Start Auto Search.
	Start Manual Search.
▲ ▼	Change preset channel numbers.
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11/0 12/+10	Select preset channel numbers.

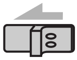
DAB Tuner operations

Buttons	To do:
TUNER	Select the band.
⏮ ⏭	Start Auto Search.
	Start Manual Search.
◀◀ ▶▶	Select services.
▲ ▼	Change preset numbers.
1 2 3 4 5 6	Select preset numbers directly.

Main unit (front)

▢ : functions if pressed and held.

General operations

Buttons	To do:
⏻/I/ATT ▭	Turn on the main unit.
	Turn off the main unit.
	Attenuate sounds.
SOURCE S	Change the sources.
VOLUME − +	Adjust the volume.
MODE/DISP M	Change the display information.
	Detach the control panel.

Tuner operations

Buttons	To do:
SOURCE S	Select the band.
∨ ⏮ ∧ ⏭	Start Auto Search.
	Start Manual Search.
MODE/DISP M	Change FM reception mode.
TP/PTY T/P	Turn on/off TA Standby Reception.
	Turn on/off PTY Standby Reception.

Disc operations

Buttons	To do:
⏏	Eject the disc.
∨ ⏮ ∧ ⏭	Select chapters/tracks.
	Search.
MODE/DISP M then ∨ ⏮ ∧ ⏭	Display “FOLDER” → select folders. [*1]

CD changer operations

Buttons	To do:
∨ ⏮ ∧ ⏭	Select tracks.
	Search.
MODE/DISP M then ∨ ⏮ ∧ ⏭	(once): Display “DISC” → select discs. (twice): Display “FOLDER” → select folders.[*1]

TV tuner operations

Buttons	To do:
∨ ⏮ ∧ ⏭	Start Auto Search.
	Start Manual Search.

DAB Tuner operations

Buttons	To do:
SOURCE S	Select the band.
∨ ⏮ ∧ ⏭	Start Auto Search.
	Start Manual Search.
MODE/DISP M	Change Search Mode (Ensemble/Service).
TP/PTY T/P	Turn on/off TA Standby Reception.
	Turn on/off PTY Standby Reception.

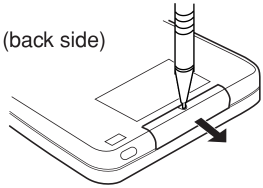
Monitor operations

Buttons	To do:
▭ ON/OFF	Turn on the monitor.
	Turn off the monitor.
OPEN CLOSE	Open the monitor. (See page 60.)
	Close the monitor.
SLIDE/⏏	Slide in/out the monitor.
	Remove the monitor.
− + ANGLE	Adjust the monitor angle. (See page 60.)
ASPECT	Change the aspect ratio.
	Display the monitor adjustment screen.

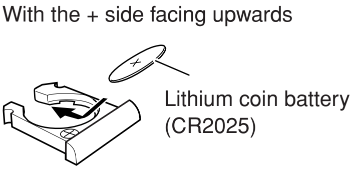
[*1] *Only for MP3*

Preparation (Remote Controller—RM-RK220)

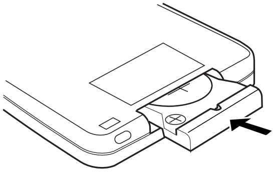
1



2



3



CAUTION:

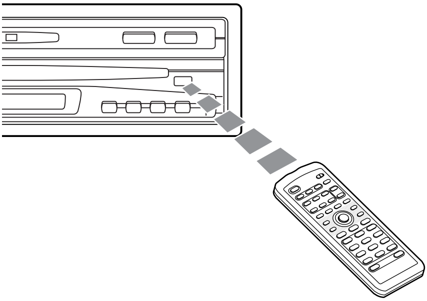
DO NOT leave the remote controller in a place (such as dashboards) exposed to direct sunlight for a long time. Otherwise, it may be damaged.

This receiver is equipped with the steering wheel remote control function.
If your car is equipped with the steering wheel remote controller, you can operate this receiver using the controller.

- See the Installation/Connection Manual (separate volume) for connection to utilize this function.

WARNINGS on the battery:

- Store the battery in a place where children cannot reach. If a child accidentally swallows the battery, consult a doctor immediately.
- Do not recharge, short, disassemble, or heat the battery or dispose of it in a fire. These behaviors may cause the battery to be overheated, crack or fire.
- Do not leave the battery with other metallic materials. Doing this may cause the battery to give off heat, crack, or start a fire.
- When throwing away or saving the battery, wrap it in tape and insulate; otherwise, the battery may be overheated, crack or fire.
- Do not poke the battery with tweezers or similar tools. Doing this may cause the battery to be overheated, crack or fire.



DO NOT expose the remote sensor on the control panel to strong light (direct sunlight or artificial lighting).

Operation Methods

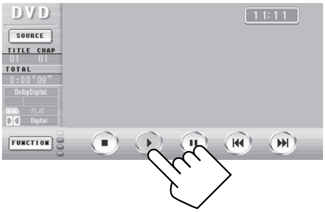
You can operate this unit using three types of operation methods.

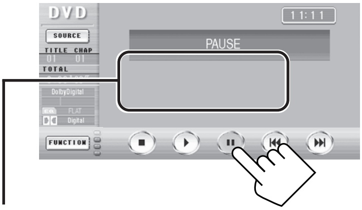
- This instruction manual explains the operations mainly using the Touch Panel Icons shown on the monitor.

- **Using the Touch Panel Icons directly** (See "BLIND CONTROL" on page 51.)

Press the Touch Panel Icons with your finger directly (if you wear a glove, take it off).

Examples: The following is just an example. On the actual monitor screen, the playback picture is shown (while video source is played back).


DVD
11:11
SOURCE
TITLE CHAP
01 01
TOTAL
0:00'09"
DolbyDigital
FLAT
Digital
FUNCTION

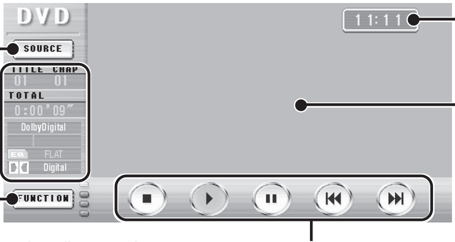

DVD
11:11
SOURCE
PAUSE
TITLE CHAP
01 01
TOTAL
DolbyDigital
FLAT
Digital
FUNCTION

Do not operate the Touch Panel using a ball-point pen or similar tool with the sharp tip (it may damage the Touch Panel).

To erase and display the Touch Panel icons and indications, press the center portion of the monitor screen.

- You can erase them only while viewing the playback pictures.

Ex. DVD playback


DVD
11:11
SOURCE
TITLE CHAP
01 01
TOTAL
0:00'09"
DolbyDigital
FLAT
Digital
FUNCTION

Clock time indication

Changes the source.

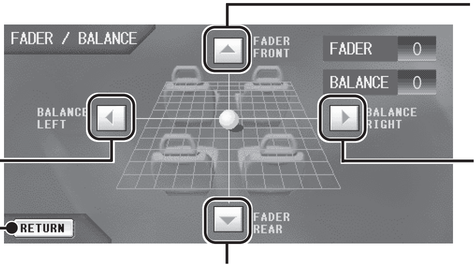
Picture view window

Source and play mode information

Changes the function modes (icons shown to the right change accordingly).

Icons shown on this column change each time you press FUNCTION.

Ex. Fader/balance adjustment


FADER / BALANCE
FADER FRONT
FADER 0
BALANCE 0
BALANCE LEFT
BALANCE RIGHT
FADER REAR
RETURN

Operation icon (FADER FRONT)

Operation icon (BALANCE LEFT)

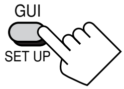
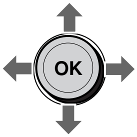
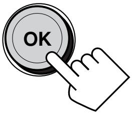
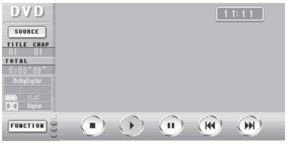
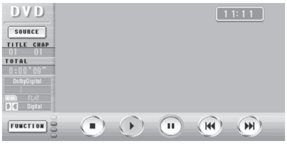
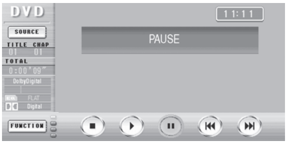
Operation icon (BALANCE RIGHT)

Returns to the previous screen.

Operation icon (FADER REAR)

- **Using the Graphic User Interface (GUI) from the remote controller**
  You can use the Graphic User Interface in the same way as you touch the panel icons.

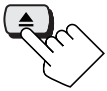
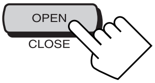
Examples:

1 	**2** 	**3** 
Display GUI on the monitor (the cursor—yellow frame—appears around the currently selected icon). • While one of the video sources is selected, the GUI function turns on and off at a press of the button.  DVD 11:11 SOURCE TITLE CHAP 01 01 TOTAL 0:00'09" DolbyDigital FLAT Digital FUNCTION	Move the cursor to an icon you want.  DVD 11:11 SOURCE TITLE CHAP 01 01 TOTAL 0:00'09" DolbyDigital FLAT Digital FUNCTION	Confirm.  DVD 11:11 PAUSE SOURCE TITLE CHAP 01 01 TOTAL 0:00'09" DolbyDigital FLAT Digital FUNCTION

To exit from GUI operation mode, press GUI again so that the yellow frame disappears.

- **Using the buttons and controls directly**
  Some operations are only performed by pressing the buttons directly.
  You can also use the buttons and controls on the main unit and remote controller if they have the same or similar name or marks as shown on the touch panel.

Examples:

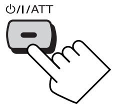
 To eject a loaded disc.	 To eject the monitor or store it in the compartment.

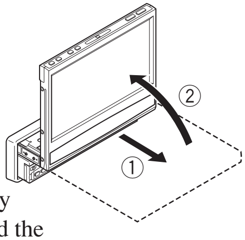
Basic Operations

CAUTION on the monitor :
Do not open or close the monitor by hand.
Do not apply any force to the monitor while it is moving.
Such a behavior may damage the monitor loading mechanism.

For turning on the power, use the buttons on the main unit and the remote controller.

1 Turn on the power

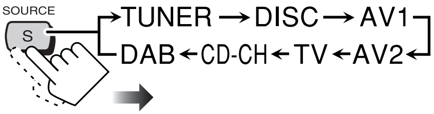




"WAITING" scrolls on the display of the main unit (and the monitor comes out *).

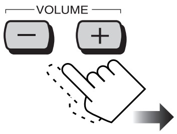
- When the monitor comes out, power comes on to the monitor even if you have turned it off.
- For the space required for the monitor ejection, see page 91.

2 Select the source

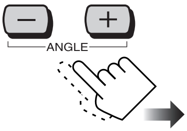


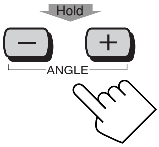
- **DISC**: If a disc is not in the loading slot, you cannot select "DISC" as the source to play.
- **CD-CH/TV/DAB**: Without connecting each component, you cannot select it for the source.

3 Adjust the volume



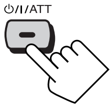
To change the monitor angle:





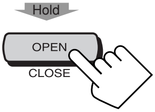
- See page 60 for details.

To drop the volume in a moment (ATT):



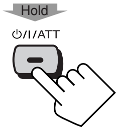
To restore the sound, press it again.

To store the monitor in place:

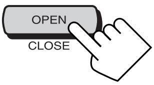


- When the unit is turned off, the power is temporarily turned on.

To turn off the power:



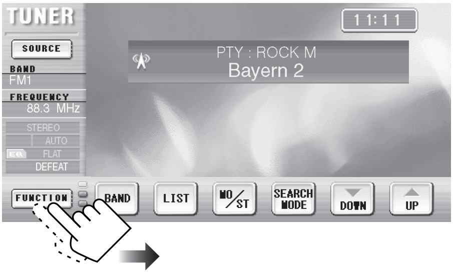
* *This depends on the "AUTO OPEN/ CLOSE" setting (see page 51).*
If the monitor does not come out...



Setting the clock

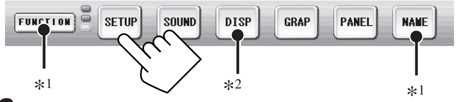
You can also set the clock system to 24 hours or 12 hours.

1 **While playing any source...**

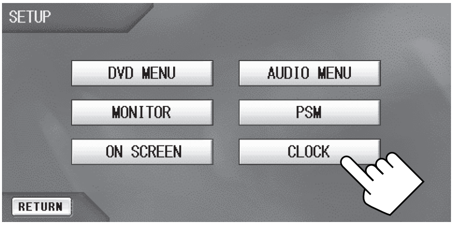

TUNER
11:11
SOURCE
BAND
FM1
FREQUENCY
88.3 MHz
STEREO
AUTO
EQ
FLAT
DEFEAT
PTY : ROCK M
Bayern 2
FUNCTION
BAND
LIST
MO/ST
SEARCH MODE
DOWN
UP

- If the touch panel icons are not shown on the monitor, touch the center portion of the monitor screen.

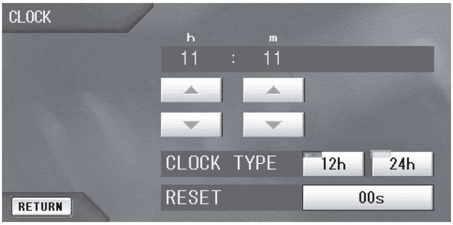
2


FUNCTION
SETUP
SOUND
DISP
GRAP
PANEL
NAME
*1
*2
*1

3

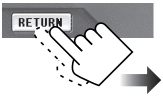

SETUP
DVD MENU
AUDIO MENU
MONITOR
PSM
ON SCREEN
CLOCK
RETURN

4 **Set the clock time.**


CLOCK
h
m
11 : 11
CLOCK TYPE
12h
24h
RESET
00s
RETURN

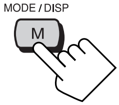
- Press 00s to start the clock time counting exactly from 00 second.

5



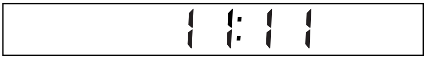
Exit

To display the clock time:

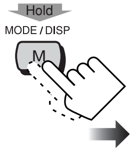


When the unit is turned off, the clock time is displayed on the display of the main unit for a while.

On the main unit



When the unit is turned on...


Hold
MODE / DISP
M

Each time you press and hold the button, the information shown on the display of the main unit changes.

Information shown on the display differs according to the selected source.

TUNER:	Frequency → Clock → Band&Preset no. →
DISC:	Play time → Clock → Title/Chapter/Folder/Track no. →
AV1/AV2:	Source name → Clock →
TV:	Channel → Clock → TV&Preset no. →
CD-CH:	Elapsed time → Clock → Disc no. → Folder/Track no. →
DAB:	Channel no. → Clock → Band&Preset no. →

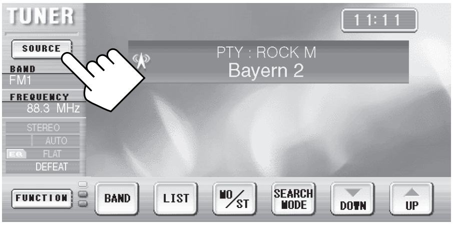
---

*1 It does not appear for some sources.

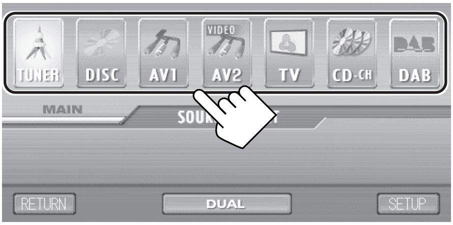
*2 It will be shaded when not available.

Changing the source SOURCE

1 **While playing any source...**


TUNER
11:11
SOURCE
BAND
FM1
FREQUENCY
88.3 MHz
STEREO
AUTO
EQ
FLAT
DEFEAT
PTY : ROCK M
Bayern 2
FUNCTION
BAND
LIST
MO/ST
SEARCH MODE
DOWN
UP

2


TUNER
DISC
AV1
VIDEO
AV2
TV
CD-CH
DAB
MAIN
SOU
RETURN
DUAL
SETUP

The current source is highlighted.

⇩

Newly selected source operation screen appears.

Other icons	Reference pages
MAIN	See page 38.
DUAL	See page 38.
SETUP	See pages 48 – 57.
RETURN	Returns to the previous screen.

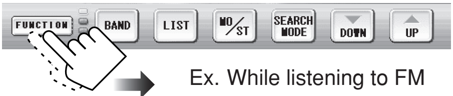
Changing the graphic screen GRAP

You can select one of eight graphics in the picture view window.

- See page 88 for each graphic screen.

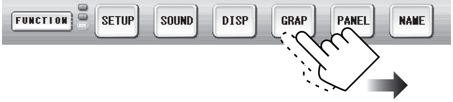
> *When shipped from the factory, display demonstration has been activated, and starts automatically when no operations are done for about 30 seconds (except while playing a DVD/ VCD)..*
>
> *To cancel it, select one of the graphic screen.*

1 **While playing any source...**


FUNCTION
BAND
LIST
MO/ST
SEARCH MODE
DOWN
UP

Ex. While listening to FM broadcast.

2

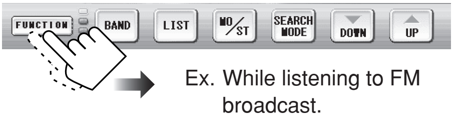

FUNCTION
SETUP
SOUND
DISP
GRAP
PANEL
NAME

- To view the playback picture from any video source, select the screen where the actual playback pictures are shown.

Changing the touch panel color PANEL

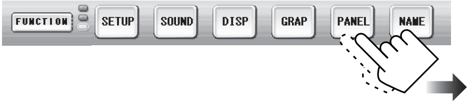
You can change the touch panel color (excluding the picture view window) by selecting from four preset color—blue, silver, red, and black.

1 **While playing any source...**


FUNCTION
BAND
LIST
MO/ST
SEARCH MODE
DOWN
UP

Ex. While listening to FM broadcast.

2

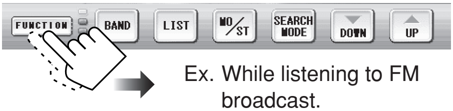

FUNCTION
SETUP
SOUND
DISP
GRAP
PANEL
NAME

Displaying the level meter DISP

You can display the level meter on the graphic screen, by selecting from four preset patterns.

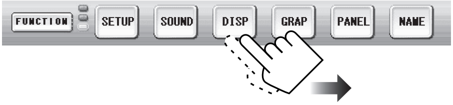
- While viewing the playback picture or display demonstration, you cannot show the level meter.

1 **While playing any source...**



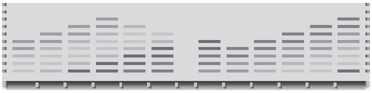
Ex. While listening to FM broadcast.

2

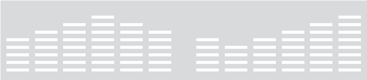


The following level meters are displayed in sequence.

Level meter 1

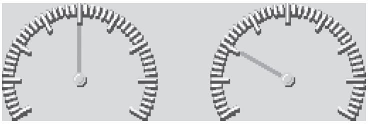


Level meter 2

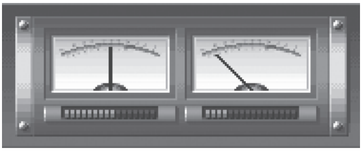


No level meter will appear when no sound comes in.

Level meter 3

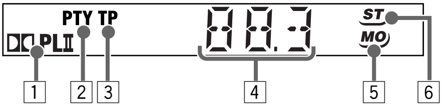


Level meter 4



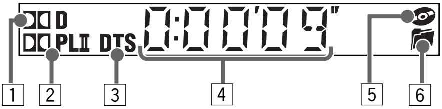
How to read the display of the main unit:

While listening to radio (FM/AM/DAB):



1 Lights up when Dolby Pro Logic II is activated (see page 41).
2 Lights up or flashes when PTY Standby Reception is in use (see pages 22 and 76).
3 Lights up or flashes when TA Standby Reception is in use (see pages 21 and 76).
4 Main information—Frequency/Band/Preset no.
5 MO indicator lights when FM reception mode is “MONO.”
6 ST indicator lights while receiving an FM stereo broadcast.

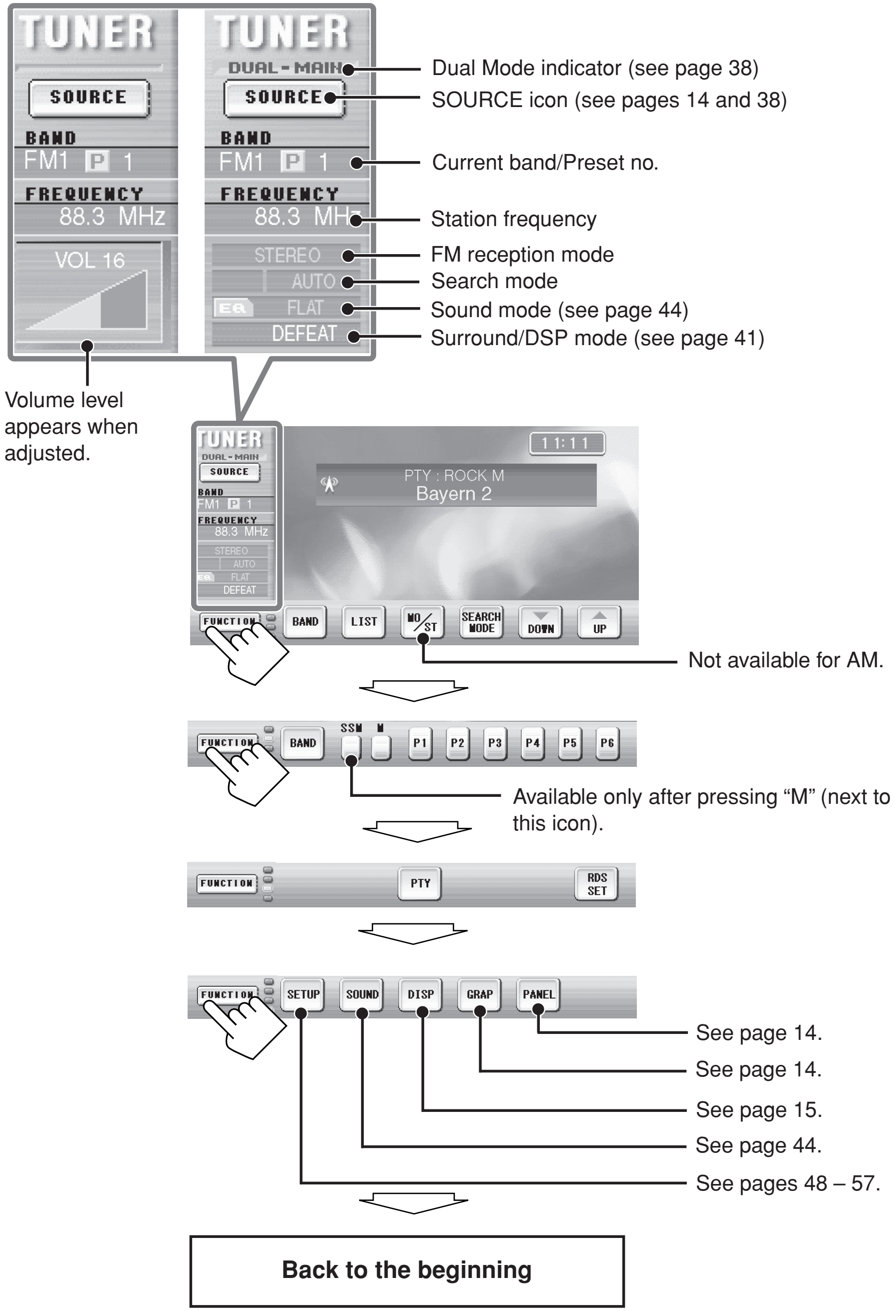
While playing a disc:



1 Lights up when Dolby Digital signal is detected (see page 41).
2 Lights up when Dolby Pro Logic II is activated (see page 41).
3 Lights up when DTS signal is detected (see page 41).
4 Main information—Play time/Title no./Chapter no./Folder no./Track no.
5 Lights up when the disc is detected.
6 Lights up when an MP3 CD is detected.

- You can dim the display and the buttons on the front panel.
  For details see page 51 and also the Installation/Connection Manual (separate volume).

Radio Operations


TUNER
SOURCE
BAND
FM1 P 1
FREQUENCY
88.3 MHz
VOL 16
TUNER
DUAL-MAIN
SOURCE
BAND
FM1 P 1
FREQUENCY
88.3 MHz
STEREO
AUTO
EQ
FLAT
DEFEAT
11:11
PTY : ROCK M
Bayern 2
FUNCTION
BAND
LIST
MO/ST
SEARCH MODE
DOWN
UP
FUNCTION
BAND
SSM
M
P1
P2
P3
P4
P5
P6
FUNCTION
PTY
RDS SET
FUNCTION
SETUP
SOUND
DISP
GRAP
PANEL

Dual Mode indicator (see page 38)

SOURCE icon (see pages 14 and 38)

Current band/Preset no.

Station frequency

FM reception mode

Search mode

Sound mode (see page 44)

Surround/DSP mode (see page 41)

Volume level appears when adjusted.

Not available for AM.

Available only after pressing “M” (next to this icon).

See page 14.

See page 14.

See page 15.

See page 44.

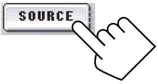
See pages 48 – 57.

Back to the beginning

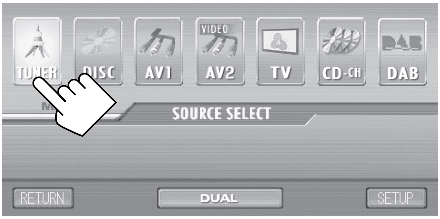
Listening to the Radio

- To tune in to a station using Preset Search, first store your favorite stations into memory (6 stations for each band: see page 18).

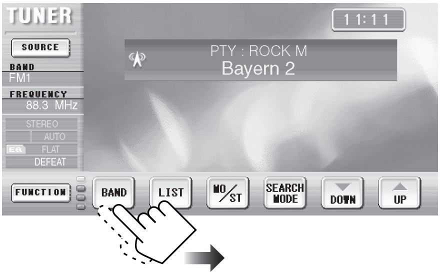
1 Select the Tuner



then


TUNER
DISC
AV1
VIDEO
AV2
TV
CD-CH
DAB
SOURCE SELECT
RETURN
DUAL
SETUP

2 Select the band (FM/AM)


TUNER
SOURCE
11:11
STEREO
AUTO
EQ
FLAT
DEFEAT
FUNCTION
BAND
LIST
MO/ST
SEARCH MODE
DOWN
UP

BAND FM1

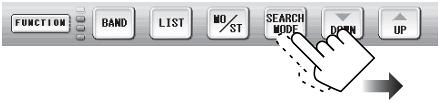
FREQUENCY 88.3 MHz

PTY : ROCK M

Bayern 2

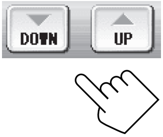
This receiver has three FM bands (FM1, FM2, FM3). You can use any one of them to listen to an FM broadcast.

3 Select Search Mode


FUNCTION
BAND
LIST
MO/ST
SEARCH MODE
DOWN
UP

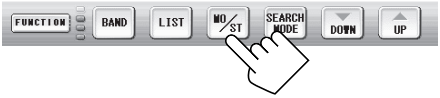
AUTO:	To start Auto Search.
MANUAL:	To start Manual Search.
PRESET:	To select preset station numbers (only possible after storing stations in memory).

4 Tune in to a station



- **For Auto Search,** press either icon once. “Auto Search” begins.
  When a station is received, searching stops.
- **For Manual Search,** press either icon repeatedly (or hold) until a station you want is selected.
- **For Preset Search,** press either icon repeatedly until a preset number you want is selected.

When an FM stereo broadcast is hard to receive:


FUNCTION
BAND
LIST
MO/ST
SEARCH MODE
DOWN
UP

FM reception mode changes to “MONO.” Each time you press the icon, monaural reception mode turns on and off.

- When FM reception mode is “MONO,” reception improves, but stereo effect will be lost.

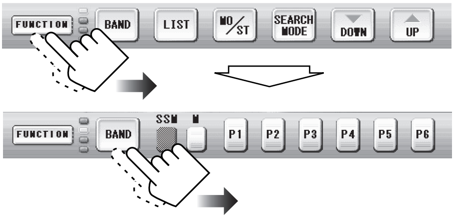
Storing stations in memory

You can preset 6 stations for each band.

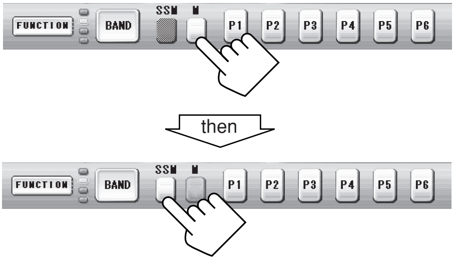
FM station automatic presetting—SSM (Strong-station Sequential Memory)

- This functions only for FM bands.

1 **Select the FM band (FM1 – FM3) you want to store FM stations into.**


FUNCTION
BAND
LIST
MO/ST
SEARCH MODE
DOWN
UP
FUNCTION
BAND
SSM
M
P1
P2
P3
P4
P5
P6

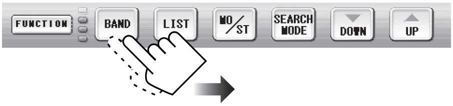
2 **Start SSM.**


FUNCTION
BAND
SSM
M
P1
P2
P3
P4
P5
P6
then

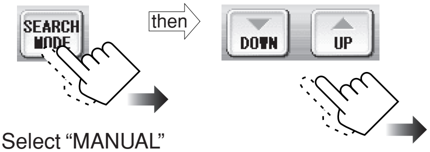
Local FM stations with the strongest signals are searched and stored automatically in the selected FM band.

Manual presetting

1 **Select the band (FM1 – FM3, and AM) you want to store a station into.**

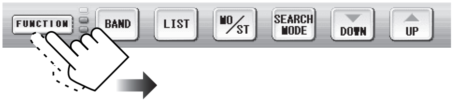

FUNCTION
BAND
LIST
MO/ST
SEARCH MODE
DOWN
UP

2 **Tune in to a station.**

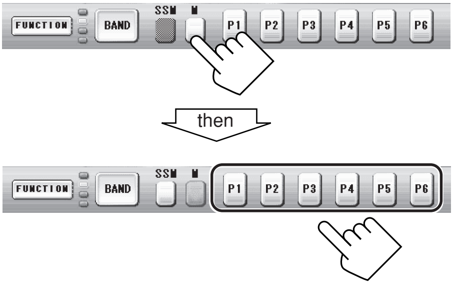

SEARCH MODE
then
DOWN
UP

Select "MANUAL" (or "AUTO").

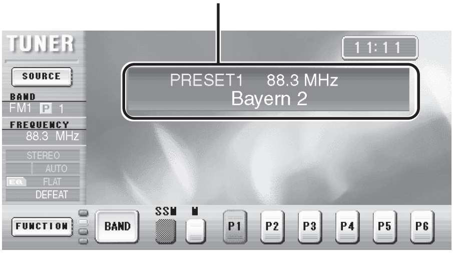
3


FUNCTION
BAND
LIST
MO/ST
SEARCH MODE
DOWN
UP

4 **Store the station into a preset number.**


FUNCTION
BAND
SSM
M
P1
P2
P3
P4
P5
P6
then

Preset station information will be displayed.

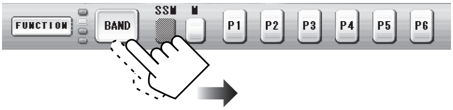

TUNER
11:11
SOURCE
BAND
FM1 P 1
FREQUENCY
88.3 MHz
STEREO
AUTO
EQ
FLAT
DEFEAT
FUNCTION
BAND
SSM
M
P1
P2
P3
P4
P5
P6

PRESET1 88.3 MHz
Bayern 2

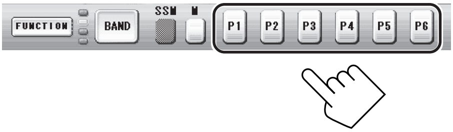
To tune in to a preset station

- See also “Listening to the Radio” on page 17.

1


FUNCTION
BAND
SSM
M
P1
P2
P3
P4
P5
P6

2

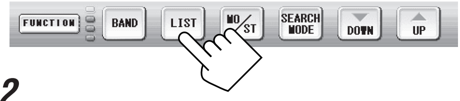

FUNCTION
BAND
SSM
M
P1
P2
P3
P4
P5
P6

Displaying the preset list LIST

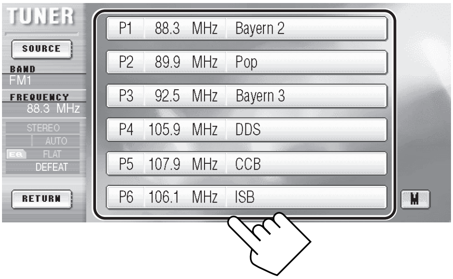
You can store and select the preset stations using the preset list on the monitor screen.

To select a preset station using the preset list

1


FUNCTION
BAND
LIST
MO/ST
SEARCH MODE
DOWN
UP

2

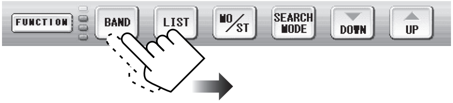

TUNER
SOURCE
BAND
FM1
FREQUENCY
88.3 MHz
STEREO
AUTO
EQ
FLAT
DEFEAT
RETURN
M

P1	88.3	MHz	Bayern 2
P2	89.9	MHz	Pop
P3	92.5	MHz	Bayern 3
P4	105.9	MHz	DDS
P5	107.9	MHz	CCB
P6	106.1	MHz	ISB

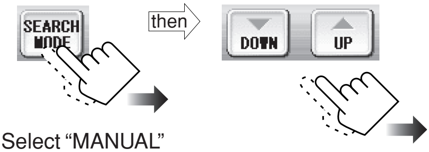
- Preset numbers, station frequencies and programme station (PS) names are shown on the list.

To store a station using the preset list

1 **Select the band (FM1 – FM3, and AM) you want to store a station into.**

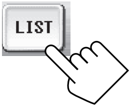

FUNCTION
BAND
LIST
MO/ST
SEARCH MODE
DOWN
UP

2 **Tune into a station.**

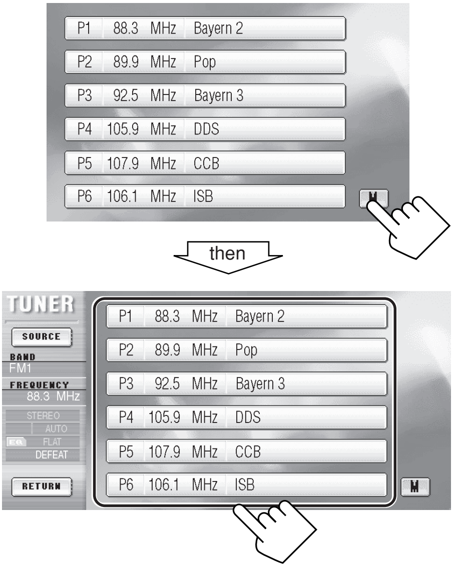

SEARCH MODE
then
DOWN
UP

Select “MANUAL” (or “AUTO”).

3



4 **Store the station into a preset number.**


M
then
TUNER
SOURCE
BAND
FM1
FREQUENCY
88.3 MHz
STEREO
AUTO
EQ
FLAT
DEFEAT
RETURN
M

P1	88.3	MHz	Bayern 2
P2	89.9	MHz	Pop
P3	92.5	MHz	Bayern 3
P4	105.9	MHz	DDS
P5	107.9	MHz	CCB
P6	106.1	MHz	ISB

What you can do with RDS

RDS (Radio Data System) allows FM stations to send an additional signal along with their regular programme signals. For example, the stations send their station names (PS), as well as information about what type of programme they broadcast, such as sports or music, etc.

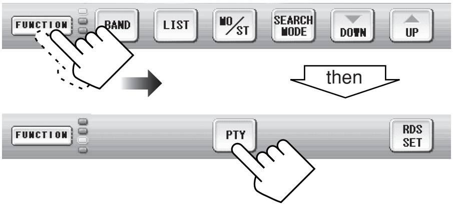
By receiving the RDS data, this unit can do the following:

- Programme Type (PTY) Search
- Standby Reception of Traffic Announcement (TA) or your favorite programme (PTY)
- Programme Search
- Tracking the same programme automatically—Network-Tracking Reception

Searching for your favorite programme—PTY Search PTY

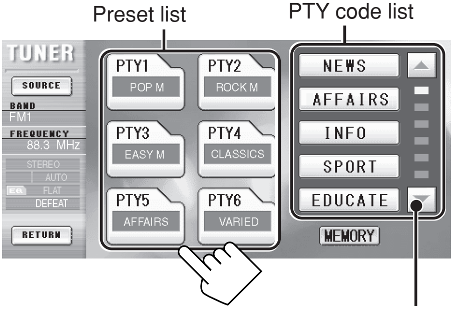
You can tune in to a station broadcasting your favorite programme by searching for a PTY code (see page 22).

1 While listening to an FM station...


FUNCTION
BAND
LIST
MO/ST
SEARCH MODE
DOWN
UP
then
FUNCTION
PTY
RDS SET

2 Select a PTY code, and start PTY Search.

- You can select the PTY code from the preset list or from the PTY code list.


Preset list
PTY code list
TUNER
SOURCE
BAND
FM1
FREQUENCY
88.3 MHz
STEREO
AUTO
EQ
FLAT
DEFEAT
RETURN
PTY1
POP M
PTY2
ROCK M
PTY3
EASY M
PTY4
CLASSICS
PTY5
AFFAIRS
PTY6
VARIED
NEWS
AFFAIRS
INFO
SPORT
EDUCATE
MEMORY

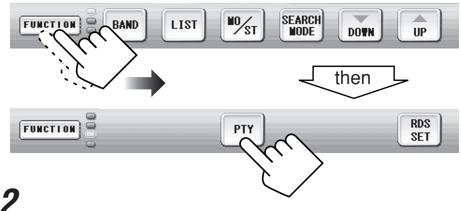
To display the other codes in the PTY code list

To store your favorite programme types in the preset list

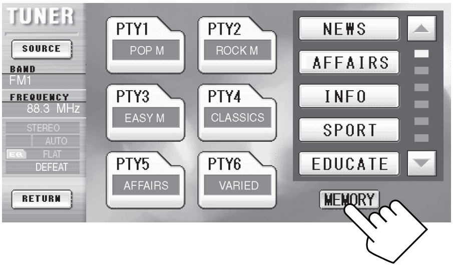
When shipped from the factory, the following 6 programme types have been stored in the preset list.

1	2	3
Pop M	Rock M	Easy M
4	5	6
Classics	Affairs	Varied

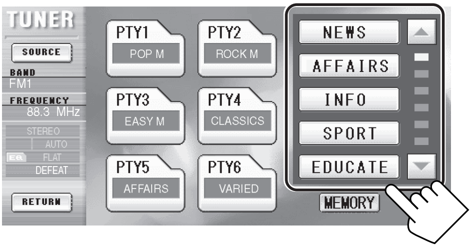
1


FUNCTION
BAND
LIST
MO/ST
SEARCH MODE
DOWN
UP
then
FUNCTION
PTY
RDS SET

2

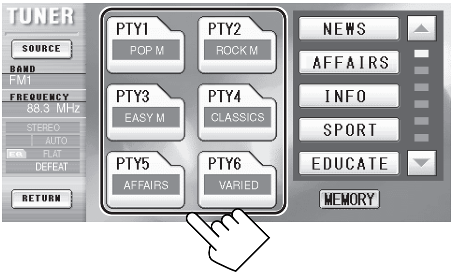

TUNER
SOURCE
BAND
FM1
FREQUENCY
88.3 MHz
STEREO
AUTO
EQ
FLAT
DEFEAT
RETURN
PTY1
POP M
PTY2
ROCK M
PTY3
EASY M
PTY4
CLASSICS
PTY5
AFFAIRS
PTY6
VARIED
NEWS
AFFAIRS
INFO
SPORT
EDUCATE
MEMORY

3 **Select a PTY code.**


TUNER
SOURCE
BAND
FM1
FREQUENCY
88.3 MHz
STEREO
AUTO
EQ
FLAT
DEFEAT
RETURN
PTY1
POP M
PTY2
ROCK M
PTY3
EASY M
PTY4
CLASSICS
PTY5
AFFAIRS
PTY6
VARIED
NEWS
AFFAIRS
INFO
SPORT
EDUCATE
MEMORY

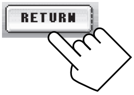
- You can display the other PTY codes in the PTY code list by pressing ▼ or ▲.

4 **Select the preset number.**


TUNER
SOURCE
BAND
FM1
FREQUENCY
88.3 MHz
STEREO
AUTO
EQ
FLAT
DEFEAT
RETURN
PTY1
POP M
PTY2
ROCK M
PTY3
EASY M
PTY4
CLASSICS
PTY5
AFFAIRS
PTY6
VARIED
NEWS
AFFAIRS
INFO
SPORT
EDUCATE
MEMORY

5 **Repeat Steps *2* to *4* to store other PTY codes into other preset numbers.**

6



Using the Standby Reception

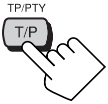
You can use two types of Standby Reception—TA Standby Reception and PTY Standby Reception.

TA Standby Reception

TA Standby Reception allows the unit to switch temporarily to Traffic Announcement (TA) from any source other than AM.

- If a station (or a service when the DAB tuner is connected) starts broadcasting a traffic announcement, “Traffic Information” appears on the monitor screen, and this unit temporarily tunes in to the station (or the service). The volume changes to the preset TA volume level (see page 24).

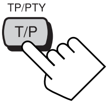
To activate TA Standby Reception:



On the main unit

- If the TP indicator lights up on the display, TA Standby Reception is activated.
- If the TP indicator flashes on the display, TA Standby Reception is not yet activated. (This occurs when you are listening to an FM station or a service without the signals required for TA Standby Reception.)
  To activate TA Standby Reception, tune in to another station (or service) providing these signals.
  The TP indicator stops flashing and remains lit.

To deactivate the TA Standby Reception:



The TP indicator goes off.

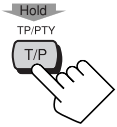
On the main unit

PTY Standby Reception

PTY Standby Reception allows the unit to switch temporarily to your favorite programme from any source other than AM.

- When shipped from the factory, “NEWS” is selected for your favorite programme type. To change it to your favorite PTY code, see page 24.
- If the DAB tuner is connected, Standby Reception also works for searching a service.

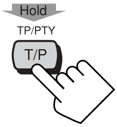
To activate PTY Standby Reception:



On the main unit

- If the PTY indicator lights up on the display, PTY Standby Reception is activated.
- If the PTY indicator flashes on the display, PTY Standby Reception is not yet activated. To activate PTY Standby Reception, tune in to another station (or service) providing these signals.
  The PTY indicator stops flashing and remains lit.

To deactivate the PTY Standby Reception:



The PTY indicator goes off.

On the main unit

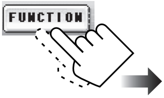
PTY codes

NEWS:	News
AFFAIRS:	Topical programmes expanding on current news or affairs
INFO:	Programmes which impart advice on a wide variety of topics
SPORT:	Sport events
EDUCATE:	Educational programmes
DRAMA:	Radio plays
CULTURE:	Programmes on national or regional culture
SCIENCE:	Programmes on natural science and technology
VARIED:	Other programmes like comedies or ceremonies
POP M:	Pop music
ROCK M:	Rock music
EASY M:	Easy-listening music
LIGHT M:	Light music
CLASSICS:	Classical music
OTHER M:	Other music
WEATHER:	Weather information
FINANCE:	Reports on commerce, trading, the stock market, etc.
CHILDREN:	Entertainment programmes for children
SOCIAL:	Programmes on social activities
RELIGION:	Programmes dealing with any aspect of belief or faith, or the nature of existence or ethics
PHONE IN:	Programmes where people can express their views either by phone or in a public forum
TRAVEL:	Programmes about travel destinations, package tours, and travel ideas and opportunities
LEISURE:	Programmes concerned with recreational activities such as gardening, cooking, fishing, etc.
JAZZ:	Jazz music
COUNTRY:	Country music
NATION M:	Current popular music from another nation or region, in that country’s language
OLDIES:	Classic pop music
FOLK M:	Folk music
DOCUMENT:	Programmes dealing with factual matters, presented in an investigative style

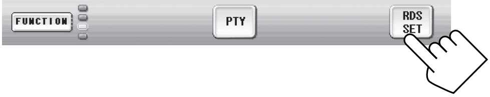
RDS Setup—RDS SET

You can make RDS setting and use some other convenient functions.

1

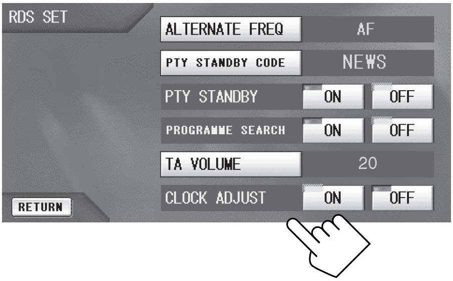


2



3 **Change the setting or enter the setting screen.**

- For details, see the following pages.


RDS SET

ALTERNATE FREQ AF

PTY STANDBY CODE NEWS

PTY STANDBY ON OFF

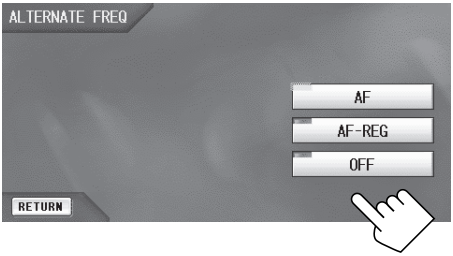
PROGRAMME SEARCH ON OFF

TA VOLUME 20

CLOCK ADJUST ON OFF

RETURN

Ex. When pressing “ALTERNATE FREQ.”


ALTERNATE FREQ

AF

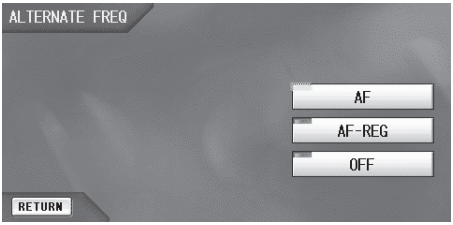
AF-REG

OFF

RETURN

ALTERNATE FREQ

When driving in an area where FM reception is not sufficient enough, this unit automatically tunes in to **another FM RDS station of the same network**, possibly broadcasting the same programme with stronger signals—Network-Tracking Reception.

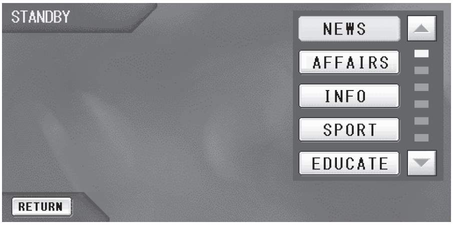


- AF: The unit switches to another station (the programme may differ from the one currently received).
- AF-REG: The unit switches to another station broadcasting the same programme.
- OFF: Cancels the Reception.
  – When DAB Alternative Frequency is set to “ON” (see page 79), you cannot select “OFF.”

PTY STANDBY CODE

Select the PTY code for PTY Standby Reception (see page 22).

- For available PTY codes, see page 22.



To deactivate the PTY Standby Reception, press and hold TP/PTY on the main unit.

PTY STANDBY

PTY STANDBY
ON
OFF

You can activate (ON) and deactivate (OFF) PTY Standby Reception for the FM tuner (and the DAB tuner if connected).

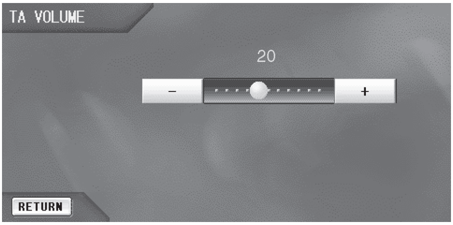
PROGRAMME SEARCH

PROGRAMME SEARCH
ON
OFF

When you select a preset number, the station of the frequency stored in the preset number is tuned in—(OFF).
However, if the signals from a preset RDS station are not sufficient enough, this unit tunes in to another station (which may be broadcasting the same programme as the original preset station is broadcasting)—(ON).

TA VOLUME

You can preset the volume level for TA Standby Reception. When a traffic programme is received, the volume level automatically changes to the preset level.

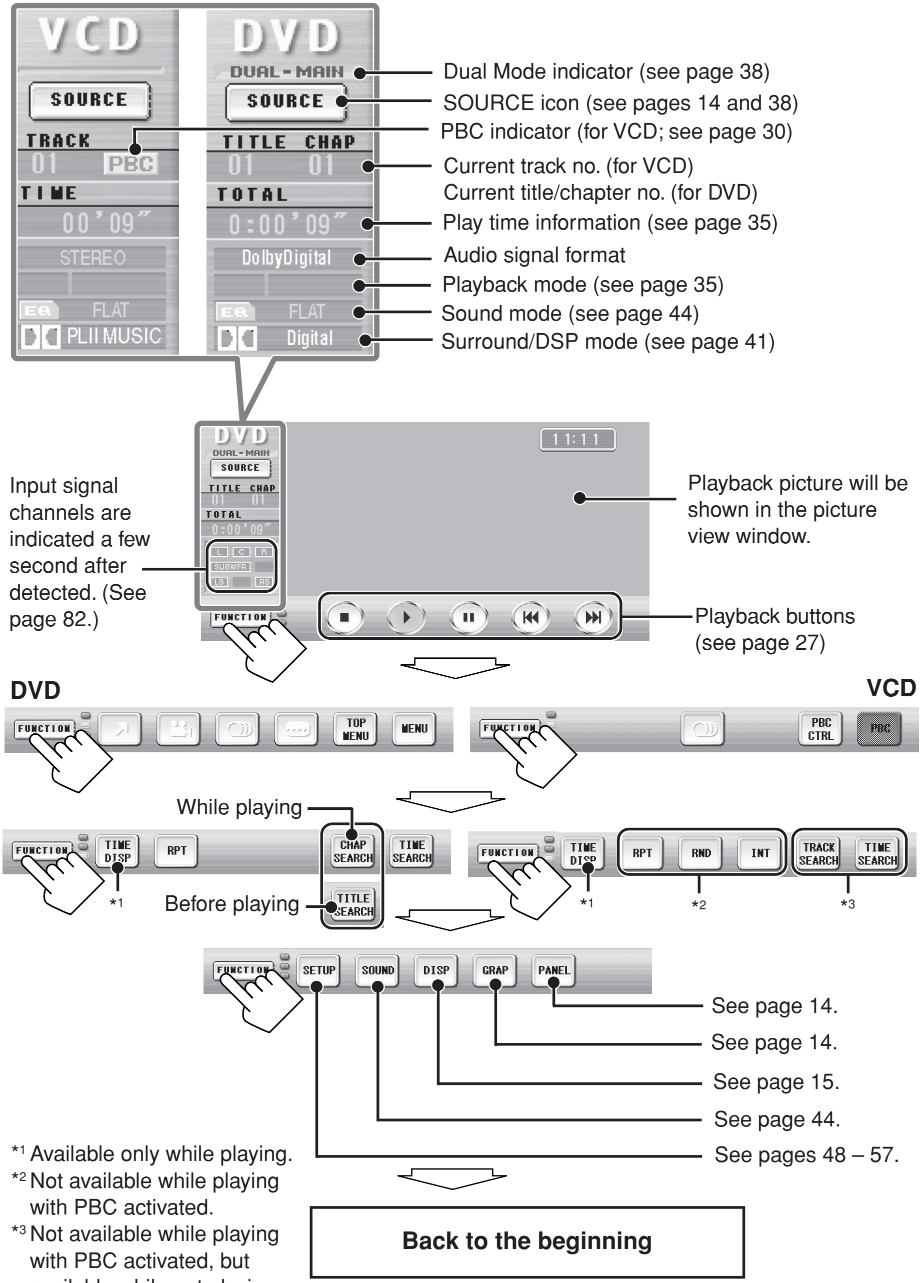


CLOCK ADJUST

CLOCK ADJUST
ON
OFF

When shipped from the factory (“ON” is selected), the clock built in this unit is set to be readjusted automatically using the CT (Clock Time) data in the RDS signal.

DVD/VCD Operations


VCD
SOURCE
TRACK
01 PBC
TIME
00'09"
STEREO
EQ FLAT
PLII MUSIC
DVD
DUAL-MAIN
SOURCE
TITLE CHAP
01 01
TOTAL
0:00'09"
DolbyDigital
EQ FLAT
Digital
11:11
L C R
SUBWFR
LS RS
FUNCTION
DVD
TOP MENU
MENU
VCD
PBC CTRL
PBC
TIME DISP
RPT
CHAP SEARCH
TIME SEARCH
TITLE SEARCH
RND
INT
TRACK SEARCH
*1
*2
*3
SETUP
SOUND
DISP
GRAP
PANEL

Dual Mode indicator (see page 38)

SOURCE icon (see pages 14 and 38)

PBC indicator (for VCD; see page 30)

Current track no. (for VCD)
Current title/chapter no. (for DVD)

Play time information (see page 35)

Audio signal format

Playback mode (see page 35)

Sound mode (see page 44)

Surround/DSP mode (see page 41)

Input signal channels are indicated a few second after detected. (See page 82.)

Playback picture will be shown in the picture view window.

Playback buttons (see page 27)

While playing

Before playing

See page 14.

See page 14.

See page 15.

See page 44.

See pages 48 – 57.

Back to the beginning

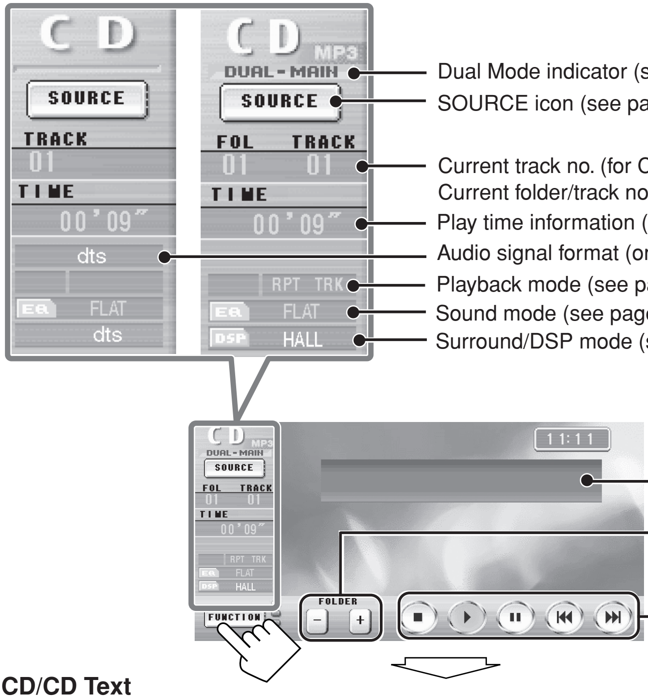
---

*[1] Available only while playing.

*[2] Not available while playing with PBC activated.

*[3] Not available while playing with PBC activated, but available while not playing.

CD/MP3 Operations


CD
SOURCE
TRACK
01
TIME
00'09"
dts
EQ
FLAT
dts
CD
MP3
DUAL-MAIN
SOURCE
FOL
TRACK
01
01
TIME
00'09"
RPT TRK
EQ
FLAT
DSP
HALL
11:11
FOLDER
–
+
FUNCTION

Dual Mode indicator (see page 38)

SOURCE icon (see pages 14 and 38)

Current track no. (for CD)
Current folder/track no. (for MP3)

Play time information (see page 35)

Audio signal format (only for DTS CD)

Playback mode (see page 35)

Sound mode (see page 44)

Surround/DSP mode (see page 41)

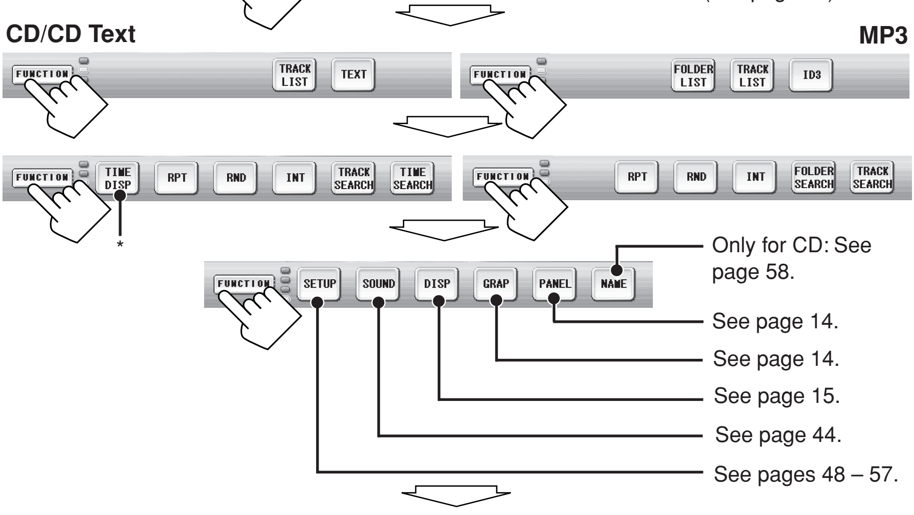
Disc text/ID3 tag information area

Only for MP3 (see page 27)

Playback buttons (see page 27)

CD/CD Text

MP3


FUNCTION
TRACK LIST
TEXT
FUNCTION
FOLDER LIST
TRACK LIST
ID3
FUNCTION
TIME DISP
RPT
RND
INT
TRACK SEARCH
TIME SEARCH
FUNCTION
RPT
RND
INT
FOLDER SEARCH
TRACK SEARCH
*
FUNCTION
SETUP
SOUND
DISP
GRAP
PANEL
NAME

Only for CD: See page 58.

See page 14.

See page 14.

See page 15.

See page 44.

See pages 48 – 57.

Back to the beginning

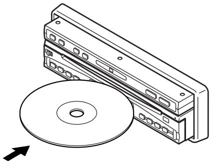
* Available only while playing.

Basic Disc Operations

Before performing any operations, observe the following...

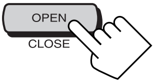
- For DVD playback, change the Setup Menu setting (see page 48).
- If "⊘" appears on the monitor, the disc cannot accept the operation you have tried.
  – In some cases, "⊘" is not display, but operations will not be accepted.

1 Insert a disc



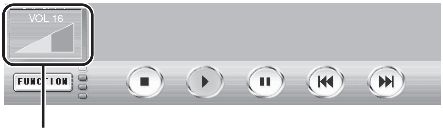
The unit turns on, then draws the disc, and starts playback automatically.

- The monitor does not come out from its compartment if "AUTO OPEN/CLOSE" is set to "OFF" (see page 51).
  If the monitor does not comes out...



- It take several seconds for the unit to detect a disc type.
- If a disc menu appears, see page 30.

2 Adjust the volume



Volume level appears.

3 Operate the disc

FOLDER − + : Selects the folder (only for MP3).

■ : Stops (see "Stopping play" on page 82).
- VCD/CD/MP3 playback will continue endlessly until you stop it.

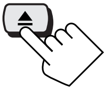
► : Starts playback.

II : Pauses. To resume playback, press ►.

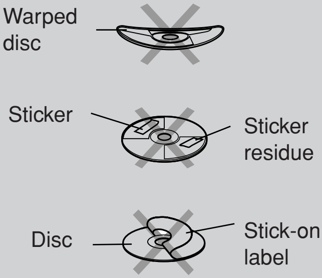
⏮ : Goes back to the beginning of the current chapter/track, then skips to the previous chapters/tracks if pressed repeatedly.

⏭ : Skips to the following chapters/tracks if pressed repeatedly.

To stop play and eject the disc:



Do not use the following discs:



The following marks used in this manual indicate the playable discs.

DVD DVD
VCD VCD with/without PBC
VCD PBC VCD with PBC
CD CD
MP3 MP3
ALL All playable discs

On-screen guide icons DVD VCD

During play, the following guide icons may appear for a while on the monitor.

- The following guide icons are displayed when “GUIDE” is set to “ON” (see page 53).

: Appears at the beginning of a scene containing multi-subtitle languages (only for DVD).

: Appears at the beginning of a scene containing multi-audio languages (only for DVD).

: Appears at the beginning of a scene containing multi-angle views (only for DVD).

▶ : Appears when you press ►.

⏸ : Appears when you press ▮▮.

▶▶ : Appears when you start forward search (search speed also appears).

◀◀ : Appears when you start reverse search (search speed also appears).

▮▶ : Appears when you start forward slow motion. (Slow motion speed also appears.)

◀▮ : Appears when you start reverse slow motion (slow motion speed also appears) (only for DVD).

To fast-forward or reverse the chapter or track, press ►► or ◄◄ **on the remote controller** while playing a disc. ALL

Each time you press the button, the search speed changes as follows:

x2 ➡ x5 ➡ x10 ➡ x20 ➡ x60*

To resume normal speed, press ►.

If you hold ►►I or I◄◄ while playing a disc, the search speed changes: x2 ➡ x10.

- If you release the button, normal speed playback resumes.

To play back the still picture

DVD VCD

Press ▮▮. A still picture appears.

Frame by Frame Playback—You can advance the still picture frame by frame by pressing ▮▮ repeatedly.

To resume normal playback, press ►.

Slow Motion Playback—You can advance or reverse* the still picture in slow motion by pressing ►► or ◄◄ **on the remote controller**. Each time you press the button, the search speed changes as follows:

1/32 ➡ 1/16 ➡ 1/8 ➡ 1/4 ➡ 1/2

To resume normal speed, press ►.

If you hold ►►I or I◄◄ during pause, the slow motion speed changes: 1/32 ➡ 1/8.

- If you release the button, normal speed playback resumes.

* *Only for DVD.*

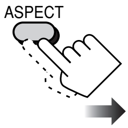
Changing the aspect ratio

DVD VCD

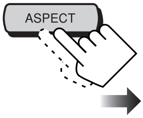
You can change the aspect ratio of the playback pictures.

- This function is only possible using the buttons on the main unit or on the remote controller.
- Aspect ratio cannot be changed while the GUI operation mode is activated.

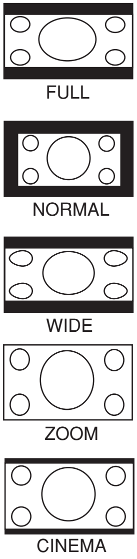
On the remote controller



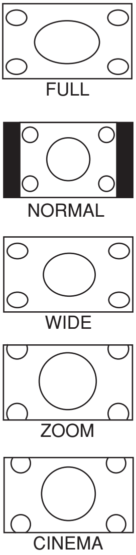
On the main unit



- **When viewing 16:9 video signals:**


FULL
NORMAL
WIDE
ZOOM
CINEMA

- **When viewing 4:3 video signals:**


FULL
NORMAL
WIDE
ZOOM
CINEMA

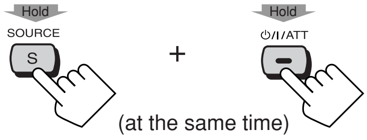
- When you change the aspect ratio, either "RECEIVER" or "CRADLE" (see page 38) appears with the selected aspect ratio. It indicates where the monitor is now loaded. Aspect ratio cannot be set separately for "RECEIVER" or "CRADLE."

Prohibiting disc ejection

ALL

You can lock a disc in the loading slot.

While playing any source...


Hold
SOURCE
S
+
Hold
⏻/I/ATT
(at the same time)

"NO EJT" appears on the display of the main unit, and the disc cannot be ejected.

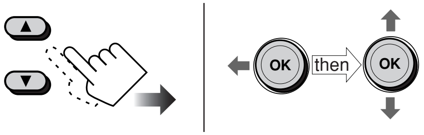
To cancel the prohibition, press the same buttons again.
"EJT OK" appears.

Selecting MP3 folders

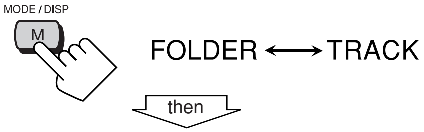
MP3

You can also select the MP3 folder using the buttons on the main unit and on the remote controller.

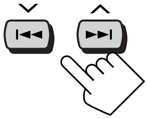
On the remote controller



On the main unit


MODE / DISP
M
FOLDER ⟷ TRACK
then

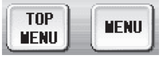
While "FOLDER" is displayed on the display of the main unit:



Operating the disc menu

DVD VCD PBC

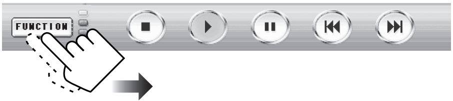
Menu-driven playback is possible while playing back a DVD with menu-driven features or a VCD with the PlayBack Control (PBC) function.



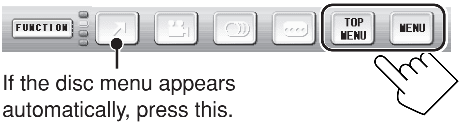
While playing a DVD:

DVD discs generally have their own menus or title lists. A title list (TOP MENU) usually contains titles of movies and songs recorded. On the other hand, a menu (MENU) usually contains various information about the disc and playback selections.

1



2

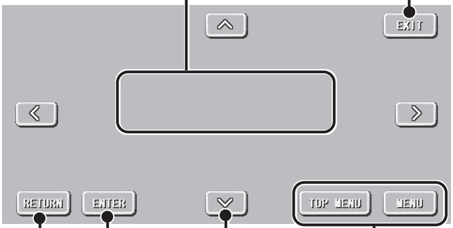


If the disc menu appears automatically, press this.

3 **Select an item, then confirm.**

Return to the display in Step ***2*** above.

Erase the operation screen.



Confirm

Select

Go back to the disc menu.

Return to the previous page of the discs menu.

When using the remote controller

1. Press TOPMENU or MENU.
2. Push the cursor controller (OK) up/down/left/right (▲/▼/◄/►) to select an item.
3. Press OK to confirm.

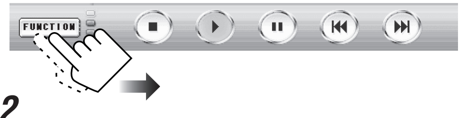
While playing a VCD:

The PBC function allows you to operate the VCD using menus.

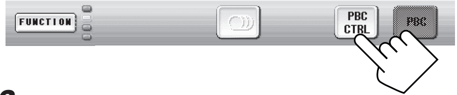
When you start playback, a menu will automatically appear on the monitor.

- A menu may be a list of items, divided screens, or some moving pictures.
- When a VCD with PBC is detected, the PBC indicator appears on the monitor.
- When "►" or "SELECT" is displayed on the monitor, press ► (or OK on the remote controller if pressing ► does not work) to start playback.

1

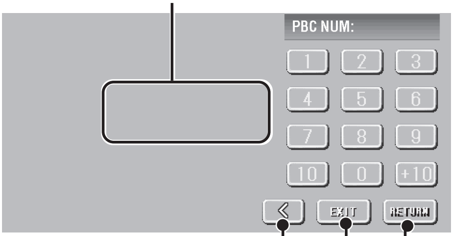


2



3 **Enter a number, then confirm.**

Erase the operation screen.



Move the superimpose position to the left.

Return to the display in Step ***2*** above.

Return to the previous page of the PBC menu.

- To select number 5, press 5.
- To select number 10, press 10.
- To select number 20, press +10, then 10.

When using the number buttons on the remote controller

- *To select number 5, press 5.*
- *To select number 10, press 10.*
- *To select number 23, press +10, +10, then 3.*

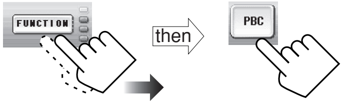
To cancel the PBC playback

You can cancel the menu-driven operations (PBC function) using the remote controller.

1 Press ■ to stop playback.
2 Press number buttons to select a track. Playback without PBC starts from the selected track.
   - You can also use Track Search icon (see page 36) and Time Search icon (see page 37) on the Touch Panel to start playback without PBC.

To resume the PBC function again, press TOPMENU or MENU **on the remote controller**.

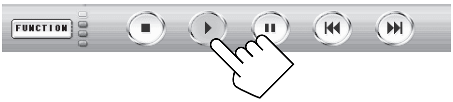
- You can also use PBC icon on the Touch Panel.



Replaying the previous scenes

DVD

You can replay about 10-second portion of the previous scene while playing a DVD—One Touch Replay.



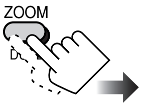
Zooming in

DVD VCD

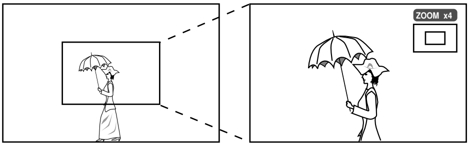
You can zoom into a particular portion of the picture.

- This function is only possible using the remote controller.

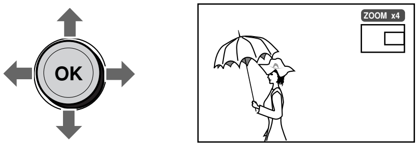
1



➡ x2 ➡ x4 ➡ x8 ➡ x1 ➡ x2 ➡ x4 ➡ x8 ➡ • • • •



2 **Move the zoomed-in portion on the monitor.**



To cancel Zoom, press OK or press ZOOM repeatedly until “ZOOM x1” appears.

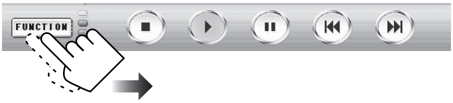
Selecting subtitles

DVD

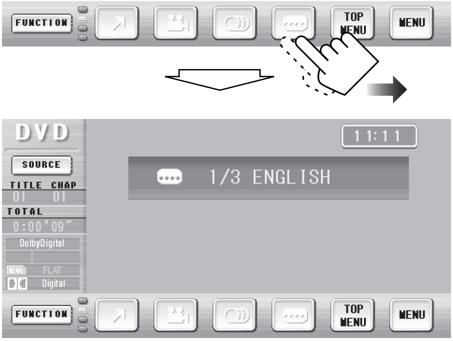
While playing a chapter containing subtitles in different languages, you can select the subtitle language to display on the monitor.

- You can also select the subtitle language using SETUP menu (see page 49).

1



2 **Select a subtitle language you want.**


FUNCTION
TOP MENU
MENU
DVD
SOURCE
TITLE CHAP
01 01
TOTAL
0:00'09"
DolbyDigital
EQ FLAT
Digital
11:11
1/3 ENGLISH

Ex.

1/3 ENGLISH → 2/3 FRENCH → 3/3 SPANISH

Selecting audio languages

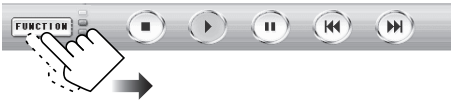
DVD VCD

For DVD: While playing a chapter containing audio languages, you can select the language to listen to.

- You can also select the audio language using SETUP menu (see page 49).

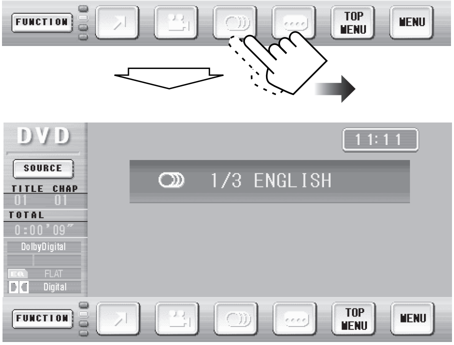
For VCD: While playing a track, you can select the audio channel to play. This is convenient when playing a Karaoke VCD.

1



2 **Select an audio language you want.**

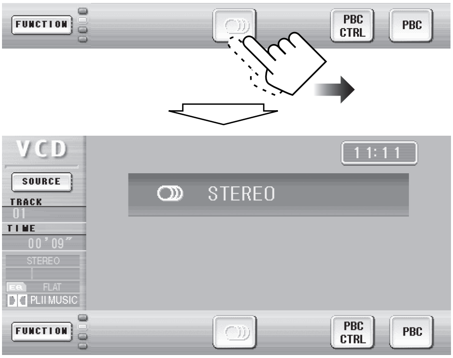
When playing DVD:

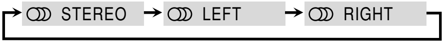

FUNCTION
TOP MENU
MENU
DVD
SOURCE
TITLE CHAP
01 01
TOTAL
0:00'09"
DolbyDigital
EQ FLAT
Digital
11:11
1/3 ENGLISH

Ex.

1/3 ENGLISH → 2/3 FRENCH → 3/3 SPANISH

When playing VCD:


FUNCTION
PBC CTRL
PBC
VCD
SOURCE
TRACK
01
TIME
00'09"
STEREO
FLAT
PLII MUSIC
11:11
STEREO

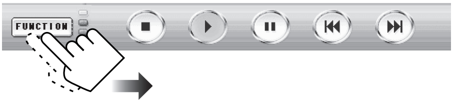

STEREO
LEFT
RIGHT

- STEREO: To listen to normal stereo (left/right) playback.
- LEFT: To listen to the left audio channel.
- RIGHT: To listen to the right audio channel.

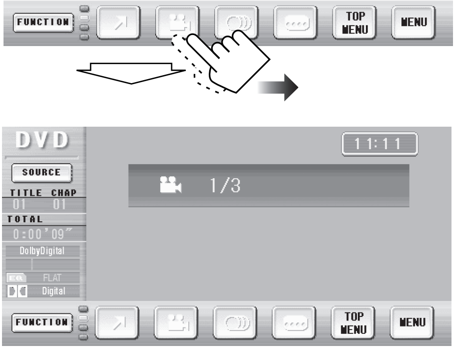
Selecting multi-angle views

While playing a disc containing multi-angle views, you can view the same scene at different angles.

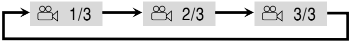
1

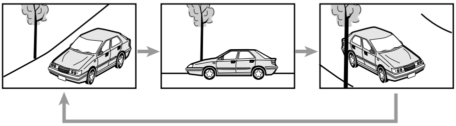


2 **Select a view angle you want.**


FUNCTION
TOP MENU
MENU
DVD
SOURCE
TITLE CHAP
01 01
TOTAL
0:00'09"
DolbyDigital
FLAT
Digital
11:11
1/3

Ex.





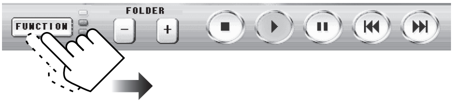
Locating a folder/track using the list FOLDER LIST TRACK LIST

To locate a folder by displaying the folder list

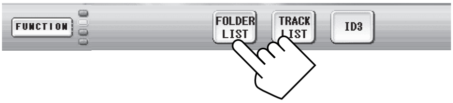
MP3

- This functions only for MP3.

1

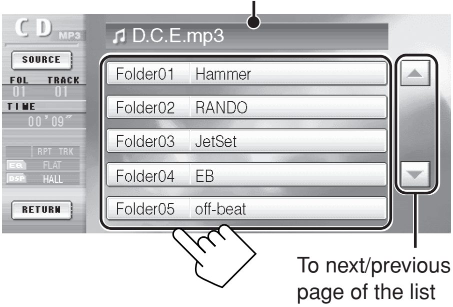

FUNCTION
FOLDER
−
+

2


FUNCTION
FOLDER LIST
TRACK LIST
ID3

3 **Select a folder you want.**

Current track name or ID3 Tag

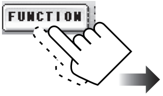

CD MP3
SOURCE
FOL TRACK
01 01
TIME
00'09"
RPT TRK
EQ FLAT
DSP HALL
RETURN
♫ D.C.E.mp3
Folder01 Hammer
Folder02 RANDO
Folder03 JetSet
Folder04 EB
Folder05 off-beat

To next/previous page of the list

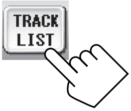
To locate a track by displaying the track list

CD MP3

1

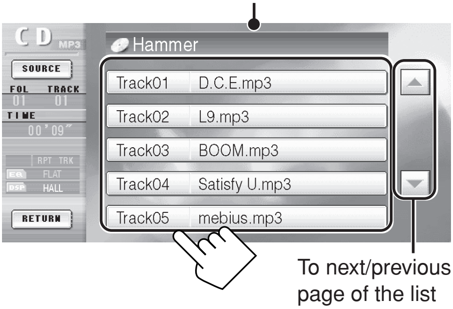


2



3 **Select a track you want.**

Current folder name or ID3 Tag (for MP3)
Disc name (for CD) or CD Text


CD MP3
SOURCE
FOL TRACK
01 01
TIME
00'09"
RPT TRK
EQ FLAT
DSP HALL
RETURN
Hammer
Track01 D.C.E.mp3
Track02 L9.mp3
Track03 BOOM.mp3
Track04 Satisfy U.mp3
Track05 mebius.mp3

To next/previous page of the list

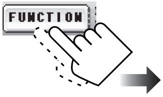
Ex. when playing MP3

Displaying the disc text information TEXT ID3

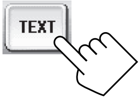
CD MP3

With Auto Scroll or Scroll selected, you can display the text and scroll it on the monitor if it is long and cannot be displayed at a time.

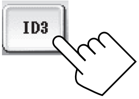
1



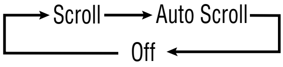
2



(For CD)



(For MP3)

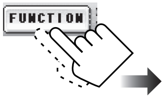

Scroll
Auto Scroll
Off

• Scroll:	Text on the information area scrolls once.
• Auto Scroll:	Text on the information area scrolls every 5 seconds.
• Off:	The information area goes off (no text information will be shown).

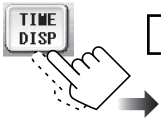
Displaying the time information TIME DISP

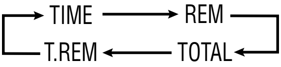
DVD VCD CD

1



2




TIME
REM
TOTAL
T.REM

• TIME:	Elapsed playing time of the current chapter/track
• REM:	Remaining time of the current chapter/track
• TOTAL:	Elapsed title time (for DVD) Elapsed disc time (for other discs)
• T.REM:	Remaining title time (for DVD) Remaining disc time (for other discs)

Selecting playback modes

You can use only one of the following playback modes at a time—Repeat Play, Random Play, and Intro Scan.

- For VCD: While PBC is not in use.

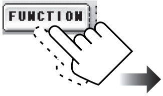
Repeat Play RPT

ALL

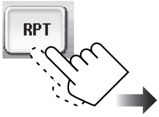
You can repeat playback.

- Repeat Play can be deactivated only for DVD.

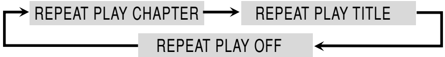
1



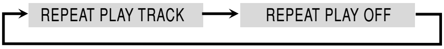
2



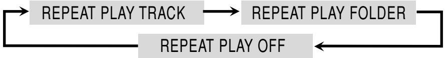
When playing DVD:


REPEAT PLAY CHAPTER
REPEAT PLAY TITLE
REPEAT PLAY OFF

When playing VCD/CD:


REPEAT PLAY TRACK
REPEAT PLAY OFF

When playing MP3:


REPEAT PLAY TRACK
REPEAT PLAY FOLDER
REPEAT PLAY OFF

REPEAT PLAY

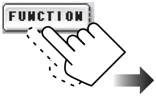
• CHAPTER:	Repeats the current chapter.
• TITLE:	Repeats the current title.
• TRACK:	Repeats the current track.
• FOLDER:	Repeats the current folder.
• OFF:	For DVD: Cancels Repeat Play. For VCD/CD/MP3: Repeats the disc.

Random Play RND

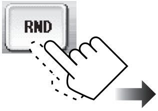
VCD CD MP3

You can play back tracks at random.

1



2



When playing VCD/CD:

RANDOM PLAY DISC → RANDOM PLAY OFF

When playing MP3:

RANDOM PLAY FOLDER → RANDOM PLAY DISC → RANDOM PLAY OFF

RANDOM PLAY

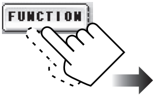
• DISC:	Plays randomly all tracks on the disc.
• FOLDER:	Plays randomly all tracks of the current folder, then moves to the next folder and so on.
• OFF:	Cancels Random Play.

Intro Scan INT

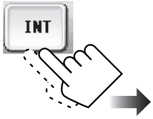
VCD CD MP3

You can play back the first 15 seconds of each track sequentially.

1



2



When playing VCD/CD:

INTRO SCAN TRACK → INTRO SCAN OFF

When playing MP3:

INTRO SCAN TRACK → INTRO SCAN FOLDER → INTRO SCAN OFF

INTRO SCAN

• TRACK:	Plays the beginning of all tracks.
• FOLDER:	Plays the first tracks of all folders.
• OFF:	Cancels Intro Scan.

Searching for scenes or songs

You can use various search functions to find your favorite scenes or songs.

Title/Chapter/Folder/Track Search

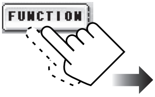
TITLE SEARCH CHAP SEARCH DVD

TRACK SEARCH VCD CD

FOLDER SEARCH TRACK SEARCH MP3

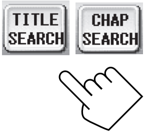
• For DVD:	Title Search before playing, and Chapter Search while playing.
• For VCD:	During stop when PBC is in use.

1

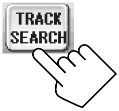


2

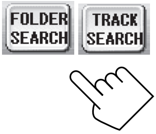
(For DVD)



(For VCD/CD)

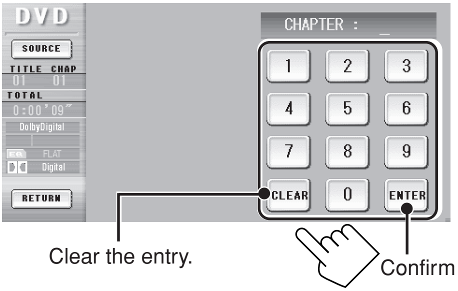


(For MP3)



3 Enter a number, then confirm.

Ex. when playing DVD:


DVD
SOURCE
TITLE CHAP
01 01
TOTAL
0:00'09"
DolbyDigital
EQ FLAT
Digital
RETURN
CHAPTER : _
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
CLEAR
0
ENTER
Clear the entry.
Confirm

When using the number buttons on the remote controller

- *To select number 5, press 5.*
- *To select number 10, press 10.*
- *To select number 23, press +10, +10, then 3.*

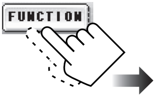
> *You cannot select folder using the remote controller.*

Time Search

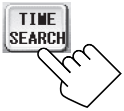
You can start playing a particular point by specifying the elapsed playing time of the current title (for DVD) and of the disc (for VCD/CD).

- For DVD: During play or pause.
  (For some DVDs: any time)
- For VCD: While not playing with PBC in use.

1

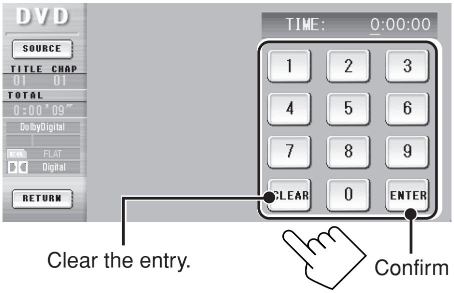


2

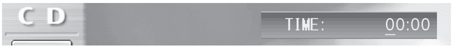

TIME SEARCH

3 Enter a number, then confirm.

Ex. when playing DVD:


DVD
SOURCE
TITLE CHAP
01 01
TOTAL
0:00'09"
DolbyDigital
EQ FLAT
Digital
RETURN
TIME: 0:00:00
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
CLEAR
0
ENTER
Clear the entry.
Confirm

Ex. when playing CD:


CD
TIME: 00:00

Examples (for DVD)

To play back from 2(H):34(M):00(S)
Press number buttons 2, 3, 4, then ENTER.

TIME 2 : 34 :00

To play back from 58(M):00(S)
Press number buttons 0, 5, 8, then ENTER.

TIME 0 : 58 :00

Example (for VCD/CD)

To play back from 23(M):40(S)
Press number buttons 2, 3, 4, then ENTER.

TIME 23 : 40

- You do not have to press "0" to enter the trailing zeros.

Dual Mode Operations

You can play back two different sources as the main source (MAIN) and subsidiary source (SUB).

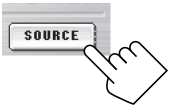
You can listen to the main source through the speakers, while the subsidiary source through the monitor inserted into the cradle or the one connected to the AV OUTPUT jacks.

- For connections of the cradle and an optional monitor, refer to the Installation/Connection Manual (separate volume).

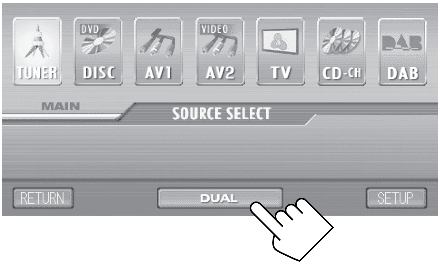
Selecting the sources

To activate Dual Mode and select the subsidiary source

1

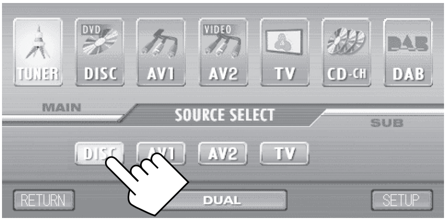


2


TUNER
DVD
DISC
AV1
VIDEO
AV2
TV
CD-CH
DAB
MAIN
SOURCE SELECT
RETURN
DUAL
SETUP

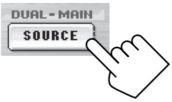
3 **Select the subsidiary source (SUB) you want.**

- The current sources for MAIN and SUB are highlighted.


TUNER
DVD
DISC
AV1
VIDEO
AV2
TV
CD-CH
DAB
MAIN
SOURCE SELECT
SUB
DISC
AV1
AV2
TV
RETURN
DUAL
SETUP

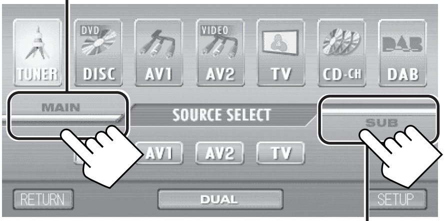
To show the main/subsidiary source operation screen on the monitor

1

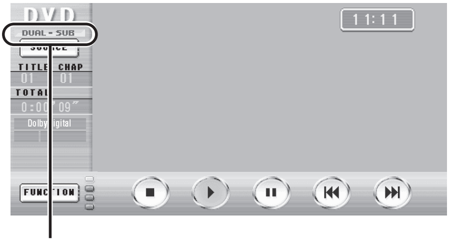

DUAL - MAIN
SOURCE

2

To show the main source operation screen (DUAL–MAIN)


TUNER
DVD
DISC
AV1
VIDEO
AV2
TV
CD-CH
DAB
MAIN
SOURCE SELECT
SUB
AV1
AV2
TV
RETURN
DUAL
SETUP

To show the subsidiary source operation screen (DUAL–SUB)


DVD
DUAL - SUB
SOURCE
TITLE
CHAP
01
01
TOTAL
0:00'09"
Dolby Digital
11:11
FUNCTION

Dual Mode indicator (DUAL–MAIN or DUAL–SUB) appears.

Ex. When the subsidiary source operation screen (DUAL–SUB) is displayed.

To cancel the Dual Mode, press DUAL.

Each time you press the icon, Dual Mode is turned on and off alternately.

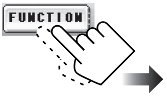
- When Dual Mode is turned off, the main source screen appears.

Adjusting AV OUTPUT volume

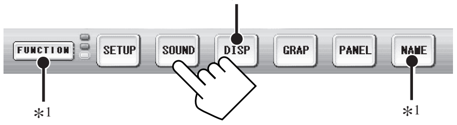
Select an appropriate volume level for the component connected to the AV OUTPUT jacks on the hideaway unit.

- This functions without respect to the Dual Mode setting.

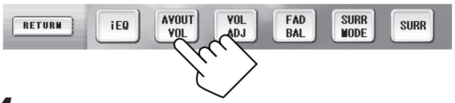
1



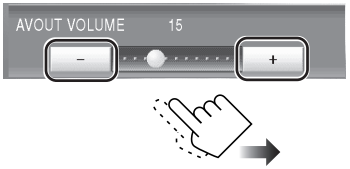
2


*2
FUNCTION
SETUP
SOUND
DISP
GRAP
PANEL
NAME
*1
*1

3


RETURN
iEQ
AVOUT VOL
VOL ADJ
FAD BAL
SURR MODE
SURR

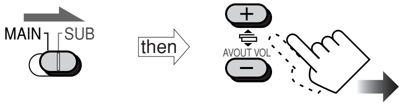
4 **Adjust the AV output volume.**


AVOUT VOLUME 15
–
+

*1 It does not appear for some sources.

*2 It will be shaded when not available.

On the remote controller


MAIN
SUB
then
+
AVOUT VOL
–

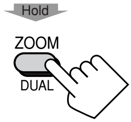
While Dual Mode is in use...

- The playback source does not change to “DISC” though you insert a disc. “DUAL” flashes on the display of the main unit.
- You can only adjust the volume level for the subsidiary source (the other sound adjustments cannot be used for the subsidiary source).

When using the remote controller:

- For Dual Mode operations...
  - When controlling the monitor connected to the AV OUTPUT jacks, aim the remote controller at the remote sensor on the main unit.
  - When controlling the monitor inserted into the cradle, aim the remote controller at the remote sensor on the cradle.

To activate Dual Mode

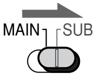

Hold
ZOOM
DUAL

Each time you press and hold the button, Dual Mode turns on and off.

- When Dual Mode is turned on, the source selection screen appears on the monitor (see page 38).

To operate the subsidiary source

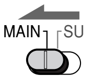
1



2 **Press the source buttons, then the source operation buttons.**

To operate the main source

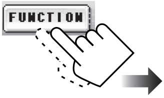
1



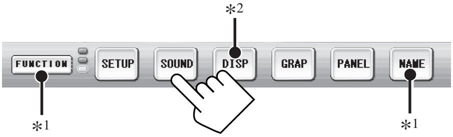
2 **Press the source buttons, then the source operation buttons.**

Surround Mode Operations

1

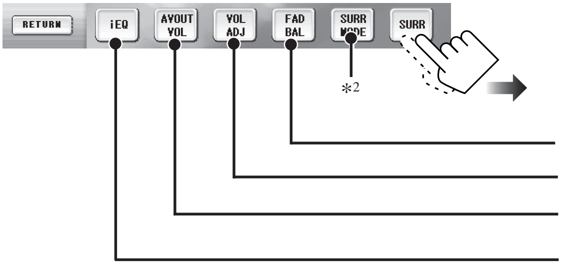


2


*2
FUNCTION
SETUP
SOUND
DISP
GRAP
PANEL
NAME
*1
*1

*1 It does not appear for some sources.
*2 It will be shaded when not available.

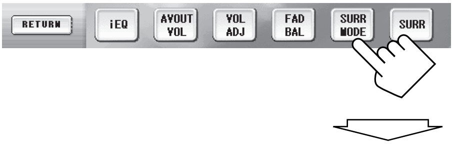
3 **Activate and select the surround mode or DSP mode.**


RETURN
iEQ
AVOUT VOL
VOL ADJ
FAD BAL
SURR MODE
SURR
*2

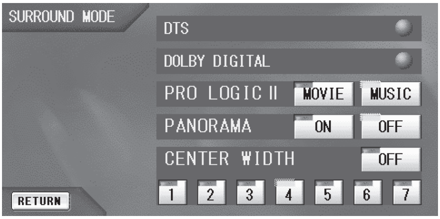
See page 46.
See page 46.
See page 39.
See page 44.

4 **Make adjustment if you want to.**

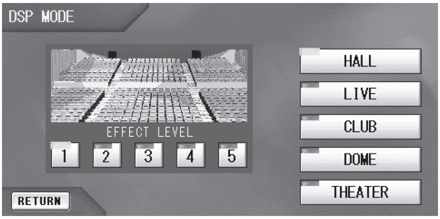
- If neither surround mode nor DSP mode is activated, you cannot make adjustment.


RETURN
iEQ
AVOUT VOL
VOL ADJ
FAD BAL
SURR MODE
SURR

When surround mode is activated:


SURROUND MODE
DTS
DOLBY DIGITAL
PRO LOGIC II
MOVIE
MUSIC
PANORAMA
ON
OFF
CENTER WIDTH
OFF
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
RETURN

When DSP mode is activated:


DSP MODE
EFFECT LEVEL
1
2
3
4
5
HALL
LIVE
CLUB
DOME
THEATER
RETURN

Introducing surround/DSP mode

Surround modes

Dolby Digital

Dolby Digital is a digital signal compression method, developed by Dolby Laboratories, and enables multi-channel encoding and decoding (1ch up to 5.1ch).

Dolby Digital 5.1 CH

Dolby Digital 5.1 CH encoding method records and digitally compresses the left front channel, right front channel, center channel, left surround channel, right surround channel, and LFE channel signals (total 6 channels, but the LFE channel is counted as 0.1 channel. Therefore, called 5.1 channel).
Dolby Digital enables stereo surround sounds, and sets the cutoff frequency of the surround treble at 20 kHz, compared to 7 kHz for Dolby Pro Logic. As such, the sound movement and "being there" feeling are enhanced much more than Dolby Pro Logic.

DTS

DTS is another digital signal compression method, developed by Digital Theater Systems, Inc., and enables multi-channel encoding and decoding (1ch up to 6.1ch).

DTS Digital Surround

DTS Digital Surround is another discrete 5.1-channel digital audio format available on CD, LD, and DVD software.
Compared to Dolby Digital, the DTS Digital Surround format has a lower audio compression rate which enables it to add breadth and depth to the sounds reproduced. As such, DTS Digital Surround features natural, solid, and clear sound.

Dolby Pro Logic II

It is a multi-channel playback format to convert 2-channel software into 5-channel (plus subwoofer). The matrix-based conversion method used for Dolby Pro Logic II makes no limitation for the cutoff frequency of the surround treble and enables stereo surround sound.

- This unit provides two types of Dolby Pro Logic II modes—**Pro Logic II "MOVIE"** and **Pro Logic II "MUSIC**."

MOVIE:	Suitable for playing any Dolby Surround encoded software.
MUSIC:	Suitable for playing any 2-channel stereo software.

No sound may come out of the subwoofer (though the subwoofer is activated) with Dolby Pro Logic II in use. (This depends on your speaker setting—see page 56).

Digital Signal Processor (DSP) mode—reproducing the sound field

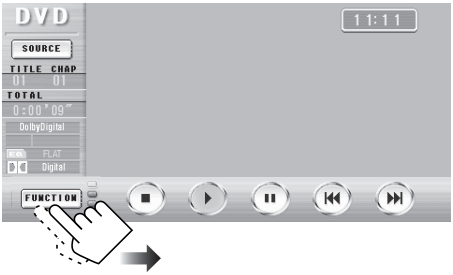
The sound heard in a concert hall, club, etc. consists of direct sound and indirect sound—early reflections and reflections from behind. Direct sounds reach the listener directly without any reflection. On the other hand, indirect sounds are delayed by the distances of the ceiling and walls. These direct sounds and indirect sounds are the most important elements of the acoustic surround effects.
DSP modes can create these important elements, and give you a real "being there" feeling.

Turning on and off the surround/ DSP mode SURR MODE SURR

You can use surround or Digital Signal Processor (DSP) mode while playing any source.
However, when playing a multi-channel encoded disc, you cannot apply DSP mode to the playback sounds.

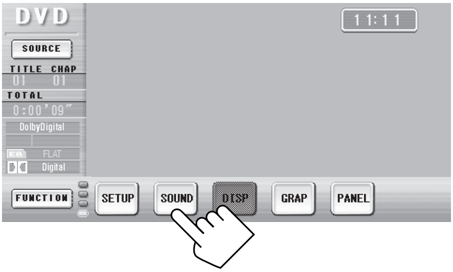
- When “AUTO SURROUND” is set to “ON” (initial setting when shipped from factory), an appropriate surround mode is automatically selected without any setting operation (see page 55).
- To obtain the best possible surround sounds, set the seat position and speaker size correctly (see pages 55 and 56). **If only rear speakers are activated (set to “LARGE” or “SMALL”), surround/DSP mode is defeated (set to “DEFEAT”) and cannot be changed.**

1

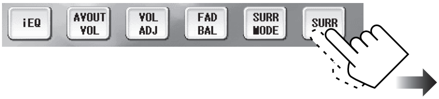

DVD
11:11
SOURCE
TITLE CHAP
01 01
TOTAL
0:00'09"
DolbyDigital
EQ FLAT
Digital
FUNCTION

Ex. When playing DVD.

2


DVD
11:11
SOURCE
TITLE CHAP
01 01
TOTAL
0:00'09"
DolbyDigital
EQ FLAT
Digital
FUNCTION
SETUP
SOUND
DISP
GRAP
PANEL

3


iEQ
AYOUT VOL
VOL ADJ
FAD BAL
SURR MODE
SURR

- **While playing a multi-channel encoded disc:**

Surround On (DSP Off) ⟷ DEFEAT (Surround Off)

- **While playing a 2-channel (stereo) disc:**

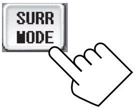
Surround On (DSP Off) → DSP On (Surround Off) → DEFEAT (Surround/DSP Off) → Surround On (DSP Off)

- **Surround On (DSP Off)**
  While playing a multi-channel Dolby Digital encoded disc, “Dolby Digital” is automatically selected.
  While playing a multi-channel DTS encoded disc, “DTS” is automatically selected.
  While playing any other disc, “Dolby Pro Logic II” is automatically selected.
  - You can select either “Dolby Pro Logic II Movie” or “Dolby Pro Logic II Music.”

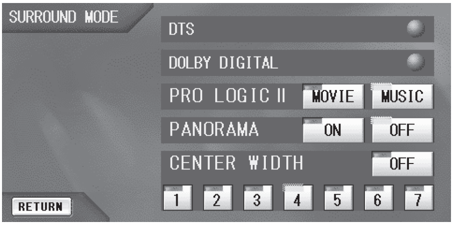
- **DSP On (Surround Off)**
  Currently selected DSP mode is activated.

- **DEFEAT (Surround/DSP Off)**
  Both surround and DSP mode is canceled.
  - You cannot go to the next step.

4 Adjust the selected surround or DSP mode.



When surround mode is activated:


SURROUND MODE
DTS
DOLBY DIGITAL
PRO LOGIC II
MOVIE
MUSIC
PANORAMA
ON
OFF
CENTER WIDTH
OFF
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
RETURN

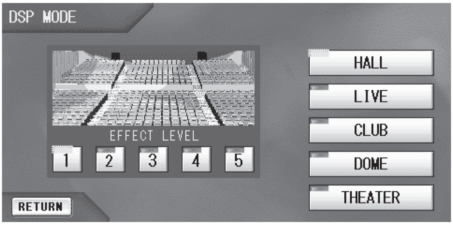
DTS ●
: Selected automatically when multi-channel DTS signal is detected (while playing a DVD or a DTS CD). No further adjustment is allowed.

DOLBY DIGITAL ●
: Selected automatically when multi-channel Dolby Digital signal is detected (while playing a DVD). No further adjustment is allowed.

PRO LOGIC II : Select either "MOVIE" or "MUSIC."
When you select "MUSIC," you can adjust the following items.

- PANORAMA : Select "ON" to add "wraparound" sound effect with side-wall image. To cancel it, select "OFF."
- CENTER WIDTH : Adjust the center image so it may be heard only from the center speaker, only from the left/right front speakers as a "phantom" center image, or various combinations of these speakers. As the number increases, the "phantom" effect becomes stronger. (Normally select "4.") To cancel it, select "OFF."

When DSP mode is activated:


DSP MODE
EFFECT LEVEL
1
2
3
4
5
RETURN
HALL
LIVE
CLUB
DOME
THEATER

Ex. When selecting "HALL."

① Select one of the DSP modes.

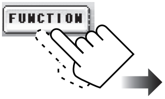
HALL:	Reproduces the spatial feeling of a large shoebox-shaped hall designed primarily for classical concerts.
LIVE:	Reproduces the spatial feeling of a live music club with a low ceiling.
CLUB:	Reproduces the spatial feeling of a rocking dance club.
DOME:	Reproduces the spatial feeling of a stadium with a high ceiling.
THEATER:	Reproduces the spatial feeling of a theater.

② Adjust the effect level (from 1 to 5). As the number increases, the effect becomes stronger.

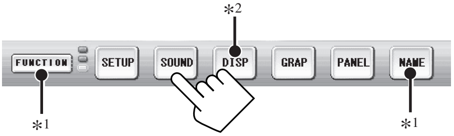
Sound Modes (iEQ) Operations

The following operations are only possible for the main source when using Dual Mode.

1



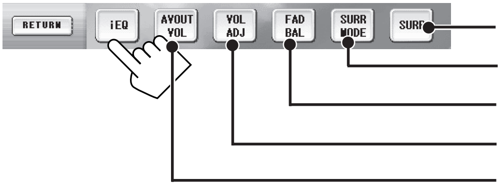
2


FUNCTION
SETUP
SOUND
DISP
GRAP
PANEL
NAME
*2
*1
*1

*1 It does not appear for some sources.

*2 It will be shaded when not available.

3


RETURN
iEQ
AYOUT VOL
VOL ADJ
FAD BAL
SURR MODE
SURF

See page 40.

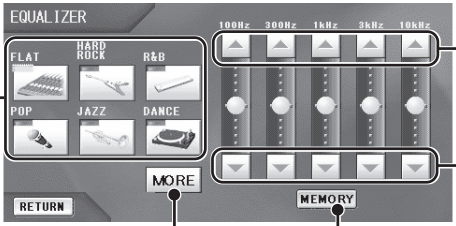
See page 40.

See page 46.

See page 46.

See page 39.

4 **Select one of the preset sound (iEQ) modes (then make adjustment if you want to make your own sound mode).**

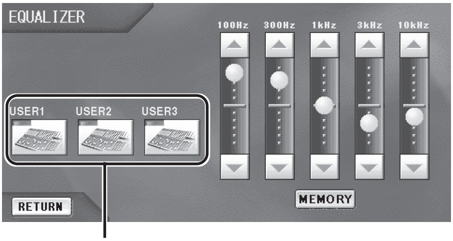

EQUALIZER
100Hz
300Hz
1kHz
3kHz
10kHz
FLAT
HARD ROCK
R&B
POP
JAZZ
DANCE
MORE
RETURN
MEMORY

Select sound modes.

Adjust the level of each frequency band.

Display the other set of the sound modes.

Store your adjustment (display the screen below).


EQUALIZER
100Hz
300Hz
1kHz
3kHz
10kHz
USER1
USER2
USER3
RETURN
MEMORY

Select memory no. to store.

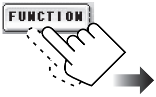
Selecting preset sound modes iEQ

You can select a sound mode suitable to the music genre.

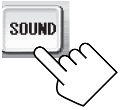
Available sound modes:

- **HARD ROCK / R&B / POP / JAZZ / DANCE / COUNTRY / REGGAE / CLASSIC**
- **USER1 / USER2 / USER3**
- **FLAT** (To cancel the sound mode)

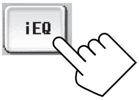
1



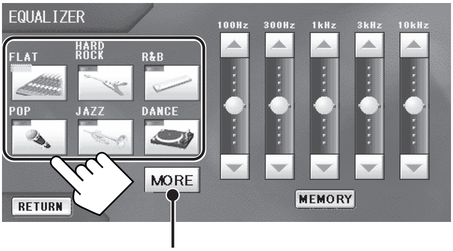
2



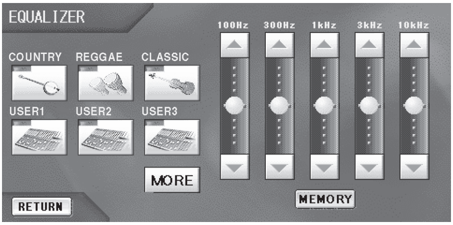
3



4 Select one of the preset sound (iEQ) modes.


EQUALIZER
100Hz
300Hz
1kHz
3kHz
10kHz
FLAT
HARD ROCK
R&B
POP
JAZZ
DANCE
MORE
RETURN
MEMORY

Display the other set of the sound modes (see below).

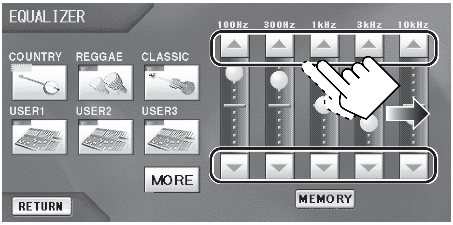

EQUALIZER
100Hz
300Hz
1kHz
3kHz
10kHz
COUNTRY
REGGAE
CLASSIC
USER1
USER2
USER3
MORE
RETURN
MEMORY

Storing your own sound modes

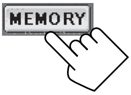
You can adjust the sound modes and store your own adjustments in memory.

1 Repeat steps *1* to *4* on the left column to select a sound mode you want to adjust.

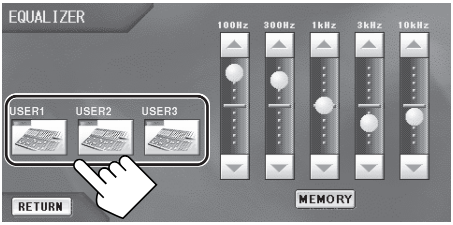
2 Make adjustments as you like.


EQUALIZER
100Hz
300Hz
1kHz
3kHz
10kHz
COUNTRY
REGGAE
CLASSIC
USER1
USER2
USER3
MORE
RETURN
MEMORY

3 After adjustment is finished...



4 Select one of the user sound modes (USER1, USER2, or USER3) you want to store into.

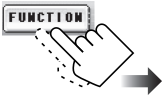

EQUALIZER
100Hz
300Hz
1kHz
3kHz
10kHz
USER1
USER2
USER3
RETURN
MEMORY

For details about the preset settings of each sound mode, see page 88.

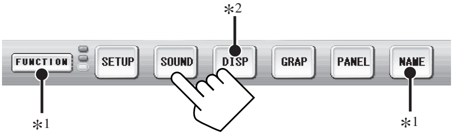
Other Sound Adjustments

Fader/Balance adjustments is only possible for the main source when using Dual Mode.

1

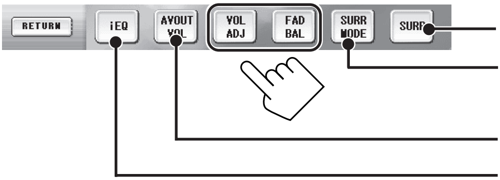


2


*2
FUNCTION
SETUP
SOUND
DISP
GRAP
PANEL
NAME
*1
*1

*1 It does not appear for some sources.
*2 It will be shaded when not available.

3


RETURN
iEQ
AVOUT VOL
VOL ADJ
FAD BAL
SURR MODE
SURR

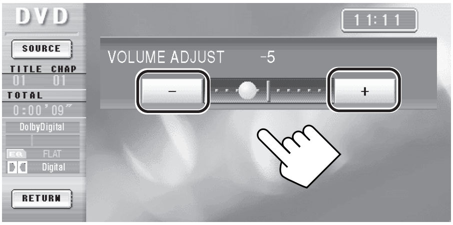
See page 40.
See page 40.
See page 39.
See page 44.

4 **Make adjustment as you like.**

To adjust the input level VOL ADJ

This setting is required for each source except FM.
Once you have made an adjustment, the volume level will automatically changes by adjusted level whenever you change the source.

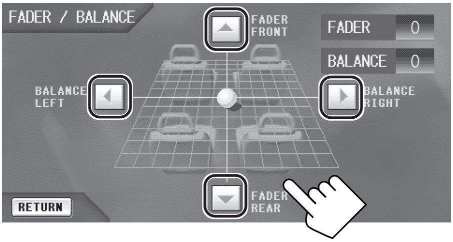
Adjust to match the input level to the FM sound level.


DVD
11:11
SOURCE
TITLE CHAP
01 01
TOTAL
0:00'09"
DolbyDigital
FLAT
Digital
RETURN
VOLUME ADJUST -5
–
+

To adjust fader and balance FAD BAL

Adjust fader—speaker output balance between the front and rear speakers.

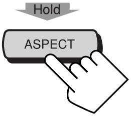
Adjust the balance—speaker output balance between the left and right speakers.


FADER / BALANCE
FADER FRONT
FADER 0
BALANCE 0
BALANCE LEFT
BALANCE RIGHT
RETURN
FADER REAR

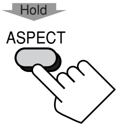
Monitor Adjustments

When no playback picture from the source is displayed, you can only adjust the brightness.

1 Display SCREEN CONTROL screen.

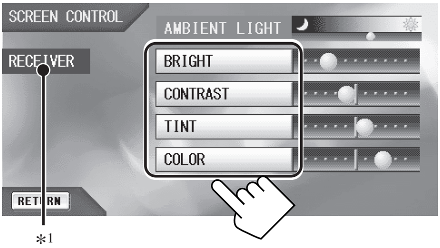

Hold
ASPECT

On the main unit

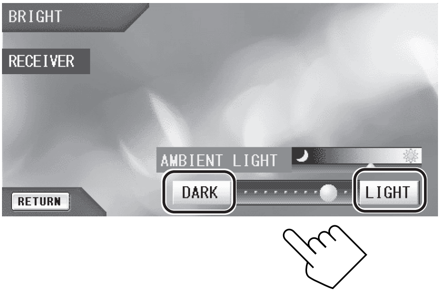

Hold
ASPECT

On the remote controller

2 Select an item to adjust.


SCREEN CONTROL
RECEIVER
AMBIENT LIGHT
BRIGHT
CONTRAST
TINT
COLOR
RETURN
*1

3 Adjust the item.


BRIGHT
RECEIVER
AMBIENT LIGHT
DARK
LIGHT
RETURN

Ex. When adjusting "BRIGHT."

Adjustable items

AMBIENT LIGHT

: Indicates the current ambient light level. As this level changes, the monitor adjusts the brightness automatically to match it to the current ambient light level.

BRIGHT

: Adjust the brightness separately for day time (☼) and night time (☾)—(LIGHT/DARK).

- The monitor can memorize the difference between the ambient light level and adjusted level, and adjusts the brightness automatically, keeping the level difference memorized.

CONTRAST

: Adjust the contrast (DOWN/UP).

TINT

: Adjust the tint if the human skin color is unnatural (RED/GREEN).

COLOR

: Adjust the color of the picture—thinner (THIN) or thicker (THICK).

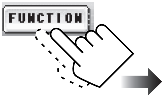
[*1] When you adjust the monitor, either "RECEIVER" or "CRADLE" (see page 38) appears. It indicates where the monitor is now loaded. You cannot store your adjustment separately for "RECEIVER" or "CRADLE."

Initial Setup—DVD MENU

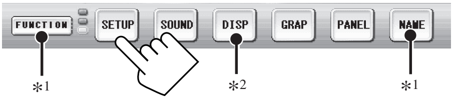
You can preset the initial disc playback conditions.

- While playing, no change can be made on the DVD Menu.

1

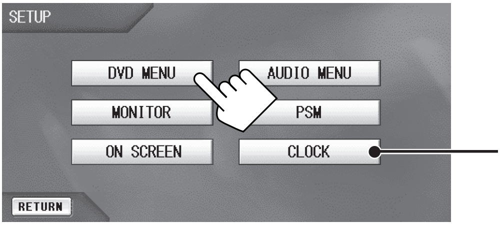


2


FUNCTION
SETUP
SOUND
DISP
GRAP
PANEL
NAME
*1
*2
*1

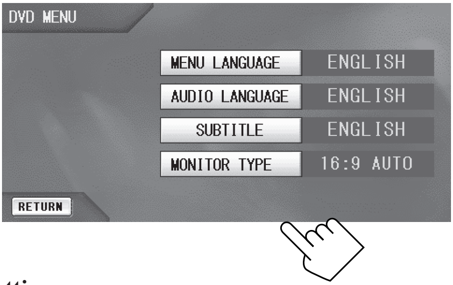
*1 It does not appear for some sources.
*2 It will be shaded when not available.

3


SETUP
DVD MENU
AUDIO MENU
MONITOR
PSM
ON SCREEN
CLOCK
RETURN

See page 13.

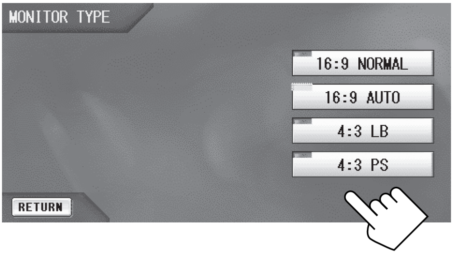
4 **Select the item you want.**


DVD MENU
RETURN

MENU LANGUAGE ENGLISH
AUDIO LANGUAGE ENGLISH
SUBTITLE ENGLISH
MONITOR TYPE 16:9 AUTO

5 **Change the setting.**

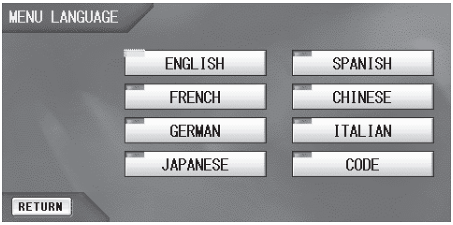
- For details, see the following pages.


MONITOR TYPE
16:9 NORMAL
16:9 AUTO
4:3 LB
4:3 PS
RETURN

Ex. When setting “MONITOR TYPE.”

MENU LANGUAGE

Select the menu language.


MENU LANGUAGE
ENGLISH
SPANISH
FRENCH
CHINESE
GERMAN
ITALIAN
JAPANESE
CODE
RETURN

AUDIO LANGUAGE

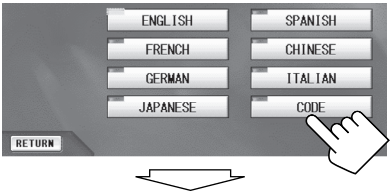
Select the audio language.

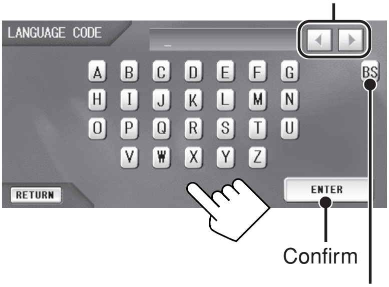
SUBTITLE

Select the subtitle language.
To erase the subtitle, select “OFF.”

If the language you want is not listed for the language menu list

See page 89 to find the language codes.


ENGLISH
SPANISH
FRENCH
CHINESE
GERMAN
ITALIAN
JAPANESE
CODE
RETURN


LANGUAGE CODE
A B C D E F G
H I J K L M N
O P Q R S T U
V W X Y Z
BS
ENTER
RETURN

Move the cursor position.

Confirm

Backspace
(Erase)

When the language you have selected is not recorded on a disc, the original language is automatically used as the initial language.

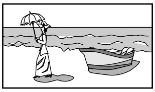
MONITOR TYPE

Select the monitor type of your TV (connected to the AV OUTPUT jacks) to play DVD Video recorded with aspect ratio of 16:9.

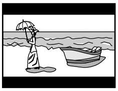
- For the removable monitor of this unit, set this to “16:9 AUTO.”

- 16:9 NORMAL:
  Select when the aspect ratio of your TV is fixed to 16:9 (wide TV).
- 16:9 AUTO:
  Select when the aspect ratio of your TV is 16:9 (wide TV), and it is equipped with aspect ratio adjustment function.
- 4:3 LB (Letter Box):
  Select when the aspect ratio of your TV is 4:3 (conventional TV). While viewing a wide screen picture, the black bars appear on the top and the bottom of the screen.
- 4:3 PS (Pan Scan):
  Select when the aspect ratio of your TV is 4:3. While viewing a wide screen picture, the black bars do not appear; however, the left and right edges of the pictures will not be shown on the screen.

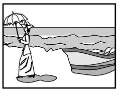
16:9



4:3 LB



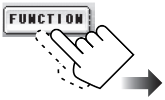
4:3 PS



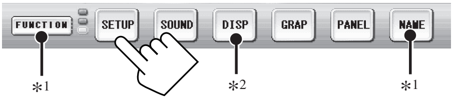
Initial Setup—MONITOR

You can preset the initial monitor conditions.

1



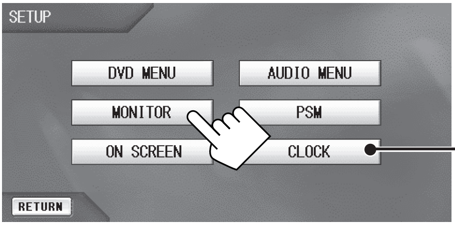
2


FUNCTION
SETUP
SOUND
DISP
GRAP
PANEL
NAME
*1
*2
*1

*1 It does not appear for some sources.

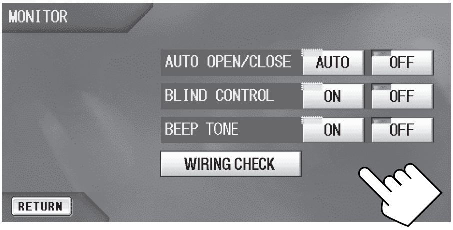
*2 It will be shaded when not available.

3


SETUP
DVD MENU
AUDIO MENU
MONITOR
PSM
ON SCREEN
CLOCK
RETURN

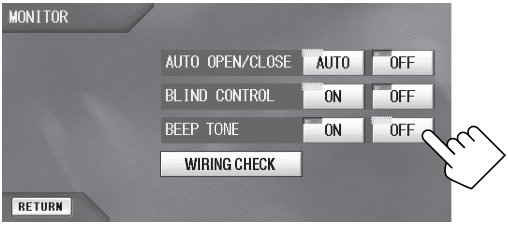
See page 13.

4 **Select the item you want.**


MONITOR
AUTO OPEN/CLOSE
AUTO
OFF
BLIND CONTROL
ON
OFF
BEEP TONE
ON
OFF
WIRING CHECK
RETURN

5 **Change the setting.**

- For details, see the following pages.


MONITOR
AUTO OPEN/CLOSE
AUTO
OFF
BLIND CONTROL
ON
OFF
BEEP TONE
ON
OFF
WIRING CHECK
RETURN

Ex. When setting “BEEP TONE” to “OFF.”

AUTO OPEN/CLOSE

AUTO OPEN/CLOSE
AUTO
OFF

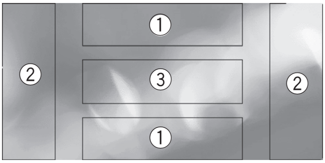
- AUTO: The monitor comes out* or goes in automatically when you turn on or off the power.
- OFF: Cancels this function.

* If you close the monitor before turning off the power, the monitor will not come out next time you turn on the power.

BLIND CONTROL

BLIND CONTROL
ON
OFF

- ON: The monitor works as Touch Panel when playing back pictures on the monitor.



– The boundaries cannot be shown on the monitor screen. This example is just to teach you where to touch on the Touch Panel when you operate on it.

① Upper/lower portions:
Adjust the volume.

② Left/right portions:
  - Skips the chapters/tracks for DVD/VCD.
  - Searches the chapters/tracks for DVD/VCD.
  - Searches for TV channels for TV. (see page 68).

③ Center portion:
Turns on and off the on-screen icons. (This also works even if “BLIND CONTROL” is set to “OFF.”)

- OFF: Cancels this function.

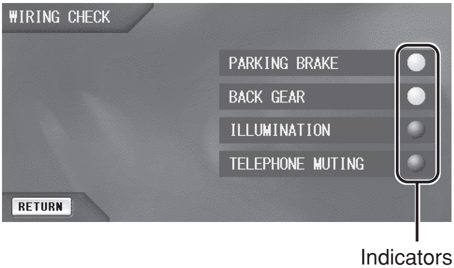
BEEP TONE

BEEP TONE
ON
OFF

- ON: Sound beeps when you operate the unit.
- OFF: Cancels this function.

WIRING CHECK

You can confirm the wiring connection is correctly done for particular functions.



- When the listed wires have been connected and electrical signals are detected through the wires, the corresponding indicators light up.

Dimmer function

To use the dimmer function, you need to connect the ILLUMINATION wire to...

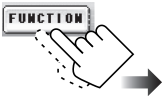
- **For Auto Dimmer:** Connect it to the car headlight switch. When you turn on the car lights, dimmer starts working—Auto Dimmer.
- **For Constant Dimmer:** Connect it to the car battery (constant 12V). Dimmer works whenever you turn on the power.
- **For Dimmer Off:** Connect it to nowhere.

- See also the Installation/Connection Manual (separate volume).

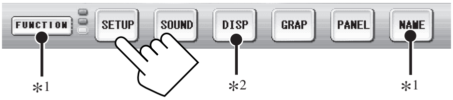
Initial Setup—ON SCREEN

You can preset the initial on-screen conditions.

1

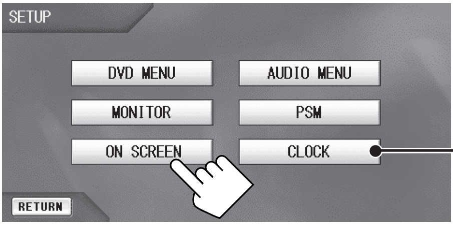


2


FUNCTION
SETUP
SOUND
DISP
GRAP
PANEL
NAME
∗1
∗2
∗1

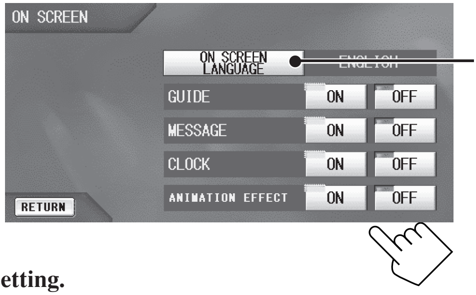
∗1 It does not appear for some sources.
∗2 It will be shaded when not available.

3


SETUP
DVD MENU
AUDIO MENU
MONITOR
PSM
ON SCREEN
CLOCK
RETURN

See page 13.

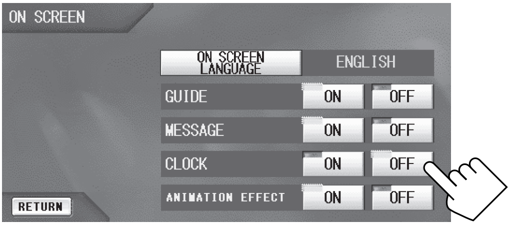
4 **Select the item you want.**


ON SCREEN
ON SCREEN LANGUAGE
ENGLISH
GUIDE
ON
OFF
MESSAGE
ON
OFF
CLOCK
ON
OFF
ANIMATION EFFECT
ON
OFF
RETURN

Language selection screen appears.

5 **Change the setting.**

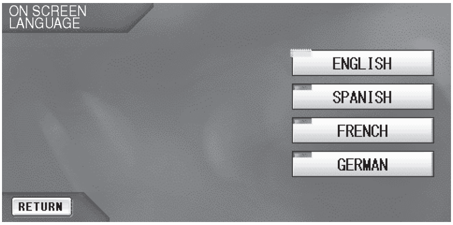
- For details, see the following pages.


ON SCREEN
ON SCREEN LANGUAGE
ENGLISH
GUIDE
ON
OFF
MESSAGE
ON
OFF
CLOCK
ON
OFF
ANIMATION EFFECT
ON
OFF
RETURN

Ex. When setting “CLOCK” to “OFF.”

ON SCREEN LANGUAGE

You can select the language for this Setup Menu and some of the messages displayed on the monitor.


ON SCREEN LANGUAGE
ENGLISH
SPANISH
FRENCH
GERMAN
RETURN

GUIDE

GUIDE
ON
OFF

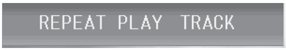
- ON: On-screen guide icons (see page 28) are displayed on the monitor while operating the built-in disc player.
  – When the TV tuner unit (KV-C1001) is connected, its on-screen display will be shown.
- OFF: Cancels this function.

MESSAGE

MESSAGE
ON
OFF

- ON: Speaker/signal indicators (see page 82) and messages are displayed.

  Messages are displayed on the viewing window of the monitor screen...
  – When selecting repeat mode, random mode, intro scan, etc.
  – When starting Time Search, Title Search, Chapter Search, and Track Search.



REPEAT PLAY TRACK

Ex. One of the messages appears when selecting repeat mode.

- OFF: Cancels this function.

CLOCK

CLOCK
ON
OFF

- ON: Display the clock time on the monitor.
- OFF: Cancels this function.

ANIMATION EFFECT

ANIMATION EFFECT
ON
OFF

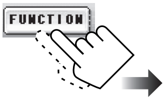
- ON: Source selection screen appears and disappears as if you open or close the curtain.
- OFF: Cancels this function.

Initial Setup—AUDIO MENU/PSM

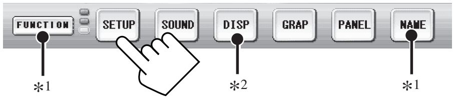
You can preset the initial audio-related conditions and Preferred Setting Modes (PSM).

- You cannot select “AUDIO MENU” when the subsidiary source operation screen is displayed on the monitor (with Dual Mode turned on; see page 38).

1

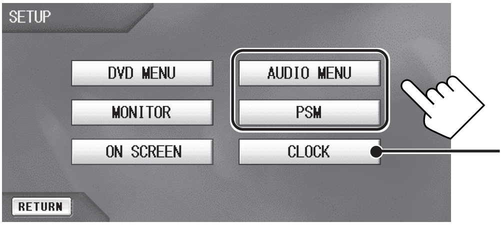


2


FUNCTION
SETUP
SOUND
DISP
GRAP
PANEL
NAME
*1
*2
*1

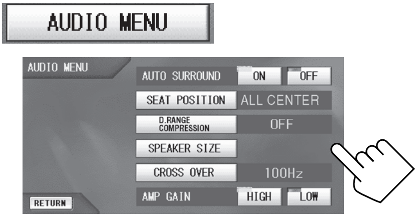
*1 It does not appear for some sources.
*2 It will be shaded when not available.

3

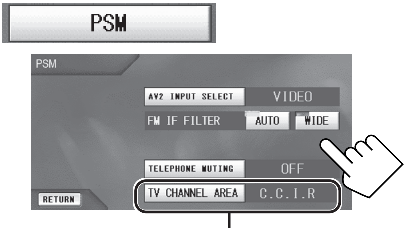

SETUP
DVD MENU
AUDIO MENU
MONITOR
PSM
ON SCREEN
CLOCK
RETURN

See page 13.

4 **Select the item you want.**


AUDIO MENU
AUDIO MENU
SPEAKER SIZE
RETURN

AUTO SURROUND ON OFF
SEAT POSITION ALL CENTER
D.RANGE COMPRESSION OFF
CROSS OVER 100Hz
AMP GAIN HIGH LOW

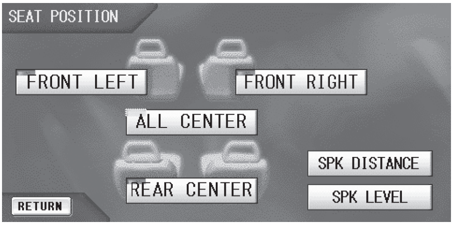

PSM
PSM
RETURN

AV2 INPUT SELECT VIDEO
FM IF FILTER AUTO WIDE
TELEPHONE MUTING OFF
TV CHANNEL AREA C.C.I.R

Appears when TV tuner unit KV-C1001 is connected.

5 **Change the setting or enter the setting screen.**

- For details, see the following pages.

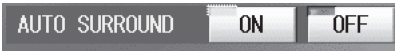

SEAT POSITION
FRONT LEFT
FRONT RIGHT
ALL CENTER
REAR CENTER
SPK DISTANCE
SPK LEVEL
RETURN

Ex. When entering “SEAT POSITION.”

AUDIO MENU

AUTO SURROUND

You can activate an appropriate surround mode automatically when a loaded disc is detected.



- **ON:** An appropriate surround/DSP mode is automatically selected.

  While Dolby Digital multi-channel signals are detected, "Dolby Digital" is automatically selected.

  While DTS multi-channel signals are detected, "DTS" is automatically selected.

  While Dolby Surround (PL II) signals are detected, "Dolby Pro Logic II Movie" is automatically selected.

  While Linear PCM signals are detected (for DVD/CD), "Dolby Pro Logic II Music" is automatically selected.

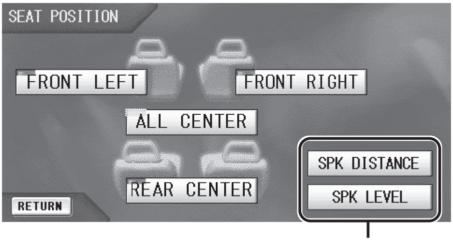
  While other signals are detected, Surround mode is defeated.
- **OFF:** Cancels this function.

> *Auto Surround does not work for any sources other than "DISC." When another source is selected, the currently selected Surround or DSP mode is resumed (see page 42).*

SEAT POSITION

Select the listening seat position where you want to locate the sound image.

- Speaker distance and speaker level can be memorized for each position.

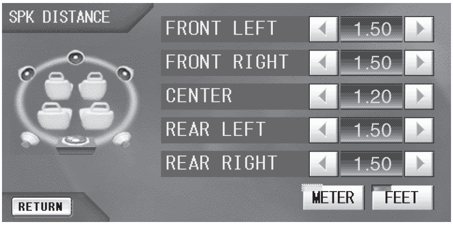


Display sub-setting screens.

- **FRONT LEFT:** For the front left seat.
- **FRONT RIGHT:** For the front right seat.
- **ALL CENTER:** For all front and rear seats.
- **REAR CENTER:** For the rear seats.

- **SPK DISTANCE** : Displays the SPK DISTANCE screen.

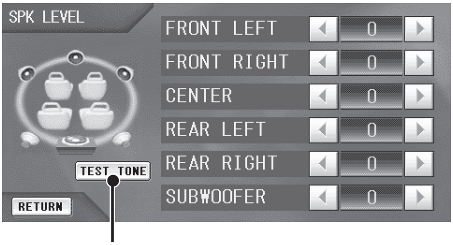
You can adjust the speaker distance from your listening position in meters or feet.



FRONT LEFT 1.50
FRONT RIGHT 1.50
CENTER 1.20
REAR LEFT 1.50
REAR RIGHT 1.50

- **SPK LEVEL** : Displays the SPK LEVEL screen.

You can adjust the speaker level referring to the test tone.



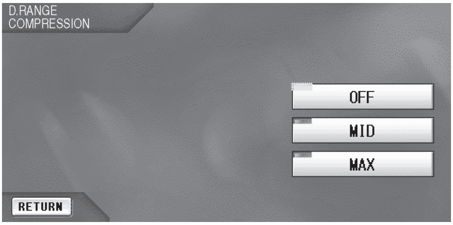
FRONT LEFT 0
FRONT RIGHT 0
CENTER 0
REAR LEFT 0
REAR RIGHT 0
SUBWOOFER 0

Emits the test tone from each speaker in sequence.
To stop, press again.

D (Dynamic). RANGE COMPRESSION

You can enjoy a powerful sound even at a low volume level by compressing dynamic range (difference between the lowest and the highest frequency sounds).

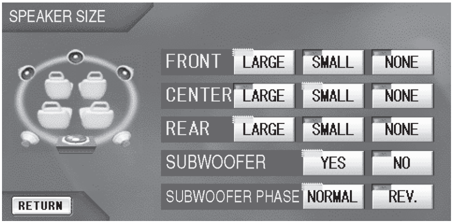
- This takes effect for all the playback sources.


D.RANGE COMPRESSION
OFF
MID
MAX
RETURN

- **OFF:** Select when you want to enjoy playback with its full dynamic range (no effect applied).
- **MID:** Select when you want to reduce the dynamic range a little.
- **MAX:** Select when you want to apply the compress effect fully (useful at a low volume level).

SPEAKER SIZE

Set speaker information correctly.

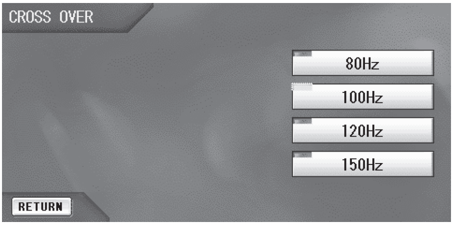

SPEAKER SIZE
FRONT
LARGE
SMALL
NONE
CENTER
LARGE
SMALL
NONE
REAR
LARGE
SMALL
NONE
SUBWOOFER
YES
NO
SUBWOOFER PHASE
NORMAL
REV.
RETURN

- **FRONT/CENTER/REAR:**
  Set the speaker size properly.
  – LARGE: If the cone speaker size is more than 13 cm.
  – SMALL: If the cone speaker size is less than 13 cm.
  – NONE: If not used.
- **SUBWOOFER:**
  Select “YES” (connected) or “NO” (disconnected).
- **SUBWOOFER PHASE:**
  Select either “NORMAL” or “REV. (reverse)” to obtain better subwoofer sounds.

> - *These settings are very related to one another; therefore, one setting is changed, some other settings will be changed automatically and appropriately (see page 87).*
> - *Sound comes out of the subwoofer for Dolby Pro Logic II only when either the front speakers or the center speaker is set to “SMALL.”*

CROSS OVER

You can select the crossover frequency for the small speakers used. The signals below the preset frequency level will be sent to the subwoofer (or to the “LARGE” speakers when “SUBWOOFER” is set to “NO”).


CROSS OVER
80Hz
100Hz
120Hz
150Hz
RETURN

AMP GAIN

You can change the maximum volume level of this unit. When the maximum power of the speakers is less than 50 W, select “LOW” to prevent them from being damaged.

AMP GAIN
HIGH
LOW

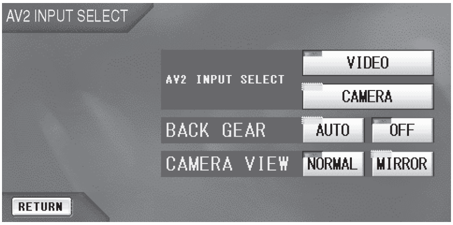
- **HIGH:** You can adjust the volume level from “0” to “50.”
- **LOW:** You can adjust the volume level from “0” to “30.”

PSM

AV2 INPUT SELECT

You can determine the use of AV INPUT 2 jacks on the hideaway unit—select either “VIDEO” or “CAMERA.”

- When the playback source is “AV2,” this setting cannot be changed.


AV2 INPUT SELECT
AV2 INPUT SELECT
VIDEO
CAMERA
BACK GEAR
AUTO
OFF
CAMERA VIEW
NORMAL
MIRROR
RETURN

- VIDEO: The source “AV2” works for viewing the playback picture through the component connected to the AV INPUT 2 jacks.
- CAMERA: Select this when connecting the rear view camera.
  - You can set the remaining two items (BACK GEAR/ CAMERA VIEW).

BACK GEAR

- AUTO: The rear view through the rear view camera is automatically displayed on the monitor when you change the gear to the back position.
- OFF: Cancels this function. To watch the rear view, select “AV2” for the source.

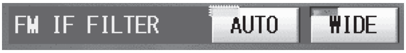
CAMERA VIEW

- NORMAL: You can watch the rear view as the camera takes.
- MIRROR: You can watch the rear view as reflected on the mirror.

> *While watching the camera view, you can change it to the source playback screen by touching the center portion of the monitor screen. (In this case, you cannot change the aspect ratio and make monitor adjustments—see pages 29 and 47.)*

FM IF FILTER

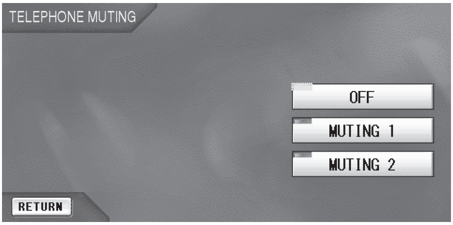
In some areas, adjacent stations may interfere with each other. If this interference occurs, noise may be heard.


FM IF FILTER
AUTO
WIDE

- AUTO: When this type of interference occurs, this unit automatically increases the tuner selectivity so that interference noise will be reduced. (But the stereo effect will also be lost.)
- WIDE: Subject to the interference from adjacent stations, but sound quality will not be degraded and the stereo effect will not be lost.

TELEPHONE MUTING

This mode works when a cellular phone system is connected. Select either “MUTING 1” or “MUTING 2,” whichever mutes the sounds from this unit.

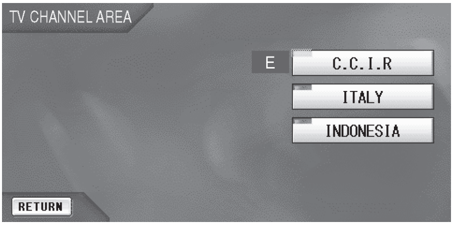

TELEPHONE MUTING
OFF
MUTING 1
MUTING 2
RETURN

TV CHANNEL AREA

- This setting appears when the TV tuner unit KV-C1001 is connected.

When you use the optional TV tuner unit either in Italy or Indonesia, select the country.

- Normally select “C.C.I.R.”


TV CHANNEL AREA
E
C.C.I.R
ITALY
INDONESIA
RETURN

Other Main Functions

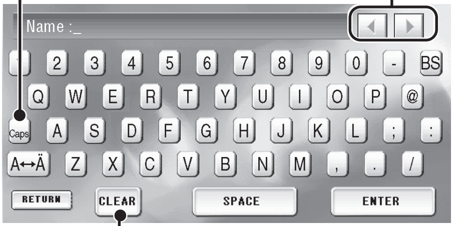
Assigning titles to the sources NAME

Roman alphabet list

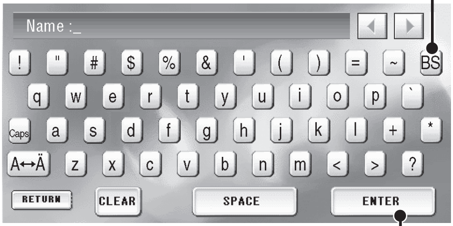
Alternates between upper and lower cases.

Moves the cursor position.

Backspace
(Erase the last entry)


Name :_
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 - BS
Q W E R T Y U I O P @
Caps A S D F G H J K L ; :
A↔Ä Z X C V B N M , . /
RETURN CLEAR SPACE ENTER

Upper cases


Name :_
! " # $ % & ' ( ) = ~ BS
q w e r t y u i o p `
Caps a s d f g h j k l + *
A↔Ä z x c v b n m < > ?
RETURN CLEAR SPACE ENTER

Lower cases

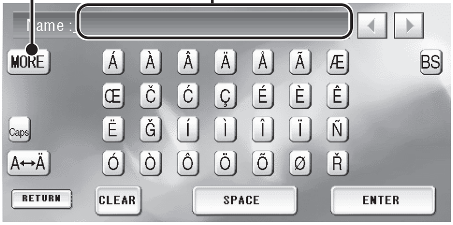
Erase all entered character.

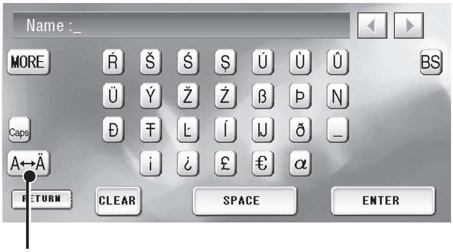
Confirm the entered name.

Accented characters: Upper cases

Display the other page of the character list of the same type.

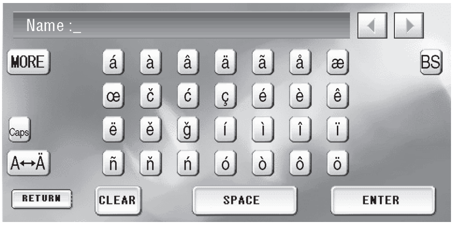
Entered name is displayed.

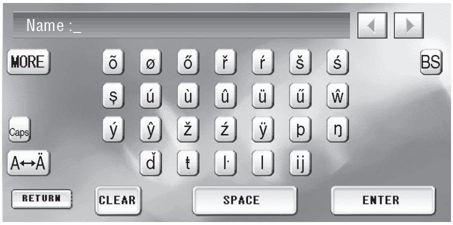

Name :
MORE Á À Â Ä Å Ã Æ BS
Œ Č Ć Ç É È Ê
Caps Ë Ğ Í Ì Î Ï Ñ
A↔Ä Ó Ò Ô Ö Õ Ø Ř
RETURN CLEAR SPACE ENTER


Name :_
MORE Ŕ Š Ś Ş Ú Ù Û BS
Ü Ý Ž Ź ß Þ Ŋ
Caps Đ Ŧ Ŀ Í Ĳ ð _
A↔Ä ¡ ¿ £ € α
RETURN CLEAR SPACE ENTER

Alternates between Roman alphabet and accented letter lists.

Accented characters: Lower cases


Name :_
MORE á à â ä ã å æ BS
œ č ć ç é è ê
Caps ë ě ğ í ì î ï
A↔Ä ñ ň ń ó ò ô ö
RETURN CLEAR SPACE ENTER


Name :_
MORE õ ø ő ř ŕ š ś BS
ş ú ù û ü ű ŵ
Caps ý ŷ ž ź ÿ þ ŋ
A↔Ä ď ŧ l· l ĳ
RETURN CLEAR SPACE ENTER

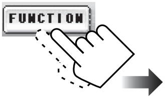
You can assign titles to 30 TV stations and 40 CDs (both in this unit and in the CD changer).

Source	Maximum character number
TV Stations:	10
CDs:	32

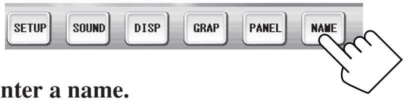
- You cannot assign a title to CD Text and MP3 discs.
- If you change the "TV CHANNEL AREA" setting (see page 57), assigned TV station names are all erased.

1 Prepare the source.
- **For a CD in this unit:** Insert a CD.
- **For CDs in the CD changer:** Select "CD-CH," then select a disc number.
- **For TV stations:** Change "TV," then select a TV station.

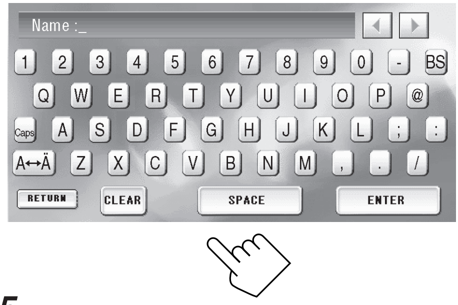
2



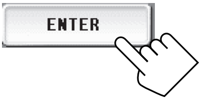
3


SETUP
SOUND
DISP
GRAP
PANEL
NAME

4 Enter a name.

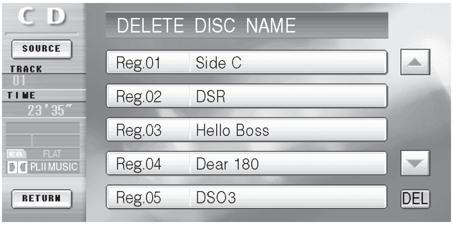

Name :_
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 - BS
Q W E R T Y U I O P @
Caps A S D F G H J K L ; :
A↔Ä Z X C V B N M , . /
RETURN
CLEAR
SPACE
ENTER

5 Confirm.



If the "DELETE DISC NAME" or "DELETE STATION NAME" screen appears

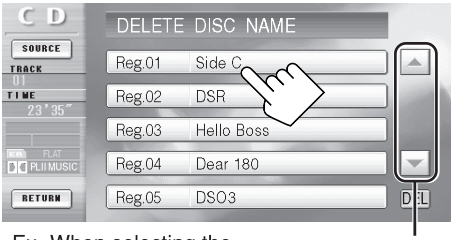
The internal memory is full. Delete unwanted names before assignment.


DELETE DISC NAME

Reg.01 Side C
Reg.02 DSR
Reg.03 Hello Boss
Reg.04 Dear 180
Reg.05 DSO3
C D
SOURCE
TRACK
01
TIME
23'35"
EQ FLAT
PLII MUSIC
RETURN
DEL

Ex. When trying a name to a 41st disc.

1 Select an unwanted name.

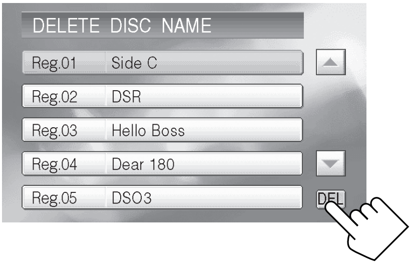

DELETE DISC NAME

Reg.01 Side C
Reg.02 DSR
Reg.03 Hello Boss
Reg.04 Dear 180
Reg.05 DSO3
C D
SOURCE
TRACK
01
TIME
23'35"
EQ FLAT
PLII MUSIC
RETURN
DEL

Ex. When selecting the first registered name.

To next/previous page of the list

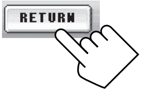
2 Delete.


DELETE DISC NAME

Reg.01 Side C
Reg.02 DSR
Reg.03 Hello Boss
Reg.04 Dear 180
Reg.05 DSO3

3 Repeat the above steps if you want to delete more names.

4 Finish.

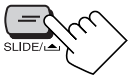


Changing the monitor position/ angle

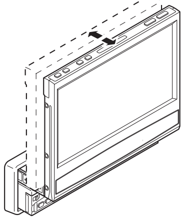
You can change the monitor position and the monitor angle.

- Once you change them, they are stored. The monitor opens at the stored position and angle, next time you eject the monitor.

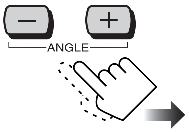
To change the monitor position

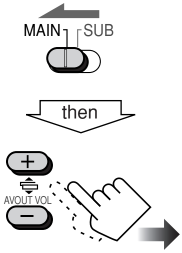


On the main unit



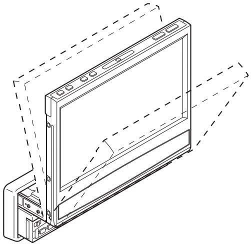
To change the monitor angle





On the main unit

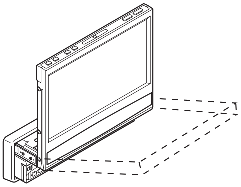
On the remote controller



Each time you press the button, the monitor changes its angle step by step.

- By holding the button (+/–), you can easily change the angle to its extreme (+/–).

To operate the car switches behind the monitor, press OPEN once.
The monitor change its angle to the illustrated position for about 30 seconds.



To return to its previous angle within 30 seconds, press OPEN again.

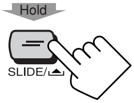
Removing the monitor

When detaching and attaching the monitor, observe the following:

- Be careful not to drop the monitor.
- Be careful not to damage the connectors.

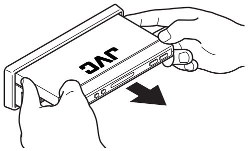
To detach the monitor

1

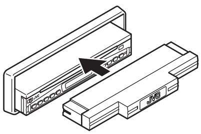


The monitor goes back into its compartment if it has been used, then comes out halfway.

2

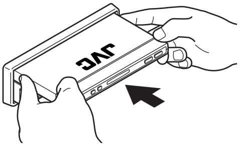


3 **Insert the blind cover to protect the internal mechanism from dust.**

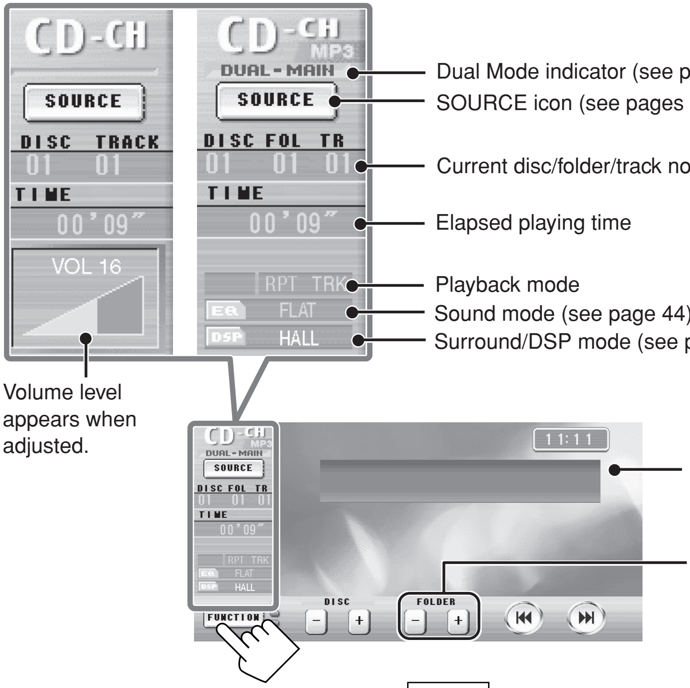


To attach the monitor

Insert the monitor into the compartment with the screen facing down.



CD Changer Operations


CD-CH
SOURCE
DISC TRACK
01 01
TIME
00' 09"
VOL 16
CD-CH MP3
DUAL-MAIN
SOURCE
DISC FOL TR
01 01 01
TIME
00' 09"
RPT TRK
EQ FLAT
DSP HALL
11:11
FUNCTION
DISC
FOLDER

Dual Mode indicator (see page 38)

SOURCE icon (see pages 14 and 38)

Current disc/folder/track no.

Elapsed playing time

Playback mode

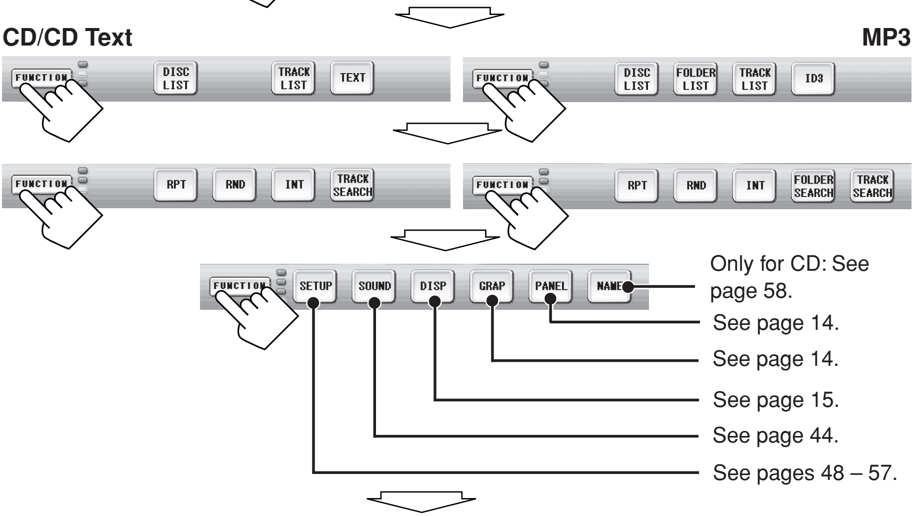
Sound mode (see page 44)

Surround/DSP mode (see page 41)

Volume level appears when adjusted.

Disc text/ID3 tag information area

Only for MP3


CD/CD Text
MP3
FUNCTION
DISC LIST
TRACK LIST
TEXT
FUNCTION
DISC LIST
FOLDER LIST
TRACK LIST
ID3
FUNCTION
RPT
RND
INT
TRACK SEARCH
FUNCTION
RPT
RND
INT
FOLDER SEARCH
TRACK SEARCH
FUNCTION
SETUP
SOUND
DISP
GRAP
PANEL
NAME

Only for CD: See page 58.

See page 14.

See page 14.

See page 15.

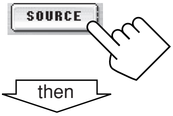
See page 44.

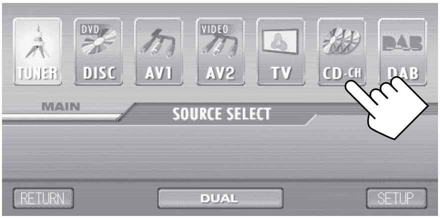
See pages 48 – 57.

Back to the beginning

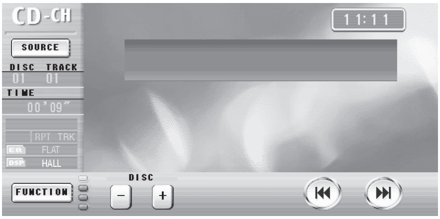
Basic CD Changer Operations

1 Select “CD-CH”

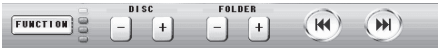

SOURCE
then


TUNER
DVD
DISC
AV1
VIDEO
AV2
TV
CD-CH
DAB
MAIN
SOURCE SELECT
RETURN
DUAL
SETUP

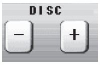
Ex. While playing CD/CD Text*


CD-CH
11:11
SOURCE
DISC TRACK
01 01
TIME
00’09”
RPT TRK
EQ FLAT
DSP HALL
FUNCTION
DISC

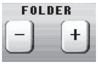
Ex. While playing MP3


FUNCTION
DISC
FOLDER

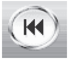
2 Operate the disc



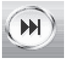
: Selects the disc.



: Selects the folder (only for MP3).



: Goes back to the beginning of the current track, then skips to the previous tracks if pressed repeatedly.



: Skips to the following tracks if pressed repeatedly.

* *Disc text information recorded in the CD Text can be displayed when a JVC CD Text compatible CD changer is connected.*

It is recommended to use the JVC MP3-compatible CD changer with your unit.

- You can also connect the CH-X series CD changers (except CH-X99 and CH-X100). However, they are not compatible with MP3 discs, so you cannot play back MP3 discs.
- You cannot use the KD-MK series CD changers with this unit.

Before operating your CD changer:

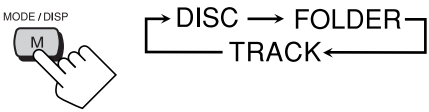
- Refer also to the Instructions supplied with your CD changer.
- If no discs are in the magazine of the CD changer or the discs are inserted upside down, “NO DISC” will appear on the monitor. If this happens, remove the magazine and set the discs correctly.
- If no magazine is loaded in the CD changer, “NO MAGAZINE” will appear on the monitor. If this happens, insert the magazine in the CD changer.

Advanced CD Changer Operations

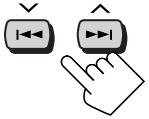
Selecting disc/folders/tracks

You can select the disc, (folder: only for MP3,) and tracks using the buttons on the main unit.

1


MODE / DISP
M
DISC
FOLDER
TRACK

2



When using the remote controller

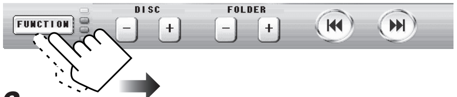
You can directly select the disc number by pressing the corresponding number buttons (1 – 12).

Locating a disc/folder/track using the list DISC LIST FOLDER LIST TRACK LIST

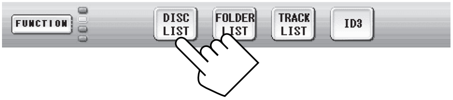
To locate a disc by displaying the disc list

Example: while playing MP3.

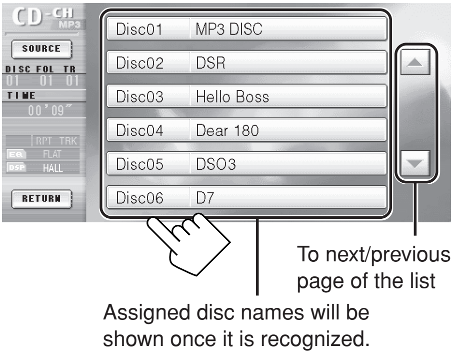
1


FUNCTION
DISC
–
+
FOLDER
–
+

2


FUNCTION
DISC LIST
FOLDER LIST
TRACK LIST
ID3

3 **Select a disc you want.**


CD-CH MP3
SOURCE
DISC FOL TR
01 01 01
TIME
00'09"
RPT TRK
EQ FLAT
DSP HALL
RETURN

Disc01 MP3 DISC
Disc02 DSR
Disc03 Hello Boss
Disc04 Dear 180
Disc05 DSO3
Disc06 D7

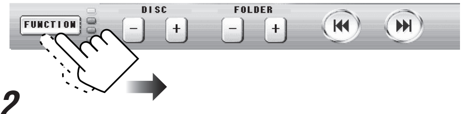
To next/previous page of the list

Assigned disc names will be shown once it is recognized.

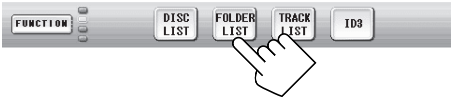
To locate a folder by displaying the folder list

- This functions only for MP3.
- Though you play back the same disc on the CD changer, its folder list may look differently from the one you display while playing it on the main unit. This happens because CD changer can also list up the folder in which no MP3 tracks are recorded.

1

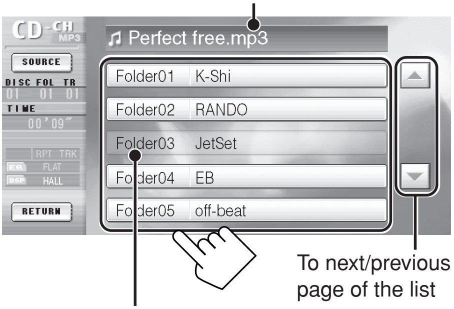

FUNCTION
DISC
–
+
FOLDER
–
+

2


FUNCTION
DISC LIST
FOLDER LIST
TRACK LIST
ID3

3 **Select a folder you want.**

Current track name or ID3 Tag


CD-CH MP3
SOURCE
DISC FOL TR
01 01 01
TIME
00'09"
RPT TRK
EQ FLAT
DSP HALL
RETURN

♫ Perfect free.mp3

Folder01	K-Shi
Folder02	RANDO
Folder03	JetSet
Folder04	EB
Folder05	off-beat

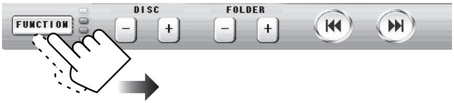
To next/previous page of the list

Shaded when no MP3 files are included.
You cannot select this folder.

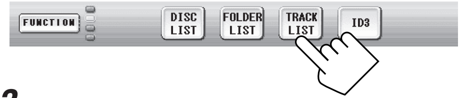
To locate a track by displaying the track list

Example: while playing MP3.

1

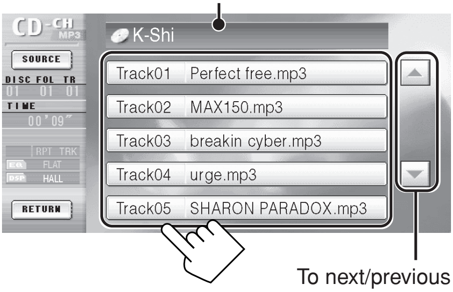

FUNCTION
DISC
FOLDER
–
+
–
+

2


FUNCTION
DISC LIST
FOLDER LIST
TRACK LIST
ID3

3 **Select a track you want.**

Current folder name or ID3 Tag (for MP3)
Disc name (for CD) or CD Text


CD-CH MP3
SOURCE
DISC FOL TR
01 01 01
TIME
00'09"
RPT TRK
EQ FLAT
DSP HALL
RETURN

K-Shi

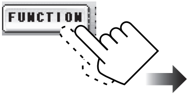
Track01	Perfect free.mp3
Track02	MAX150.mp3
Track03	breakin cyber.mp3
Track04	urge.mp3
Track05	SHARON PARADOX.mp3

To next/previous page of the list

Displaying the disc text information TEXT ID3

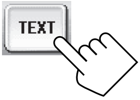
With Auto Scroll or Scroll selected, you can display the text and scroll it on the monitor if it is long and cannot be displayed at a time.

1

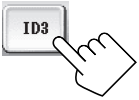


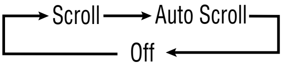
2

(For CD)



(For MP3)




Scroll
Auto Scroll
Off

- Scroll: Text on the information area scrolls once.
- Auto Scroll: Text on the information area scrolls every 5 seconds.
- Off: The information area goes off (no text information will be shown).

Selecting playback modes

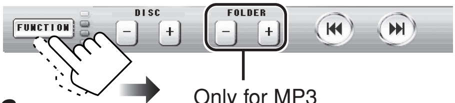
You can use only one of the following playback modes at a time—Repeat Play, Random Play, and Intro Scan.

Repeat Play RPT

You can repeat playback.

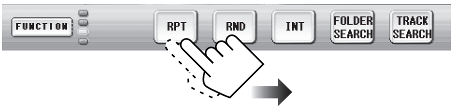
- Repeat Play cannot be deactivated.

1


FUNCTION
DISC
FOLDER
–
+
⏮
⏭

Only for MP3

2


FUNCTION
RPT
RND
INT
FOLDER SEARCH
TRACK SEARCH

When playing CD:

REPEAT PLAY TRACK → REPEAT PLAY DISC → REPEAT PLAY OFF

When playing MP3:

REPEAT PLAY TRACK → REPEAT PLAY FOLDER → REPEAT PLAY DISC → REPEAT PLAY OFF

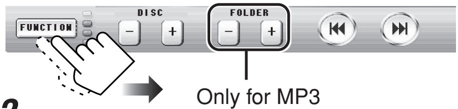
REPEAT PLAY

• TRACK:	Repeats the current track.
• FOLDER:	Repeats the current folder.
• DISC:	Repeats the current disc.
• OFF:	Repeats all loaded discs in the magazine.

Random Play RND

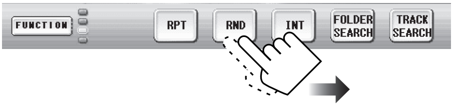
You can play back tracks at random.

1


FUNCTION
DISC
FOLDER
–
+
⏮
⏭

Only for MP3

2


FUNCTION
RPT
RND
INT
FOLDER SEARCH
TRACK SEARCH

When playing CD:

RANDOM PLAY DISC → RANDOM PLAY ALL → RANDOM PLAY OFF

When playing MP3:

RANDOM PLAY FOLDER → RANDOM PLAY DISC → RANDOM PLAY ALL → RANDOM PLAY OFF

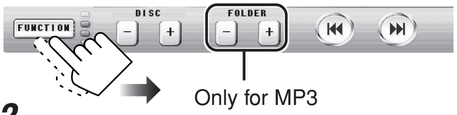
RANDOM PLAY

• FOLDER:	Plays randomly all tracks of the current folder, then moves to the next folder and so on.
• DISC:	Plays randomly all tracks on the current disc.
• ALL:	Plays randomly all tracks of all discs in the magazine.
• OFF:	Cancels Random Play.

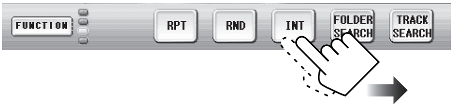
Intro Scan INT

You can play back the first 15 seconds of each track sequentially.

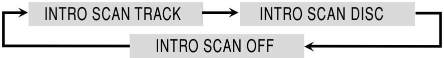
1


FUNCTION
DISC
FOLDER
–
+
Only for MP3

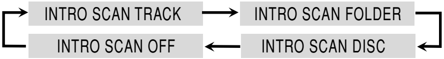
2


FUNCTION
RPT
RND
INT
FOLDER SEARCH
TRACK SEARCH

When playing CD:


INTRO SCAN TRACK
INTRO SCAN DISC
INTRO SCAN OFF

When playing MP3:


INTRO SCAN TRACK
INTRO SCAN FOLDER
INTRO SCAN DISC
INTRO SCAN OFF

INTRO SCAN

• TRACK:	Plays the beginning of all tracks of the current disc.
• FOLDER:	Plays the first tracks of all folders of the current disc (only for MP3).
• DISC:	Plays the first tracks of all discs in the magazine.
• OFF:	Cancels Intro Scan.

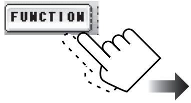
Searching for songs TRACK SEARCH FOLDER SEARCH

You can use search functions to find your favorite tracks (for CD/MP3) and folders (for MP3).

Folder/Track Search

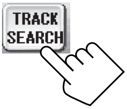
You can select a specific track (for CD/MP3) or folder (for MP3).

1

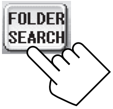


2

(For CD/MP3)

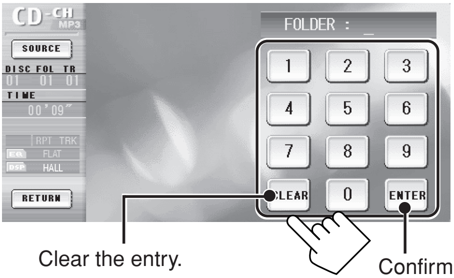

TRACK SEARCH

(For MP3)


FOLDER SEARCH

3 **Enter a number, then confirm.**

Ex. when playing MP3:


CD-CH MP3
SOURCE
DISC FOL TR
01 01 01
TIME
00'09"
RPT TRK
EQ FLAT
DSP HALL
RETURN
FOLDER : _
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
CLEAR
0
ENTER

Clear the entry.

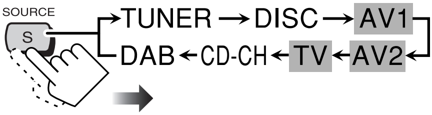
Confirm

External Component Operations

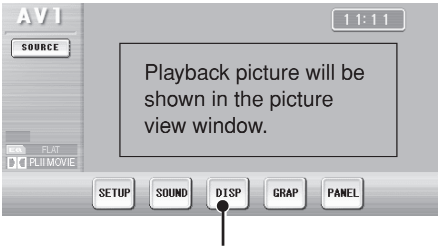
You can connect two video components as the playback components and an optional TV tuner unit (KV-C1001).

- When you connect the video camera as a rear view camera to the AV INPUT 2 jacks to guide you to back the car, set the usage of the AV INPUT 2 jacks correctly (see page 57).
- For connections, see the Installation/ Connection Manual (separate volume).

1 Select the external source


SOURCE
S
TUNER → DISC → AV1
DAB ← CD-CH ← TV ← AV2

- **AV1**: To watch the playback pictures through the component connected to the AV INPUT 1 jacks.
- **AV2**: To watch the playback pictures through the component connected to the AV INPUT 2 jacks.

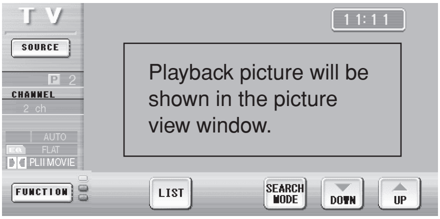

AV1
SOURCE
11:11
EQ FLAT
PLII MOVIE
SETUP
SOUND
DISP
GRAP
PANEL

Playback picture will be shown in the picture view window.

Not available while viewing the playback picture.

Ex. When “AV1” is selected.

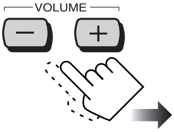
- **TV**: To watch TV programs through the TV tuner unit (KV-C1001).


TV
SOURCE
P 2
CHANNEL
2 ch
AUTO
EQ FLAT
PLII MOVIE
11:11
FUNCTION
LIST
SEARCH MODE
DOWN
UP

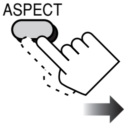
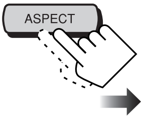
Playback picture will be shown in the picture view window.

To use the TV tuner unit (KV-C1001), see the following pages.

2 Adjust the volume

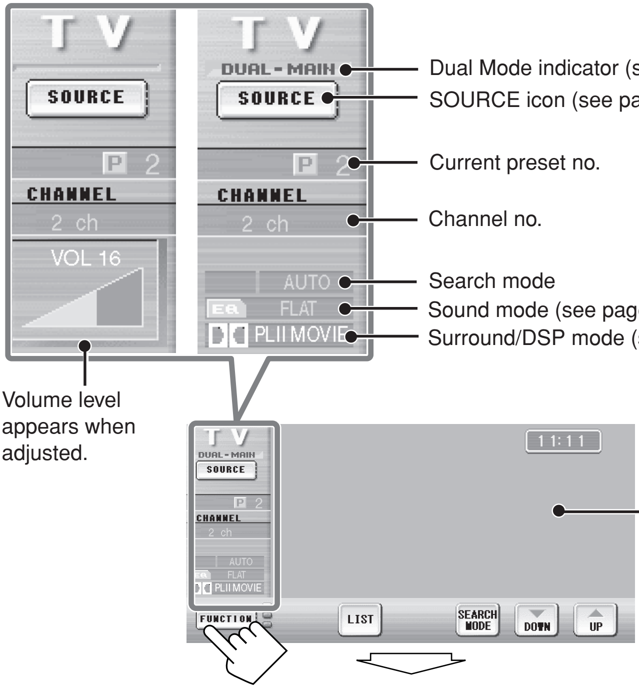


To change the aspect ratio...

On the remote controller	On the main unit
	

- For details, see page 29.
  When you selected “CAMERA” for “AV2 INPUT” (see page 57), you cannot change the aspect ratio of AV2.

TV Tuner Operations


T V
SOURCE
P 2
CHANNEL
2 ch
VOL 16
T V
DUAL - MAIN
SOURCE
P 2
CHANNEL
2 ch
AUTO
EQ FLAT
PLII MOVIE
11:11
FUNCTION
LIST
SEARCH MODE
DOWN
UP

Dual Mode indicator (see page 38)

SOURCE icon (see pages 14 and 38)

Current preset no.

Channel no.

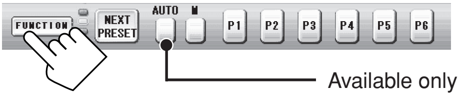
Search mode

Sound mode (see page 44)

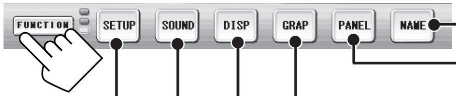
Surround/DSP mode (see page 41)

Volume level appears when adjusted.

Playback picture will be shown in the picture view window.


FUNCTION
NEXT PRESET
AUTO
M
P1
P2
P3
P4
P5
P6

Available only after pressing “M” (next to this icon).


FUNCTION
SETUP
SOUND
DISP
GRAP
PANEL
NAME

See page 58.

See page 14.

See page 14.

See page 15.
(Not available while viewing the playback picture.)

See page 44.

See pages 48 – 57.

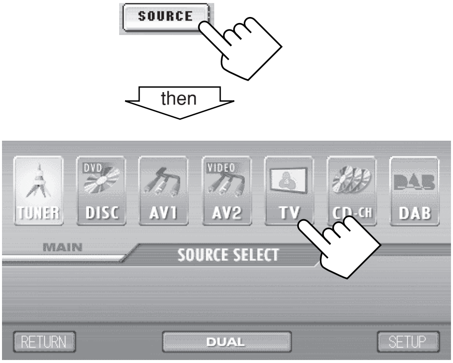
Back to the beginning

Watching TV programs

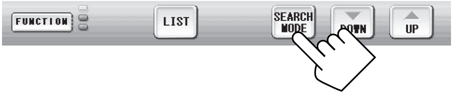
Before watching TV, select the area where you use the optional TV tuner unit (KV-C1001)—see page 57.

- To tune in to a station using Preset Search, first store your favorite TV stations into memory (12 stations).

1 Select TV

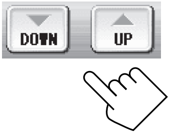

SOURCE
then
TUNER
DVD
DISC
AV1
VIDEO
AV2
TV
CD-CH
DAB
MAIN
SOURCE SELECT
RETURN
DUAL
SETUP

2 Select Search Mode


FUNCTION
LIST
SEARCH MODE
DOWN
UP

AUTO:	To start Auto Search.
MANUAL:	To start Manual Search.
PRESET:	To select preset station numbers (only possible after storing stations in memory).

3 Tune in to a TV station



- **For Auto Search,** press either icon once. "Auto Search" begins.
  When a station is received, searching stops.
- **For Manual Search,** press either icon repeatedly (or hold) until a station you want is selected.
- **For Preset Search,** press either icon repeatedly until a preset number you want is selected.

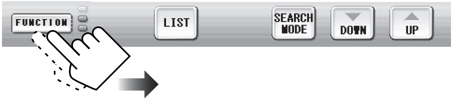
Storing stations in memory

You can preset 12 TV stations.

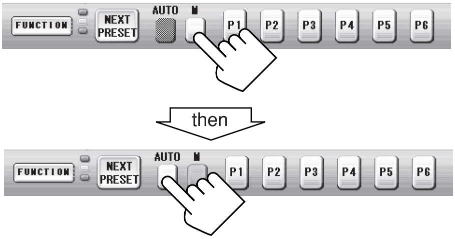
- To tune into a preset station, see "Watching TV programs."

TV station automatic presetting—Auto Memory

1


FUNCTION
LIST
SEARCH MODE
DOWN
UP

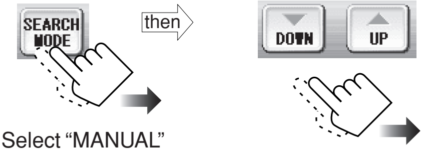
2 **Start Auto Memory.**


FUNCTION
NEXT PRESET
AUTO
M
P1
P2
P3
P4
P5
P6
then
FUNCTION
NEXT PRESET
AUTO
M
P1
P2
P3
P4
P5
P6

Local TV stations with the strongest signals are searched and stored automatically.

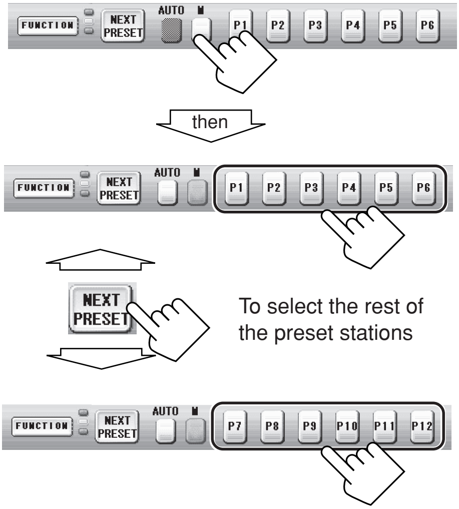
Manual presetting

1 **Tune into a TV station.**


SEARCH MODE
then
DOWN
UP

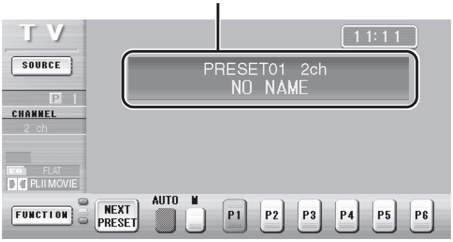
Select “MANUAL” (or “AUTO”).

2 **Store the station into a preset number.**


FUNCTION
NEXT PRESET
AUTO
M
P1
P2
P3
P4
P5
P6
then
P7
P8
P9
P10
P11
P12

To select the rest of the preset stations

Preset station information will be displayed.

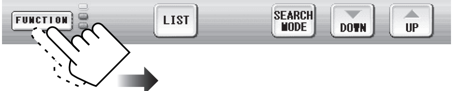

TV
SOURCE
P 1
CHANNEL
2 ch
EQ FLAT
PLII MOVIE
11:11
FUNCTION
NEXT PRESET
AUTO
M
P1
P2
P3
P4
P5
P6

PRESET01 2ch
NO NAME

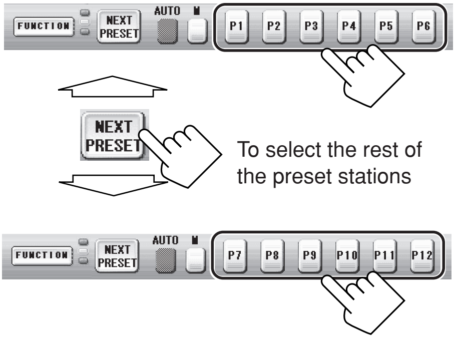
To tune in to a preset station

- See also “Watching TV programs” on page 69.

1


FUNCTION
LIST
SEARCH MODE
DOWN
UP

2 **Select a preset number.**


FUNCTION
NEXT PRESET
AUTO
M
P1
P2
P3
P4
P5
P6
P7
P8
P9
P10
P11
P12

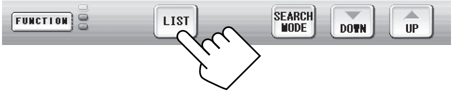
To select the rest of the preset stations

Displaying the preset list LIST

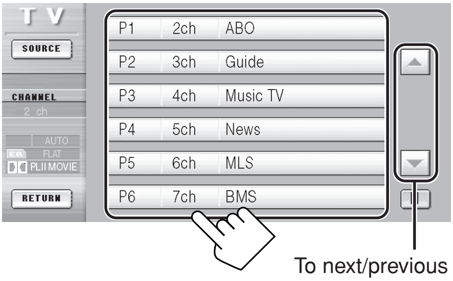
You can store and select the preset station using the preset list on the monitor screen.

To select a preset station using the preset list

1


FUNCTION
LIST
SEARCH MODE
DOWN
UP

2


T V
SOURCE
CHANNEL
2 ch
AUTO
FLAT
PLII MOVIE
RETURN

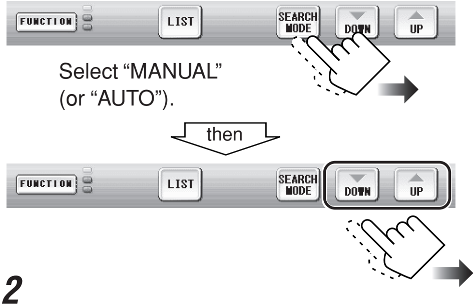
P1	2ch	ABO
P2	3ch	Guide
P3	4ch	Music TV
P4	5ch	News
P5	6ch	MLS
P6	7ch	BMS

To next/previous page of the list

- Preset numbers, channel numbers and assigned names (see page 58) of the preset TV stations are shown on the list.

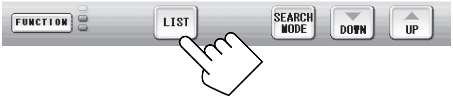
To store a station using the preset list

1 **Tune into a TV station.**

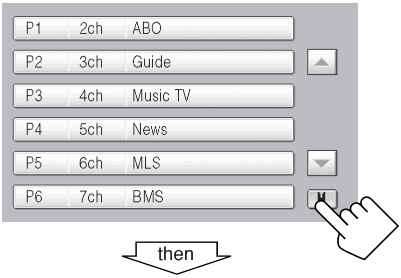

FUNCTION
LIST
SEARCH MODE
DOWN
UP
then
FUNCTION
LIST
SEARCH MODE
DOWN
UP

Select "MANUAL" (or "AUTO").

2

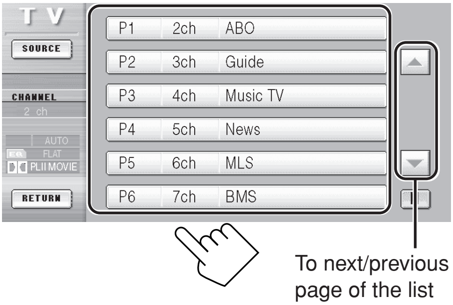

FUNCTION
LIST
SEARCH MODE
DOWN
UP

3 **Store the station into a preset number.**



P1	2ch	ABO
P2	3ch	Guide
P3	4ch	Music TV
P4	5ch	News
P5	6ch	MLS
P6	7ch	BMS

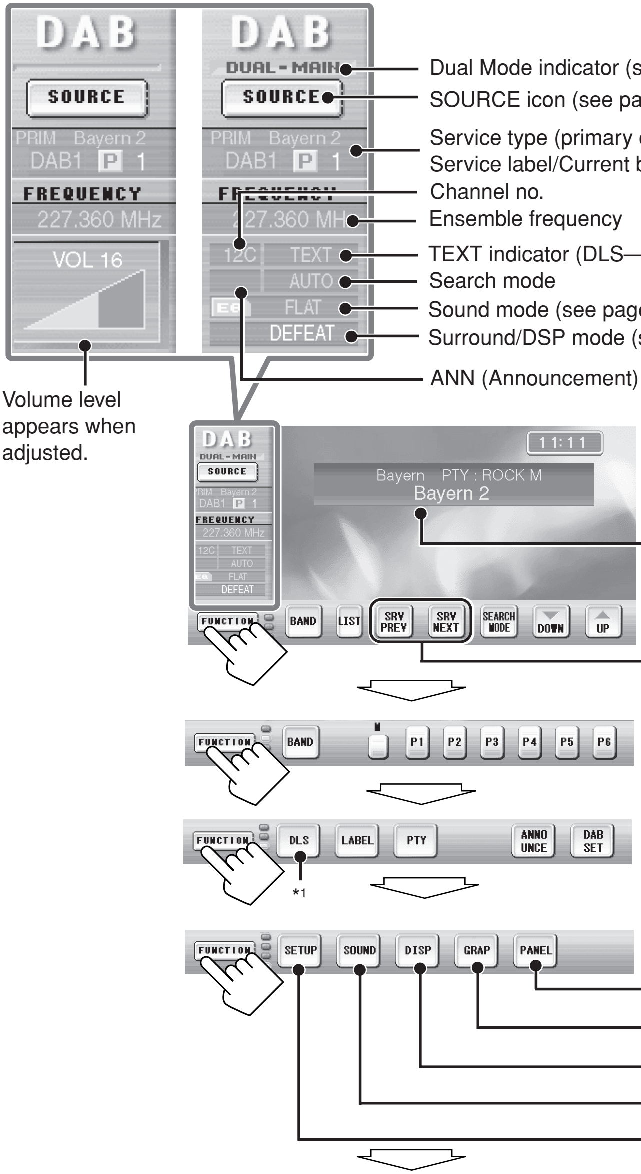
then


T V
SOURCE
CHANNEL
2 ch
AUTO
FLAT
PLII MOVIE
RETURN

P1	2ch	ABO
P2	3ch	Guide
P3	4ch	Music TV
P4	5ch	News
P5	6ch	MLS
P6	7ch	BMS

To next/previous page of the list

DAB Tuner Operations


DAB
SOURCE
PRIM Bayern 2
DAB1 P 1
FREQUENCY
227.360 MHz
VOL 16
DAB
DUAL - MAIN
SOURCE
PRIM Bayern 2
DAB1 P 1
FREQUENCY
227.360 MHz
12C
TEXT
AUTO
FLAT
DEFEAT
11:11
Bayern PTY : ROCK M
Bayern 2
FUNCTION
BAND
LIST
SRV PREV
SRV NEXT
SEARCH MODE
DOWN
UP
FUNCTION
BAND
P1
P2
P3
P4
P5
P6
FUNCTION
DLS
LABEL
PTY
ANNO UNCE
DAB SET
*1
FUNCTION
SETUP
SOUND
DISP
GRAP
PANEL

Dual Mode indicator (see page 38)

SOURCE icon (see pages 14 and 38)

Service type (primary or secondary)/
Service label/Current band/Preset no.

Channel no.

Ensemble frequency

TEXT indicator (DLS—DAB radio text)

Search mode

Sound mode (see page 44)

Surround/DSP mode (see page 41)

ANN (Announcement) indicator

Volume level
appears when
adjusted.

Ensemble label/
PTY code/
Service label

Works only while
receiving an
ensemble.

See page 14.

See page 14.

See page 15.

See page 44.

See pages 48 – 57.

Back to the beginning

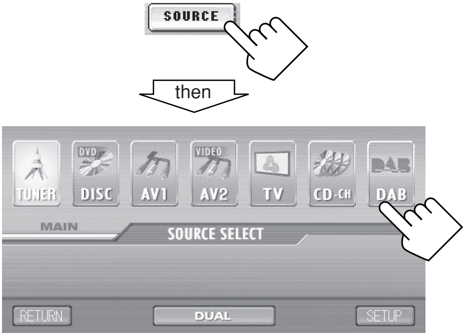
[1] Available only when DLS is displayed.

Listening to the DAB Tuner

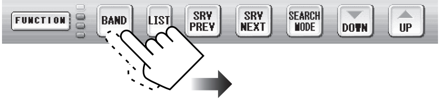
It is recommended to use DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) tuner KT-DB1000 with this unit. If you have another DAB tuner, consult your JVC IN-CAR ENTERTAINMENT dealer.

- Refer also to the Instructions supplied with your DAB tuner.
- To tune into a service using Preset Search, first store your favorite services into memory (6 stations for each band: see page 74).

1 Select the DAB Tuner

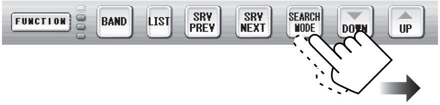

SOURCE
then
TUNER
DVD
DISC
AV1
VIDEO
AV2
TV
CD-CH
DAB
MAIN
SOURCE SELECT
RETURN
DUAL
SETUP

2 Select the band


FUNCTION
BAND
LIST
SRV PREV
SRV NEXT
SEARCH MODE
DOWN
UP

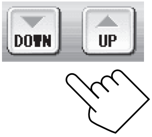
This receiver has three DAB bands (DAB1, DAB2, DAB3). You can use any one of them to listen to a DAB service.

3 Select Search Mode


FUNCTION
BAND
LIST
SRV PREV
SRV NEXT
SEARCH MODE
DOWN
UP

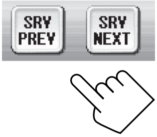
AUTO:	To start Auto Search.
MANUAL:	To start Manual Search.
PRESET:	To select preset numbers (only possible after storing services in memory).

4 Tune in to an ensemble



- **For Auto Search,** press either icon once. “Auto Search” begins.
  When an ensemble is received, searching stops.
- **For Manual Search,** press either icon repeatedly (or hold) until an ensemble you want is selected.
- **For Preset Search,** press either icon repeatedly until a preset number you want is selected.

5 Select a service (either primary or secondary) to listen to


SRV PREV
SRV NEXT

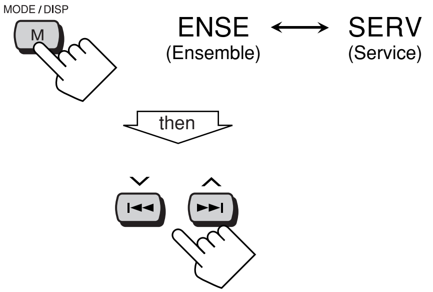
What is DAB system?

DAB can deliver CD quality sound without any annoying interference and signal distortion. Furthermore, it can carry text, pictures, and data. In contrast to FM broadcast, where each programme is transmitted on its own frequency, DAB combines several programmes (called “services”) to form one “ensemble.” In addition, each “service”—called “primary service”—can also be divided into its components (called “secondary service”). A typical ensemble has 6 or more programmes (services) broadcast at the same time.

Selecting ensembles and services

You can also select the ensembles and services using the buttons on the main unit.

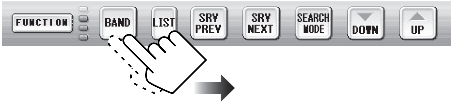
On the main unit


MODE / DISP
M
ENSE
(Ensemble)
SERV
(Service)
then

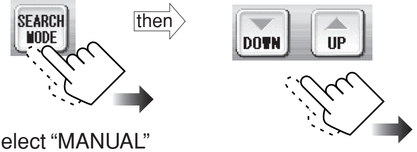
Storing services in memory

You can preset 6 services for each band.

1 **Select the band (DAB1 – DAB3) you want to store a service into.**

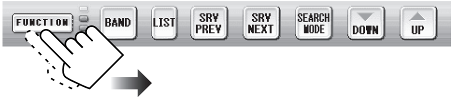

FUNCTION
BAND
LIST
SRV PREV
SRV NEXT
SEARCH MODE
DOWN
UP

2 **Tune into a service.**

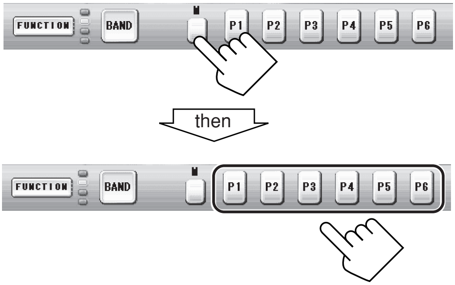

SEARCH MODE
then
DOWN
UP

Select “MANUAL” (or “AUTO”).

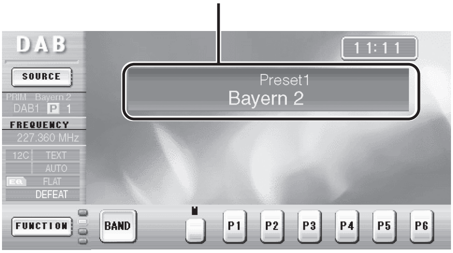
3


FUNCTION
BAND
LIST
SRV PREV
SRV NEXT
SEARCH MODE
DOWN
UP

4 **Store the service into a preset number.**


FUNCTION
BAND
P1
P2
P3
P4
P5
P6
then
FUNCTION
BAND
P1
P2
P3
P4
P5
P6

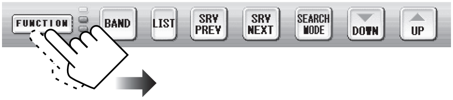
Preset service information will be displayed.


DAB
11:11
SOURCE
PRIM Bayern 2
DAB1 P 1
Preset1
Bayern 2
FREQUENCY
227.360 MHz
12C
TEXT
AUTO
EQ
FLAT
DEFEAT
FUNCTION
BAND
P1
P2
P3
P4
P5
P6

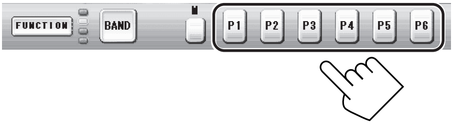
To tune in to a preset service

- See also “Listening to the DAB Tuner” on page 73.

1


FUNCTION
BAND
LIST
SRV PREV
SRV NEXT
SEARCH MODE
DOWN
UP

2

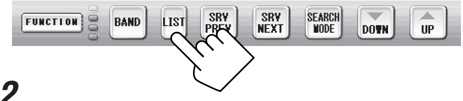

FUNCTION
BAND
M
P1
P2
P3
P4
P5
P6

Displaying the preset list

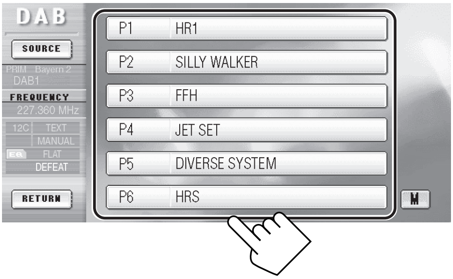
You can store and select the preset services using the preset list on the monitor screen.

To select a preset service using the preset list

1


FUNCTION
BAND
LIST
SRV PREV
SRV NEXT
SEARCH MODE
DOWN
UP

2

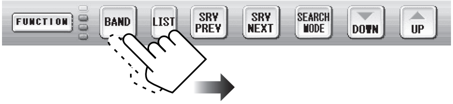

DAB
SOURCE
PRIM Bayern 2
DAB1
FREQUENCY
227.360 MHz
12C
TEXT
MANUAL
EQ
FLAT
DEFEAT
RETURN
M

P1	HR1
P2	SILLY WALKER
P3	FFH
P4	JET SET
P5	DIVERSE SYSTEM
P6	HRS

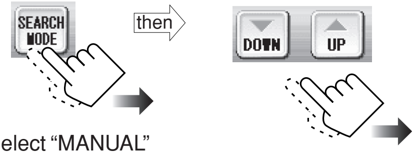
- Preset numbers and service labels are shown on the list.

To store a service using the preset list

1 **Select the band (DAB1 – DAB3) you want to store a service into.**

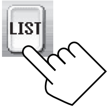

FUNCTION
BAND
LIST
SRV PREV
SRV NEXT
SEARCH MODE
DOWN
UP

2 **Tune into a service.**

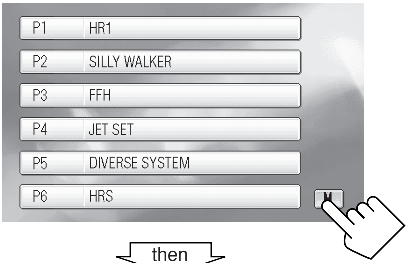

SEARCH MODE
then
DOWN
UP

Select “MANUAL” (or “AUTO”).

3

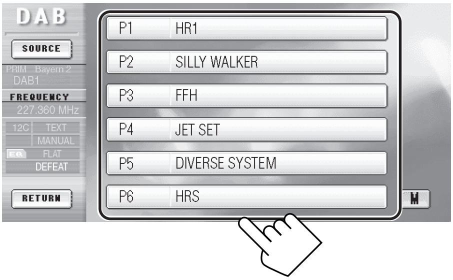


4 **Store the service into a preset number.**



P1	HR1
P2	SILLY WALKER
P3	FFH
P4	JET SET
P5	DIVERSE SYSTEM
P6	HRS

then


DAB
SOURCE
PRIM Bayern 2
DAB1
FREQUENCY
227.360 MHz
12C
TEXT
MANUAL
EQ
FLAT
DEFEAT
RETURN
M

P1	HR1
P2	SILLY WALKER
P3	FFH
P4	JET SET
P5	DIVERSE SYSTEM
P6	HRS

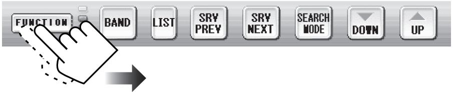
Displaying the DAB text

LABEL

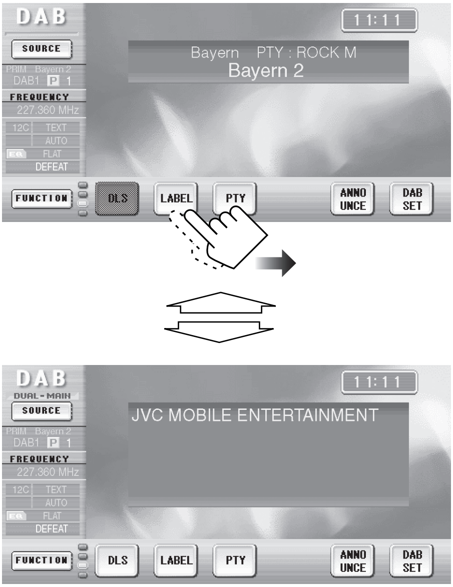
You can change the initial display—label information (ensemble label/service label/PTY code) to the DAB radio text information—Dynamic Label Segment (DLS).

- This function is available only when DLS is received. If the current service provides DLS, the TEXT indicator appears on the monitor screen.

1


FUNCTION
BAND
LIST
SRV PREV
SRV NEXT
SEARCH MODE
DOWN
UP

2

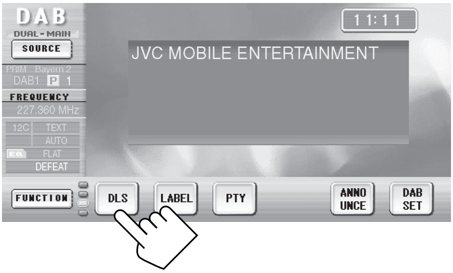

DAB
SOURCE
PRIM Bayern 2
DAB1 P 1
FREQUENCY
227.360 MHz
12C TEXT
AUTO
EQ FLAT
DEFEAT
11:11
Bayern PTY : ROCK M
Bayern 2
FUNCTION
DLS
LABEL
PTY
ANNO UNCE
DAB SET
DAB
DUAL - MAIN
SOURCE
PRIM Bayern 2
DAB1 P 1
FREQUENCY
227.360 MHz
12C TEXT
AUTO
EQ FLAT
DEFEAT
11:11
JVC MOBILE ENTERTAINMENT
FUNCTION
DLS
LABEL
PTY
ANNO UNCE
DAB SET

- Each time you press the icon, the label information and DLS alternate on the screen.

To erase the DLS

DLS

While DLS is displayed on the monitor...


DAB
DUAL - MAIN
SOURCE
PRIM Bayern 2
DAB1 P 1
FREQUENCY
227.360 MHz
12C TEXT
AUTO
EQ FLAT
DEFEAT
11:11
JVC MOBILE ENTERTAINMENT
FUNCTION
DLS
LABEL
PTY
ANNO UNCE
DAB SET

- Each time you press the icon, the DLS comes on and goes off.

Using the Standby Reception

You can use two types of Standby Reception—TA Standby Reception and PTY Standby Reception.

TA Standby Reception

See page 21.

- Operations are exactly the same as explained on page 21 for FM RDS stations.

PTY Standby Reception

PTY

You can search for any one of the PTY codes (either Dynamic or Static).

- Operations are exactly the same as explained on page 22 for FM RDS stations.
- You cannot store PTY codes separately for the DAB tuner and for the FM tuner.

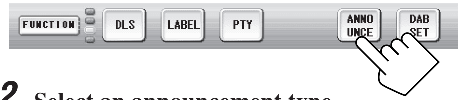
To store your favorite programme (service) types, see page 24 or 79.

To search for your favorite programme (service) type, see page 22, 24 or 79.

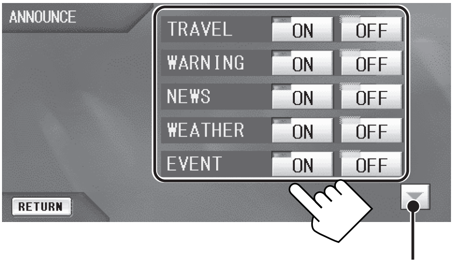
Using Announcement Standby Reception ANNO UNCE

Announcement Standby Reception allows the unit to switch temporarily to your favorite service (announcement type) from any source except FM and AM.

1



2 **Select an announcement type.**



To display the other announcement types

Once you select an announcement type, Announcement Standby Reception is activated.

- If the ANN indicator lights up on the monitor screen, Announcement Standby Reception is activated.
- If the ANN indicator flashes on the monitor screen, Announcement Standby Reception is not yet activated.
  To activate Announcement Standby Reception, tune in to another service providing these signals.
  The ANN indicator stops flashing and remains lit.

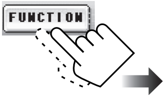
TRAVEL:	Programmes about travel destinations, package tours, and travel ideas and opportunities
WARNING:	Warnings about earthquakes, tsunami, etc.
NEWS:	News
WEATHER:	Weather information
EVENT:	Information about events, concerts, etc.
SPECIAL:	Special programmes expanding on current news or affairs
RADIO INFO:	Radio information
SPORTS:	Sport events
FINANCIAL:	Reports on commerce, trading, the stock market, etc.

To deactivate the Announcement Standby Reception, select "OFF" for the currently selected announcement type.

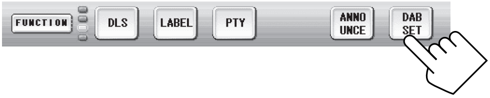
DAB Setup—DAB SET

You can make DAB setting and use some other convenient functions.

1

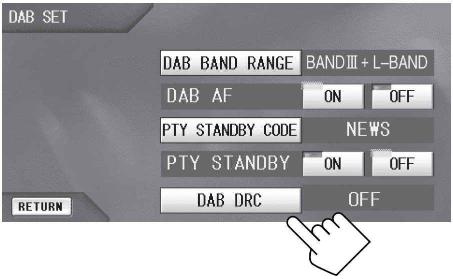


2


FUNCTION
DLS
LABEL
PTY
ANNO UNCE
DAB SET

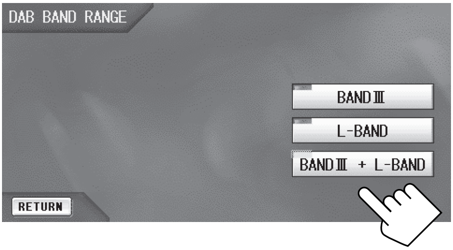
3 **Change the setting or enter the setting screen.**

- For details, see the following pages.


DAB SET
RETURN

DAB BAND RANGE: BAND III + L-BAND
DAB AF: ON / OFF
PTY STANDBY CODE: NEWS
PTY STANDBY: ON / OFF
DAB DRC: OFF

Ex. When pressing “DAB BAND RANGE.”

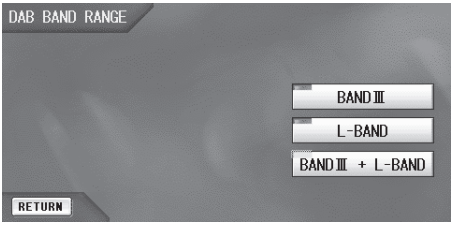

DAB BAND RANGE
BAND III
L-BAND
BAND III + L-BAND
RETURN

DAB BAND RANGE

DAB ensembles are broadcast on the following bands:

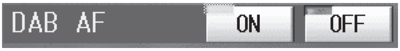
- Band III: 174.928 MHz to 239.200 MHz
- L-Band: 1452.960 MHz to 1490.624 MHz

In some areas, both bands are used, and in other areas only one of them is used.
Select the proper band for your area.



NOTICE: If you change the DAB band range after presetting the services, they will be erased.

DAB AF

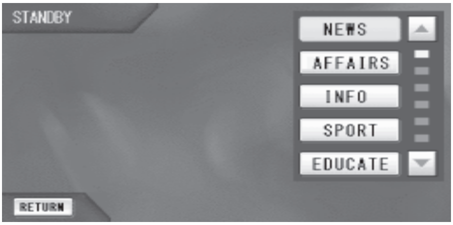


You can keep listening to the same programme using DAB Alternative Frequency—by selecting "ON."

- **While receiving a DAB service:**
  When driving in an area where a service cannot be received, this unit automatically tunes in to another ensemble or FM RDS station broadcasting the same programme.
- **While receiving an FM RDS station:**
  When driving in an area where a DAB service is broadcasting the same programme as the FM RDS station is broadcasting, this unit automatically tunes in to the DAB service.

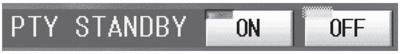
PTY STANDBY CODE

Select the PTY code for PTY Standby Reception (see also page 24).



- You cannot select a different PTY code separately for the DAB tuner and for the FM tuner.

PTY STANDBY

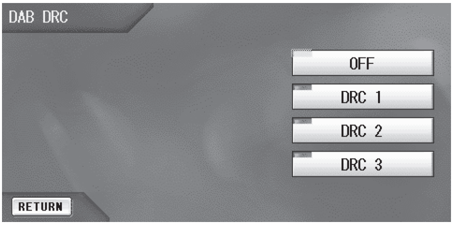


You can activate (ON) and deactivate (OFF) PTY Standby Reception both for the DAB tuner and for the FM tuner.

- You cannot use PTY Standby Reception separately for the DAB tuner and for the FM tuner.

DAB DRC

While driving, surrounding sounds will interfere with your listening. Especially the low level sounds will be hard to listen.
If this happens, you can reinforce the low level sounds to improve your listening if the currently received service provides Dynamic Range Control (DRC) signals.



- The higher the number is, the stronger the reinforcement becomes.
- To cancel this effect, select "OFF."

Maintenance

How to clean the monitor

When removing stains or dust on the surface, turn off the monitor, then wipe with dry soft cloth.

- Be careful not to scratch the surface when wiping it.
- Do not use the following materials to clean the monitor:
  - Wet cloth
  - Volatile substance such as benzine and thinner
  - Acid detergent, alkaline detergent, and detergent composed of organic substance
- When using chemically processed duster, read its precautions carefully.

How to clean the connectors

Frequent detachment of the monitor will deteriorate the connectors.
To minimize this possibility, periodically wipe the connectors with a cotton swab or cloth moistened with alcohol, being careful not to damage the connectors.

- Attach the blind cover to the main unit whenever the monitor is removed to protect the internal mechanism from dust.

Moisture condensation

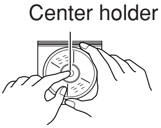
Moisture may condense on the lens inside the disc player in the following cases:

- After starting the heater in the car.
- If it becomes very humid inside the car.

Should this occur, the disc player may malfunction. In this case, eject the disc and leave the unit turned on for a few hours until the moisture evaporates.

How to handle discs

When removing a disc from its case, press down the center holder of the case and lift the disc out, holding it by the edges.



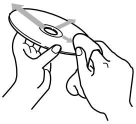
- Always hold the disc by the edges. Do not touch its recording surface.

When storing a disc into its case, gently insert the disc around the center holder (with the printed surface facing up).

- Make sure to store discs into the cases after use.

To keep discs clean

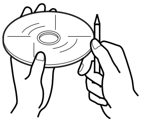
A dirty disc may not play correctly.
If a disc does become dirty, wipe it with a soft cloth in a straight line from center to edge.



- Do not use any solvent (for example, conventional record cleaner, spray, thinner, benzine, etc.) to clean discs.

To play new discs

New discs may have some rough spots around the inner and outer edges. If such a disc is used, this unit may reject the disc.
To remove these rough spots, rub the edges with a pencil or ball-point pen, etc.



More about This Receiver

Operation Methods

- Touch Panel screen goes off if no operations are made on it for about 30 seconds while viewing the playback picture.

Basic Operations

Turning off the power

- If you turn off the power while listening to a disc, disc play will start automatically, next time you turn on the power.

Changing the graphic screen

- If you select one of the graphic screens while playing a video source, no playback picture can be viewed.
- When you change the playback source to one of the video sources, the currently selected graphic screen is temporarily canceled in order to show the playback picture on the picture view window.

Radio Operations

Storing stations in memory

- When SSM is carried out for a band...
  - All stations previously stored for the band are erased and stations are stored newly.
  - Received stations are preset in No.1 (lowest frequency) to No.6 (highest frequency). When SSM is over, the station stored in No.1 will be automatically tuned in.
- When storing a station manually, a previously preset station is erased when a new station is stored in the same preset number.
- Preset stations are erased when the power supply to the memory circuit is interrupted (for example, during battery replacement). If this occurs, preset the stations again.

Basic Disc Operations

General

- In this manual, words “track” and “file” are interchangeably used when referring to MP3 files and their file names.
- When a disc has been already loaded, selecting “DISC” for the playback source starts disc play.

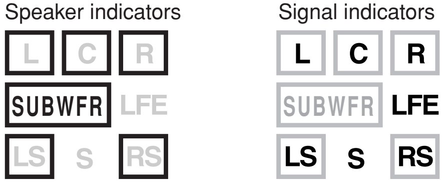
Inserting a disc

- When a disc is inserted upside down, the disc automatically ejects.

Playing a disc

- After loading an MP3 disc, this unit will take a long readout time. This readout time varies among the disc depending on its recording conditions.
- When playing an MP3 disc, sound interruption or skipping may occur. This is caused by the disc played back—its recording condition (missing data, etc.)
- When playing a DVD/VCD, no sound comes out during x5, x10, x20, and x60* Search (* only for DVD).
- Reverse Search stops automatically when it reaches the beginning of the disc. Playback resumes at normal speed.
- For some DVD/VCDs, changing the subtitle language and audio language (or audio channel) without using the disc menu is prohibited.
- One Touch Replay works only within the same title. (For some DVDs, this function does not work.)
- While zoomed in, the picture may look coarse.

- This unit cannot play back the files which have the data such as WMA, WAVE, ATRAC3, MPEG 2.5, etc.
- The speaker/signal indicators appear in the following cases (for DVD/CD):
  - – When a different type of the digital signal is detected, or
  - – When you start playback or resume playback from pause.



- – The speaker indicators—frames of “L,” “C,” “R,” “LS,” and “RS” light up, when the corresponding speakers are set to “LARGE” or “SMALL” (see page 56). Sounds come out of the speakers whose speaker indicators is lit on the display.
- – The SUBWFR indicator lights up when “SUBWOOFER” is set to “YES” (see page 56).
- – The signal indicators changes its color from white to yellow to indicate the incoming signals—L (front left) / R (front right) / C (center) / LFE (low frequency effect) / LS (left surround) / RS (right surround) / S (monaural surround).

Changing the source

- If you change the source, playback also stops (without ejecting the disc).
  Next time you select “DISC” for the playback source, disc play will start automatically.

Stopping play

- Except for MP3 discs: This unit can remember the end point (until the disc is ejected), and when you start playback again, playback begins from where it has been stopped (Resume play).
- For MP3 discs: This unit can remember the last playing track (until the disc is ejected), and when you start playback again, playback begins from the beginning of the same track.

Ejecting a disc

- If the ejected disc is not removed within 15 seconds, the disc is automatically inserted again into the loading slot to prevent it from dust. (Disc will not play this time.)

Displaying the disc text information

- For MP3: If no ID3 tag is recorded, folder and track names are displayed instead.

Notes on Recordable (R) and Rewritable (RW) discs

- Use only “finalized” discs.
- For DVD-R/DVD-RW: This unit can play back only discs recorded in the DVD-Video format. (Discs recorded in the DVD-VR format cannot be played.)
- For CD-R/CD-RW: This unit can play back only audio CD (CD-DA) files if a disc includes both audio CD (CD-DA) files and MP3 files.
- This unit can play back multi-session discs; however, unclosed sessions will be skipped while playing.

- Some discs may not play back on this unit because of their disc characteristics, and for the following causes:
  - – Discs are dirty or scratched.
  - – Discs are kept in a place where temperature becomes extremely high.
  - – Moisture condensation on the lens inside the unit.
  - – The pickup lens inside the unit is dirty.
  - – Discs on which the files are written with “Packet Write” method.
  - – There are improper recording conditions (missing data, etc.) or media conditions (stain, scratch, warp, etc.)
- Rewritable discs may require a longer readout time since the reflectance of rewritable discs is lower than that of regular DVD/CDs.
- Do not use following discs:
  - – Discs with stickers, labels, or protective seal stuck to the surface.
  - – Discs on which labels can be directly printed by an ink jet printer.

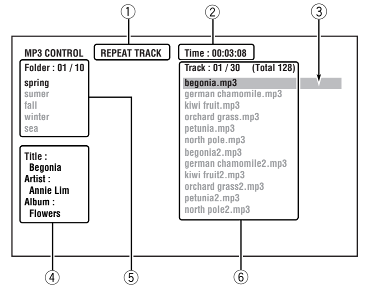
  Using these discs under high temperatures or high humidity may cause malfunctions or damage to discs.

Notes on MP3 files

- This unit can play back MP3 files only with the extension code <.mp3> (regardless of the letter case—upper/lower).
- This unit cannot play back the files encoded in the following formats—MP3i, MP3 PRO, Layer 1, Layer 2 format.
- This unit can show the names of albums, artists (performer), and tracks of ID3 Tag (Version 1.0 and 1.1).
- This unit can show up to 64 characters on the monitor screen.
- This unit can handle only one-byte characters. Any other characters cannot be correctly displayed.
- This unit can play back MP3 files meeting the conditions below:
  - – Bit rate: 8 kbps – 320 kbps
  - – Sampling frequency:
    48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz (for MPEG-1)
    24 kHz, 22.05 kHz, 16 kHz (for MPEG-2)
  - – Disc format:
    ISO 9660 Level 1/ Level 2, Romeo, Joliet, Windows long file name.
- The maximum number of characters for file/ folder names varies among the disc format used (includes 4 extension characters—<.mp3>).
  - – ISO 9660 Level 1: 12
  - – ISO 9660 Level 2: 31
  - – Romeo/Windows long file name: 128
  - – Joliet: 64
- This unit can recognize 99 folders and 150 files in each folder, which recorded in 10 hierarchies.
- This unit can play back the files recorded in VBR (variable bit rate).

  The files recorded in VBR have a discrepancy in elapsed time display, and do not show the actual elapsed time. Especially, after performing the search function, this difference becomes noticeable.
- Playlist is not available on this unit.
- The search function works but search speed is not constant during search.

- When an optional monitor is connected to the AV OUTPUT terminal, you can view the following MP3 CONTROL screen on the optional monitor.


①
②
③
MP3 CONTROL
REPEAT TRACK
Time : 00:03:08
Folder : 01 / 10
spring
sumer
fall
winter
sea
Track : 01 / 30 (Total 128)
begonia.mp3
german chamomile.mp3
kiwi fruit.mp3
orchard grass.mp3
petunia.mp3
north pole.mp3
begonia2.mp3
german chamomile2.mp3
kiwi fruit2.mp3
orchard grass2.mp3
petunia2.mp3
north pole2.mp3
Title :
Begonia
Artist :
Annie Lim
Album :
Flowers
④
⑤
⑥

① Currently activated play mode
② Elapsed playing time of the current track
③ Cursor (highlighted position): Indicates your selection.
④ ID3 Tag information
⑤ Folder column—folder names
(Ex. The first folder is selected out of 10 folders.)
  - Only 5 folders can be listed at a time.

⑥ Track column—track names
(Ex. The first track is selected out of 30 tracks in the current folder. 128 tracks are included in the disc.)
  - Only 12 tracks can be listed at a time.
  - Only the first 32 characters can be displayed on the monitor.

– While playing a CD, the current track and playback mode information is displayed on the optional monitor.

Dual Mode Operations

Adjusting AV OUTPUT volume

- This adjustment does not affect the volume level of the monitor inserted into the optional cradle (KV-CR100/KV-CR101).

Surround Mode Operations

- Dolby Digital disc is not always encoded as multi-channel source. If it is not multi-channel encoded, “Dolby Digital” cannot be selected for surround mode.

Sound Mode (iEQ) Operations

- If you do not want to store your current adjustment, but only to apply the adjustment to the current playback source, press RETURN on the monitor screen to go back to the operation screen of the current source. Adjustment you made remains effective until you select a sound mode.

Other Sound Adjustments

- If fader or balance has been set close to its extreme, appropriate surround/DSP effect may not be obtained.
- If you are using a two-speaker system, set the fader level to “0.”
- You cannot adjust the input level—Volume Adjustment—of the FM stations. If the source is FM, Volume Adjustment will not be used.

Monitor Adjustments

- You may not able to adjust the brightness in the following case:
  - You cannot make it brighter when the ambient light is very bright.
  - You cannot make it darker when the ambient light is very dark.

Initial Setup—DVD MENU

MENU/AUDIO/SUBTITLE LANGUAGE

- When the language you have selected is not recorded on a disc, the original language is automatically used as the initial language. In addition, for some discs, the initial languages settings will not work as you set due to their internal disc programming.
- Language setting change cannot be effective while playing (or pausing). After you change the language setting, eject the disc and insert it (or another disc) again so that your setting takes effect.

MONITOR TYPE

- When you select “16:9 NORMAL” for a picture whose aspect ratio is 4:3, the picture slightly changes due to the process for converting the picture width.
- Even if “4:3 PS” is selected, the screen size may become “4:3 LB” with some DVDs. This depends on how they are recorded.

Initial Setup—AUDIO MENU/PSM

- If you change the “**AMP GAIN**” setting from “HIGH” to “LOW” while the volume level is set higher than “30,” the unit automatically changes the volume level to “30.”

Other Main Functions

Assigning titles to the sources

- When the CD changer is connected, you can assign titles to CDs in the CD changer. These titles can also be shown on the display if you insert the CDs in this unit.

TV Tuner Operations

Storing stations in memory

- When Auto Memory is carried out...
  - All TV stations previously stored are erased and TV stations are stored newly.
  - Received TV stations are preset in No.1 (lowest frequency) to No.12 (highest frequency). When Auto Memory is over, the TV station stored in No.1 will be automatically tuned in.
- When storing a TV station manually, a previously preset TV station is erased when a new TV station is stored in the same preset number.
- Preset TV stations are erased when the power supply to the memory circuit is interrupted (for example, during battery replacement). If this occurs, preset the stations again.

DAB Tuner Operations

- PTY Standby Reception works for the DAB tuner only using a Dynamic PTY, but not a Static PTY.
- TA Standby Reception and PTY Standby Reception works for both DAB services and FM RDS stations.

Troubleshooting

What appears to be trouble is not always serious. Check the following points before calling a service center.

General

- **Sound is sometimes interrupted.**
  ⇨ You are driving on rough roads. Stop playback while driving on rough roads.
  ⇨ Disc is scratched.
- **Sound cannot be heard from the speakers.**
  ⇨ Connections are incorrect.
- **No sound comes out of the subwoofer (though it is activated—set to "YES").**
  ⇨ If Pro Logic II is activated with the front/center/rear speaker size all set to "LARGE," no sound comes out.
- **Surround/DSP mode is defeated and cannot be activated.**
  ⇨ It is fixed to "DEFEAT" if only rear speakers are activated (set to "LARGE" or "SMALL").

FM/AM broadcast

- **SSM automatic presetting does not work.**
  ⇨ Signals are too weak. Store stations manually.
- **Static noise is generated while listening to the radio.**
  ⇨ The antenna is not connected firmly.

Disc playback—DVD/VCD

- **You cannot watch the playback pictures on the additionally purchased monitor (KV-MAV7001) in the optional cradle (KV-CR100/KV-CR101).**
  ⇨ If the original monitor is not removed from the main unit, you cannot watch the playback picture while driving.
- **You cannot change the aspect ratio.**
  ⇨ While the GUI operation is in use, you cannot change the aspect ratio.
- **The left and right edges of the picture are missing on the screen.**
  ⇨ "4:3 PS" is selected when viewing on a conventional TV (aspect ratio 4:3). Select "4:3 LB."
- **Audio language or subtitle language cannot be changed.**
  ⇨ For some DVDs and VCDs, changing the language without using the disc menu is prohibited.

Disc playback—CD/CD-R/CD-RW

- **Sounds are skipped or playback stops suddenly.**
  ⇨ Disc is warped or sticker on the disc comes off. Do not play such a disc.
- **Disc cannot be played back.**
  ⇨ Disc is inserted upside down.
- **Tracks on the CD-R/CD-RW cannot be skipped.**
  ⇨ CD-R/CD-RW is not finalized.
- **Disc cannot be ejected.**
- **Disc is not recognized.**
  ⇨ Disc is locked. Unlock the disc (see page 29).
  ⇨ The main unit may function incorrectly. Press SOURCE and ⏏ at the same time for more than 2 seconds to eject the disc.

Disc playback—MP3

- **Disc cannot be played back.**
  ⇨ MP3 tracks do not have the extension code—<.mp3>.
  ⇨ MP3 tracks are not recorded in the format compliant with ISO 9660 Level 1, ISO 9660 Level 2, Romeo, or Joliet.

- **Noise is generated.**
  ⇨ The current track is not an MP3 file (although it has the extension code—<.mp3>).
- **Elapsed playing time is not correct.**
  ⇨ This sometimes occurs during play. This is caused by how the tracks are recorded on the disc.
- **Correct characters are not displayed.**
  ⇨ This unit can only display a limited number of special characters (see the tables on page 58).

Initial setup—AUDIO MENU/PSM

- **"SPEAKER SIZE" settings change.**
  ⇨ Speaker size settings are very much related to one another. For example, if you set the FRONT speakers to "NONE," you cannot select "NONE" for the REAR speakers.
- **Rear view does not appear when you change the gear lever to the back position.**
  ⇨ "BACK GEAR" is to "OFF." In this case, you have to select "AV2" for the source to watch the rear view.
  ⇨ "BACK GEAR" is to "AUTO," but the back gear wire is not connected to the back lamp. To check whether the wiring is correctly done or not, see page 51.

TV tuner operations

- **TV tuner unit does not work at all.**
  ⇨ Press the reset button of the TV tuner unit.
- **"TV IS NOT CONNECTED" appears on the monitor.**
  ⇨ TV tuner unit is disconnected. Connect it again.
- **Auto Memory does not work.**
  ⇨ Signals are too weak. Store TV stations manually.
- **TV stations cannot be received.**
  ⇨ "TV CHANNEL AREA" setting is not correct, see page 57.
- **The TV's main power does not shut off automatically when you change the source from TV to another.**
  ⇨ TV is connected to the TV tuner unit. Connect it to the hideaway unit. Remember that audio/video signals are always transmitted to the TV while it is on.
- **"RESET 8" appears on the display of the main unit.**
  ⇨ This unit is not connected to a TV tuner unit correctly. Connect this unit and the TV tuner unit correctly and press the reset button of the TV tuner unit.

CD changer operations

- **"CD CHANGER IS NOT CONNECTED" appears on the monitor.**
  ⇨ CD changer is disconnected. Connect it again.
- **"NO MAGAZINE" appears on the monitor.**
  ⇨ Magazine is not loaded in the CD changer.
- **"NO FILES" appears on the monitor.**
  ⇨ Playable files are not recorded in the disc.
- **"NO DISC" appears on the monitor.**
  ⇨ No discs are in the magazine or the discs are inserted upside down.
- **"RESET 1" — "RESET 7" appears on the display of the main unit.**
  ⇨ The built-in microcomputer in the CD changer is malfunctioning. Press the reset button of the CD changer.
- **"RESET 8" appears on the display of the main unit.**
  ⇨ This unit is not connected to a CD changer correctly. Connect this unit and the CD changer correctly and press the reset button of the CD changer.

DAB tuner operations

- **"DAB IS NOT CONNECTED" appears on the monitor.**
  ⇨ DAB tuner is disconnected. Connect it again.

Additional Information

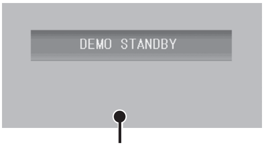
Preset iEQ mode

The table below shows the preset frequency level settings for each iEQ mode.

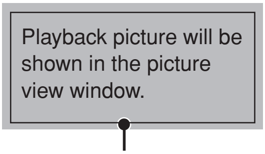
Sound	Preset equalizing values				
Mode	100 Hz	300 Hz	1 kHz	3 kHz	10 kHz
FLAT	00	00	00	00	00
HARD ROCK	+03	+02	00	+01	+01
R&B	+03	+02	00	+01	+03
POP	00	+01	00	+01	+02
JAZZ	+03	+02	+01	+02	+02
DANCE	+04	+01	–02	00	+01
COUNTRY	+02	+01	00	+01	+02
REGGAE	+03	00	+01	+02	+03
CLASSIC	+02	+02	00	+01	00
USER1	00	00	00	00	00
USER2	00	00	00	00	00
USER3	00	00	00	00	00

Graphic screens

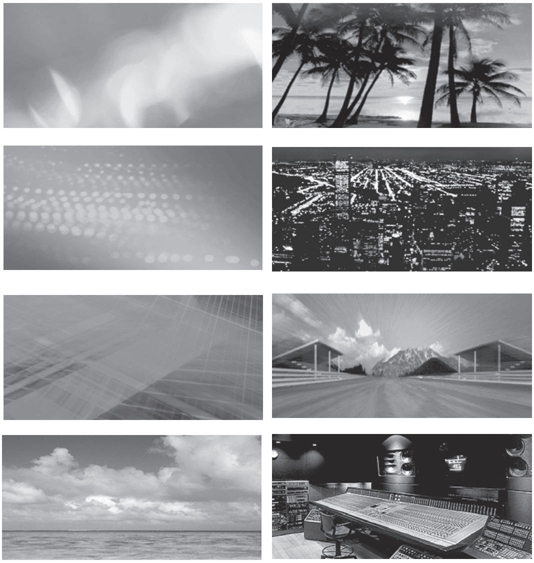
You can select one of the following graphic screens. For details, see page 14.



You can activate the display demonstration. To cancel it, select any other graphic screen.


Playback picture will be shown in the picture view window.

While playing a video source (except DVD/VCD), select no graphic screen (in other words, select the actual playback screen); otherwise, you cannot view the playback pictures.



LANGUAGE CODES

Code	Language
AA	Afar
AB	Abkhazian
AF	Afrikaans
AM	Ameharic
AR	Arabic
AS	Assamese
AY	Aymara
AZ	Azerbaijani
BA	Bashkir
BE	Byelorussian
BG	Bulgarian
BH	Bihari
BI	Bislama
BN	Bengali, Bangla
BO	Tibetan
BR	Breton
CA	Catalan
CO	Corsican
CS	Czech
CY	Welsh
DA	Danish
DZ	Bhutani
EL	Greek
EO	Esperanto
ET	Estonian
EU	Basque
FA	Persian
FI	Finnish
FJ	Fiji
FO	Faroese
FY	Frisian
GA	Irish
GD	Scots Gaelic
GL	Galician
GN	Guarani
GU	Gujarati
HA	Hausa
HI	Hindi
HR	Croatian
HU	Hungarian
HY	Armenian
IA	Interlingua
IE	Interlingue
IK	Inupiak
IN	Indonesian
IS	Icelandic
IW	Hebrew
JI	Yiddish
JW	Javanese
KA	Georgian
KK	Kazakh
KL	Greenlandic
KM	Cambodian
KN	Kannada
KO	Korean (KOR)
KS	Kashmiri
KU	Kurdish
KY	Kirghiz
LA	Latin
LN	Lingala
LO	Laothian
LT	Lithuanian
LV	Latvian, Lettish
MG	Malagasy
MI	Maori
MK	Macedonian
ML	Malayalam
MN	Mongolian
MO	Moldavian
MR	Marathi
MS	Malay (MAY)
MT	Maltese
MY	Burmese
NA	Nauru
NE	Nepali
NL	Dutch
NO	Norwegian
OC	Occitan
OM	(Afan) Oromo
OR	Oriya
PA	Panjabi
PL	Polish
PS	Pashto, Pushto
PT	Portuguese
QU	Quechua
RM	Rhaeto-Romance
RN	Kirundi
RO	Rumanian
RU	Russian
RW	Kinyarwanda
SA	Sanskrit
SD	Sindhi
SG	Sangho
SH	Serbo-Croatian
SI	Singhalese
SK	Slovak
SL	Slovenian
SM	Samoan
SN	Shona
SO	Somali
SQ	Albanian
SR	Serbian
SS	Siswati
ST	Sesotho
SU	Sundanese
SV	Swedish
SW	Swahili
TA	Tamil
TE	Telugu
TG	Tajik
TH	Thai
TI	Tigrinya
TK	Turkmen
TL	Tagalog
TN	Setswana
TO	Tonga
TR	Turkish
TS	Tsonga
TT	Tatar
TW	Twi
UK	Ukrainian
UR	Urdu
UZ	Uzbek
VI	Vietnamese
VO	Volapuk
WO	Wolof
XH	Xhosa
YO	Yoruba
ZU	Zulu

Specifications

Main unit

AUDIO AMPLIFIER SECTION

Maximum Power Output:
Front: 50 W per channel
Rear: 50 W per channel
Center: 35 W
Continuous Power Output (RMS):
Front: 19 W per channel into 4 Ω, 40 Hz to 20 000 Hz at no more than 0.8% total harmonic distortion.
Rear: 19 W per channel into 4 Ω, 40 Hz to 20 000 Hz at no more than 0.8% total harmonic distortion.
Center: 15 W into 4 Ω, 40 Hz to 20 000 Hz at no more than 0.8% total harmonic distortion.
Load Impedance: 4 Ω (4 Ω to 8 Ω allowance)
Equalizer Control Range:
Frequencies: 100 Hz, 300 Hz, 1 kHz, 3 kHz, 10 kHz
Level: ±10 dB
Frequency Response: 40 Hz to 20 000 Hz
Signal-to-Noise Ratio: 70 dB

TUNER SECTION

Frequency Range:
FM: 87.5 MHz to 108.0 MHz
AM: (MW) 522 kHz to 1 620 kHz
(LW) 144 kHz to 279 kHz

[FM Tuner]

Usable Sensitivity: 11.3 dBf (1.0 µV/75 Ω)
50 dB Quieting Sensitivity: 16.3 dBf (1.8 µV/75 Ω)
Alternate Channel Selectivity (400 kHz): 65 dB
Frequency Response: 40 Hz to 15 000 Hz
Stereo Separation: 30 dB
Capture Ratio: 1.5 dB

[MW Tuner]

Sensitivity: 20 µV
Selectivity: 35 dB

[LW Tuner]

Sensitivity: 50 µV

DVD/CD PLAYER SECTION

Signal Detection System: Non-contact optical pickup (semiconductor laser)
Number of channels: 2 channels (stereo)
Frequency Response:
DVD, fs=48 kHz: 16 Hz to 22 000 Hz
DVD, fs=96 kHz: 16 Hz to 44 000 Hz
VCD, CD, MP3: 16 Hz to 20 000 Hz
Dynamic Range: 96 dB
Signal-to-Noise Ratio: 98 dB
Wow and Flutter: Less than measurable limit
MP3 Recording Format:
MPEG 1/2 Audio Layer 3
Max. Bit rate: 320 kbps

REMOVABLE MONITOR

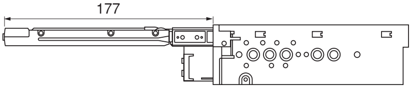
Screen Size: 7 inch wide liquid crystal display
Number of Pixel: 336 960 pixels
(480 vertical × 234 horizontal × 3)
Drive Method:
TFT (Thin Film Transistor) active matrix format
Color System: PAL/NTSC
Aspect Ratio: 16:9 (wide)
Allowable Storage Temperature:
–10°C to +60°C
Allowable Operating Temperature:
0°C to +40°C
Dimensions (W × H × D):
170 mm × 141 mm × 15 mm
Mass: 475 g

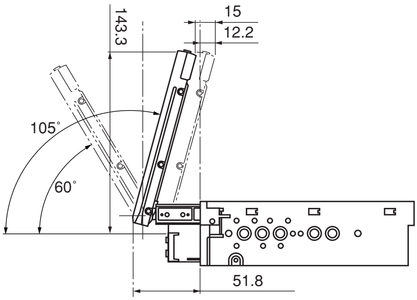
GENERAL

Power Requirement:
Operating Voltage: DC 14.4 V
(11 V to 16 V allowance)
Grounding System: Negative ground
Allowable Operating Temperature:
0°C to +40°C
Dimensions (W × H × D):
Installation Size:
- With sleeve-mounting plate Type B (standard)
182 mm × 52 mm × 165 mm
- With sleeve-mounting plate Type A
182 mm × 52 mm × 160 mm

Panel Size: 188 mm × 58 mm × 14 mm
Mass: 2.25 kg (including monitor)

Required space for the monitor ejection





mm

CAUTION: When ejecting the monitor, keep an open space for the monitor to come out. If not, the monitor may obstruct the steering wheel and gearshift lever operations, as this may result in a traffic accident.

Hideaway unit

Input Terminals:
AV INPUT 1/2:
Audio: 0.5 Vrms (Left/Right)
Video (composite): 1 Vp-p/75 Ω
Output Terminals (Level/Impedance):
AV OUTPUT:
Audio: 2.0 V/20 kΩ load (full scale)
Video (composite): 1 Vp-p/75 Ω
PRE OUT:
Audio: 2.0 V/20 kΩ load (full scale)
Other Terminals:
System integration (TO MAIN UNIT)
FM/AM antenna (FM/AM ANTENNA)
AV bus (AV BUS)
CD changer (TO CHANGER)
Rear view camera/Center speaker
(BACKCAMERA REMOTE/CENTER SPEAKER)
Power cord (POWER)
Dimensions (W × H × D):
230 mm × 35 mm × 181 mm
Mass: 1.3 kg

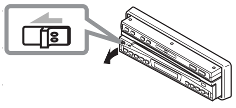
Design and specifications are subject to change without notice.

About mistracking:

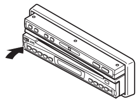
Mistracking may result from driving on extremely rough roads. This does not damage the unit and the disc, but will be annoying.
It is recommended to stop disc play while driving on such rough roads.

Removing the control panel

To detach



To attach



Having TROUBLE with operation?

Please reset your unit

Refer to page of How to reset your unit

Haben Sie PROBLEME mit dem Betrieb?

Bitte setzen Sie Ihr Gerät zurück

Siehe Seite Zurücksetzen des Geräts

Vous avez des PROBLÈMES de fonctionnement?

Réinitialisez votre appareil

Référez-vous à la page intitulée Comment réinitialiser votre appareil

Hebt u PROBLEMEN met de bediening?

Stel het apparaat terug

Zie de pagina met de paragraaf Het apparaat terugstellen

JVC

EN, GE, FR, NL

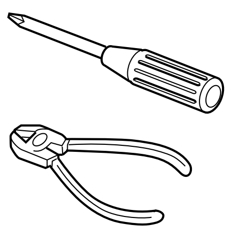
© 2004 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

JVC

KD-AV7001

Installation/Connection Manual
Einbau/Anschlußanleitung
Manuel d'installation/raccordement
Handleiding voor installatie/aansluiting

LVT1172-005A
[E]



1004MNMMDWJEIN
EN, GE, FR, NL

© 2004 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

ENGLISH

This unit is designed to operate only on **12 V DC, NEGATIVE ground electrical systems**. If your vehicle does not have this system, a voltage inverter is required, which can be purchased at JVC IN-CAR ENTERTAINMENT dealers.

WARNINGS

- DO NOT install any unit in locations where;
  - – it may obstruct the steering wheel and gearshift lever operations, as this may result in a traffic accident.
  - – it may obstruct the operation of safety devices such as air bags, as this may result in a fatal accident.
  - – it may obstruct visibility.
- DO NOT operate any unit while manipulating the steering wheel, as this may result in a traffic accident.
- The driver must not watch the monitor while driving.
  If the driver watches the monitor while driving, it may lead to carelessness and cause an accident.
- If you need to operate the main unit while driving, be sure to look ahead carefully or you may be involved in a traffic accident.
- If the parking brake is not engaged, "DRIVER MUST NOT WATCH THE MONITOR WHILE DRIVING." appears on the monitor, and no playback picture will be shown.
  - – This warning appears only when the parking brake wire is connected to the parking brake system built in the car.

Notes on mounting the hideaway unit

- Mount on a firm surface, under the front seat or in the trunk.
- Since heat is generated inside the unit, do not mount near inflammable objects. In addition, mount in an area that will not prevent the unit from dissipating heat.
- Do not mount the unit in the places which are subject to heat such as near a radiator, in a glove compartment or in insulated area such as under a car mat that will prevent the unit from dissipating heat.

Notes on electrical connections

- Replace the fuse with one of the specified rating. If the fuse blows frequently, consult your JVC IN-CAR ENTERTAINMENT dealer.
- Maximum input of the speakers should be more than 50 W at the rear, 50 W at the front, and 35 W at the center, with an impedance of **4 Ω to 8 Ω**.
- **Be sure to ground each unit to the car's chassis.**
- The main unit and the hideaway unit become very hot after use. Be careful not to get burned when removing them.
- To prevent short-circuit, cover the terminals of the UNUSED leads with insulating tape.
- **Take preventative measures to avoid unexpected disconnection of the cords and damage to the cords. This trouble may happen while moving or reclining the seat.**

DEUTSCH

Dieses Gerät ist für einen Betrieb in **elektrischen Anlagen mit 12 V Gleichstrom und (–) Erdung ausgelegt**. Verfügt Ihr Fahrzeug nicht über diese Anlage, ist ein Spannungsinverter erforderlich, der bei JVC Autoradiohändler erworben werden kann.

WARNUNGEN

- Wählen Sie für das Gerät KEINESFALLS einen Einbauort, wo:
  - – es die Handhabung von Lenkrad und Schalthebel behindern kann, da sonst die Gefahr von Verkehrsunfällen droht.
  - – es die Funktion von Sicherheitseinrichtungen wie etwa Airbags behindern kann, da sonst die Gefahr von tödlichen Unfällen droht.
  - – es die freie Sicht beeinträchtigen kann.
- Bedienen Sie KEINESFALLS ein Gerät beim Lenken des Fahrzeugs, da sonst die Gefahr von Verkehrsunfällen droht.
- Der Fahrer darf während der Fahrt keinesfalls den Monitor betrachten.
  Andernfalls droht Unfallgefahr durch Unachtsamkeit.
- Muss das Gerät während der Fahrt bedient werden, so halten Sie dabei wegen der Unfallgefahr den Blick auf das Verkehrsgeschehen gerichtet.
- Ist die Feststellbremse nicht angezogen, so erscheint die Meldung „FAHRER DARF MONITOR NICHT BEIM FAHREN BETRACHTEN" auf dem Display, und es erfolgt keine Bildwiedergabe.
  - – Diese Warnung erscheint nur dann, wenn das Kabel der Feststellbremse mit dem Feststellbremssystem des Fahrzeugs verbunden ist.

Hinweise zum Einbau der versteckten Einheit

- An einer festen Oberfläche unter dem Vordersitz oder im Kofferraum anbringen.
- Da in der Einheit Hitze erzeugt wird, nicht an Orten anbringen, wo sich entflammbare Gegenstände in der Nähe befinden. Außerdem an einer Stelle anbringen, wo nicht die Hitzeableitung behindert ist.
- Das Gerät nicht an Orten anbringen, die Hitze ausgesetzt sind, wie in der Nähe von Heizkörpern, in einem Handschuhfach oder an einem isolierten Bereich wie unter einer Fahrzeugbodenmatte, wo die Betriebswärme nicht abgeleitet werden kann.

Hinweise zu elektrischen Anschlüssen

- Die Sicherung durch eine mit vorgeschriebener Stärke ersetzen. Wenn die Sicherung häufig durchbrennt, lassen Sie sich von Ihrem Fachhändler für JVC Autoradiohändler beraten.
- Der Maximaleingang von den Lautsprechern soll mehr als 50 W hinten, 50 W vorne und 35 W in der Mitte betragen, mit einer Impedanz von **4 Ω bis 8 Ω**.
- **Immer jedes Gerät am Chassis des Fahrzeugs erden.**
- Das Hauptgerät und die versteckte Einheit erhitzen sich beim Betrieb stark. Achten Sie darauf, sich beim Ausbau nicht zu verbrennen.
- Um Kurzschlüsse zu verhindern, die Klemmen der NICHT VERWENDETEN Leitungen mit Isolierband abdecken.
- **Maßnahmen treffen, um unterwartetes Lösen von Kabeln und Schäden an Kabeln zu verhindern. Solche Störungen können beim Verschieben oder Rücklehnen des Sitzes auftreten.**

FRANÇAIS

Cet appareil est conçu pour fonctionner sur des sources de courant continu de **12 V à masse NEGATIVE** *seulement. Si votre véhicule n'offre pas ce type d'alimentation, il vous faut un convertisseur de tension, que vous pouvez acheter chez un revendeur d'autoradios JVC.*

AVERTISSEMENTS

- *N'INSTALLEZ aucun appareil dans les endroits suivants;*
  - *– où il peut gêner l'accès au volant ou au levier de vitesse car cela peut entraîner un accident de la circulation.*
  - *– où il peut gêner la manipulation de dispositifs de sécurité tels que les coussins de sécurité car cela peut entraîner un accident fatal.*
  - *– où il peut gêner la visibilité.*
- *NE COMMANDEZ PAS l'appareil lors de la manipulation du volant car cela peut entraîner un accident de la circulation.*
- *Le conducteur ne doit pas regarder le moniteur lorsqu'il conduit.*
  Regarder le moniteur lorsqu'on est au volant réduit considérablement la vigilance du conducteur et multiplie les risques d'accident.
- *Si vous avez besoin de commander l'appareil principal pendant que vous conduisez, continuez de regarder droit devant vous ou vous risquez de causer un accident de la circulation.*
- *Si le frein de stationnement n'est pas mis, "LE CONDUCTEUR NE DOIT PAS REGARDER LE MONITEUR EN CONDUISANT." apparaît sur le moniteur et l'image de lecture n'apparaît pas.*
  - *– Cet avertissement apparaît uniquement quand le fil du frein de stationnement est connecté au système de frein de stationnement intégré à la voiture.*

Remarque sur le montage de l'appareil satellite

- *Montez-le sur une surface solide, sous le siège avant ou dans le coffre.*
- *Puisque de la chaleur est produite à l'intérieur de l'appareil, ne le montez pas à proximité d'objets inflammables. Par contre, montez-le dans un endroit où la dissipation de la chaleur peut être réalisée sans problème.*
- *Ne montez pas l'appareil dans un endroit sujet à la chaleur, comme près d'un radiateur, dans la boîte à gant ou dans un endroit isolé tel que sous le tapis de sol qui ne permettra pas à l'appareil de dissiper sa chaleur.*

Remarques sur les connexions électriques

- *Remplacez le fusible par un de la valeur précisée. Si le fusible saute souvent, consulter votre revendeur d'autoradios JVC.*
- *L'entrée maximum des enceintes doit être supérieure à 50 W à l'arrière et à 50 W l'avant et 35 W au centre, avec une impédance de* **4 Ω à 8 Ω**.
- **Assurez-vous de mettre à la masse chaque appareil au châssis de la voiture.**
- *L'appareil principal et l'appareil satellite deviennent très chauds après l'utilisation. Faites attention de ne pas vous brûler en les retirant.*
- *Pour éviter les courts-circuits, recouvrez les bornes des fils qui ne sont PAS UTILISÉS avec de la bande isolante.*
- **Prenez des mesures préventives pour éviter que des cordons se déconnectent accidentellement ou soient endommagés. Cela peut se produire lorsque vous déplacez ou inclinez le siège.**

NEDERLANDS

Dit apparaat mag worden gebruikt bij elektrische systemen die werken op **12 V gelijkstroom met negatieve aarding**. Als uw auto niet is uitgerust met een dergelijk systeem, is een spanningsomzetter vereist. Dit instrument kan worden aangeschaft bij JVC car audio dealers.

WAARSCHUWINGEN

- Installeer het toestel NIET op plaatsen waar;
  - – het de werking van het stuur en de versnellingspook kan hinderen. Dit zou namelijk ernstige ongelukken kunnen veroorzaken.
  - – het de werking van veiligheidsvoorzieningen, bijvoorbeeld de airbags, kan hinderen. Dit zou namelijk ernstige of fatale ongelukken kunnen veroorzaken.
  - – het uw zicht zou kunnen belemmeren.
- Bedien de apparatuur NIET tijdens het autorijden. Dit zou namelijk ernstige ongelukken kunnen veroorzaken.
- De bestuurder mag tijdens het autorijden niet de beelden op de monitor bekijken.
  De aandacht zou anders mogelijk van het verkeer worden afgeleid met mogelijk ernstige ongelukken tot gevolg.
- Indien u het hoofdtoestel tijdens het autorijden moet bedienen, dient u uitermate goed op te letten en het verkeer goed in de gaten te houden, daar u anders mogelijk een ongeluk veroorzaakt.
- "DRIVER MUST NOT WATCH THE MONITOR WHILE DRIVING." verschijnt op de monitor wanneer de handrem niet is aangetrokken. Er verschijnt dan geen beeld.
  - – Deze waarschuwing verschijnt uitsluitend wanneer het handremdraad met het in de auto ingebouwde handremsysteem is verbonden.

Opmerkingen voor het installeren van de verborgen unit

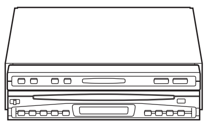
- Bevestig op een stevig oppervlak, onder de voorstoel of in de kofferbak.
- Het toestel wekt hitte op. Installeer derhalve niet in de buurt van ontvlambare voorwerpen. Installeer het toestel op een plaats waar de hitte van het toestel kan worden afgevoerd.
- Installeer het toestel niet op plaatsen die aan warmte onderhevig zijn, bijvoorbeeld vlakbij de radiator, in een afgesloten handschoenenvak of op andere plaatsen waar de ventilatie wordt belemmerd en warmte van het toestel niet kan worden afgevoerd, bijvoorbeeld onder een vloermat.

Opmerkingen voor de elektrische verbindingen

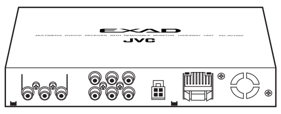
- Vervang de zekering door een van het aangegeven ampèrage. Raadpleeg uw JVC auto-audiohandelaar indien de zekering regelmatig doorbrandt.
- Het maximale ingangsvermogen voor de luidsprekers moet meer dan 50 W achter, 50 W voor en 35 W midden zijn met een impedantie van **4 Ω t/m 8 Ω**.
- **Aard ieder toestel beslist op het chassis van de auto.**
- Het hoofdtoestel en de verborgen unit zijn na gebruik zeer warm. Voorkom brandwonden en wees dus voorzichtig bij het verwijderen.
- Voorkom kortsluiting en bedek de aansluitingen van de NIET-GEBRUIKTE draden met isolatieband.
- **Neem maatregelen zodat snoeren en kabels niet per ongeluk kunnen ontkoppelen of worden beschadigd. Let vooral op de snoeren bij bewegende onderdelen of het verstelmechanisme van de stoelen.**

Parts list　Teileliste　Liste des pièces　Onderdelenlijst

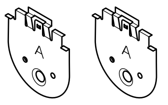
ⓐ Main unit
Hauptgerät
Appareil principal
Hoofdtoestel



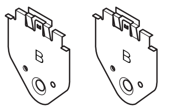
ⓑ Hideaway unit
Versteckte Einheit
Appareil satellite
Verborgen toestel



ⓒ Sleeve-mounting plates
Manschettenmontierte Platten
Plaques de montage du manchon
Huls-bevestigingsplaten

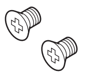


Type A
Typ A
Type A
Type A



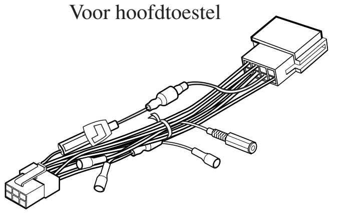
Type B
Typ B
Type B
Type B

ⓓ Fixing screws (M5 x 6 mm)
Befestigungsschrauben (M5 x 6 mm)
Vis de fixation (M5 x 6 mm)
Bevestigingsschroeven (M5 x 6 mm)

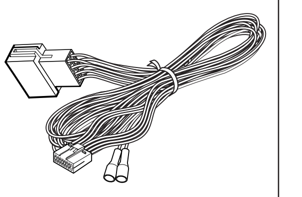


ⓔ, ⓕ Power cords
Stromkabel
Cordons d'alimentation
Stroomsnoeren

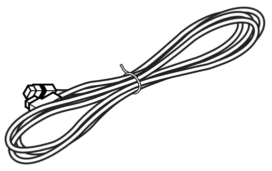
ⓔ For main unit
Für Hauptgerät
Pour l'appareil principal
Voor hoofdtoestel



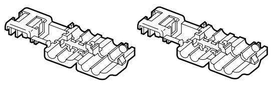
ⓕ For hideaway unit
Für versteckte Einheit
Pour l'appareil satellite
Voor verborgen toestel



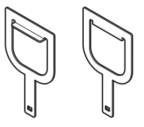
ⓖ AV bus cable (2.5 m)
AV-Bus-Kabel (2,5 m)
Câble de liaison AV (2,5 m)
AV-buskabel (2,5 m)



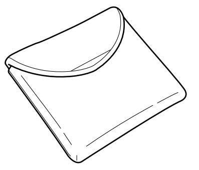
ⓗ Crimp connectors
Crimpanschlüsse
Raccord à sertir
Versteviging voor aansluitingen



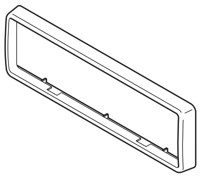
ⓘ Handles
Griffe
Poignées
Hendels



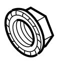
ⓙ Soft case
Weiche Tasche
Étui souple
Zacht etui



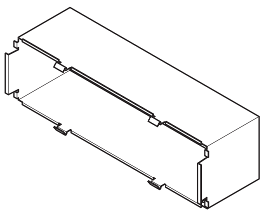
ⓚ Trim plate
Frontrahmen
Plaque d'assemblage
Sierplaat



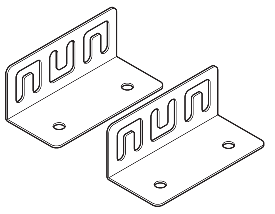
ⓠ Lock nut (M5)
Sicherungsmutter (M5)
Ecrou d'arrêt (M5)
Contra-moer (M5)



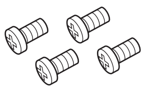
ⓛ Sleeve
Halterung
Manchon
Huis



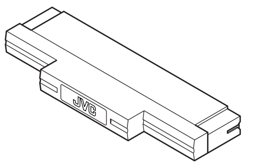
ⓜ Brackets
Bügel
Supports
Beugels



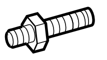
ⓝ Fixing screws (M4 x 8 mm)
Befestigungsschrauben (M4 x 8 mm)
Vis de fixation (M4 x 8 mm)
Bevestigungsschroeven (M4 x 8 mm)



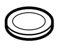
ⓞ Blind cover
Blindabdeckung
Cache
Schermafdekking



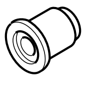
ⓟ Mounting bolt (M5 x 20 mm)
Befestigungsschraube (M5 x 20 mm)
Boulon de montage (M5 x 20 mm)
Bevestigingsbout (M5 x 20 mm)



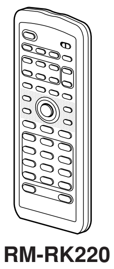
ⓡ Washer (ø5)
Unterlegscheibe (ø5)
Rondelle (ø5)
Sluitring (ø5)



ⓢ Rubber cushion
Gummipuffer
Amortisseur en caoutchouc
Rubberdop

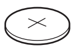


ⓣ Remote controller
Fernbedienung
Télécommande
Afstandsbediening



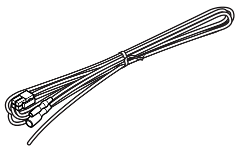
RM-RK220

ⓤ Battery
Batterie
Pile
Batterij

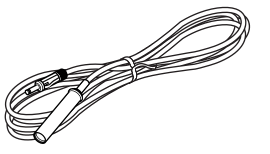


CR2025

ⓥ Center speaker/rear camera cord
Centerlautsprecherkabel/
Rückfahrkamerakabel
Cordon d'enceinte centrale/caméra de recul
Snoer voor middenluidspreker/
achteruitkijkcamera



ⓦ Extension aerial cord
Antennenverlängerungskabel
Cordon prolongateur d'antenne
Antenneverlengsnoer



SYSTEM CONNECTIONS

- For A, B, C, C, D, E, F, more information are given on the following pages.

SYSTEMANSCHLÜSSE

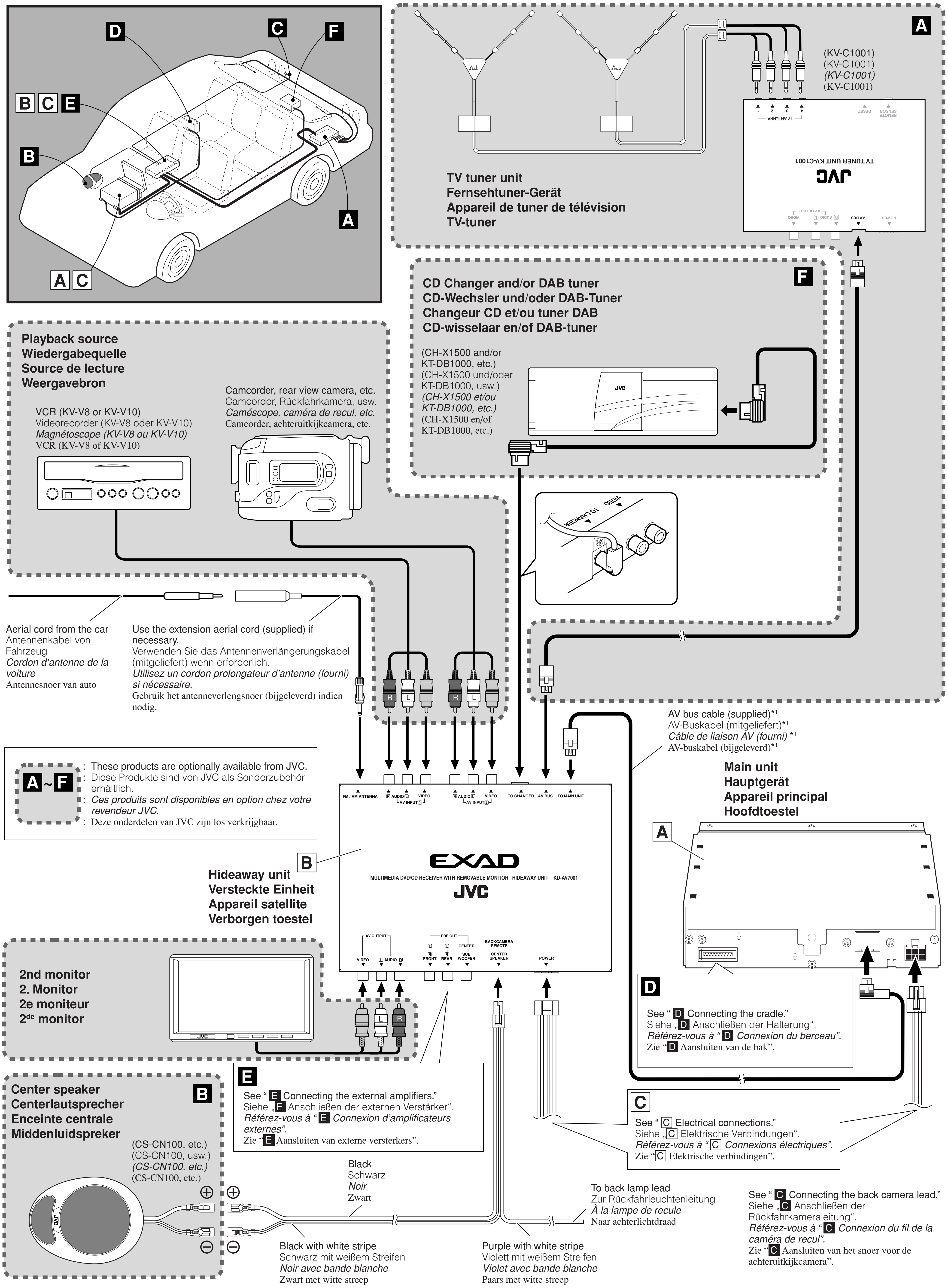
- Für A, B, C, C, D, E, F werden weitere Informationen auf den folgenden Seiten gegeben.

CONNEXIONS DU SYSTÈMES

- *Pour* A, B, C, C, D, E, F *plus d’informations sont données aux pages suivantes.*

SYSTEEMVERBINDINGEN

- Voor A, B, C, C, D, E, F vindt u meer informatie op de volgende bladzijden.


D
C
F
B C E
B
A
A C
TV ANTENNA
1
2
3
4
RESET
REMOTE SENSOR
TV TUNER UNIT KV-C1001
JVC
AV OUTPUT
VIDEO
L AUDIO R
AV BUS
POWER
JVC
TO CHANGER
VIDEO
R
L
R
L
FM / AM ANTENNA
R AUDIO L
VIDEO
AV INPUT 1
R AUDIO L
VIDEO
AV INPUT 2
TO CHANGER
AV BUS
TO MAIN UNIT
EXAD
MULTIMEDIA DVD/CD RECEIVER WITH REMOVABLE MONITOR HIDEAWAY UNIT KD-AV7001
JVC
AV OUTPUT
VIDEO
L AUDIO R
PRE OUT
L R FRONT
L R REAR
CENTER SUB WOOFER
BACKCAMERA REMOTE
CENTER SPEAKER
POWER
L
R
JVC
JVC
A
B
F
E
D
C
⊕
⊖

(KV-C1001)
(KV-C1001)
(KV-C1001)
(KV-C1001)

TV tuner unit
Fernsehtuner-Gerät
Appareil de tuner de télévision
TV-tuner

CD Changer and/or DAB tuner
CD-Wechsler und/oder DAB-Tuner
Changeur CD et/ou tuner DAB
CD-wisselaar en/of DAB-tuner

(CH-X1500 and/or KT-DB1000, etc.)
(CH-X1500 und/oder KT-DB1000, usw.)
(CH-X1500 et/ou KT-DB1000, etc.)
(CH-X1500 en/of KT-DB1000, etc.)

Playback source
Wiedergabequelle
Source de lecture
Weergavebron

VCR (KV-V8 or KV-V10)
Videorecorder (KV-V8 oder KV-V10)
Magnétoscope (KV-V8 ou KV-V10)
VCR (KV-V8 of KV-V10)

Camcorder, rear view camera, etc.
Camcorder, Rückfahrkamera, usw.
Caméscope, caméra de recul, etc.
Camcorder, achteruitkijkcamera, etc.

Aerial cord from the car
Antennenkabel von Fahrzeug
Cordon d’antenne de la voiture
Antennesnoer van auto

Use the extension aerial cord (supplied) if necessary.
Verwenden Sie das Antennenverlängerungskabel (mitgeliefert) wenn erforderlich.
Utilisez un cordon prolongateur d’antenne (fourni) si nécessaire.
Gebruik het antenneverlengsnoer (bijgeleverd) indien nodig.

A~F
: These products are optionally available from JVC.
: Diese Produkte sind von JVC als Sonderzubehör erhältlich.
: *Ces produits sont disponibles en option chez votre revendeur JVC.*
: Deze onderdelen van JVC zijn los verkrijgbaar.

AV bus cable (supplied)[*1]
AV-Buskabel (mitgeliefert)[*1]
Câble de liaison AV (fourni) [*1]
AV-buskabel (bijgeleverd)[*1]

Main unit
Hauptgerät
Appareil principal
Hoofdtoestel

Hideaway unit
Versteckte Einheit
Appareil satellite
Verborgen toestel

2nd monitor
2. Monitor
2e moniteur
2^{de} monitor

Center speaker
Centerlautsprecher
Enceinte centrale
Middenluidspreker

(CS-CN100, etc.)
(CS-CN100, usw.)
(CS-CN100, etc.)
(CS-CN100, etc.)

See “D Connecting the cradle.”
Siehe „D Anschließen der Halterung“.
Référez-vous à “D Connexion du berceau”.
Zie “D Aansluiten van de bak”.

See “E Connecting the external amplifiers.”
Siehe „E Anschließen der externen Verstärker“.
Référez-vous à “E Connexion d’amplificateurs externes”.
Zie “E Aansluiten van externe versterkers”.

See “C Electrical connections.”
Siehe „C Elektrische Verbindungen“.
Référez-vous à “C Connexions électriques”.
Zie “C Elektrische verbindingen”.

Black
Schwarz
Noir
Zwart

Black with white stripe
Schwarz mit weißem Streifen
Noir avec bande blanche
Zwart met witte streep

Purple with white stripe
Violett mit weißem Streifen
Violet avec bande blanche
Paars met witte streep

To back lamp lead
Zur Rückfahrleuchtenleitung
À la lampe de recule
Naar achterlichtdraad

See “C Connecting the back camera lead.”
Siehe „C Anschließen der Rückfahrkameraleitung“.
Référez-vous à “C Connexion du fil de la caméra de recul”.
Zie “C Aansluiten van het snoer voor de achteruitkijkcamera”.

[*1] Extension AV bus cable (KV-U1013: not supplied) can be used when the supplied AV bus cable is not long enough.
[*1] Verlängerungs-AV-Buskabel (KV-U1013: nicht mitgeliefert) kann verwendet werden, wenn das mitgelieferte AV-Buskabel nicht lang genug ist.
[*1] *Un câble prolongateur de liaison AV (KV-U1013: non fourni) peut être utilisé avec le câble de liaison AV fourni si ce dernier n’est pas suffisamment long.*
[*1] De AV-busverlengkabel (KV-U1013: niet bijgeleverd) kan worden gebruikt indien de bijgeleverde AV-kabel niet lang genoeg is.

INSTALLATION

The following illustration shows a typical installation. However, you should make adjustments corresponding to your specific car. If you have any questions or require information regarding installation kits, consult your JVC IN-CAR ENTERTAINMENT dealer or a company supplying kits.

A Installing the main unit (in-dash mounting)

INSTALLATION

Die folgende Abbildung zeigt die typische Installation. Sie müssen aber Justierungen entsprechend des vorliegenden Fahrzeugs vornehmen. Wenn Sie Fragen haben oder weitere Informationen zu Einbausätzen benötigen, wenden Sie sich an Ihren Fachhändler für JVC Autoradiohändler oder einen Fachhändler für die Einbausätze.

A Installation des Hauptgeräts (Einbau im Armaturenbrett)

INSTALLATION

L'illustration suivante est un exemple d'installation typique. Cependant, vous devez faire les ajustements correspondant à votre voiture. Si vous avez des questions ou avez besoin d'information sur des kits d'installation, consulter votre revendeur d'autoradios JVC ou une compagnie d'approvisionnement.

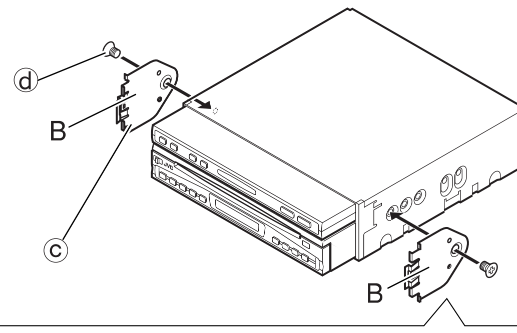
A Installation de l'appareil principal (montage encastré)

INSTALLEREN

De volgende afbeelding toont een standaardinstallatie. Afhankelijk van uw auto moet het toestel mogelijk wat anders worden geïnstalleerd. Raadpleeg uw JVC auto-audiohandelaar handelaar of een leverancier van installatiekits indien u vragen heeft of informatie over installatiekits wilt.

A Installeren van het hoofdtoestel (monteren in dashboard)

1



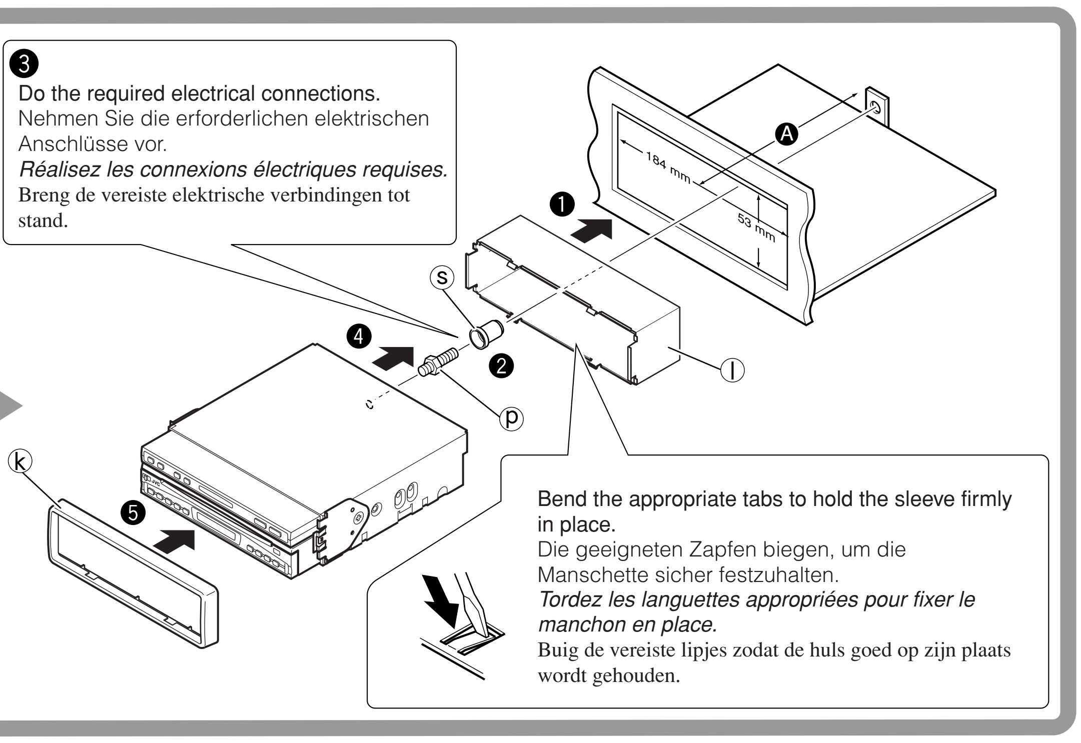
Attach the sleeve-mounting plates—either type, corresponding to the depth of the mounting area (Ⓐ: see the next step).
Use Type B when Ⓐ is 165 mm while use Type A when Ⓐ is less than 165 mm.

Bringen Sie die Manschetteneinbauplatten an—den entsprechenden Typ je nach der Tiefe des Montagebereichs (Ⓐ: siehe nächster Schritt).
Verwenden Sie Typ B, wenn Ⓐ 165 mm beträgt, und verwenden Sie Typ A, wenn Ⓐ weniger als 165 mm beträgt.

Fixez les plaques de montage du manchon—le type correspondant à la profondeur de la zone de montage (Ⓐ: voir l'étape suivante).
Utilisez le type B si Ⓐ est égal à 165 mm et le type A si Ⓐ est inférieur à 165 mm.

Bevestig de huls-bevestigingsplaten—gebruik het type dat voor de diepte voor het bevestigen geschikt is (Ⓐ: zie de volgende stap).
Gebruik Type B indien Ⓐ 165 mm is, en gebruik Type A indien Ⓐ minder dan 165 mm is.

2



❸
Do the required electrical connections.
Nehmen Sie die erforderlichen elektrischen Anschlüsse vor.
Réalisez les connexions électriques requises.
Breng de vereiste elektrische verbindingen tot stand.

Bend the appropriate tabs to hold the sleeve firmly in place.
Die geeigneten Zapfen biegen, um die Manschette sicher festzuhalten.
Tordez les languettes appropriées pour fixer le manchon en place.
Buig de vereiste lipjes zodat de huls goed op zijn plaats wordt gehouden.

Removing the main unit

Before removing the unit, release the rear section.

Entfernen des Hauptgeräts

Vor dem Entfernen des Geräts lösen Sie die Rücksektion.

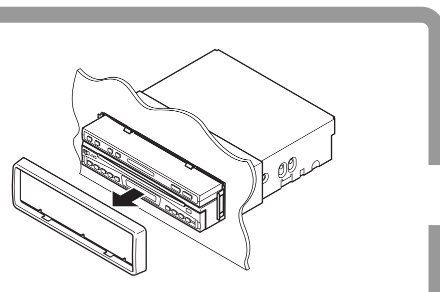
Retrait de l'appareil principal

Avant de retirer l'appareil principal, libérer la section arrière.

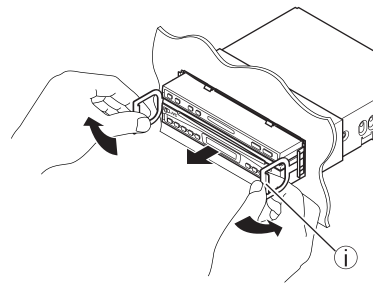
Verwijderen van het hoofdtoestel

Ontgrendel het achtergedeelte alvorens het toestel te verwijderen.

1

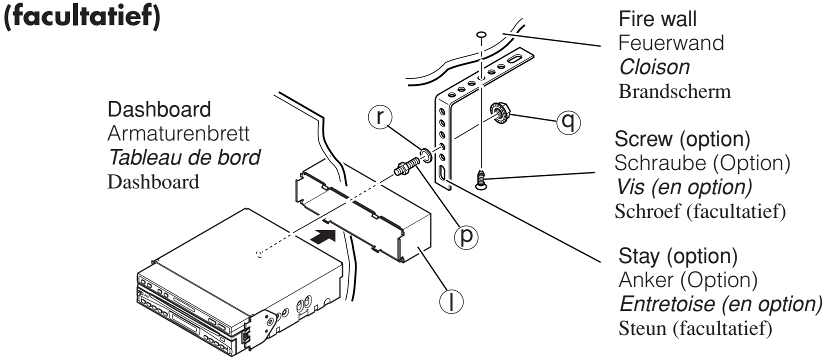


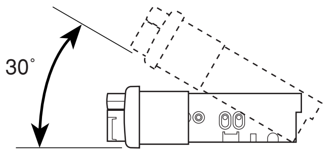
2



Insert the two handles, then pull them as illustrated so that the unit can be removed.
Die beiden Handgriffe einsetzen und dann ziehen wie in der Abbildung gezeigt, so daß das Gerät entfernt werden kann.
Insérez les deux poignées, puis tirez de la façon illustrée de façon à pouvoir retirer l'appareil.
Plaats de twee hendels en trek ze vervolgens zoals afgebeeld naar voren zodat het toestel kan worden verwijderd.

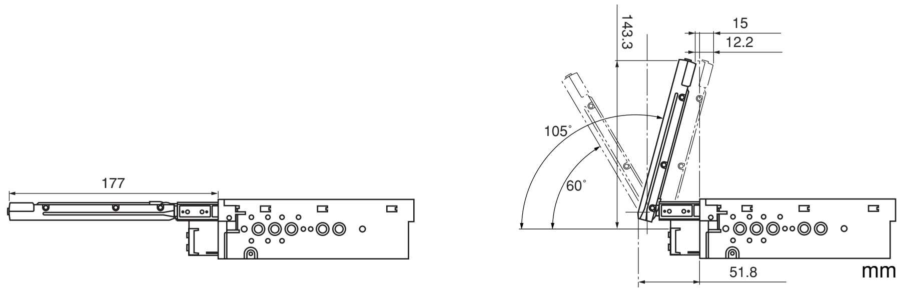
When using the optional stay / Beim Verwenden der Anker-Option / Utilisation de l'entretoise en option / Wanneer u de steun gebruikt (facultatief)





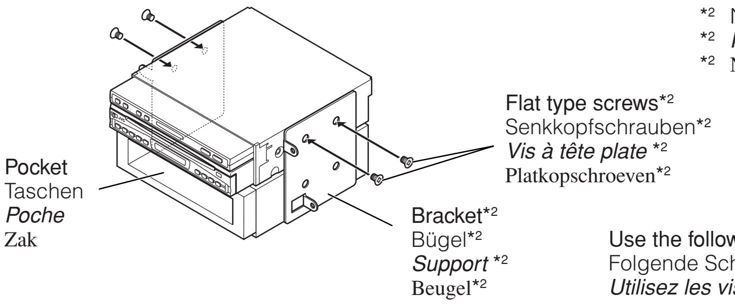
Install the unit at an angle of less than 30˚, taking it into account that the monitor would eject when in use (see below).
Bauen Sie das Gerät ein einem Winkel von weniger als 30˚ ein, wobei Sie darauf achten, dass der Monitor bei Gebrauch ausfährt (siehe unten).
Installez l'appareil avec un angle de moins de 30°, en tenant compte du fait que le moniteur doit être déployé lors de son utilisation (voir ci-dessous).
Installeer het toestel met een kleinere hoek dan 30˚, en controleer dat de monitor kan worden uitgeworpen voor gebruik (zie hieronder).

Required space for the monitor ejection
Erforderlicher Platz für Monitorausschub
Espace requis pour le déploiement du moniteur
Vereiste vrije ruimte voor het uitwerpen van de monitor

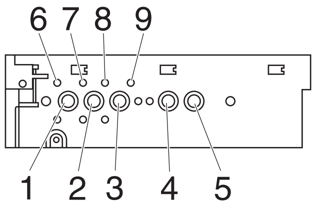


When installing the unit without using the sleeve / Beim Einbau des Geräts ohne Halterung / Installation de l'appareil sans utiliser de manchon / Wanneer u het apparaat zonder huis installeert

In a Toyota for example, first remove the car radio and install the unit in its place.
Zum Beispiel in einem Toyota zuerst das Autoradio ausbauen und dann das Gerät an seinem Platz einbauen.
Par exemple dans une voiture Toyota, retirer d'abord l'autoradio et installer l'appareil à sa place.
Voorbeeld: Bij een Toyota moet u eerst de autoradio verwijderen en daarna het apparaat installeren.



*2 Not included for this unit.
*2 Nicht Teil dieses Geräts.
*2 *Non fourni avec cet appareil.*
*2 Niet meegeleverd.



Use the following screws
Folgende Schrauben verwenden
Utilisez les vis suivantes
Gebruik de volgende schroeven

For No.1 – 5 For No.6 – 9	M5 x 8 mm*2 M4 x 3 mm*2
Für Nr. 1 – 5 Für Nr. 6 – 9	M5 x 8 mm*2 M4 x 3 mm*2
Pour No 1 à 5 *Pour No 6 à 9*	*M5 x 8 mm* *2 *M4 x 3 mm* *2
Voor nr. 1 – 5 Voor nr. 6 – 9	M5 x 8 mm*2 M4 x 3 mm*2

Note : When installing the unit on the mounting bracket, make sure to use screws of proper length refering to the table above. If longer screws are used, they could damage the unit.

Hinweis : Bei Installation des Geräts auf dem Haltebügel sicherstellen, dass Schrauben geeigneter Länge entsprechend der obigen Tabelle verwendet werden. Wenn längere Schrauben verwendet werden, können diese das Gerät beschädigen.

Remarque : *Lors de l'utilisation de l'appareil sur le support de montage, assurez-vous d'utiliser des vis d'une longueur correcte en vous référant au tableau ci-dessus. Si des vis plus longues sont utilisées, elles peuvent endommager l'appareil.*

Opmerking : Bij het installeren van het toestel op de bevestigingsbeugel, moet u schroeven met een geschikte lengte gebruiken. Zie de tabel hierboven. Het toestel kan worden beschadigd indien u te lange schroeven gebruikt.

B Installing the hideaway unit (under the front seat)

Connect the main unit and the hideaway unit using AV bus cable (supplied).

B Installation der versteckten Einheit (unter dem Vordersitz)

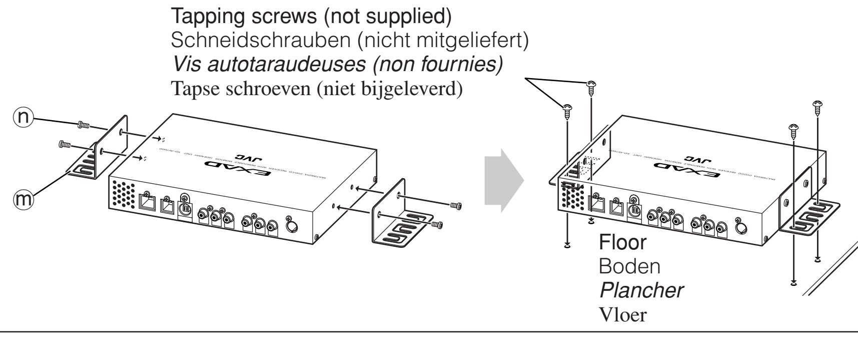
Das Hauptgerät und die versteckte Einheit mit dem AV-Buskabel (mitgeliefert) verbinden.

B Installation de l'appareil satellite (sous le siège avant)

Connectez l'appareil principal et l'appareil satellite en utilisant le câble de liaison AV (fourni).

B Installeren van de verborgen toestel (onder de voorstoel)

Verbind het hoofdtoestel en het verborgen toestel met gebruik van de AV-buskabel (bijgeleverd).

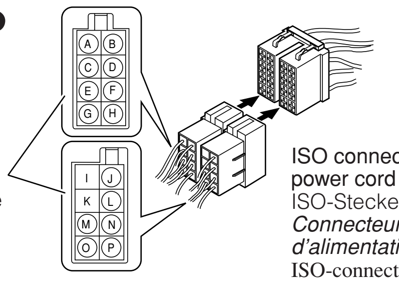

Tapping screws (not supplied)
Schneidschrauben (nicht mitgeliefert)
Vis autotaraudeuses (non fournies)
Tapse schroeven (niet bijgeleverd)
n
m
Floor
Boden
Plancher
Vloer

- Be sure to use the tapping screws (not supplied) of appropriate length so that they will not damage any parts of the car.
- Sicherstellen, Schneidschrauben (nicht mitgeliefert) geeigneter Länge zu verwenden, so dass diese nicht Fahrzeugteile beschädigen.
- *Assurez-vous d'utiliser des vis autotaraudeuses (non fournies) de la longueur appropriée de façon qu'elles n'endommagent aucune partie de la voiture.*
- Gebruik beslist tapse schroeven (niet bijgeleverd) met een geschikte lengte, zodat de schroeven geen onderdelen van de auto kunnen beschadigen.

C Electrical connections / Elektrische Verbindungen / Connexions électriques / Elektrische verbindingen

If your car is equipped with the ISO connector
Wenn Ihr Auto mit ISO-Steckern ausgestattet ist
Si votre voiture est équippée d’un connecteur ISO
Indien uw auto is uitgerust met de ISO-connector

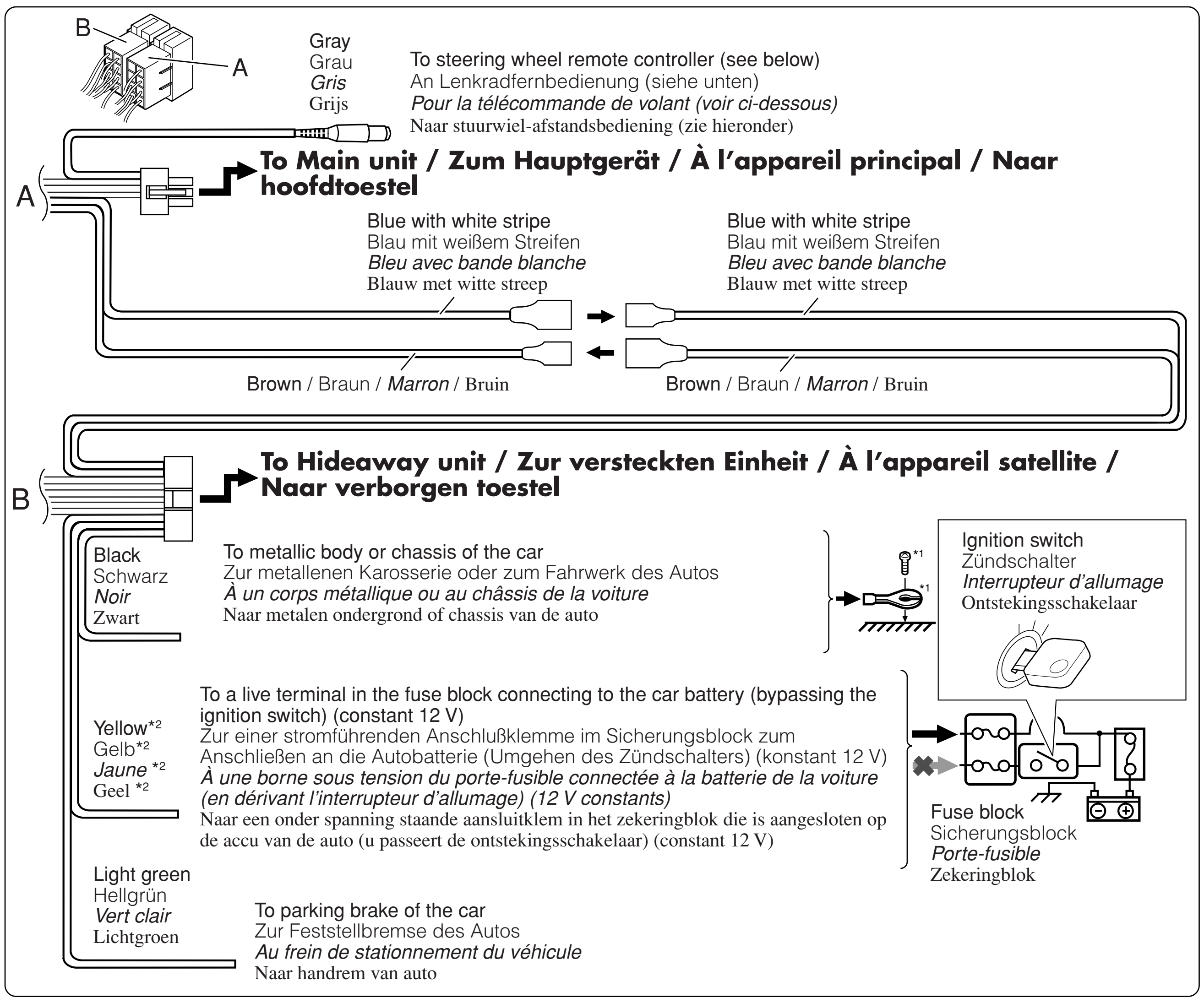
- Connect the ISO connectors as illustrated.
- Die ISO-Stecker wie abgebildet anschließen.
- *Connectez les connecteurs ISO comme montré sur l’illustration.*
- Sluit de ISO-connectoren aan zoals op het voorbeeld is aangegeven.



View from the lead side
Ansicht von der Leitungsseite
Vue à partir du côté des fils
Aanzicht vanaf het snoer

From the car body
Von der Karosserie
De la carrosserie de la voiture
Vanaf de auto

ISO connector of the supplied power cord
ISO-Stecker am Stromkabel
Connecteur ISO pour le cordon d’alimentation fourni
ISO-connector van het meegeleverde snoer



Gray
Grau
Gris
Grijs

To steering wheel remote controller (see below)
An Lenkradfernbedienung (siehe unten)
Pour la télécommande de volant (voir ci-dessous)
Naar stuurwiel-afstandsbediening (zie hieronder)

To Main unit / Zum Hauptgerät / À l’appareil principal / Naar hoofdtoestel

Blue with white stripe
Blau mit weißem Streifen
Bleu avec bande blanche
Blauw met witte streep

Blue with white stripe
Blau mit weißem Streifen
Bleu avec bande blanche
Blauw met witte streep

Brown / Braun / *Marron* / Bruin

Brown / Braun / *Marron* / Bruin

To Hideaway unit / Zur versteckten Einheit / À l’appareil satellite / Naar verborgen toestel

Black
Schwarz
Noir
Zwart

To metallic body or chassis of the car
Zur metallenen Karosserie oder zum Fahrwerk des Autos
À un corps métallique ou au châssis de la voiture
Naar metalen ondergrond of chassis van de auto

Ignition switch
Zündschalter
Interrupteur d’allumage
Ontstekingsschakelaar

Yellow*2
Gelb*2
*Jaune*2*
Geel*2

To a live terminal in the fuse block connecting to the car battery (bypassing the ignition switch) (constant 12 V)
Zur einer stromführenden Anschlußklemme im Sicherungsblock zum Anschließen an die Autobatterie (Umgehen des Zündschalters) (konstant 12 V)
À une borne sous tension du porte-fusible connectée à la batterie de la voiture (en dérivant l’interrupteur d’allumage) (12 V constants)
Naar een onder spanning staande aansluitklem in het zekeringblok die is aangesloten op de accu van de auto (u passeert de ontstekingsschakelaar) (constant 12 V)

Fuse block
Sicherungsblock
Porte-fusible
Zekeringblok

Light green
Hellgrün
Vert clair
Lichtgroen

To parking brake of the car
Zur Feststellbremse des Autos
Au frein de stationnement du véhicule
Naar handrem van auto

---

*1 Not supplied for this unit.
*2 Before checking the operation of this unit prior to installation, this lead must be connected, otherwise power cannot be turned on.

*1 Wird nicht mit Gerät mitgeliefert.
*2 Vor der Überprüfung der Funktionsfähigkeit des Geräts vor dem Einbau, muß diese Leitung angeschlossen werden, da sonst die Stromversorgung nicht eingeschaltet werden kann.

*1 *Non fourni avec cet appareil.*
*2 *Pour vérifier le fonctionnement de cet appareil avant installation, ce fil doit être connecté, sinon l’appareil ne peut pas être mis sous tension.*

*1 Niet bij het apparaat inbegrepen.
*2 Voordat u controleert of het apparaat werkt (alvorens het te installeren), moet deze draad aangesloten zijn. Als dit niet het geval is, kan de stroom niet worden ingeschakeld.

For some VW/Audi or Opel (Vauxhall) automobile
Für manche VW/Audi oder Opel (Vauxhall) Fahrzeuge
Pour certaine voiture VW/Audi ou Opel (Vauxhall)
Voor bepaalde modellen VW/Audi of Opel (Vauxhall) geldt

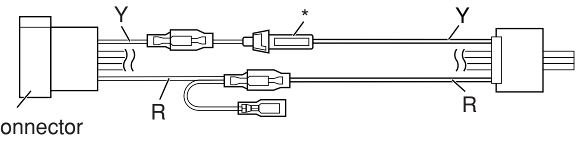
You may need to modify the wiring of the supplied power cord (for the main unit) as illustrated.
- Contact your authorized car dealer before installing this unit.

Es kann erforderlich sein, die Verdrahtung des mitgelieferten Netzkabels (für das Hauptgerät) zu modifizieren, wie in der Abbildung gezeigt.
- Wenden Sie sich an Ihre Vertragswerkstatt, bevor Sie das Gerät einbauen.

Vous devrez peut–être modifier le câblage du cordon d’alimentation fourni (pour l’appareil principal) de la façon montrée sur l’illustration.
- *Contactez votre revendeur automobile autorisé avant d’installer l’appareil.*

De bedrading van het bijgeleverde stroomsnoer (voor het hoofdtoestel) moet mogelijk, zoals afgebeeld, worden veranderd.
- Neem contact op met uw offici’le autodealer alvorens dit apparaat te installeren.

Original wiring / Originalverdrahtung / *Câblage original* / Originele bedrading



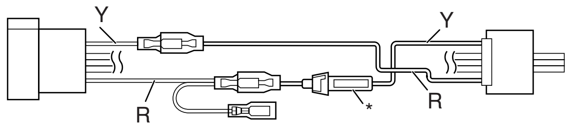
ISO connector
ISO-Stecker
Connecteur ISO
ISO-connector

R: Red
Rot
Rouge
Rood

Y: Yellow
Gelb
Jaune
Geel

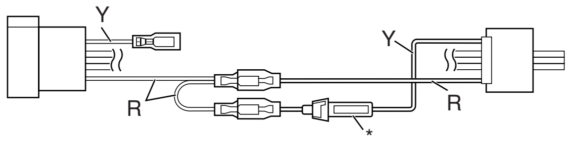
*: Fuse
Sicherung
Fusible
Zekering

Modified wiring 1 / Geänderte Verdrahtung 1 / *Câblage modifié* 1 / Aangepaste bedrading 1

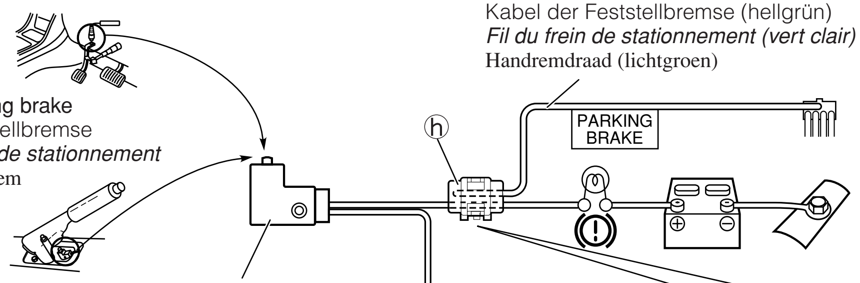


Use modified wiring 2 if the unit does not turn on.
Geänderte Verdrahtung 2 verwenden, wenn das Gerät so nicht an geht.
Utilisez le câblage modifié 2 si l’appareil ne se met pas sous tension.
Pas de bedrading 2 aan indien het apparaat niet reageert bij inschakelen.

Modified wiring 2 / Geänderte Verdrahtung 2 / *Câblage modifié* 2 / Aangepaste bedrading 2



Connecting the parking brake wire / Das Kabel der Feststellbremse anschließen / Connexion du cordon de frein de stationnement / Aansluiten van het handremdraad



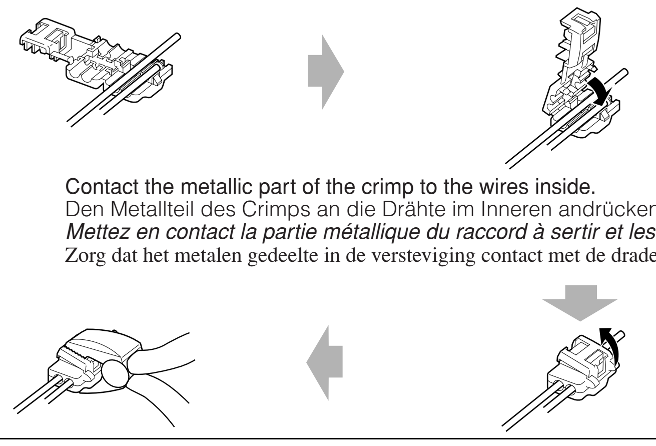
Parking brake wire (light green)
Kabel der Feststellbremse (hellgrün)
Fil du frein de stationnement (vert clair)
Handremdraad (lichtgroen)

Parking brake
Feststellbremse
Frein de stationnement
Handrem

Parking brake switch (inside the car)
Feststellbremsschalter (im Auto)
Commutateur de frein de stationnement (à l’intérieur de la voiture)
Handremschakelaar (in de auto)

To metallic body or chassis of the car
Zur metallenen Karosserie oder zum Fahrwerk des Autos
À un corps métallique ou au châssis de la voiture
Naar metalen onderdeel of chassis van de auto

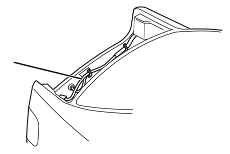
How to connect the crimp connector / Anschließen des Crimpanschlusses / Comment utiliser le raccord à sertir / Gebruik van de versteviging voor aansluitingen



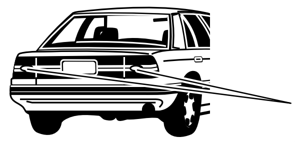
Contact the metallic part of the crimp to the wires inside.
Den Metallteil des Crimps an die Drähte im Inneren andrücken.
Mettez en contact la partie métallique du raccord à sertir et les fils intérieurs.
Zorg dat het metalen gedeelte in de versteviging contact met de draden maakt.

C Connecting the back camera lead / Anschließen der Rückfahrkameraleitung / Connexion du fil de la caméra de recul / Aansluiten van het snoer voor de achteruitkijkcamera

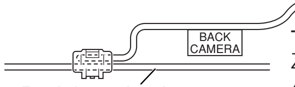
Locate the back lamp lead in the trunk. Suchen Sie die Rückfahrleuchtenleitung im Kofferraum. *Localisez le fil des feux de recul dans le coffre.* *Zoek het achterlichtdraad in de kofferbak.*



Back lamp lead
Rückfahrleuchtenleitung
Fil des feux de recul
Achterlichtdraad



Back lamps
Rückfahrleuchte
Feux de recul
Achterlichten



To back lamp
Zur Rückfahrleuchte
Aux feux de recul
Naar achterlicht

Back lamp lead
Rückfahrleuchtenleitung
Fil des feux de recul
Achterlichtdraad

To car battery
Zur Autobatterie
À la batterie de la voiture
Naar auto-accu

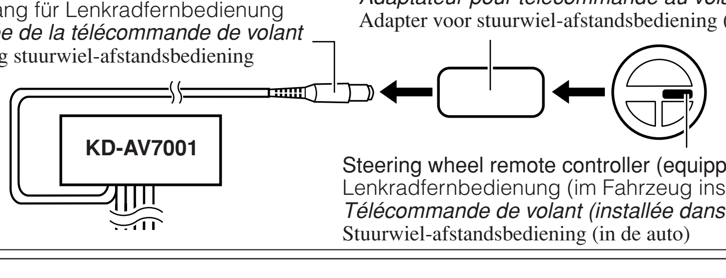
Connecting to the steering wheel remote controller / Anschluß an die Lenkradfernbedienung / Connexion de la télécommande de volant / Verbinden met de stuurwiel-afstandsbediening

If your car is equipped with the steering wheel remote controller, you can operate this unit using the controller. To do it, a JVC’s OE remote adapter (not supplied) which matches with your car is required. Consult your JVC IN-CAR ENTERTAINMENT dealer for details.

Wenn Ihr Fahrzeug mit einer Lenkradferndienung ausgestattet ist, können Sie damit diesen Receiver steuern. Hierfür ist ein für Ihr Fahrzeug passender Radio-Lenkrad-Fernbedienungsadaption von JVC (nicht im Lieferumfang enthalten) erforderlich. Für weitere Einzelheiten wenden Sie sich an Ihren JVC Autoradiohändler.

Si votre voiture est munie d’une télécommande de volant, vous pouvez commander cet autoradio en utilisant la télécommande. Pour le faire, un adaptateur pour télécommande au volant JVC (non fourni) correspondant à votre voiture est nécessaire. Consultez votre revendeur d’autoradio JVC pour les détails.

Indien uw auto een stuurwiel-afstandsbediening heeft, kunt u deze receiver met die afstandsbediening bedienen. Hiervoor heeft u echter een JVC adapter (niet bijgeleverd) nodig die geschikt is voor de stuurwiel-afstandsbediening van uw auto. Raadpleeg uw JVC car audio dealer voor details.



Steering wheel remote input
Eingang für Lenkradfernbedienung
Entrée de la télécommande de volant
Ingang stuurwiel-afstandsbediening

OE remote adapter (not supplied)
Radio-Lenkrad-Fernbedienungsadaption (nicht im Lieferumfang enthalten)
Adaptateur pour télécommande au volant (non fourni)
Adapter voor stuurwiel-afstandsbediening (niet bijgeleverd)

Steering wheel remote controller (equipped in the car)
Lenkradfernbedienung (im Fahrzeug installiert)
Télécommande de volant (installée dans la voiture)
Stuurwiel-afstandsbediening (in de auto)

Before connecting...
- Make sure that the aerial cord from the car is connected to the hideaway unit (see page 2). If the aerial cord is not long enough, use the extension aerial cord (supplied).
- Check the wiring in the car carefully. Incorrect connection may cause serious damage to the units. The leads of the power cord and those of the connector from the car body may be different in color.

Vor dem Anschließen...
- Stellen Sie sicher, dass das Antennenkabel vom Fahrzeug an der versteckten Einheit angeschlossen ist (siehe Seite 2). Wenn das Antennenkabel nicht lang genug ist, verwenden Sie das Antennenverlängerungskabel (mitgeliefert).
- Die Verdrahtung im Auto sorgfältig prüfen. Falscher Anschluss kann zu schweren Schäden an den Einheiten führen. Die Betriebsstrom- und Anschlussleitungen von der Autokarosserie können sich in der Farbe unterscheiden.

Avant de commencer...
- *Assurez-vous que le cordon d'antenne de la voiture est connecté à l'appareil satellite (voir page 2). Si le cordon d'antenne n'est pas assez long, utilisez un cordon prolongateur d'antenne (fourni).*
- *Vérifiez attentivement le câblage du véhicule. Une connexion incorrecte peut endommager sérieusement l'appareil. Le fil du cordon d'alimentation et ceux des connecteurs du châssis de la voiture peuvent avoir des couleurs différentes.*

Alvorens aan te sluiten...
- Zorg dat het antennesnoer van de auto met de verborgen unit is verbonden (zie bladzijde 2). Gebruik het antenneverlengsnoer (bijgeleverd) indien het antennesnoer niet lang genoeg is.
- Controleer de bedrading van de auto zorgvuldig. Verkeerde verbindingen kunnen diverse onderdelen en toestellen ernstig beschadigen. De kleuren van het stroomsnoer en de stekkers van de auto zijn mogelijk verschillend.

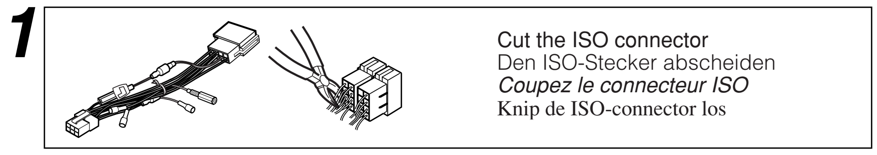
Connections without using the ISO connectors / Anschlüsse ohne ISO-Stecker / Connexions sans l'utilisation des connecteurs ISO / Verbindingen zonder ISO-connectoren

1 Cut the ISO connector.
2 Connect the colored leads of the power cord in the order specified in the illustration below.
3 Connect the wiring harness to the units.

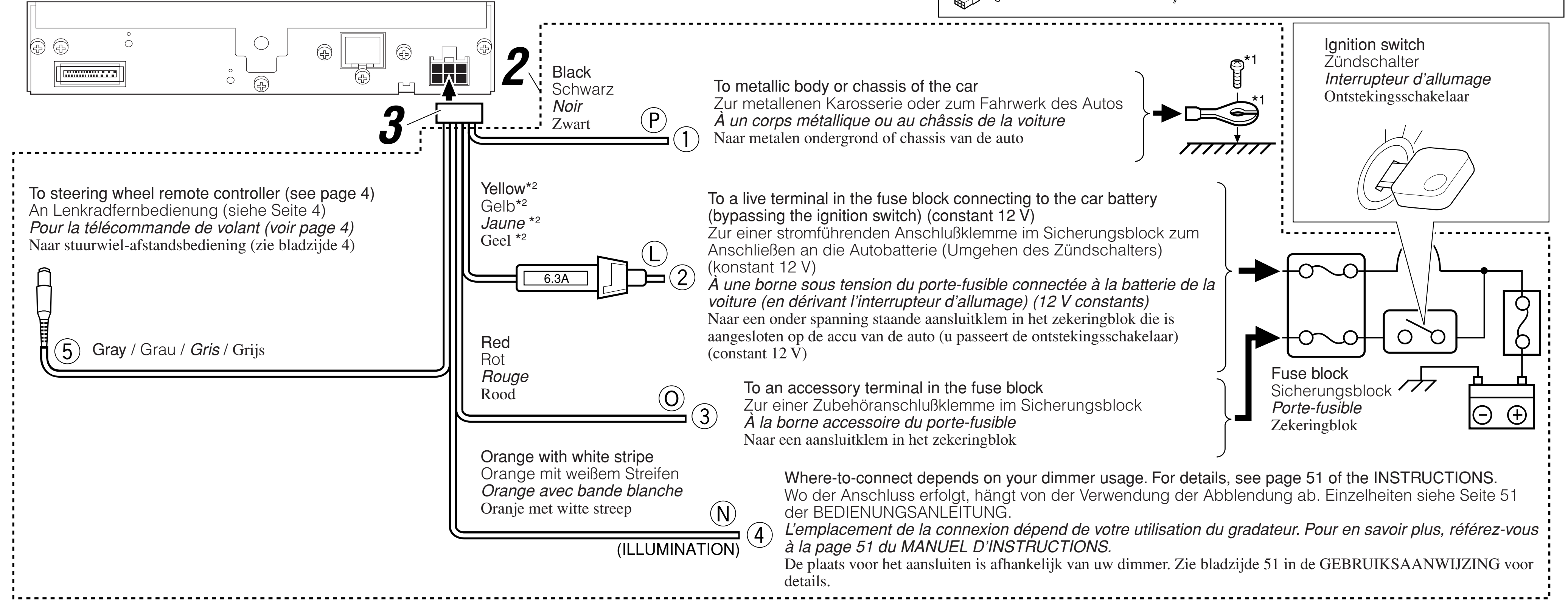
1 Den ISO-Stecker abschneiden.
2 Die farbigen Adern des Stromkabels in der Reihenfolge anschließen, wie in der Abbildung unten gezeigt.
3 Den Verdrahtungskabelbaum an den Einheiten anschließen.

1 *Coupez le connecteur ISO.*
2 *Connectez les fils colorés du cordon d'alimentation dans l'ordre spécifié sur l'illustration ci-dessous.*
3 *Connectez le faisceau de fils aux l'appareils.*

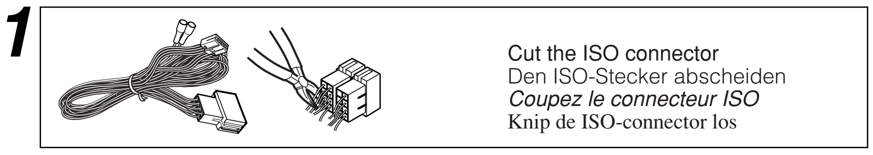
1 Knip de ISO-connector los.
2 Verbind de gekleurde draden van het stroomsnoer in de afbeelding hieronder aangegeven volgorde.
3 Verbind de bedradingsbundels met de toestellen.

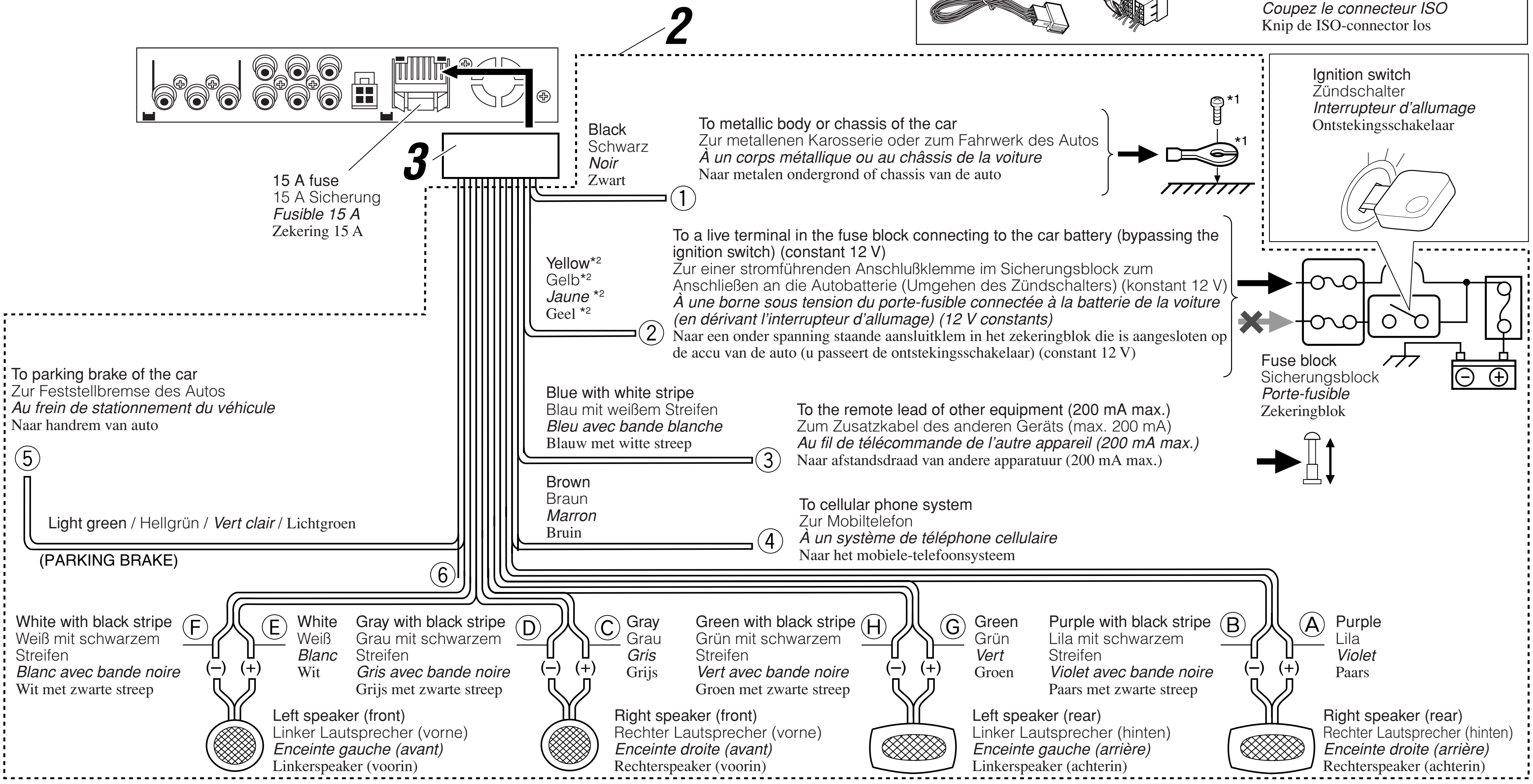

1
Cut the ISO connector
Den ISO-Stecker abscheiden
Coupez le connecteur ISO
Knip de ISO-connector los

Main unit / Hauptgerät / Appareil principal / Hoofdtoestel


2
3
Black
Schwarz
Noir
Zwart
P
①
To metallic body or chassis of the car
Zur metallenen Karosserie oder zum Fahrwerk des Autos
À un corps métallique ou au châssis de la voiture
Naar metalen ondergrond of chassis van de auto
*1
*1
Ignition switch
Zündschalter
Interrupteur d'allumage
Ontstekingsschakelaar
To steering wheel remote controller (see page 4)
An Lenkradfernbedienung (siehe Seite 4)
Pour la télécommande de volant (voir page 4)
Naar stuurwiel-afstandsbediening (zie bladzijde 4)
⑤ Gray / Grau / *Gris* / Grijs
Yellow[*2]
Gelb[*2]
Jaune [*2]
Geel [*2]
L
6.3A
②
To a live terminal in the fuse block connecting to the car battery (bypassing the ignition switch) (constant 12 V)
Zur einer stromführenden Anschlußklemme im Sicherungsblock zum Anschließen an die Autobatterie (Umgehen des Zündschalters) (konstant 12 V)
À une borne sous tension du porte-fusible connectée à la batterie de la voiture (en dérivant l'interrupteur d'allumage) (12 V constants)
Naar een onder spanning staande aansluitklem in het zekeringblok die is aangesloten op de accu van de auto (u passeert de ontstekingsschakelaar) (constant 12 V)
Red
Rot
Rouge
Rood
O
③
To an accessory terminal in the fuse block
Zur einer Zubehöranschlußklemme im Sicherungsblock
À la borne accessoire du porte-fusible
Naar een aansluitklem in het zekeringblok
Fuse block
Sicherungsblock
Porte-fusible
Zekeringblok
Orange with white stripe
Orange mit weißem Streifen
Orange avec bande blanche
Oranje met witte streep
N
④
(ILLUMINATION)
Where-to-connect depends on your dimmer usage. For details, see page 51 of the INSTRUCTIONS.
Wo der Anschluss erfolgt, hängt von der Verwendung der Abblendung ab. Einzelheiten siehe Seite 51 der BEDIENUNGSANLEITUNG.
L'emplacement de la connexion dépend de votre utilisation du gradateur. Pour en savoir plus, référez-vous à la page 51 du MANUEL D'INSTRUCTIONS.
De plaats voor het aansluiten is afhankelijk van uw dimmer. Zie bladzijde 51 in de GEBRUIKSAANWIJZING voor details.

Hideaway unit / Versteckte Einheit / Appareil satellite / Verborgen toestel


1
Cut the ISO connector
Den ISO-Stecker abscheiden
Coupez le connecteur ISO
Knip de ISO-connector los


2
3
15 A fuse
15 A Sicherung
Fusible 15 A
Zekering 15 A
Black
Schwarz
Noir
Zwart
①
To metallic body or chassis of the car
Zur metallenen Karosserie oder zum Fahrwerk des Autos
À un corps métallique ou au châssis de la voiture
Naar metalen ondergrond of chassis van de auto
*1
*1
Ignition switch
Zündschalter
Interrupteur d'allumage
Ontstekingsschakelaar
Yellow[*2]
Gelb[*2]
Jaune [*2]
Geel [*2]
②
To a live terminal in the fuse block connecting to the car battery (bypassing the ignition switch) (constant 12 V)
Zur einer stromführenden Anschlußklemme im Sicherungsblock zum Anschließen an die Autobatterie (Umgehen des Zündschalters) (konstant 12 V)
À une borne sous tension du porte-fusible connectée à la batterie de la voiture (en dérivant l'interrupteur d'allumage) (12 V constants)
Naar een onder spanning staande aansluitklem in het zekeringblok die is aangesloten op de accu van de auto (u passeert de ontstekingsschakelaar) (constant 12 V)
Fuse block
Sicherungsblock
Porte-fusible
Zekeringblok
To parking brake of the car
Zur Feststellbremse des Autos
Au frein de stationnement du véhicule
Naar handrem van auto
⑤
Light green / Hellgrün / *Vert clair* / Lichtgroen
(PARKING BRAKE)
Blue with white stripe
Blau mit weißem Streifen
Bleu avec bande blanche
Blauw met witte streep
③
To the remote lead of other equipment (200 mA max.)
Zum Zusatzkabel des anderen Geräts (max. 200 mA)
Au fil de télécommande de l'autre appareil (200 mA max.)
Naar afstandsdraad van andere apparatuur (200 mA max.)
Brown
Braun
Marron
Bruin
④
To cellular phone system
Zur Mobiltelefon
À un système de téléphone cellulaire
Naar het mobiele-telefoonsysteem
⑥
White with black stripe
Weiß mit schwarzem Streifen
Blanc avec bande noire
Wit met zwarte streep
Ⓕ
Ⓔ
White
Weiß
Blanc
Wit
(–) (+)
Left speaker (front)
Linker Lautsprecher (vorne)
Enceinte gauche (avant)
Linkerspeaker (voorin)
Gray with black stripe
Grau mit schwarzem Streifen
Gris avec bande noire
Grijs met zwarte streep
Ⓓ
Ⓒ
Gray
Grau
Gris
Grijs
(–) (+)
Right speaker (front)
Rechter Lautsprecher (vorne)
Enceinte droite (avant)
Rechterspeaker (voorin)
Green with black stripe
Grün mit schwarzem Streifen
Vert avec bande noire
Groen met zwarte streep
Ⓗ
Ⓖ
Green
Grün
Vert
Groen
(–) (+)
Left speaker (rear)
Linker Lautsprecher (hinten)
Enceinte gauche (arrière)
Linkerspeaker (achterin)
Purple with black stripe
Lila mit schwarzem Streifen
Violet avec bande noire
Paars met zwarte streep
Ⓑ
Ⓐ
Purple
Lila
Violet
Paars
(–) (+)
Right speaker (rear)
Rechter Lautsprecher (hinten)
Enceinte droite (arrière)
Rechterspeaker (achterin)

[*1] Not supplied for this unit.
[*2] Before checking the operation of this unit prior to installation, this lead must be connected, otherwise power cannot be turned on.

[*1] Wird nicht mit Gerät mitgeliefert.
[*2] Vor der Überprüfung der Funktionsfähigkeit des Geräts vor dem Einbau, muß diese Leitung angeschlossen werden, da sonst die Stromversorgung nicht eingeschaltet werden kann.

[*1] *Non fourni avec cet appareil.*
[*2] *Pour vérifier le fonctionnement de cet appareil avant installation, ce fil doit être connecté, sinon l'appareil ne peut pas être mis sous tension.*

[*1] Niet bij het apparaat inbegrepen.
[*2] Voordat u controleert of het apparaat werkt (alvorens het te installeren), moet deze draad aangesloten zijn. Als dit niet het geval is, kan de stroom niet worden ingeschakeld.

PRECAUTIONS on power supply and speaker connections:

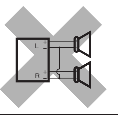
- **DO NOT connect the speaker leads of the power cord to the car battery; otherwise, the units will be seriously damaged.**
- BEFORE connecting the speaker leads of the power cord to the speakers, check the speaker wiring in your car.

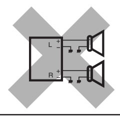
VORSICHTSMASSREGELN beim Anschließen der Stromversorgung und Lautsprecher:

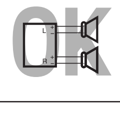
- **Die Lautsprecherleitungen des Netzkabels NICHT an der Autobatterie anschließen, da sonst die Geräte schwer beschädigt werden.**
- VOR dem Anschließen der Lautsprecherleitungen des Spannungsversorgungskabels an die Lautsprecher, die Lautsprecherverdrahtung in Ihrem Auto überprüfen.

PRECAUTIONS sur l'alimentation et la connexion des enceintes:

- ***NE CONNECTEZ PAS les fils d'enceintes du cordon d'alimentation à la batterie; sinon, les appareils seront sérieusement endommagés.***
- *AVANT de connecter les fils d'enceintes du cordon d'alimentation aux enceintes, vérifiez le câblage des enceintes de votre voiture.*







VOORZORGSMAATREGELEN bij het verbinden van de stroomkabeldraad met de speakers:

- **Verbind de luidsprekerdraden van de stroomkabel NIET met de accu van de auto; de apparaten zouden anders ernstig beschadigd kunnen worden.**
- VOORDAT u de speakerdraden van de stroomkabel met de speakers verbindt, moet u de bedrading van de speakers in uw auto controleren.

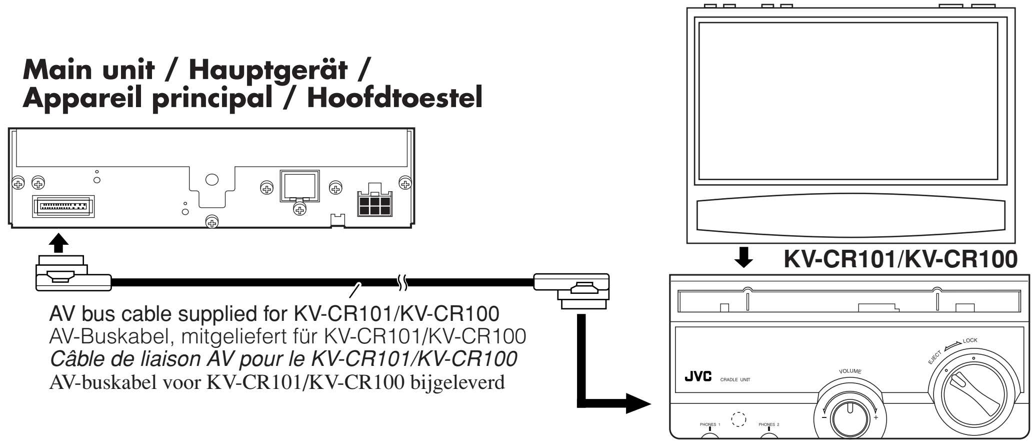
D Connecting the cradle / Anschließen der Halterung / Connexion du berceau / Aansluiten van de bak

By using the cradle (KV-CR101/KV-CR100), you can remove the monitor from the main unit and insert it into the cradle so that the persons sitting on the rear seat can view the playback picture even while the driver are driving your car.

Durch Verwendung der Halterung (KV-CR101/KV-CR100) können Sie den Monitor vom Hauptgerät abnehmen und in die Halterung einsetzen, so dass Personen auf dem Rücksitz das Wiedergabebild auch beim Fahren sehen können.

En utilisant le berceau (KV-CR101/KV-CR100), il est possible séparer le moniteur de l'appareil principal et de l'insérez dans le berceau de façon que les personnes assises sur les sièges arrière puissent voir l'image de lecture même lors que le conducteur conduit la voiture.

Met gebruik van de bak (KV-CR101/KV-CR100) kunt u de monitor van het hoofdtoestel verwijderen en deze vervolgens in de bak plaatsen zodat personen op de achterbank beelden kunnen bekijken terwijl de bestuurder de auto bestuurt.


Main unit / Hauptgerät / Appareil principal / Hoofdtoestel
KV-CR101/KV-CR100
AV bus cable supplied for KV-CR101/KV-CR100
AV-Buskabel, mitgeliefert für KV-CR101/KV-CR100
Câble de liaison AV pour le KV-CR101/KV-CR100
AV-buskabel voor KV-CR101/KV-CR100 bijgeleverd
JVC
CRADLE UNIT
VOLUME
EJECT
LOCK

Removable monitor*3 or additional monitor KV-MAV7001*4
Abnehmbarer Monitor*3 oder zusätzlicher Monitor KV-MAV7001*4
*Moniteur amovible *3 ou moniteur additionnel KV-MAV7001 *4*
Verwijderbare monitor*3 of KV-MAV7001 extra monitor*4

*3 For details about removing the monitor, see page 60 of the INSTRUCTIONS.
*3 Einzelheiten zum Ausbau des Monitors siehe Seite 60 der BEDIENUNGSANLEITUNG.
*3 *Pour en savoir plus sur le retrait du moniteur, référez-vous à la page 60 du MANUEL D'INSTRUCTIONS.*
*3 Zie bladzijde 60 in de GEBRUIKSAANWIJZING voor details aangaande het verwijderen van de monitor.

*4 When not in use, store the monitor in the supplied soft case for its protection.
*4 Bei Nichtverwendung legen Sie den Monitor zum Schutz in der mitgelieferten weichen Tasche ab.
*4 *Quand vous ne l'utilisez pas, conservez le moniteur dans l'étui souple fourni afin de le protéger.*
*4 Bewar de monitor, wanneer niet in gebruik, ter bescherming in dit zachte etui.

E Connecting the external amplifiers / Anschließen der externen Verstärker / Connexion d'amplificateurs externes / Aansluiten van externe versterkers

You can connect amplifiers to upgrade surround system in the car compartment.

- Connect the PRE OUT terminals of the hideaway unit to the amplifier's line-in terminals.
- **Disconnect the speakers from the hideaway unit, connect them to the amplifier. Leave the speaker leads of the unit unused.**

Sie können Verstärker zur Erweiterung des Klangsystems im Autoinnenraum anschließen.

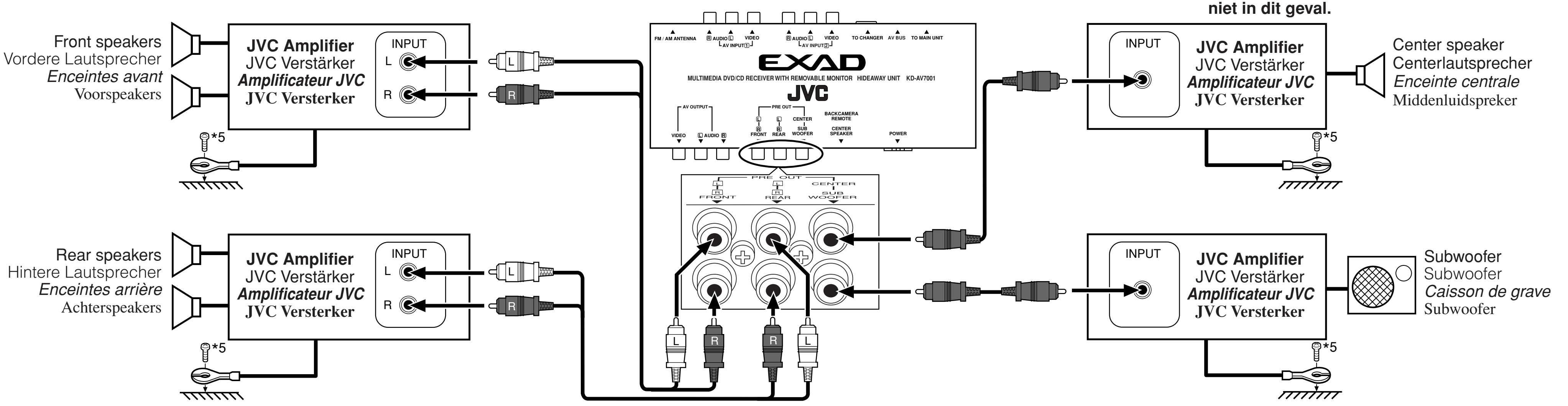
- Verbinden Sie die Klemmen PRE OUT der versteckten Einheit mit den Klemmen Line In des Verstärkers.
- **Trennen Sie die Lautsprecher von der versteckten Einheit ab, und schließen Sie sie am Verstärker an. Lassen Sie die Lautsprecherkabel des Geräts unbenutzt.**

Vous pouvez connecter des amplificateurs pour donner plus de puissance au système Surround dans la cabine de votre voiture.

- *Connectez les prises PRE OUT de l'appareil satellite aux prises d'entrée de ligne des amplificateurs.*
- ***Déconnectez les enceintes de l'appareil satellite et connectez-les aux amplificateurs. Laissez les fils d'enceintes de l'appareil inutilisés.***

U kunt voor een beter surroundgeluid in uw auto een externe versterker aansluiten.

- Verbind de PRE OUT aansluitingen van de verborgen unit met de lijningangsaansluitingen van de externe versterker.
- **Ontkoppel de luidsprekers van de verborgen unit en sluit de luidsprekers op de externe versterker aan. Gebruik de luidsprekeraansluitingen van dit toestel dus niet in dit geval.**


Front speakers
Vordere Lautsprecher
Enceintes avant
Voorspeakers
JVC Amplifier
JVC Verstärker
Amplificateur JVC
JVC Versterker
INPUT
L
R
*5
EXAD
MULTIMEDIA DVD/CD RECEIVER WITH REMOVABLE MONITOR HIDEAWAY UNIT KD-AV7001
JVC
FM / AM ANTENNA
AUDIO
VIDEO
AV INPUT
TO CHANGER
AV BUS
TO MAIN UNIT
AV OUTPUT
PRE OUT
FRONT
REAR
CENTER
SUB WOOFER
BACKCAMERA REMOTE
CENTER SPEAKER
POWER
Center speaker
Centerlautsprecher
Enceinte centrale
Middenluidspreker
Rear speakers
Hintere Lautsprecher
Enceintes arrière
Achterspeakers
Subwoofer
Subwoofer
Caisson de grave
Subwoofer

*5 Firmly attach the ground wire to the metallic body or to the chassis of the car—to the place uncoated with paint (if coated with paint, remove the paint before attaching the wire). Failure to do so may cause damage to the unit.

*5 Verbinden Sie den Erdungsleiter mit der Karosserie oder dem Rahmen des Fahrzeugs. Die Kontaktstelle darf nicht lackiert sein (sollte die Kontaktstelle lackiert sein, entfernen Sie den Lack der Kontaktstelle, bevor Sie den Leiter befestigen). Wenn der Erdungsleiter nicht ordnungsgemäß angeschlossen wird, kann dieses Gerät beschädigt werden.

*5 *Attachez solidement le fil de mise à la masse au châssis métallique de la voiture—à un endroit qui n'est pas recouvert de peinture (s'il est recouvert de peinture, enlevez d'abord la peinture avant d'attacher le fil). L'appareil peut être endommagé si cela n'est pas fait correctement.*

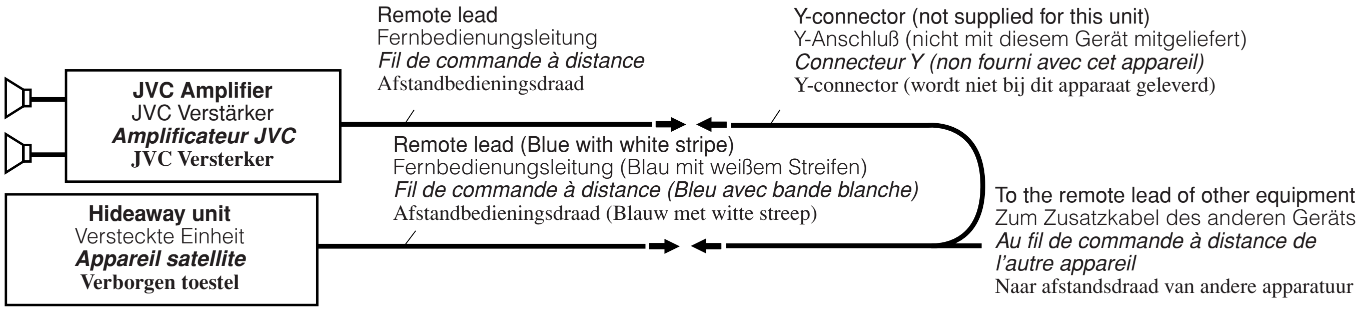
*5 Bevestig de aardedraad goed met een metalen onderdeel of het chassis van de auto—bevestig op een niet-gelakt gedeelte (indien gelakt, schuur dan af alvorens de draad te bevestigen). Het toestel kan worden beschadigd indien de aardedraad niet goed is aangesloten.

If you connect the remote lead (blue with white stripe) to the remote lead of the other equipment, they can be turned on and off automatically for this unit.

Wenn Sie die Fernsteuerleitung (blau mit weißem Streifen) an der Fernsteuerleitung des anderen Geräts anschließen, können die Geräte automatisch für diese Einheit ein- und ausgeschaltet werden.

Si vous connectez le fil de commande à distance (bleu avec bande blanche) au fil de commande à distance de l'autre appareil, ils peuvent être mis sous et hors tension automatiquement, en même temps que cet appareil.

U kunt het afstandsbedieningsdraad (blauw met witte streep) verbinden met het afstandsbedieningsdraad van de andere apparatuur, zodat dit toestel automatisch, in overeenstemming met de andere apparatuur kan worden in- en uitgeschakeld.

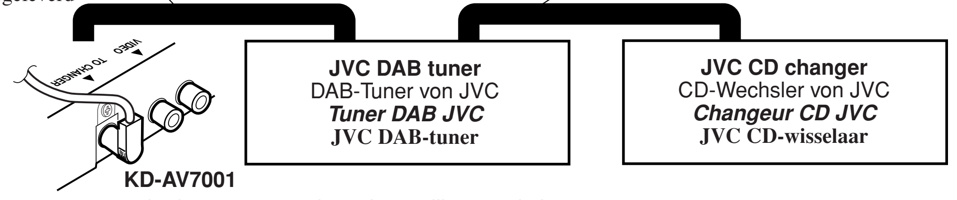

Remote lead
Fernbedienungsleitung
Fil de commande à distance
Afstandbedieningsdraad
Y-connector (not supplied for this unit)
Y-Anschluß (nicht mit diesem Gerät mitgeliefert)
Connecteur Y (non fourni avec cet appareil)
Y-connector (wordt niet bij dit apparaat geleverd)
JVC Amplifier
JVC Verstärker
Amplificateur JVC
JVC Versterker
Remote lead (Blue with white stripe)
Fernbedienungsleitung (Blau mit weißem Streifen)
Fil de commande à distance (Bleu avec bande blanche)
Afstandbedieningsdraad (Blauw met witte streep)
Hideaway unit
Versteckte Einheit
Appareil satellite
Verborgen toestel
To the remote lead of other equipment
Zum Zusatzkabel des anderen Geräts
Au fil de commande à distance de l'autre appareil
Naar afstandsdraad van andere apparatuur

F Connecting the CD changer and DAB tuner / Den CD-Wechsler und DAB-Tuner anschließen / Connexion du changeur de CD et du tuner DAB / Aansluiten van een CD-wisselaar en DAB-tuner

Refer also to the notes on page 62 of the INSTRUCTIONS.
Siehe auch Hinweise auf Seite 62 in der BEDIENUNGSANLEITUNG.
Référez-vous aussi aux remarques de la page 62 du MANUEL D'INSTRUCTIONS.
Zie tevens de opmerkingen op bladzijde 62 van de GEBRUIKSAANWIJZING.

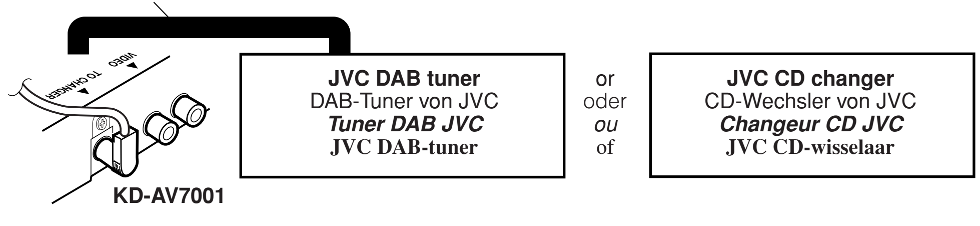
Connecting cord supplied for your DAB tuner
Verbindungskabel, das zum Lieferumfang des DAB-Tuners gehört
Cordon de connexion fourni avec votre tuner DAB
Verbindingskabel die met de DAB-tuner wordt meegeleverd

Connecting cord supplied for your CD changer
Verbindungskabel, das zum Lieferumfang des CD-Wechsler gehört
Cordon de connexion fourni avec votre changeur CD
Verbindingskabel die met de CD-wisselaar wordt meegeleverd


TO CHANGER
VIDEO
JVC DAB tuner
DAB-Tuner von JVC
Tuner DAB JVC
JVC DAB-tuner
JVC CD changer
CD-Wechsler von JVC
Changeur CD JVC
JVC CD-wisselaar
KD-AV7001

- You can connect both components in series as illustrated above.
- Es ist möglich, beide Komponenten in einer Serienschaltung entsprechend der obigen Darstellung anzuschließen.
- *Vous pouvez connecter les deux appareils en série comme montré ci-dessus.*
- Beide apparaten zijn volgens bovenstaande illustratie in serie aan te sluiten.

Connecting cord supplied for your DAB tuner or CD changer
Verbindungskabel, das zum Lieferumfang des DAB-Tuners oder CD-Wechslers gehört
Cordon de connexion fourni avec votre tuner DAB ou changeur CD
Verbindingskabel die met de DAB-tuner of CD-wisselaar wordt meegeleverd


TO CHANGER
VIDEO
JVC DAB tuner
DAB-Tuner von JVC
Tuner DAB JVC
JVC DAB-tuner
or
oder
ou
of
JVC CD changer
CD-Wechsler von JVC
Changeur CD JVC
JVC CD-wisselaar
KD-AV7001

CAUTION / VORSICHT / PRECAUTION / LET OP!:

- Before connecting the CD changer and/or the DAB tuner, make sure that the unit is turned off.
- Bevor Sie den CD-Wechsler und/oder den DAB-Tuner anschließen, vergewissern Sie sich, daß das Gerät ausgeschaltet ist.
- *Avant de connecter le changeur CD et/ou le tuner DAB, s'assurer que l'unité est éteinte.*
- Zorg ervoor dat het apparaat is uitgeschakeld alvorens u de CD-wisselaar en/of DAB-tuner aansluit.

TROUBLESHOOTING

- **The fuse blows.**
  * Are the red and black leads connected correctly?
- **Power cannot be turned on.**
  * Is the yellow lead connected?
- **No sound from the speakers.**
  * Is the speaker output lead short-circuited?
- **Sound is distorted.**
  * Is the speaker output lead grounded?
  * Are the "–" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?
- **Noise interfere with sounds.**
  * Is the rear ground terminal connected to the car's chassis using shorter and thicker cords?
- **Unit becomes hot.**
  * Is the speaker output lead grounded?
  * Are the "–" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?

FEHLERSUCHE

- **Die Sicherung brennt durch.**
  * Sind die roten und schwarzen Leitungen richtig angeschlossen?
- **Stromversorgung kann nicht eingeschaltet werden.**
  * Ist die gelbe Leitung angeschlossen?
- **Kein Ton aus den Lautsprechern.**
  * Ist die Lautsprecherausgangsleitung kurzgeschlossen?
- **Ton verzerrt.**
  * Ist die Lautsprecherausgangsleitung geerdet?
  * Sind die „–" Anschlußklemmen der linken und rechten Lautsprecher zusammen geerdet?
- **Störgeräusche im Klang.**
  * Ist die hintere Erdungsklemme mit kürzeren und dickeren Kabeln an das Fahrzeugchassis angeschlossen?
- **Gerät wird heiß.**
  * Ist die Lautsprecherausgangsleitung geerdet?
  * Sind die „–" Anschlußklemmen der linken und rechten Lautsprecher zusammen geerdet?

EN CAS DE DIFFICULTES

- **Le fusible saute.**
  * *Les fils rouge et noir sont-ils connectés correctement?*
- **L'appareil ne peut pas être mise sous tension.**
  * *Le fil jaune est-il connecté?*
- **Pas de son des enceintes.**
  * *Le fil de sortie d'enceinte est-il court-circuité?*
- **Le son est déformé.**
  * *Le fil de sortie d'enceinte est-il à la masse?*
  * *Les bornes "–" des enceintes gauche (L) et droite (R) sont-elles mises ensemble à la masse?*
- **Interférence avec les sons.**
  * *La prise arrière de mise à la masse est-elle connectée au châssis de la voiture avec un cordon court et épais?*
- **L'appareil devient chaud.**
  * *Le fil de sortie d'enceinte est-il à la masse?*
  * *Les bornes "–" des enceintes gauche (L) et droite (R) sont-elles mises ensemble à la masse?*

PROBLEMEN OPLOSSEN

- **De zekering slaat door.**
  * Zijn de rode en de zwarte draden op de juiste manier aangesloten?
- **De stroom kan niet worden ingeschakeld.**
  * Is de gele draad aangesloten?
- **Er komt geen geluid uit de speakers.**
  * Is de uitgaande speakerdraad kortgesloten?
- **Het geluid wordt vervormd.**
  * Is de uitgaande speakerdraad geaard?
  * Zijn de "–" polen van de linker- en de rechterspeakers gemeenschappelijk geaard?
- **Geluid wordt door ruis gestoord.**
  * Is de aarde-aansluiting achter met gebruik van kortere en dikkere snoeren met het chassis van de auto verbonden?
- **Het apparaat raakt verhit.**
  * Is de uitgaande speakerdraad geaard?
  * Zijn de "–" polen van de linker- en de rechterspeakers gemeenschappelijk geaard?

JVC

ENGLISH

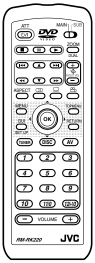
中文

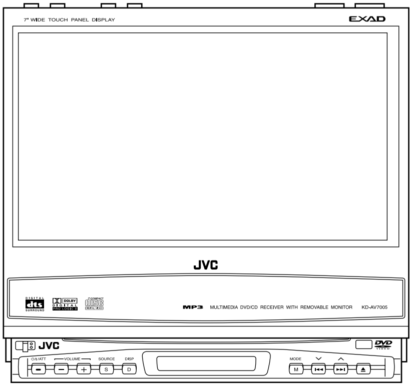
ไทย

DVD RECEIVER WITH MONITOR
配備屏幕的 DVD 接收器
เครื่องเล่น DVD พร้อมจอภาพ

KD-AV7005

EXAD


ATT
MAIN
SUB
ZOOM
DUAL
ASPECT
MENU
TOP MENU
OK
RETURN
SET UP
TUNER
DISC
AV
VOLUME
RM-RK220
JVC


7" WIDE TOUCH PANEL DISPLAY
EXAD
JVC
MP3 MULTIMEDIA DVD/CD RECEIVER WITH REMOVABLE MONITOR KD-AV7005
JVC
VOLUME
SOURCE
DISP
MODE

Detachable

MP3 · DIGITAL dts SURROUND · DOLBY DIGITAL PRO LOGIC II · COMPACT disc DIGITAL VIDEO · DVD VIDEO™

- This unit is equipped with the display demonstration. To cancel it, see page 14.
- 本機具有螢幕演示功能。要取消該功能，請參閱第 14 頁。
- เครื่องนี้ได้รับการติดตั้งการสาธิตภาพประกอบ หากต้องการยกเลิก โปรดดู หน้า 14

For installation and connections, refer to the separate manual.
有關安裝和連接方法，分別參閱操作手冊。
กรุณาดูคู่มือที่แยกต่างหาก ในการติดตั้งและการเชื่อมต่อ

INSTRUCTIONS
使用說明書
คำแนะนำ

LVT1173-001A
[U]

Thank you for purchasing a JVC product.
Please read all instructions carefully before operation, to ensure your complete understanding and to obtain the best possible performance from the unit.

IMPORTANT FOR LASER PRODUCTS

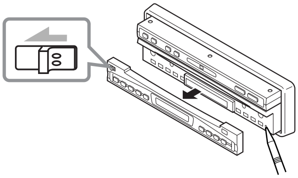
1. CLASS 1 LASER PRODUCT
2. **CAUTION:** Do not open the top cover. There are no user serviceable parts inside the unit; leave all servicing to qualified service personnel.
3. **CAUTION:** Visible and invisible laser radiation when open and interlock failed or defeated. Avoid direct exposure to beam.
4. REPRODUCTION OF LABEL: CAUTION LABEL, PLACED OUTSIDE THE UNIT.

CAUTION : Visible and invisible laser radiation when open and interlock failed or defeated. AVOID DIRECT EXPOSURE TO BEAM. (e)	**ADVARSEL :** Synlig og usynlig laserstråling når maskinen er åben eller interlocken fejler. Undgå direkte eksponering til stråling. (d)	**VARNING :** Synlig och osynlig laserstrålning när den öppnas och spärren är urkopplad. Betrakta ej strålen. (s)	**VARO :** Avattaessa ja suojalukitus ohitettuna tai viallisena olet alttiina näkyvälle ja näkymättömälle lasersäteilylle. Vältä säteen kohdistumista suoraan itseesi. (f)

After installing the unit, reset it before use following the procedure below:

How to reset your unit

Detach the control panel (see page 77), then press the reset button on the main unit using a ball-point pen or a similar tool.
This will reset the built-in microcomputer.



Your preset adjustments—such as preset channels or sound adjustments—will also be erased.

- *The monitor will go into its place if opened.*

CAUTIONS:

- Do not insert any disc of unusual shape—like a heart or flower; otherwise, it will cause a malfunction.
- Do not expose discs to direct sunlight or any heat source or place them in a place subject to high temperature and humidity. Do not leave them in a car.

For safety....

- Do not raise the volume level too much, as this will block outside sounds, making driving dangerous.
- Stop the car before performing any complicated operations.

Temperature inside the car....

If you have parked the car for a long time in hot or cold weather, wait until the temperature in the car becomes normal before operating the unit.

WARNINGS

- **DO NOT install any unit in locations where;**
  - **it may obstruct the steering wheel and gearshift lever operations, as this may result in a traffic accident.**
  - **it may obstruct the operation of safety devices such as air bags, as this may result in a fatal accident.**
  - **it may obstruct visibility.**
- **DO NOT operate any unit while manipulating the steering wheel, as this may result in a traffic accident.**
- **The driver must not watch the monitor while driving.**
  If the driver watches the monitor while driving, it may lead to carelessness and cause an accident.
- **If you need to operate the main unit while driving, be sure to look ahead carefully or you may be involved in a traffic accident.**
- **If the parking brake is not engaged, "DRIVER MUST NOT WATCH THE MONITOR WHILE DRIVING." appears on the monitor, and no playback picture will be shown.**
  - **This warning appears only when the parking brake wire is connected to the parking brake system built in the car (refer to the Installation/Connection Manual).**

CAUTIONS on the monitor

- The monitor built in this receiver has been produced with high precision, but it may have some ineffective dots. This is inevitable and is not malfunction.
- Do not expose the monitor to direct sunlight.
- When the temperature is very cold or very hot...
  - Chemical changes occur inside, causing it to malfunction.
  - Pictures may not appear clearly or may move slowly. Pictures may not be synchronized with the sound or the picture quality may decline in such environments.

CAUTION on Volume Setting:

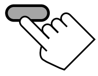
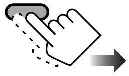
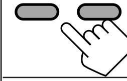
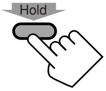
Discs produce very little noise compared with other sources. If the volume level is adjusted for the tuner, for example, the speakers may be damaged by the sudden increase in the output level. Therefore, lower the volume before playing a disc and adjust it as required during playback.

Important!

How to read this manual:

To make the explanations as simple and easy-to-understand as possible, we have adapted the following methods:

- **Some related tips and notes are explained later in the sections "More about This Receiver" (see page 68), but not in the same section explaining the operations.** If you want to know more about the functions, or if you have a doubt about the function, go to the section and you will find the answers.
- Operations are explained only with the illustrations as follows:

	Press briefly.
	Press repeatedly.
	Press either one.
	Press and hold until your desired response begins.

Contents

How to reset your unit 2
Important! (How to read this manual) 3

Introduction—Playable Discs 5

Quick Guide—How to Use the Controls...... 6
Remote controller 6
Main unit (front) 8

Preparation
(Remote Controller—RM-RK220) 9

Operation Methods..................................... 10
Basic Operations 12
Setting the clock 13
Changing the source 14
Changing the graphic screen 14
Changing the touch panel color 14
Displaying the level meter 15

Radio Operations 16
Listening to the Radio 17
Storing stations in memory........................... 18
Displaying the preset list 19

DVD/VCD Operations................................ 20
CD/MP3 Operations 21
Basic Disc Operations 22
Changing the aspect ratio 24
Prohibiting disc ejection 24
Selecting MP3 folders 24
Operating the disc menu 25
Replaying the previous scenes....................... 26
Zooming in 26
Selecting subtitles 27
Selecting audio languages 27
Selecting multi-angle views 28
Locating a folder/track using the list 29
Displaying the disc text information 30
Displaying the time information.................... 30
Selecting playback modes 30
Searching for scenes or songs....................... 31

Dual Mode Operations 33
Selecting the sources 33
Adjusting AV OUTPUT volume.................... 34

Surround Mode Operations........................ 35
Introducing surround/DSP mode 36
Turning on and off the surround/DSP mode 37

Sound Modes (iEQ) Operations 39
Selecting preset sound modes........................ 40
Storing your own sound modes 40

Other Sound Adjustments 41
Monitor Adjustments 42
Initial Setup—DVD MENU 43
Initial Setup—MONITOR 45
Initial Setup—ON SCREEN....................... 47
Initial Setup—AUDIO MENU/PSM 49

Other Main Functions................................. 53
Assigning titles to the sources 53
Changing the monitor position/angle 55
Removing the monitor 55

CD Changer Operations 56
Basic CD Changer Operations 57

Advanced CD Changer Operations 58
Selecting disc/folders/tracks 58
Locating a disc/folder/track using the list 58
Displaying the disc text information 59
Selecting playback modes 60
Searching for songs 61

External Component Operations 62
TV Tuner Operations 63
Watching TV programs 64
Storing stations in memory........................... 64
Displaying the preset list 66

Maintenance 67
More about This Receiver 68
Troubleshooting 72
Additional Information 74
Specifications... 76

Introduction—Playable Discs

Discs you can play

You can play back the following discs on this unit:

- DVD Video: whose video format is NTSC or PAL and whose region code is "3."
  –DVD-Rs and DVD-RWs recorded in the DVD-Video format can also be played (see page 69).
- Video CD (VCD)/Audio CD
- MP3: CD-Rs or CD-RWs including MP3 files with the file extension code <mp3>. They must be recorded in the format compliant with ISO 9660 Level 1, ISO 9660 Level 2, Romeo, and Joliet.

On some discs, the actual operations may be different from what is explained in this manual.

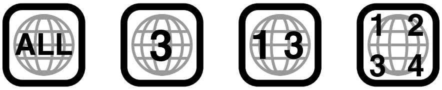
The following discs cannot be played back

DVD Audio, DVD-ROM, DVD-RAM, DVD-RW recorded in the DVD-VR format, CD-ROM, CD-I (CD-I Ready), Photo CD, etc.

- Playing back these discs will generate noise and damage the speakers.

** Note on Region Code*

DVD players and DVD Video discs have their own Region Code numbers. This unit can only play back DVD discs whose Region Code numbers include "3."



Examples:

If you insert a DVD Video disc of an incorrect Region Code

"REGION CODE ERROR!" appears on the monitor.

- *"DVD Logo" is a trademark of DVD Format/Logo Licensing Corporation registered in the US, Japan and other countries.*

DVD Video—digital audio formats

The System can play back the following digital audio formats.

Linear PCM: Uncompressed digital audio, the same format used for CDs and most studio masters.

Dolby Digital *: Compressed digital audio, developed by Dolby Laboratories, which enables multi-channel encode to create the realistic surround sound.

DTS ** (Digital Theater Systems): Compressed digital audio, developed by Digital Theater Systems, Inc., which enables multi-channel like Dolby Digital. As the compression ratio is lower than for Dolby Digital, it provides wider dynamic range and better separation.

MPEG Multichannel: Another compressed digital audio which also enables multi-channel encode to create the realistic surround sound. However, this System downmix the multi-channel singnals into 2 channels (decoded PCM) and play it back.

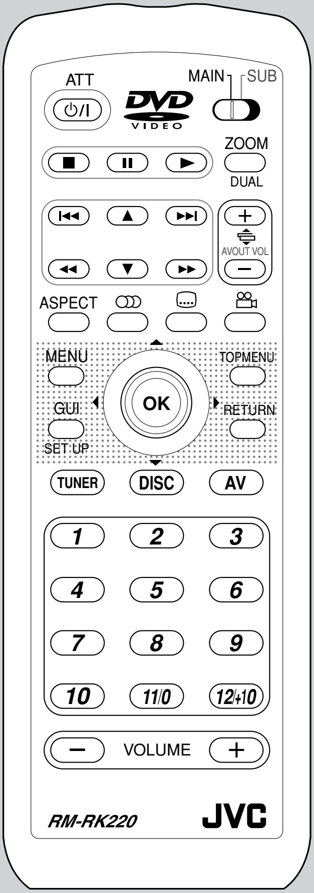
This product incorporates copyright protection technology that is protected by U.S. patents and other intellectual property rights. Use of this copyright protection technology must be authorized by Macrovision, and is intended for home and other limited viewing uses only unless otherwise authorized by Macrovision. Reverse engineering or disassembly is prohibited.

* *Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. "Dolby", "Pro Logic", and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.*

** *"DTS" and "DTS Digital Surround" are registered trademarks of Digital Theater Systems, Inc.*

Quick Guide—How to Use the Controls

Remote controller


ATT
MAIN
SUB
⏻/I
DVD VIDEO
ZOOM
DUAL
AV OUT VOL
ASPECT
MENU
TOP MENU
GUI
OK
RETURN
SET UP
TUNER
DISC
AV
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11/0
12/+10
VOLUME
RM-RK220
JVC

General operations

Buttons	To do:
ATT ⏻/I	Turn on the main unit.
	▨ Turn off the main unit.
	Attenuate sounds.
TUNER	Select “TUNER.”
DISC	Select “DISC” and “CD-CH.”
AV	Select external components: TV → AV1 → AV2 →
− VOLUME +	Adjust the volume.
MAIN SUB	Set the main or sub-operation for Dual Mode. *1
ZOOM DUAL	▨ Turn on/off Dual Mode.
+ AV OUT VOL −	Adjust the monitor angle (with MAIN/SUB set MAIN).
	Adjust the AV output level (with MAIN/SUB set SUB).
ASPECT	Change the aspect ratio.
	▨ Display the monitor adjustment screen.
GUI SET UP	Display and erase GUI screen.
	▨ Display Setup Menus.
↑ ← OK → ↓	Change menu items.
	Confirm.

▨ : functions if pressed and held.

---

*1 *When using Dual Mode, the remote controller operates either main or sub source depending on the MAIN/SUB setting.*

*2 *Only for MP3*

*3 *While playing a DVD, chapter is selected; on the other hands, title is selected before or after playback.*

Tuner operations

Buttons	To do:
TUNER	Select the band.
⏮ ⏭	Start Auto Search.
	Start Manual Search.
▲ ▼	Change preset numbers.
1 2 3 4 5 6	Select preset numbers directly.

Disc operations

Buttons	To do:
▶	Play.
⏸	Pause.
■	Stop.
⏮ ⏭	Select chapters/tracks.
	Search.
▲ ▼	Selects folders. *2
← OK then OK ↕	
OK → then OK ↕	Select tracks. *2
◀◀ ▶▶	Search.
○○○ ◯	Select audio language.
💬 ◯	Select subtitle language.
🎥 ◯	Select view angle.
ZOOM ◯ DUAL	Zoom the picture.
MENU ◯ TOPMENU ◯	Display disc menu.
↑ ← OK → ↓	Change menu items.
	Confirm.

Disc operations—continued

Buttons	To do:
RETURN ◯	Return to the previous screen while operating the disc menu.
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11/0 12/+10	Select title/chapter/track number. *3

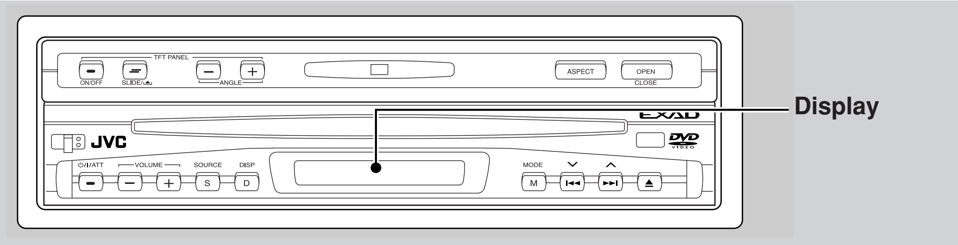
CD changer operations

Buttons	To do:
▲ ▼	Select folders. *2
⏮ ⏭	Select tracks.
	Search.
↑ OK ↓	Change discs.
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11/0 12/+10	Select disc numbers.

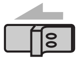
TV tuner operations

Buttons	To do:
⏮ ⏭	Start Auto Search.
	Start Manual Search.
▲ ▼	Change preset channel numbers.
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11/0 12/+10	Select preset channel numbers.

Main unit (front)



General operations

Buttons	To do:
⏻/I/ATT ▬	Turn on the main unit.
	▨ Turn off the main unit.
	Attenuate sounds.
SOURCE S	Change the sources.
VOLUME – +	Adjust the volume.
DISP D	Change the display information.
	Detach the control panel.

Tuner operations

Buttons	To do:
SOURCE S	▨ Select the band.
∨ ⏮ ∧ ⏭	Start Auto Search.
	▨ Start Manual Search.
MODE M	Change FM reception mode.

Disc operations

Buttons	To do:
⏏	Eject the disc.
∨ ⏮ ∧ ⏭	Select chapters/tracks.
	▨ Search.
MODE M then ∨ ⏮ ∧ ⏭	Display “FOLDER” → select folders. *1

CD changer operations

Buttons	To do:
∨ ⏮ ∧ ⏭	Select tracks.
	▨ Search.
MODE M then ∨ ⏮ ∧ ⏭	(once): Display “DISC” → select discs. (twice): Display “FOLDER” → select folders.*1

TV tuner operations

Buttons	To do:
∨ ⏮ ∧ ⏭	Start Auto Search.
	▨ Start Manual Search.

Monitor operations

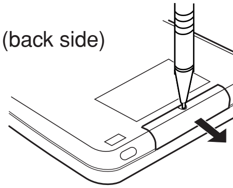
Buttons	To do:
▬ ON/OFF	Turn on the monitor.
	▨ Turn off the monitor.
OPEN CLOSE	Open the monitor. (See page 55.)
	▨ Close the monitor.
═ SLIDE/⏏	Slide in/out the monitor.
	▨ Remove the monitor.
– + ANGLE	Adjust the monitor angle. (See page 55.)
ASPECT	Change the aspect ratio.
	▨ Display the monitor adjustment screen.

▨ : functions if pressed and held.

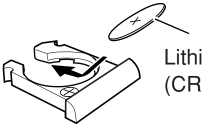
*1 *Only for MP3*

Preparation (Remote Controller—RM-RK220)

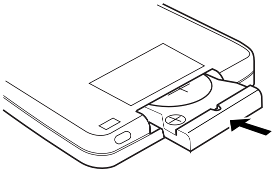
1



2



3

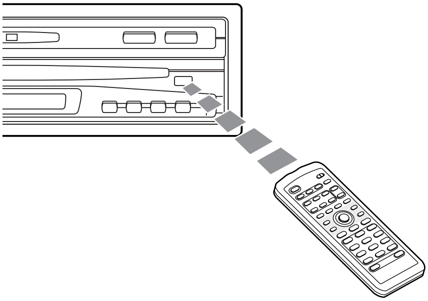


CAUTION:

DO NOT leave the remote controller in a place (such as dashboards) exposed to direct sunlight for a long time. Otherwise, it may be damaged.

WARNINGS on the battery:

- Store the battery in a place where children cannot reach. If a child accidentally swallows the battery, consult a doctor immediately.
- Do not recharge, short, disassemble, or heat the battery or dispose of it in a fire. These behaviors may cause the battery to be overheated, crack or fire.
- Do not leave the battery with other metallic materials. Doing this may cause the battery to give off heat, crack, or start a fire.
- When throwing away or saving the battery, wrap it in tape and insulate; otherwise, the battery may be overheated, crack or fire.
- Do not poke the battery with tweezers or similar tools. Doing this may cause the battery to be overheated, crack or fire.



DO NOT expose the remote sensor on the control panel to strong light (direct sunlight or artificial lighting).

Operation Methods

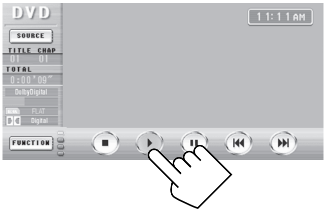
You can operate this unit using three types of operation methods.

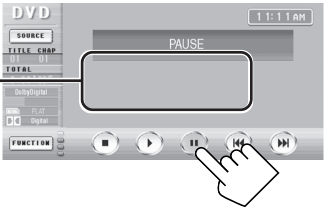
- This instruction manual explains the operations mainly using the Touch Panel Icons shown on the monitor.

- **Using the Touch Panel Icons directly** (See "BLIND CONTROL" on page 46.)

Press the Touch Panel Icons with your finger directly (if you wear a glove, take it off).

Examples: The following is just an example. On the actual monitor screen, the playback picture is shown (while video source is played back).


DVD
SOURCE
TITLE CHAP
01 01
TOTAL
0:00'09"
DolbyDigital
EQ FLAT
Digital
FUNCTION
11:11 AM

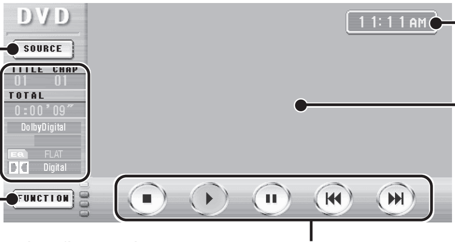

DVD
SOURCE
TITLE CHAP
01 01
TOTAL
DolbyDigital
EQ FLAT
Digital
FUNCTION
11:11 AM
PAUSE

Do not operate the Touch Panel using a ball-point pen or similar tool with the sharp tip (it may damage the Touch Panel).

To erase and display the Touch Panel icons and indications, press the center portion of the monitor screen.

- You can erase them only while viewing the playback pictures.

Ex. DVD playback


DVD
SOURCE
TITLE CHAP
01 01
TOTAL
0:00'09"
DolbyDigital
EQ FLAT
Digital
FUNCTION
11:11 AM

Clock time indication

Changes the source.

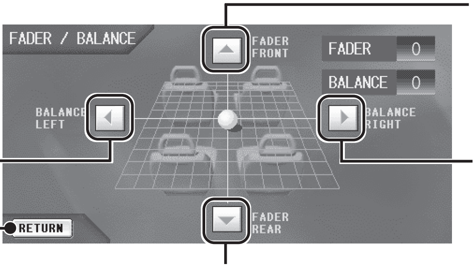
Picture view window

Source and play mode information

Changes the function modes (icons shown to the right change accordingly).

Icons shown on this column change each time you press FUNCTION.

Ex. Fader/balance adjustment


FADER / BALANCE
FADER FRONT
FADER 0
BALANCE 0
BALANCE LEFT
BALANCE RIGHT
FADER REAR
RETURN

Operation icon (FADER FRONT)

Operation icon (BALANCE LEFT)

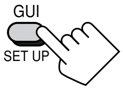
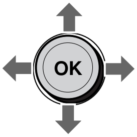
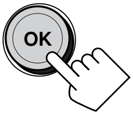
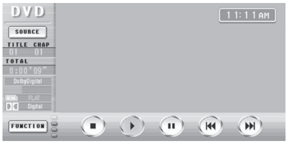
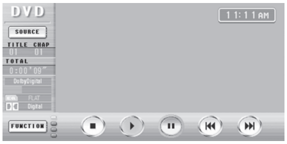
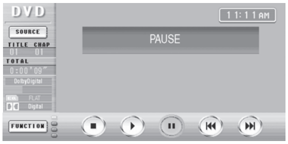
Operation icon (BALANCE RIGHT)

Returns to the previous screen.

Operation icon (FADER REAR)

- **Using the Graphic User Interface (GUI) from the remote controller**
  You can use the Graphic User Interface in the same way as you touch the panel icons.

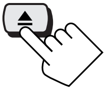
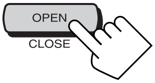
Examples:

1	***2***	***3***
		
Display GUI on the monitor (the cursor—yellow frame—appears around the currently selected icon). • While one of the video sources is selected, the GUI function turns on and off at a press of the button.  DVD 11:11 AM SOURCE TITLE CHAP 01 01 TOTAL 0:00'09" DolbyDigital FLAT Digital FUNCTION	Move the cursor to an icon you want.  DVD 11:11 AM SOURCE TITLE CHAP 01 01 TOTAL 0:00'09" DolbyDigital FLAT Digital FUNCTION	Confirm.  DVD 11:11 AM PAUSE SOURCE TITLE CHAP 01 01 TOTAL 0:00'09" DolbyDigital FLAT Digital FUNCTION

To exit from GUI operation mode, press GUI again so that the yellow frame disappears.

- **Using the buttons and controls directly**
  Some operations are only performed by pressing the buttons directly.
  You can also use the buttons and controls on the main unit and remote controller if they have the same or similar name or marks as shown on the touch panel.

Examples:

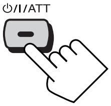
	To eject a loaded disc.		To eject the monitor or store it in the compartment.

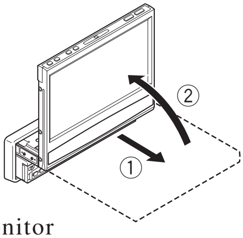
Basic Operations

CAUTION on the monitor :
Do not open or close the monitor by hand.
Do not apply any force to the monitor while it is moving.
Such a behavior may damage the monitor loading mechanism.

For turning on the power, use the buttons on the main unit and the remote controller.

1 Turn on the power

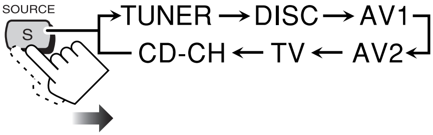




"WAITING" scrolls on the display of the main unit (and the monitor comes out *).

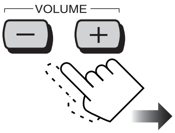
- When the monitor comes out, power comes on to the monitor even if you have turned it off.
- For the space required for the monitor ejection, see page 77.

2 Select the source

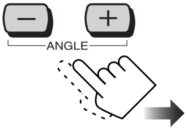


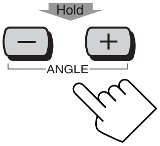
- **DISC**: If a disc is not in the loading slot, you cannot select "DISC" as the source to play.
- **CD-CH/TV**: Without connecting the CD changer or TV tuner unit, you cannot select "CD-CH (CD changer)" or "TV."

3 Adjust the volume



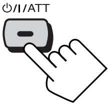
To change the monitor angle:





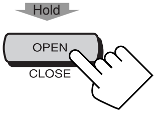
- See page 55 for details.

To drop the volume in a moment (ATT):



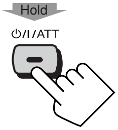
To restore the sound, press it again.

To store the monitor in place:

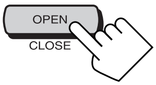


- When the unit is turned off, the power is temporarily turned on.

To turn off the power:



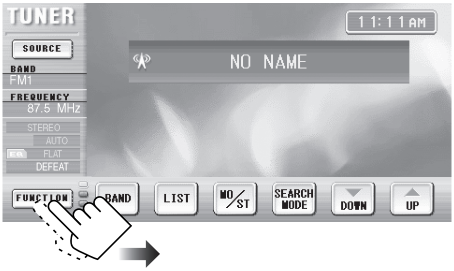
* *This depends on the "AUTO OPEN/CLOSE" setting (see page 46).*
If the monitor does not come out...



Setting the clock

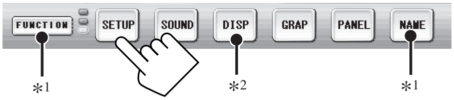
You can also set the clock system to 24 hours or 12 hours.

1 **While playing any source...**

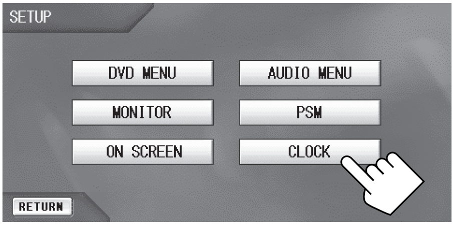

TUNER
SOURCE
BAND
FM1
FREQUENCY
87.5 MHz
STEREO
AUTO
EQ
FLAT
DEFEAT
11:11AM
NO NAME
FUNCTION
BAND
LIST
MO/ST
SEARCH MODE
DOWN
UP

- If the touch panel icons are not shown on the monitor, touch the center portion of the monitor screen.

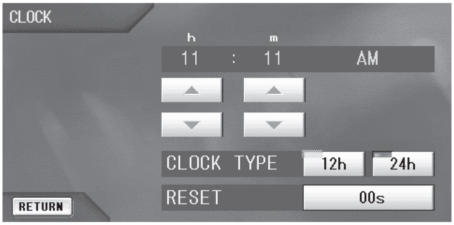
2


FUNCTION
SETUP
SOUND
DISP
GRAP
PANEL
NAME
*1
*2
*1

3

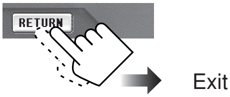

SETUP
DVD MENU
AUDIO MENU
MONITOR
PSM
ON SCREEN
CLOCK
RETURN

4 **Set the clock time.**

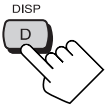

CLOCK
h
m
11 : 11
AM
CLOCK TYPE
12h
24h
RESET
00s
RETURN

- Press 00s to start the clock time counting exactly from 00 second.

5

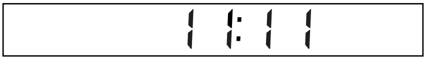

RETURN
Exit

To display the clock time:



On the main unit

When the unit is turned off, the clock time is displayed on the display of the main unit for a while.



When the unit is turned on...
Each time you press the button, the information shown on the display of the main unit changes.

Information shown on the display differs according to the selected source.

TUNER:	Frequency → Clock → Band&Preset no. →
DISC:	Play time → Clock → Title/Chapter/Folder/Track no. →
AV1/AV2:	Source name → Clock →
TV:	Channel → Clock → TV&Preset no. →
CD-CH:	Elapsed time → Clock → Disc no. → Folder/Track no. →

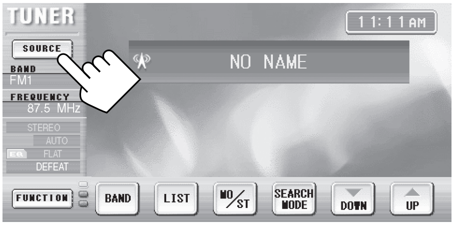
---

*[1] It does not appear for some sources.

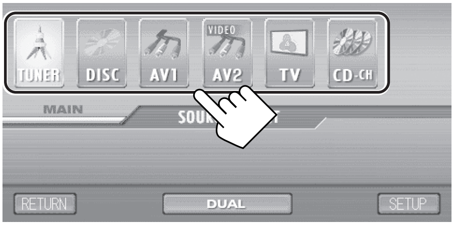
*[2] It will be shaded when not available.

Changing the source SOURCE

1 **While playing any source...**


TUNER
11:11 AM
SOURCE
BAND
FM1
FREQUENCY
87.5 MHz
NO NAME
STEREO
AUTO
EQ
FLAT
DEFEAT
FUNCTION
BAND
LIST
MO/ST
SEARCH MODE
DOWN
UP

2


TUNER
DISC
AV1
VIDEO
AV2
TV
CD-CH
MAIN
SOURCE
RETURN
DUAL
SETUP

The current source is highlighted.

Newly selected source operation screen appears.

Other icons	Reference pages
MAIN	See page 33.
DUAL	See page 33.
SETUP	See pages 43 – 52.
RETURN	Returns to the previous screen.

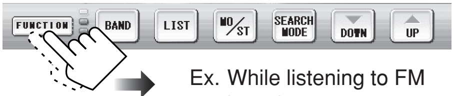
Changing the graphic screen GRAP

You can select one of eight graphics in the picture view window.

- See page 74 for each graphic screen.

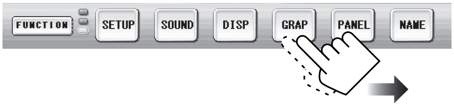
When shipped from the factory, display demonstration has been activated, and starts automatically when no operations are done for about 30 seconds (except while playing a DVD/ VCD).
To cancel it, select one of the graphic screen.

1 **While playing any source...**


FUNCTION
BAND
LIST
MO/ST
SEARCH MODE
DOWN
UP

Ex. While listening to FM broadcast.

2

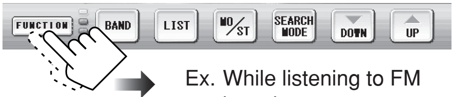

FUNCTION
SETUP
SOUND
DISP
GRAP
PANEL
NAME

- To view the playback picture from any video source, select the screen where the actual playback pictures are shown.

Changing the touch panel color PANEL

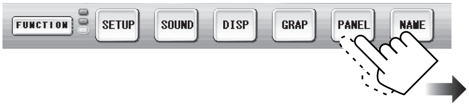
You can change the touch panel color (excluding the picture view window) by selecting from four preset color—blue, silver, red, and black.

1 **While playing any source...**


FUNCTION
BAND
LIST
MO/ST
SEARCH MODE
DOWN
UP

Ex. While listening to FM broadcast.

2

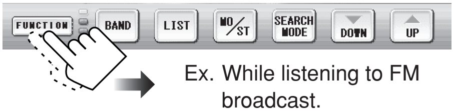

FUNCTION
SETUP
SOUND
DISP
GRAP
PANEL
NAME

Displaying the level meter DISP

You can display the level meter on the graphic screen, by selecting from four preset patterns.

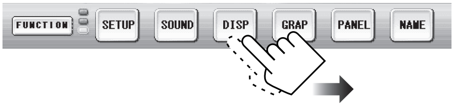
- While viewing the playback picture or display demonstration, you cannot show the level meter.

1 **While playing any source...**



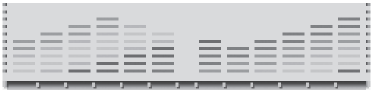
Ex. While listening to FM broadcast.

2

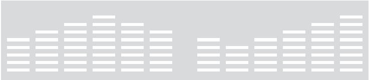


The following level meters are displayed in sequence.

Level meter 1

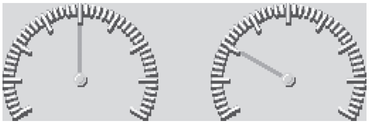


Level meter 2

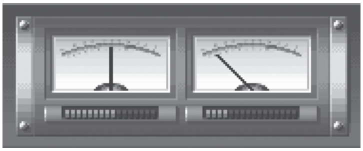


No level meter will appear when no sound comes in.

Level meter 3

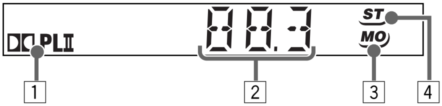


Level meter 4



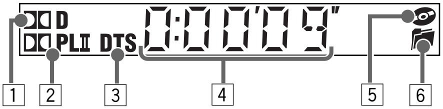
How to read the display of the main unit:

While listening to radio (FM/AM):



1 Lights up when Dolby Pro Logic II is activated (see page 36).
2 Main information—Frequency/Band/Preset no.
3 MO indicator lights when FM reception mode is “MONO.”
4 ST indicator lights while receiving an FM stereo broadcast.

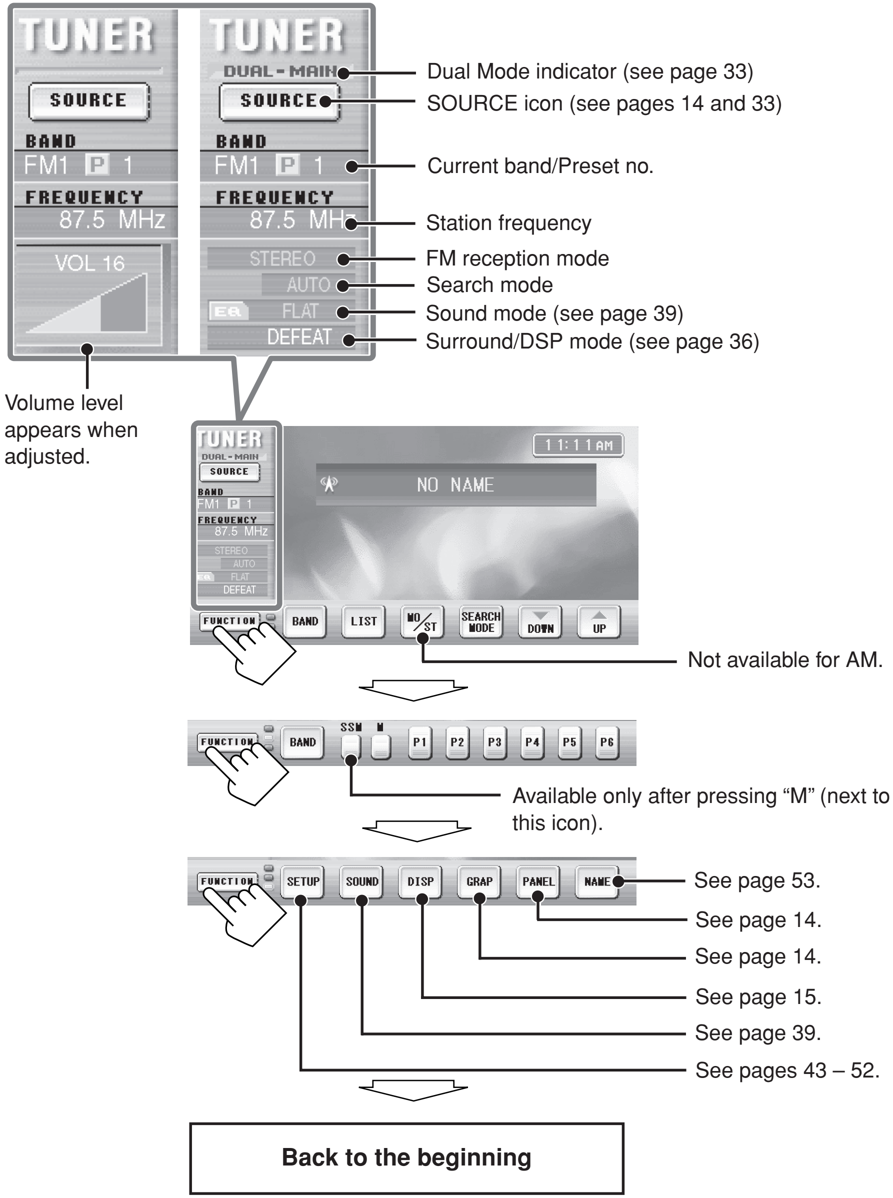
While playing a disc:



1 Lights up when Dolby Digital signal is detected (see page 36).
2 Lights up when Dolby Pro Logic II is activated (see page 36).
3 Lights up when DTS signal is detected (see page 36).
4 Main information—Play time/Title no./Chapter no./Folder no./Track no.
5 Lights up when the disc is detected.
6 Lights up when an MP3 CD is detected.

- You can dim the display and the buttons on the front panel.
  For details see page 46 and also the Installation/Connection Manual (separate volume).

Radio Operations


TUNER
SOURCE
BAND
FM1 P 1
FREQUENCY
87.5 MHz
VOL 16
TUNER
DUAL-MAIN
SOURCE
BAND
FM1 P 1
FREQUENCY
87.5 MHz
STEREO
AUTO
EQ
FLAT
DEFEAT
11:11 AM
NO NAME
FUNCTION
BAND
LIST
MO/ST
SEARCH MODE
DOWN
UP
FUNCTION
BAND
SSM
M
P1
P2
P3
P4
P5
P6
FUNCTION
SETUP
SOUND
DISP
GRAP
PANEL
NAME

Dual Mode indicator (see page 33)

SOURCE icon (see pages 14 and 33)

Current band/Preset no.

Station frequency

FM reception mode

Search mode

Sound mode (see page 39)

Surround/DSP mode (see page 36)

Volume level appears when adjusted.

Not available for AM.

Available only after pressing “M” (next to this icon).

See page 53.

See page 14.

See page 14.

See page 15.

See page 39.

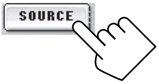
See pages 43 – 52.

Back to the beginning

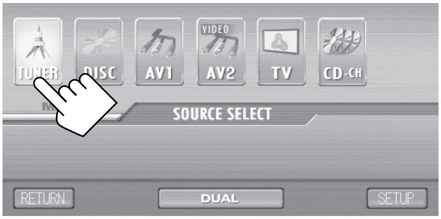
Listening to the Radio

- To tune in to a station using Preset Search, first store your favorite stations into memory (6 stations for each band: see page 18).

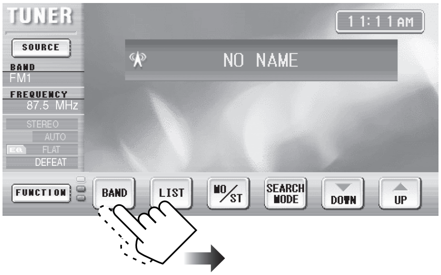
1 Select the Tuner



then

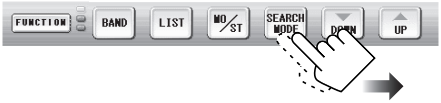

TUNER
DISC
AV1
VIDEO
AV2
TV
CD-CH
SOURCE SELECT
RETURN
DUAL
SETUP

2 Select the band (FM/AM)


TUNER
11:11 AM
SOURCE
BAND
FM1
FREQUENCY
87.5 MHz
STEREO
AUTO
EQ
FLAT
DEFEAT
NO NAME
FUNCTION
BAND
LIST
MO/ST
SEARCH MODE
DOWN
UP

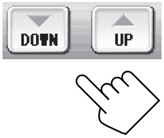
This receiver has three FM bands (FM1, FM2, FM3). You can use any one of them to listen to an FM broadcast.

3 Select Search Mode


FUNCTION
BAND
LIST
MO/ST
SEARCH MODE
DOWN
UP

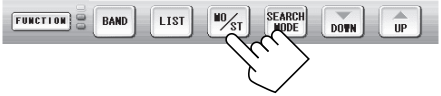
AUTO:	To start Auto Search.
MANUAL:	To start Manual Search.
PRESET:	To select preset station numbers (only possible after storing stations in memory).

4 Tune in to a station



- **For Auto Search,** press either icon once. "Auto Search" begins.
  When a station is received, searching stops.
- **For Manual Search,** press either icon repeatedly (or hold) until a station you want is selected.
- **For Preset Search,** press either icon repeatedly until a preset number you want is selected.

When an FM stereo broadcast is hard to receive:


FUNCTION
BAND
LIST
MO/ST
SEARCH MODE
DOWN
UP

FM reception mode changes to "MONO." Each time you press the icon, monaural reception mode turns on and off.

- When FM reception mode is "MONO," reception improves, but stereo effect will be lost.

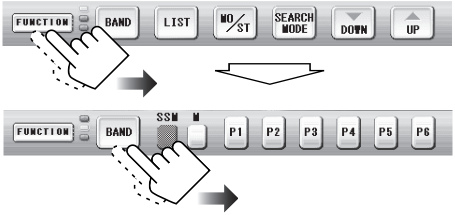
Storing stations in memory

You can preset 6 stations for each band.

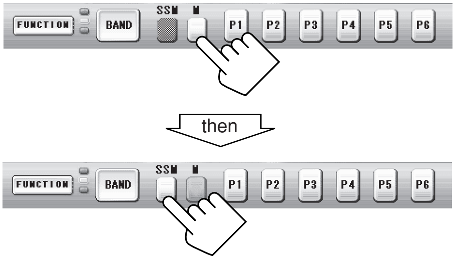
FM station automatic presetting—SSM (Strong-station Sequential Memory)

- This functions only for FM bands.

1 Select the FM band (FM1 – FM3) you want to store FM stations into.


FUNCTION
BAND
LIST
MO/ST
SEARCH MODE
DOWN
UP
SSM
M
P1
P2
P3
P4
P5
P6

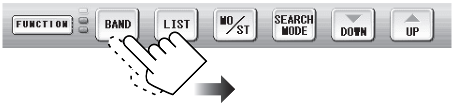
2 Start SSM.


FUNCTION
BAND
SSM
M
P1
P2
P3
P4
P5
P6
then

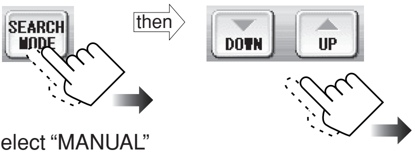
Local FM stations with the strongest signals are searched and stored automatically in the selected FM band.

Manual presetting

1 Select the band (FM1 – FM3, and AM) you want to store a station into.

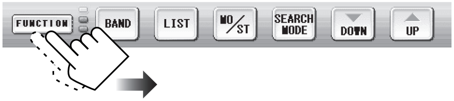

FUNCTION
BAND
LIST
MO/ST
SEARCH MODE
DOWN
UP

2 Tune in to a station.

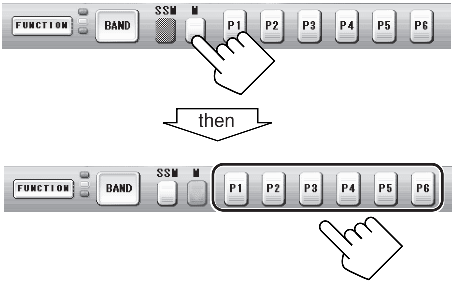

SEARCH MODE
then
DOWN
UP

Select “MANUAL” (or “AUTO”).

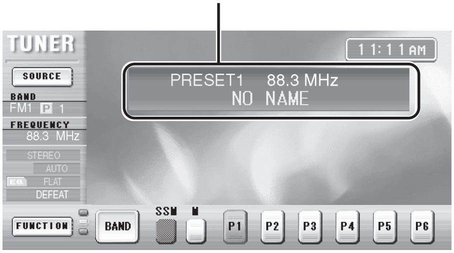
3


FUNCTION
BAND
LIST
MO/ST
SEARCH MODE
DOWN
UP

4 Store the station into a preset number.


FUNCTION
BAND
SSM
M
P1
P2
P3
P4
P5
P6
then

Preset station information will be displayed.


TUNER
SOURCE
FUNCTION
BAND
SSM
M
P1
P2
P3
P4
P5
P6

11:11 AM

BAND FM1 P 1

FREQUENCY 88.3 MHz

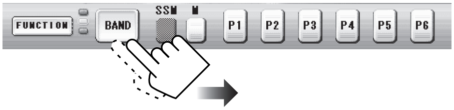
STEREO
AUTO
EQ FLAT
DEFEAT

PRESET1 88.3 MHz
NO NAME

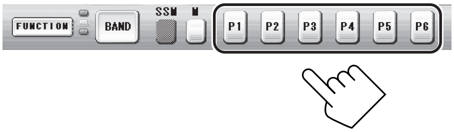
To tune in to a preset station

- See also "Listening to the Radio" on page 17.

1


FUNCTION
BAND
SSM
M
P1
P2
P3
P4
P5
P6

2

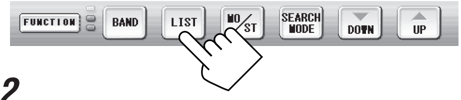

FUNCTION
BAND
SSM
M
P1
P2
P3
P4
P5
P6

Displaying the preset list LIST

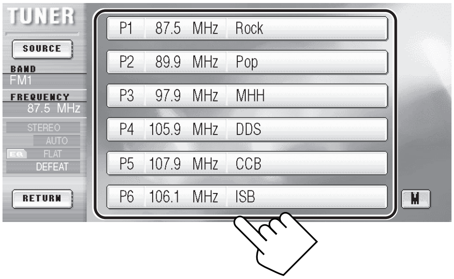
You can store and select the preset stations using the preset list on the monitor screen.

To select a preset station using the preset list

1


FUNCTION
BAND
LIST
MO/ST
SEARCH MODE
DOWN
UP

2

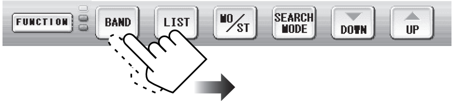

TUNER
SOURCE
BAND
FM1
FREQUENCY
87.5 MHz
STEREO
AUTO
EQ
FLAT
DEFEAT
RETURN
M

P1 87.5 MHz Rock
P2 89.9 MHz Pop
P3 97.9 MHz MHH
P4 105.9 MHz DDS
P5 107.9 MHz CCB
P6 106.1 MHz ISB

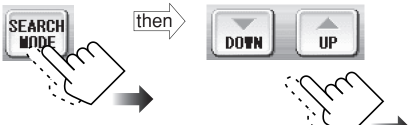
- Preset numbers, station frequencies and assigned names (see page 53) are shown on the list.

To store a station using the preset list

1 **Select the band (FM1 – FM3, and AM) you want to store a station into.**

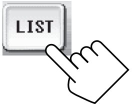

FUNCTION
BAND
LIST
MO/ST
SEARCH MODE
DOWN
UP

2 **Tune into a station.**

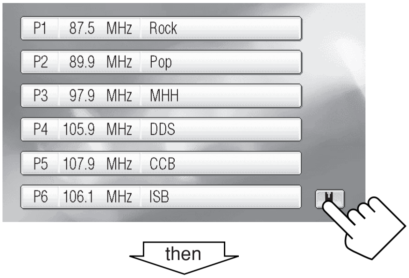

SEARCH MODE
then
DOWN
UP

Select "MANUAL" (or "AUTO").

3

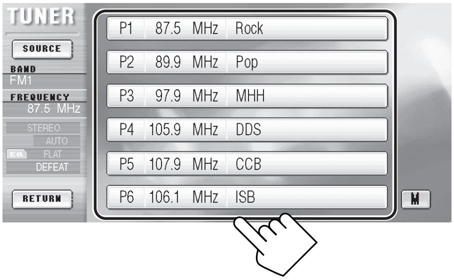


4 **Store the station into a preset number.**



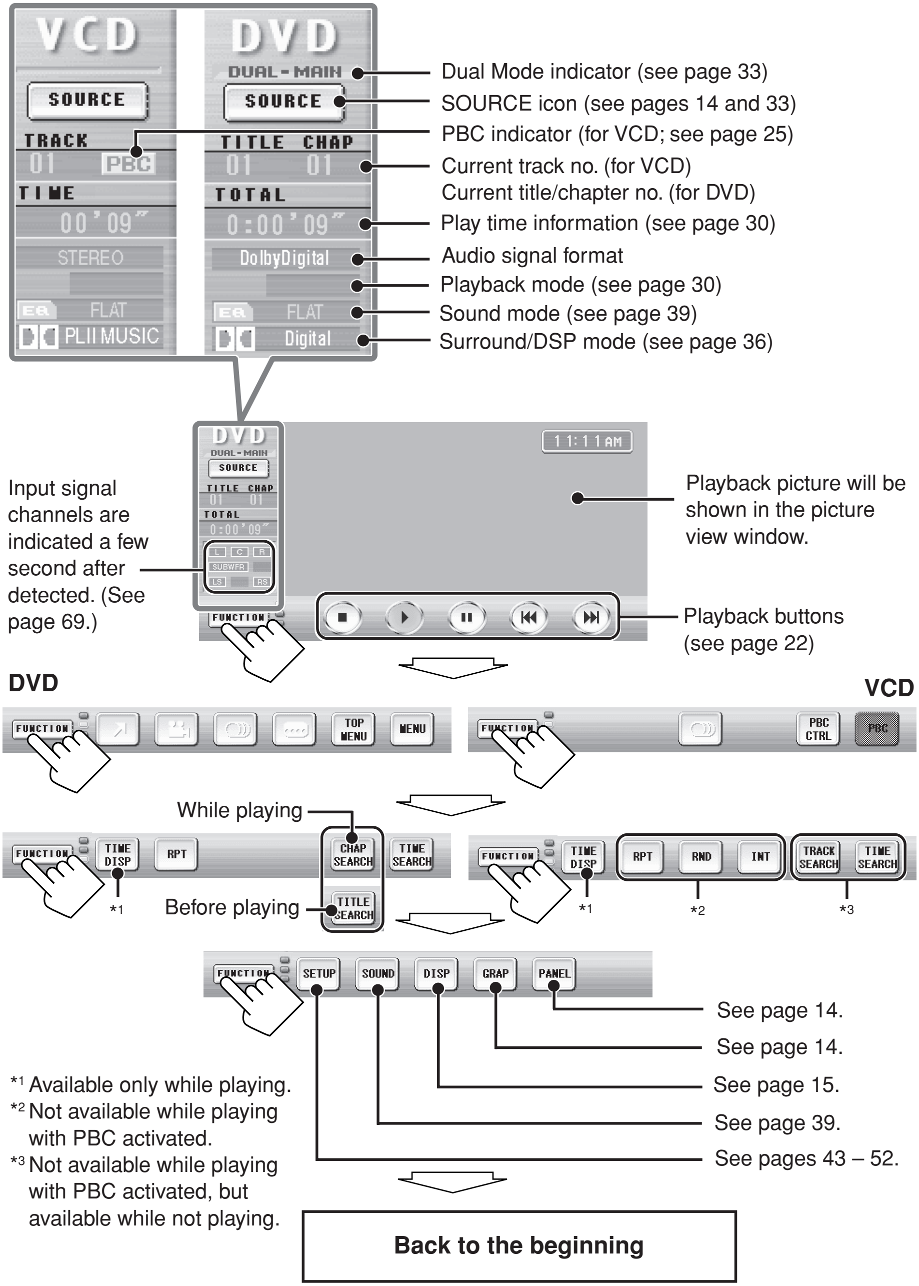
P1 87.5 MHz Rock
P2 89.9 MHz Pop
P3 97.9 MHz MHH
P4 105.9 MHz DDS
P5 107.9 MHz CCB
P6 106.1 MHz ISB

then


TUNER
SOURCE
BAND
FM1
FREQUENCY
87.5 MHz
STEREO
AUTO
EQ
FLAT
DEFEAT
RETURN
M

P1 87.5 MHz Rock
P2 89.9 MHz Pop
P3 97.9 MHz MHH
P4 105.9 MHz DDS
P5 107.9 MHz CCB
P6 106.1 MHz ISB

DVD/VCD Operations


VCD
SOURCE
TRACK
01
PBC
TIME
00’09”
STEREO
EQ FLAT
PLII MUSIC
DVD
DUAL-MAIN
SOURCE
TITLE CHAP
01 01
TOTAL
0:00’09”
DolbyDigital
EQ FLAT
Digital
11:11AM
L C R
SUBWFR
LS RS
FUNCTION
TOP MENU
MENU
PBC CTRL
PBC
TIME DISP
RPT
CHAP SEARCH
TIME SEARCH
TITLE SEARCH
RND
INT
TRACK SEARCH
SETUP
SOUND
DISP
GRAP
PANEL
*1
*2
*3

Dual Mode indicator (see page 33)

SOURCE icon (see pages 14 and 33)

PBC indicator (for VCD; see page 25)

Current track no. (for VCD)
Current title/chapter no. (for DVD)

Play time information (see page 30)

Audio signal format

Playback mode (see page 30)

Sound mode (see page 39)

Surround/DSP mode (see page 36)

Input signal channels are indicated a few second after detected. (See page 69.)

Playback picture will be shown in the picture view window.

Playback buttons (see page 22)

DVD

VCD

While playing

Before playing

See page 14.

See page 14.

See page 15.

See page 39.

See pages 43 – 52.

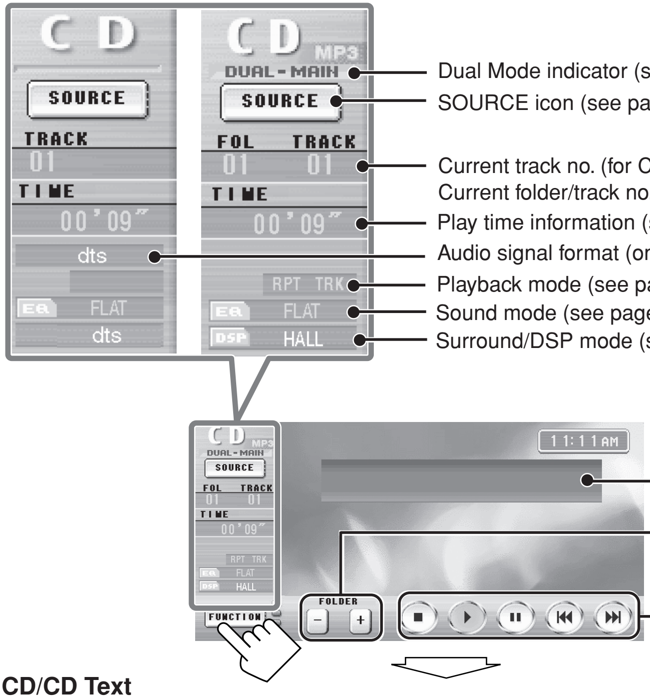
Back to the beginning

[*1] Available only while playing.

[*2] Not available while playing with PBC activated.

[*3] Not available while playing with PBC activated, but available while not playing.

CD/MP3 Operations

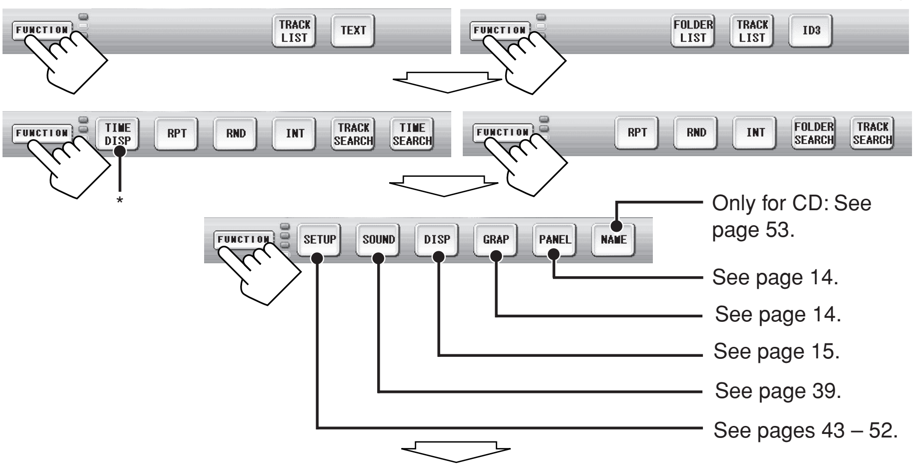

CD
SOURCE
TRACK
01
TIME
00'09"
dts
EQ FLAT
dts
CD MP3
DUAL-MAIN
SOURCE
FOL TRACK
01 01
TIME
00'09"
RPT TRK
EQ FLAT
DSP HALL
11:11 AM
FOLDER
FUNCTION

Dual Mode indicator (see page 33)
SOURCE icon (see pages 14 and 33)
Current track no. (for CD)
Current folder/track no. (for MP3)
Play time information (see page 30)
Audio signal format (only for DTS CD)
Playback mode (see page 30)
Sound mode (see page 39)
Surround/DSP mode (see page 36)

Disc text/ID3 tag information area

Only for MP3 (see page 22)

Playback buttons (see page 22)


CD/CD Text
MP3
FUNCTION
TRACK LIST
TEXT
FUNCTION
FOLDER LIST
TRACK LIST
ID3
FUNCTION
TIME DISP
RPT
RND
INT
TRACK SEARCH
TIME SEARCH
*
FUNCTION
RPT
RND
INT
FOLDER SEARCH
TRACK SEARCH
FUNCTION
SETUP
SOUND
DISP
GRAP
PANEL
NAME

Only for CD: See page 53.
See page 14.
See page 14.
See page 15.
See page 39.
See pages 43 – 52.

Back to the beginning

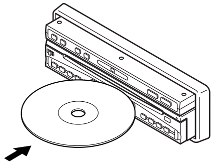
* Available only while playing

Basic Disc Operations

Before performing any operations, observe the following...

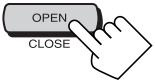
- For DVD playback, change the Setup Menu setting (see page 43).
- If "⊘" appears on the monitor, the disc cannot accept the operation you have tried.
  – In some cases, "⊘" is not display, but operations will not be accepted.

1 Insert a disc



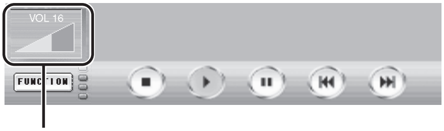
The unit turns on, then draws the disc, and starts playback automatically.

- The monitor does not come out from its compartment if "AUTO OPEN/CLOSE" is set to "OFF" (see page 46).
  If the monitor does not comes out...



- It takes several seconds for the unit to detect a disc type.
- If a disc menu appears, see page 25.

2 Adjust the volume



Volume level appears.

3 Operate the disc

FOLDER – + : Selects the folder (only for MP3).

■ : Stops (see "Stopping play" on page 69).
- VCD/CD/MP3 playback will continue endlessly until you stop it.

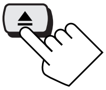
► : Starts playback.

❚❚ : Pauses. To resume playback, press ►.

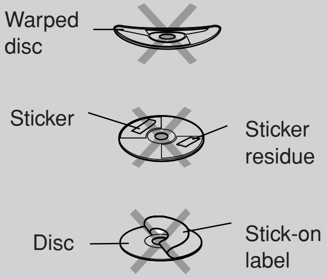
⏮ : Goes back to the beginning of the current chapter/track, then skips to the previous chapters/tracks if pressed repeatedly.

⏭ : Skips to the following chapters/tracks if pressed repeatedly.

To stop play and eject the disc:



Do not use the following discs:



The following marks used in this manual indicate the playable discs.

DVD DVD	VCD VCD with/without PBC	VCD PBC VCD with PBC
CD CD	MP3 MP3	ALL All playable discs

On-screen guide icons DVD VCD

During play, the following guide icons may appear for a while on the monitor.

- The following guide icons are displayed when “GUIDE” is set to “ON” (see page 48).

▭ : Appears at the beginning of a scene containing multi-subtitle languages (only for DVD).

◎ : Appears at the beginning of a scene containing multi-audio languages (only for DVD).

🎥 : Appears at the beginning of a scene containing multi-angle views (only for DVD).

▶ : Appears when you press ►.

❚❚ : Appears when you press ❚❚.

▶▶ : Appears when you start forward search (search speed also appears).

◀◀ : Appears when you start reverse search (search speed also appears).

❚▶ : Appears when you start forward slow motion. (Slow motion speed also appears.)

◀❚ : Appears when you start reverse slow motion (slow motion speed also appears) (only for DVD).

ALL

To fast-forward or reverse the chapter or track, press ►► or ◄◄ **on the remote controller** while playing a disc.

Each time you press the button, the search speed changes as follows:

x2 ➡ x5 ➡ x10 ➡ x20 ➡ x60*

To resume normal speed, press ►.

If you hold ►►I or I◄◄ while playing a disc, the search speed changes: x2 ➡ x10.

- If you release the button, normal speed playback resumes.

To play back the still picture DVD VCD

Press ❚❚. A still picture appears.

Frame by Frame Playback—You can advance the still picture frame by frame by pressing ❚❚ repeatedly.

To resume normal playback, press ►.

Slow Motion Playback—You can advance or reverse* the still picture in slow motion by pressing ►► or ◄◄ **on the remote controller**. Each time you press the button, the search speed changes as follows:

1/32 ➡ 1/16 ➡ 1/8 ➡ 1/4 ➡ 1/2

To resume normal speed, press ►.

If you hold ►►I or I◄◄ during pause, the slow motion speed changes: 1/32 ➡ 1/8.

- If you release the button, normal speed playback resumes.

* *Only for DVD.*

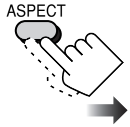
Changing the aspect ratio

DVD VCD

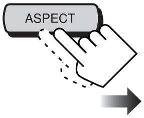
You can change the aspect ratio of the playback pictures.

- This function is only possible using the buttons on the main unit or on the remote controller.
- Aspect ratio cannot be changed while the GUI operation mode is activated.

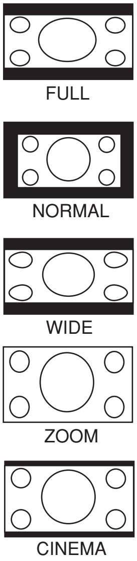
On the remote controller



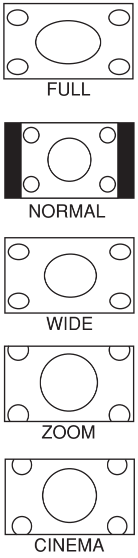
On the main unit



- **When viewing 16:9 video signals:**


FULL
NORMAL
WIDE
ZOOM
CINEMA

- **When viewing 4:3 video signals:**


FULL
NORMAL
WIDE
ZOOM
CINEMA

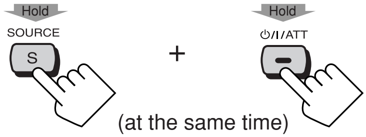
- When you change the aspect ratio, either "RECEIVER" or "CRADLE" (see page 33) appears with the selected aspect ratio. It indicates where the monitor is now loaded. Aspect ratio cannot be set separately for "RECEIVER" or "CRADLE."

Prohibiting disc ejection

ALL

You can lock a disc in the loading slot.

While playing any source...


Hold
SOURCE
S
+
Hold
⏻/I/ATT
(at the same time)

"NO EJT" appears on the display of the main unit, and the disc cannot be ejected.

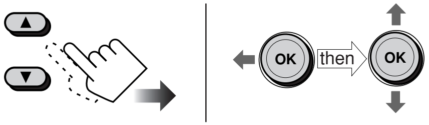
To cancel the prohibition, press the same buttons again.
"EJT OK" appears.

Selecting MP3 folders

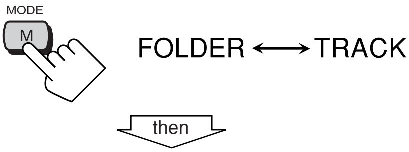
MP3

You can also select the MP3 folder using the buttons on the main unit and on the remote controller.

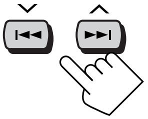
On the remote controller



On the main unit


MODE
M
FOLDER ⟷ TRACK
then

While "FOLDER" is displayed on the display of the main unit:



Operating the disc menu

DVD VCD PBC

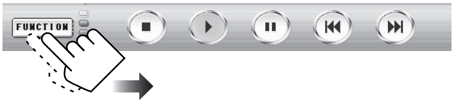
Menu-driven playback is possible while playing back a DVD with menu-driven features or a VCD with the PlayBack Control (PBC) function.

While playing a DVD:

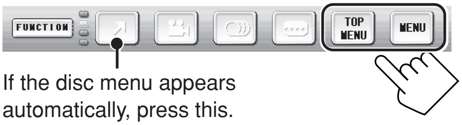
TOP MENU
MENU

DVD discs generally have their own menus or title lists. A title list (TOP MENU) usually contains titles of movies and songs recorded. On the other hand, a menu (MENU) usually contains various information about the disc and playback selections.

1

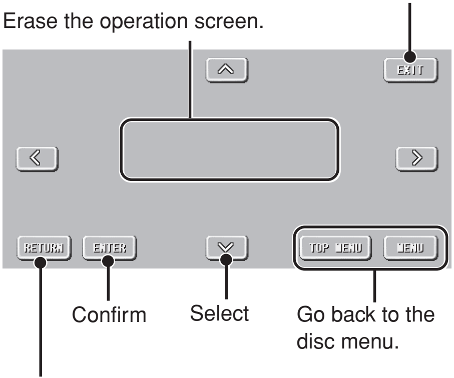


2


FUNCTION
TOP MENU
MENU

If the disc menu appears automatically, press this.

3 **Select an item, then confirm.**


Return to the display in Step *2* above.
Erase the operation screen.
EXIT
RETURN
ENTER
TOP MENU
MENU
Confirm
Select
Go back to the disc menu.
Return to the previous page of the discs menu.

When using the remote controller

1. Press TOPMENU or MENU.
2. Push the cursor controller (OK) up/down/left/right (▲/▼/◄/►) to select an item.
3. Press OK to confirm.

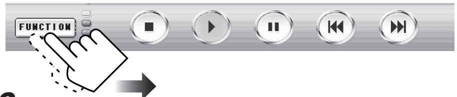
While playing a VCD:

The PBC function allows you to operate the VCD using menus.

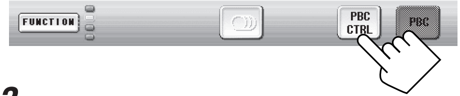
When you start playback, a menu will automatically appear on the monitor.

- A menu may be a list of items, divided screens, or some moving pictures.
- When a VCD with PBC is detected, the PBC indicator appears on the monitor.
- When "►" or "SELECT" is displayed on the monitor, press ► (or OK on the remote controller if pressing ► does not work) to start playback.

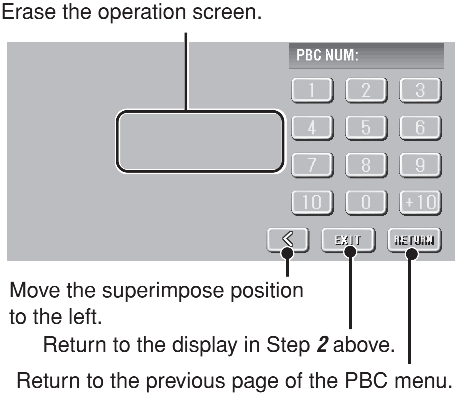
1



2


FUNCTION
PBC CTRL
PBC

3 **Enter a number.**


Erase the operation screen.
PBC NUM:
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
0
+10
EXIT
RETURN
Move the superimpose position to the left.
Return to the display in Step *2* above.
Return to the previous page of the PBC menu.

- To select number 5, press 5.
- To select number 10, press 10.
- To select number 20, press +10, then 10.

When using the number buttons on the remote controller

- *To select number 5, press 5.*
- *To select number 10, press 10.*
- *To select number 23, press +10, +10, then 3.*

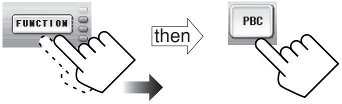
To cancel the PBC playback

You can cancel the menu-driven operations (PBC function) using the remote controller.

1. Press ■ to stop playback.
2. Press number buttons to select a track. Playback without PBC starts from the selected track.
   - You can also use Track Search icon (see page 31) and Time Search icon (see page 32) on the Touch Panel to start playback without PBC.

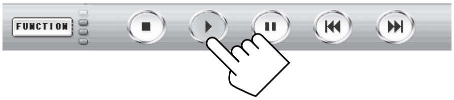
To resume the PBC function again, press TOPMENU or MENU **on the remote controller**.

- You can also use PBC icon on the Touch Panel.



Replaying the previous scenes

You can replay about 10-second portion of the previous scene while playing a DVD—One Touch Replay.

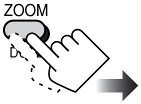


Zooming in

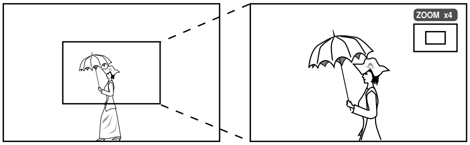
You can zoom into a particular portion of the picture.

- This function is only possible using the remote controller.

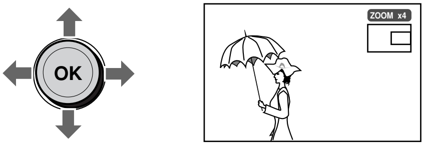
1



➡ x2 ➡ x4 ➡ x8 ➡ x1 ➡ x2 ➡ x4 ➡ x8 ➡ • • • •



2 **Move the zoomed-in portion on the monitor.**



To cancel Zoom, press OK or press ZOOM repeatedly until “ZOOM x1” appears.

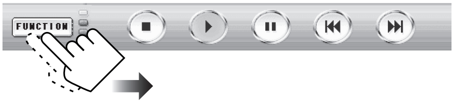
Selecting subtitles

DVD

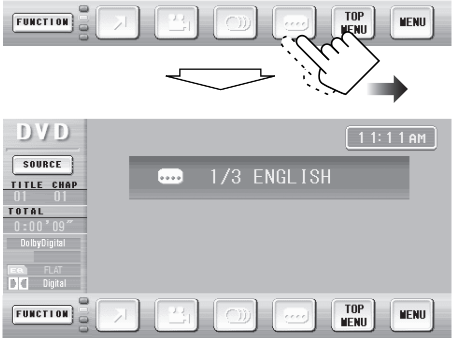
While playing a chapter containing subtitles in different languages, you can select the subtitle language to display on the monitor.

- You can also select the subtitle language using SETUP menu (see page 44).

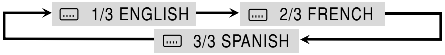
1



2 **Select a subtitle language you want.**


FUNCTION
TOP MENU
MENU
DVD
SOURCE
TITLE CHAP
01 01
TOTAL
0:00'09"
DolbyDigital
EQ FLAT
Digital
11:11 AM
1/3 ENGLISH

Ex.


1/3 ENGLISH
2/3 FRENCH
3/3 SPANISH

Selecting audio languages

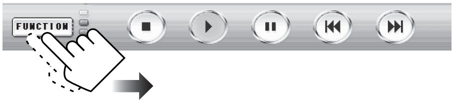
DVD VCD

For DVD: While playing a chapter containing audio languages, you can select the language to listen to.

- You can also select the audio language using SETUP menu (see page 44).

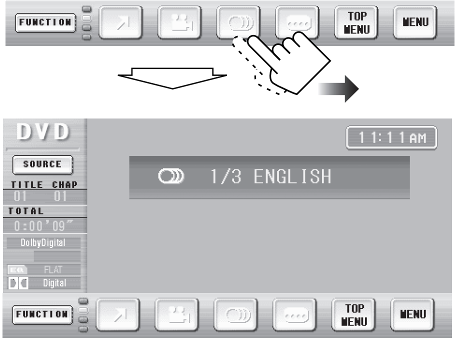
For VCD: While playing a track, you can select the audio channel to play. This is convenient when playing a Karaoke VCD.

1

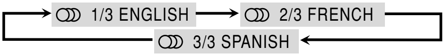


2 **Select an audio language you want.**

When playing DVD:

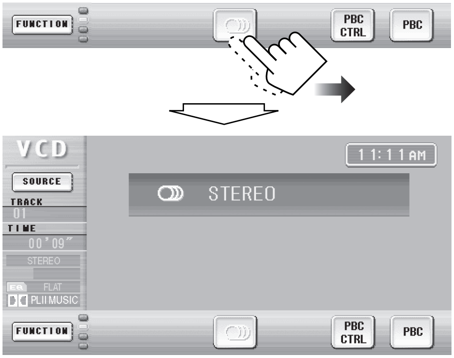

FUNCTION
TOP MENU
MENU
DVD
SOURCE
TITLE CHAP
01 01
TOTAL
0:00'09"
DolbyDigital
EQ FLAT
Digital
11:11 AM
1/3 ENGLISH

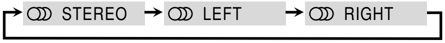
Ex.


1/3 ENGLISH
2/3 FRENCH
3/3 SPANISH

To be continued...

When playing VCD:


FUNCTION
PBC CTRL
PBC
VCD
SOURCE
TRACK
01
TIME
00'09"
STEREO
EQ FLAT
PLII MUSIC
11:11 AM
STEREO

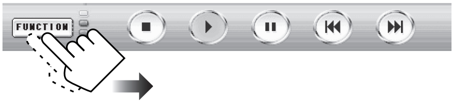

STEREO
LEFT
RIGHT

- STEREO: To listen to normal stereo (left/right) playback.
- LEFT: To listen to the left audio channel.
- RIGHT: To listen to the right audio channel.

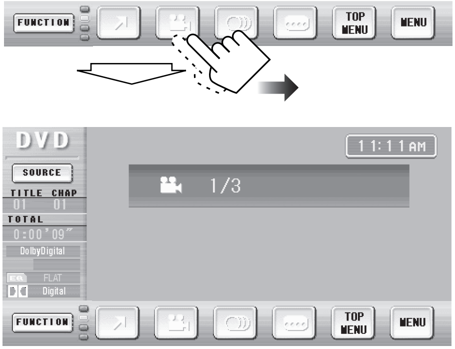
Selecting multi-angle views

While playing a disc containing multi-angle views, you can view the same scene at different angles.

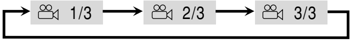
1

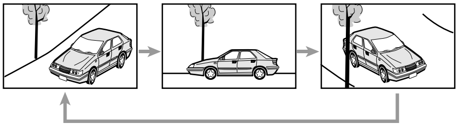


2 **Select a view angle you want.**


FUNCTION
TOP MENU
MENU
DVD
SOURCE
TITLE CHAP
01 01
TOTAL
0:00'09"
DolbyDigital
EQ FLAT
Digital
11:11 AM
1/3

Ex.





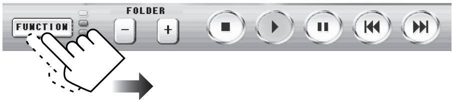
Locating a folder/track using the list FOLDER LIST TRACK LIST

To locate a folder by displaying the folder list

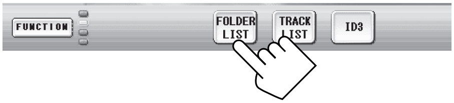
MP3

- This functions only for MP3.

1

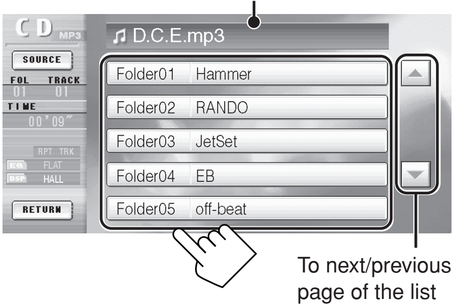

FUNCTION
FOLDER
–
+

2


FUNCTION
FOLDER LIST
TRACK LIST
ID3

3 **Select a folder you want.**

Current track name or ID3 Tag


CD MP3
SOURCE
FOL TRACK
01 01
TIME
00'09"
RPT TRK
EQ FLAT
DSP HALL
RETURN

♫ D.C.E.mp3

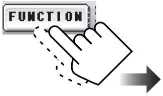
Folder01	Hammer
Folder02	RANDO
Folder03	JetSet
Folder04	EB
Folder05	off-beat

To next/previous page of the list

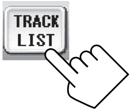
To locate a track by displaying the track list

CD MP3

1

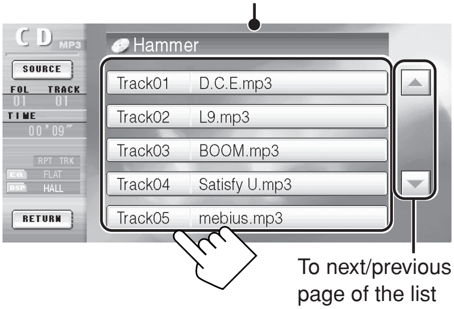


2



3 **Select a track you want.**

Current folder name or ID3 Tag (for MP3)
Disc name (for CD) or CD Text


CD MP3
SOURCE
FOL TRACK
01 01
TIME
00'09"
RPT TRK
EQ FLAT
DSP HALL
RETURN

Hammer

Track01	D.C.E.mp3
Track02	L9.mp3
Track03	BOOM.mp3
Track04	Satisfy U.mp3
Track05	mebius.mp3

To next/previous page of the list

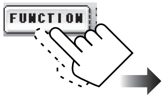
Ex. when playing MP3

Displaying the disc text information TEXT ID3

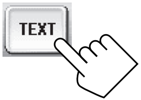
CD MP3

With Auto Scroll or Scroll selected, you can display the text and scroll it on the monitor if it is long and cannot be displayed at a time.

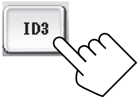
1



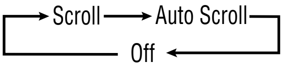
2



(For CD)



(For MP3)

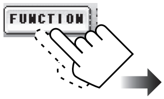

Scroll
Auto Scroll
Off

- Scroll: Text on the information area scrolls once.
- Auto Scroll: Text on the information area scrolls every 5 seconds.
- Off: The information area goes off (no text information will be shown).

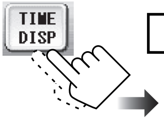
Displaying the time information TIME DISP

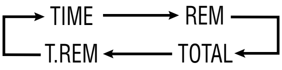
DVD VCD CD

1



2




TIME
REM
TOTAL
T.REM

- TIME: Elapsed playing time of the current chapter/track
- REM: Remaining time of the current chapter/track
- TOTAL: Elapsed title time (for DVD)
  Elapsed disc time (for other discs)
- T.REM: Remaining title time (for DVD)
  Remaining disc time (for other discs)

Selecting playback modes

You can use only one of the following playback modes at a time—Repeat Play, Random Play, and Intro Scan.

- For VCD: While PBC is not in use.

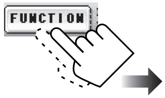
Repeat Play RPT

ALL

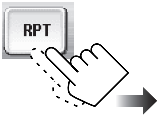
You can repeat playback.

- Repeat Play can be deactivated only for DVD.

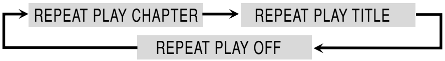
1



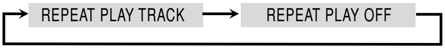
2



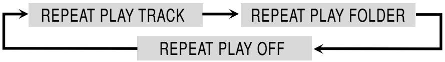
When playing DVD:


REPEAT PLAY CHAPTER
REPEAT PLAY TITLE
REPEAT PLAY OFF

When playing VCD/CD:


REPEAT PLAY TRACK
REPEAT PLAY OFF

When playing MP3:


REPEAT PLAY TRACK
REPEAT PLAY FOLDER
REPEAT PLAY OFF

REPEAT PLAY

- CHAPTER: Repeats the current chapter.
- TITLE: Repeats the current title.
- TRACK: Repeats the current track.
- FOLDER: Repeats the current folder.
- OFF: For DVD: Cancels Repeat Play.
  For VCD/CD/MP3:
  Repeats the disc.

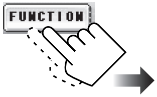
Random Play

RND

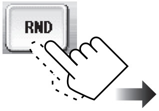
VCD CD MP3

You can play back tracks at random.

1



2



When playing VCD/CD:

RANDOM PLAY DISC → RANDOM PLAY OFF

When playing MP3:

RANDOM PLAY FOLDER → RANDOM PLAY DISC → RANDOM PLAY OFF

RANDOM PLAY

• DISC:	Plays randomly all tracks on the disc.
• FOLDER:	Plays randomly all tracks of the current folder, then moves to the next folder and so on.
• OFF:	Cancels Random Play.

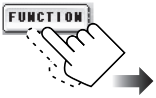
Intro Scan

INT

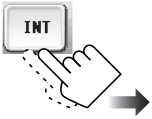
VCD CD MP3

You can play back the first 15 seconds of each track sequentially.

1



2



When playing VCD/CD:

INTRO SCAN TRACK → INTRO SCAN OFF

When playing MP3:

INTRO SCAN TRACK → INTRO SCAN FOLDER → INTRO SCAN OFF

INTRO SCAN

• TRACK:	Plays the beginning of all tracks.
• FOLDER:	Plays the first tracks of all folders.
• OFF:	Cancels Intro Scan.

Searching for scenes or songs

You can use various search functions to find your favorite scenes or songs.

Title/Chapter/Folder/Track Search

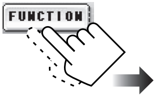
TITLE SEARCH CHAP SEARCH DVD

TRACK SEARCH VCD CD

FOLDER SEARCH TRACK SEARCH MP3

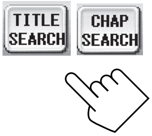
• For DVD:	Title Search before playing, and Chapter Search while playing.
• For VCD:	During stop when PBC is in use.

1

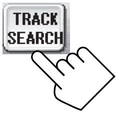


2

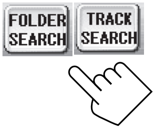
(For DVD)



(For VCD/CD)



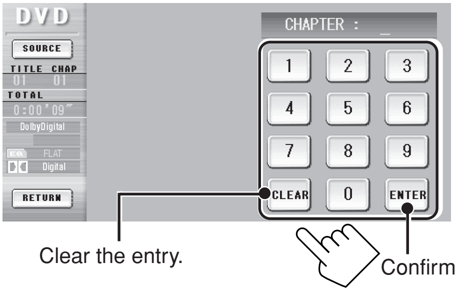
(For MP3)



To be continued...

3 **Enter a number, then confirm.**

Ex. when playing DVD:


DVD
SOURCE
TITLE CHAP
01 01
TOTAL
0:00'09"
DolbyDigital
FLAT
Digital
RETURN
CHAPTER : _
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
CLEAR
0
ENTER

Clear the entry.

Confirm

When using the number buttons on the remote controller

- *To select number 5, press 5.*
- *To select number 10, press 10.*
- *To select number 23, press +10, +10, then 3.*

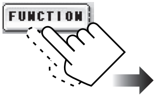
You cannot select folder using the remote controller.

Time Search TIME SEARCH DVD VCD CD

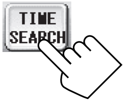
You can start playing a particular point by specifying the elapsed playing time of the current title (for DVD) and of the disc (for VCD/CD).

- For DVD: During play or pause. (For some DVDs: any time)
- For VCD: While not playing with PBC activated.

1

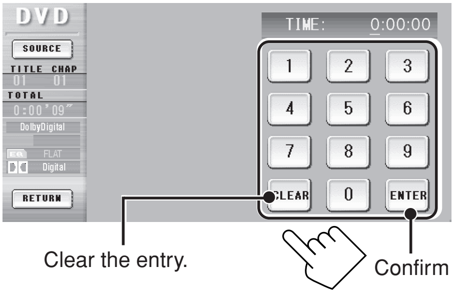


2


TIME SEARCH

3 **Enter a number, then confirm.**

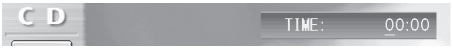
Ex. when playing DVD:


DVD
SOURCE
TITLE CHAP
01 01
TOTAL
0:00'09"
DolbyDigital
FLAT
Digital
RETURN
TIME: 0:00:00
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
CLEAR
0
ENTER

Clear the entry.

Confirm

Ex. when playing CD:


CD
TIME: 00:00

Examples (for DVD)

To play back from 2(H):34(M):00(S)
Press number buttons 2, 3, 4, then ENTER.

TIME 2 : 34 :00

To play back from 58(M):00(S)
Press number buttons 0, 5, 8, then ENTER.

TIME 0 : 58 :00

Example (for VCD/CD)

To play back from 23(M):40(S)
Press number buttons 2, 3, 4, then ENTER.

TIME 23 : 40

- You do not have to press "0" to enter the trailing zeros.

Dual Mode Operations

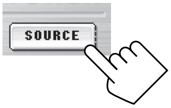
You can play back two different sources as the main source (MAIN) and subsidiary source (SUB).
You can listen to the main source through the speakers, while the subsidiary source through the monitor inserted into the cradle or the one connected to the AV OUTPUT jacks.

- For connections of the cradle and an optional monitor, refer to the Installation/ Connection Manual (separate volume).

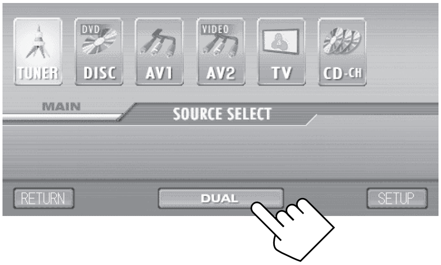
Selecting the sources

To activate Dual Mode and select the subsidiary source

1

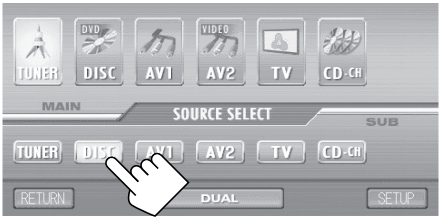


2


TUNER
DVD DISC
AV1
VIDEO AV2
TV
CD-CH
MAIN
SOURCE SELECT
RETURN
DUAL
SETUP

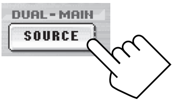
3 **Select the subsidiary source (SUB) you want.**

- The current sources for MAIN and SUB are highlighted.


TUNER
DVD DISC
AV1
VIDEO AV2
TV
CD-CH
MAIN
SOURCE SELECT
SUB
TUNER
DISC
AV1
AV2
TV
CD-CH
RETURN
DUAL
SETUP

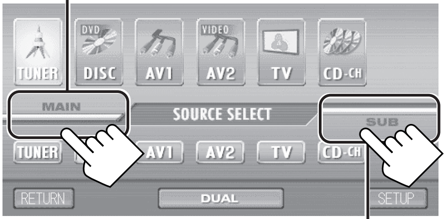
To show the main/subsidiary source operation screen on the monitor

1

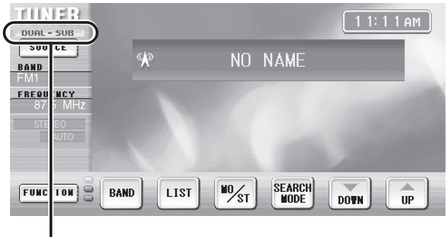

DUAL - MAIN
SOURCE

2

To show the main source operation screen (DUAL–MAIN)


TUNER
DVD DISC
AV1
VIDEO AV2
TV
CD-CH
MAIN
SOURCE SELECT
SUB
TUNER
AV1
AV2
TV
CD-CH
RETURN
DUAL
SETUP

To show the subsidiary source operation screen (DUAL–SUB)


TUNER
DUAL - SUB
SOURCE
BAND
FM1
FREQUENCY
87.5 MHz
STEREO
AUTO
11:11 AM
NO NAME
FUNCTION
BAND
LIST
MO/ST
SEARCH MODE
DOWN
UP

Dual Mode indicator (DUAL–MAIN or DUAL–SUB) appears.

Ex. When the subsidiary source operation screen (DUAL–SUB) is displayed.

To cancel the Dual Mode, press DUAL.

Each time you press the icon, Dual Mode is turned on and off alternately.

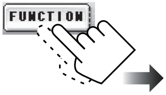
- When Dual Mode is turned off, the main source screen appears.

Adjusting AV OUTPUT volume

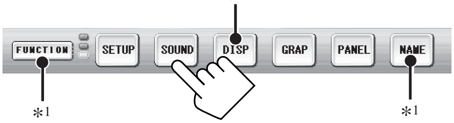
Select an appropriate volume level for the component connected to the AV OUTPUT jacks on the hideaway unit.

- This functions without respect to the Dual Mode setting.

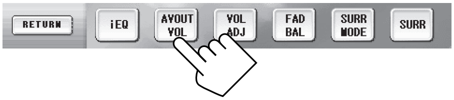
1



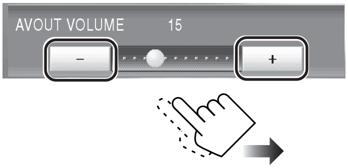
2


*2
FUNCTION
SETUP
SOUND
DISP
GRAP
PANEL
NAME
*1
*1

3


RETURN
iEQ
AVOUT VOL
VOL ADJ
FAD BAL
SURR MODE
SURR

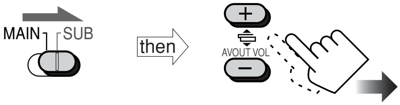
4 **Adjust the AV output volume.**


AVOUT VOLUME 15
–
+

*[1] It does not appear for some sources.

*[2] It will be shaded when not available.

On the remote controller


MAIN
SUB
then
+
AVOUT VOL
–

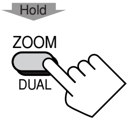
While Dual Mode is in use...

- The playback source does not change to "DISC" though you insert a disc. "DUAL" flashes on the display of the main unit.
- You can only adjust the volume level for the subsidiary source (the other sound adjustments cannot be used for the subsidiary source).

When using the remote controller:

- For Dual Mode operations...
  - – When controlling the monitor connected to the AV OUTPUT jacks, aim the remote controller at the remote sensor on the main unit.
  - – When controlling the monitor inserted into the cradle, aim the remote controller at the remote sensor on the cradle.

To activate Dual Mode

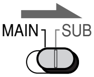

Hold
ZOOM
DUAL

Each time you press and hold the button, Dual Mode turns on and off.

- When Dual Mode is turned on, the source selection screen appears on the monitor (see page 33).

To operate the subsidiary source

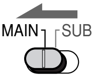
1



2 Press the source buttons, then the source operation buttons.

To operate the main source

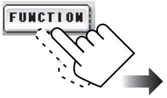
1



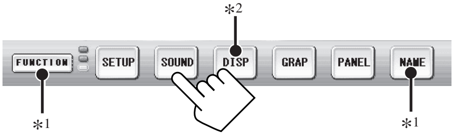
2 Press the source buttons, then the source operation buttons.

Surround Mode Operations

1



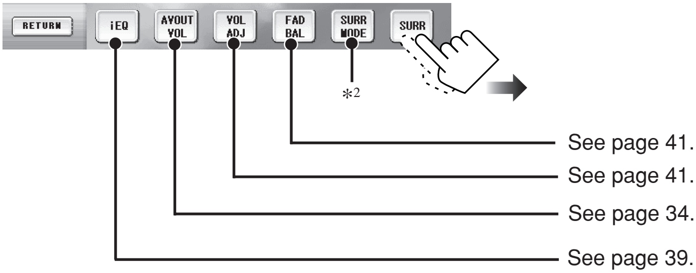
2


FUNCTION
SETUP
SOUND
DISP
GRAP
PANEL
NAME
*2
*1
*1

*1 It does not appear for some sources.

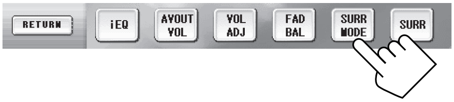
*2 It will be shaded when not available.

3 **Activate and select the surround mode or DSP mode.**

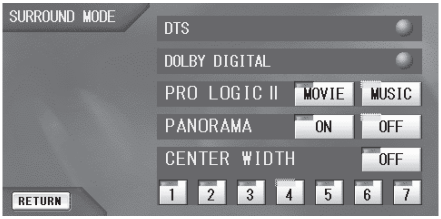

RETURN
iEQ
AVOUT VOL
VOL ADJ
FAD BAL
SURR MODE
SURR
*2
See page 41.
See page 41.
See page 34.
See page 39.

4 **Make adjustment if you want to.**

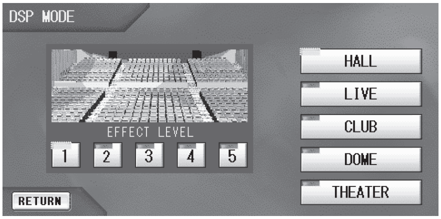
- If neither surround mode nor DSP mode is activated, you cannot make adjustment.


RETURN
iEQ
AVOUT VOL
VOL ADJ
FAD BAL
SURR MODE
SURR

When surround mode is activated:


SURROUND MODE
DTS
DOLBY DIGITAL
PRO LOGIC II
MOVIE
MUSIC
PANORAMA
ON
OFF
CENTER WIDTH
OFF
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
RETURN

When DSP mode is activated:


DSP MODE
EFFECT LEVEL
1
2
3
4
5
HALL
LIVE
CLUB
DOME
THEATER
RETURN

Introducing surround/DSP mode

Surround modes

Dolby Digital

Dolby Digital is a digital signal compression method, developed by Dolby Laboratories, and enables multi-channel encoding and decoding (1ch up to 5.1ch).

Dolby Digital 5.1 CH

Dolby Digital 5.1 CH encoding method records and digitally compresses the left front channel, right front channel, center channel, left surround channel, right surround channel, and LFE channel signals (total 6 channels, but the LFE channel is counted as 0.1 channel. Therefore, called 5.1 channel).

Dolby Digital enables stereo surround sounds, and sets the cutoff frequency of the surround treble at 20 kHz, compared to 7 kHz for Dolby Pro Logic. As such, the sound movement and "being there" feeling are enhanced much more than Dolby Pro Logic.

DTS

DTS is another digital signal compression method, developed by Digital Theater Systems, Inc., and enables multi-channel encoding and decoding (1ch up to 6.1ch).

DTS Digital Surround

DTS Digital Surround is another discrete 5.1-channel digital audio format available on CD, LD, and DVD software.

Compared to Dolby Digital, the DTS Digital Surround format has a lower audio compression rate which enables it to add breadth and depth to the sounds reproduced. As such, DTS Digital Surround features natural, solid, and clear sound.

Dolby Pro Logic II

It is a multi-channel playback format to convert 2-channel software into 5-channel (plus subwoofer). The matrix-based conversion method used for Dolby Pro Logic II makes no limitation for the cutoff frequency of the surround treble and enables stereo surround sound.

- This unit provides two types of Dolby Pro Logic II modes—**Pro Logic II "MOVIE"** and **Pro Logic II "MUSIC**."

MOVIE:	Suitable for playing any Dolby Surround encoded software.
MUSIC:	Suitable for playing any 2-channel stereo software.

No sound may come out of the subwoofer (though the subwoofer is activated) with Dolby Pro Logic II in use. (This depends on your speaker setting—see page 51).

Digital Signal Processor (DSP) mode—reproducing the sound field

The sound heard in a concert hall, club, etc. consists of direct sound and indirect sound—early reflections and reflections from behind. Direct sounds reach the listener directly without any reflection. On the other hand, indirect sounds are delayed by the distances of the ceiling and walls. These direct sounds and indirect sounds are the most important elements of the acoustic surround effects.

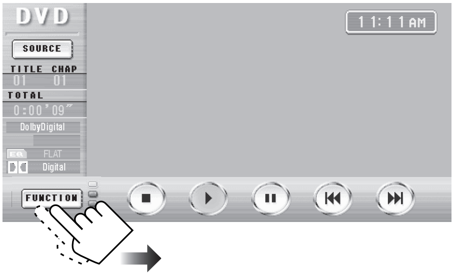
DSP modes can create these important elements, and give you a real "being there" feeling.

Turning on and off the surround/DSP mode SURR MODE SURR

You can use surround or Digital Signal Processor (DSP) mode while playing any source.
However, when playing a multi-channel encoded disc, you cannot apply DSP mode to the playback sounds.

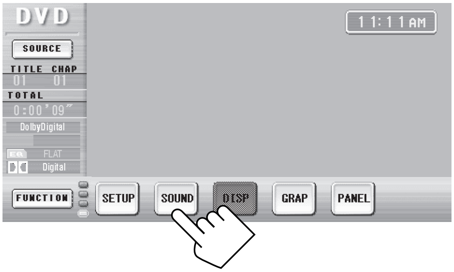
- When “AUTO SURROUND” is set to “ON” (initial setting when shipped from factory), an appropriate surround mode is automatically selected without any setting operation (see page 50).
- To obtain the best possible surround sounds, set the seat position and speaker size correctly (see pages 50 and 51). **If only rear speakers are activated (set to “LARGE” or “SMALL”), surround/DSP mode is defeated (set to “DEFEAT”) and cannot be changed.**

1

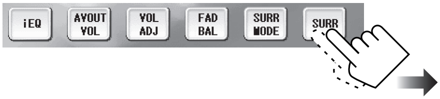

DVD
SOURCE
TITLE CHAP
01 01
TOTAL
0:00'09"
DolbyDigital
EQ FLAT
Digital
11:11 AM
FUNCTION

Ex. When playing DVD.

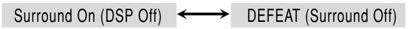
2


DVD
SOURCE
TITLE CHAP
01 01
TOTAL
0:00'09"
DolbyDigital
EQ FLAT
Digital
11:11 AM
FUNCTION
SETUP
SOUND
DISP
GRAP
PANEL

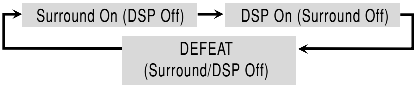
3


iEQ
AYOUT VOL
VOL ADJ
FAD BAL
SURR MODE
SURR

- **While playing a multi-channel encoded disc:**


Surround On (DSP Off)
DEFEAT (Surround Off)

- **While playing a 2-channel (stereo) disc:**


Surround On (DSP Off)
DSP On (Surround Off)
DEFEAT
(Surround/DSP Off)

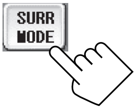
- **Surround On (DSP Off)**
  While playing a multi-channel Dolby Digital encoded disc, “Dolby Digital” is automatically selected.
  While playing a multi-channel DTS encoded disc, “DTS” is automatically selected.
  While playing any other disc, “Dolby Pro Logic II” is automatically selected.
  - You can select either “Dolby Pro Logic II Movie” or “Dolby Pro Logic II Music.”

- **DSP On (Surround Off)**
  Currently selected DSP mode is activated.

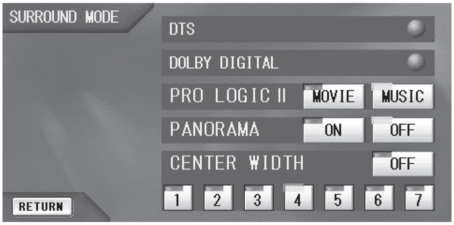
- **DEFEAT (Surround/DSP Off)**
  Both surround and DSP mode is canceled.
  - You cannot go to the next step.

To be continued...

4 Adjust the selected surround or DSP mode.



When surround mode is activated:


SURROUND MODE
DTS
DOLBY DIGITAL
PRO LOGIC II
MOVIE
MUSIC
PANORAMA
ON
OFF
CENTER WIDTH
OFF
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
RETURN

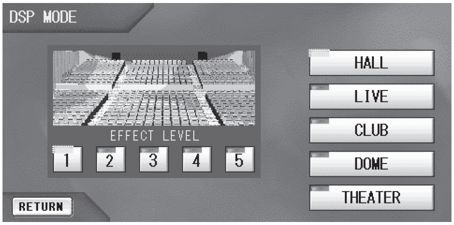
DTS ●
: Selected automatically when multi-channel DTS signal is detected (while playing a DVD or a DTS CD). No further adjustment is allowed.

DOLBY DIGITAL ●
: Selected automatically when multi-channel Dolby Digital signal is detected (while playing a DVD). No further adjustment is allowed.

PRO LOGIC II: Select either "MOVIE" or "MUSIC."
When you select "MUSIC," you can adjust the following items.

- **PANORAMA**: Select "ON" to add "wraparound" sound effect with side-wall image. To cancel it, select "OFF."
- **CENTER WIDTH**: Adjust the center image so it may be heard only from the center speaker, only from the left/right front speakers as a "phantom" center image, or various combinations of these speakers. As the number increases, the "phantom" effect becomes stronger. (Normally select "4.") To cancel it, select "OFF."

When DSP mode is activated:


DSP MODE
EFFECT LEVEL
1
2
3
4
5
RETURN
HALL
LIVE
CLUB
DOME
THEATER

Ex. When selecting "HALL."

① Select one of the DSP modes.

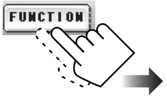
HALL:	Reproduces the spatial feeling of a large shoebox-shaped hall designed primarily for classical concerts.
LIVE:	Reproduces the spatial feeling of a live music club with a low ceiling.
CLUB:	Reproduces the spatial feeling of a rocking dance club.
DOME:	Reproduces the spatial feeling of a stadium with a high ceiling.
THEATER:	Reproduces the spatial feeling of a theater.

② Adjust the effect level (from 1 to 5). As the number increases, the effect becomes stronger.

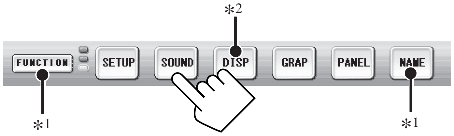
Sound Modes (iEQ) Operations

The following operations are only possible for the main source when using Dual Mode.

1

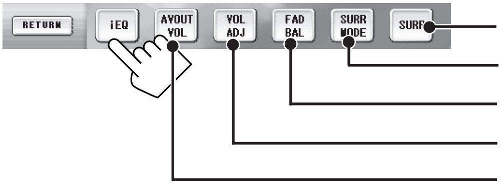


2


FUNCTION
SETUP
SOUND
DISP
GRAP
PANEL
NAME
*2
*1
*1

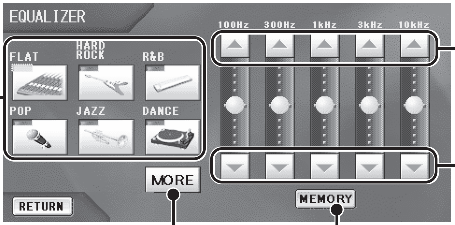
*[1] It does not appear for some sources.
*[2] It will be shaded when not available.

3


RETURN
iEQ
AVOUT VOL
VOL ADJ
FAD BAL
SURR MODE
SURR

See page 35.
See page 35.
See page 41.
See page 41.
See page 34.

4 **Select one of the preset sound (iEQ) modes (then make adjustment if you want to make your own sound mode).**

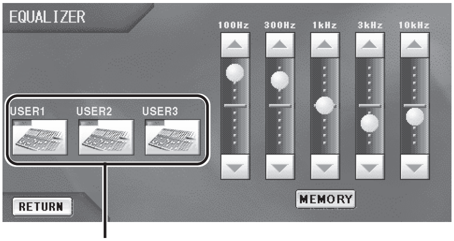

EQUALIZER
100Hz
300Hz
1kHz
3kHz
10kHz
FLAT
HARD ROCK
R&B
POP
JAZZ
DANCE
MORE
RETURN
MEMORY

Select sound modes.

Adjust the level of each frequency band.

Display the other set of the sound modes.

Store your adjustment (display the screen below).


EQUALIZER
100Hz
300Hz
1kHz
3kHz
10kHz
USER1
USER2
USER3
RETURN
MEMORY

Select memory no. to store.

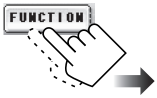
Selecting preset sound modes

You can select a sound mode suitable to the music genre.

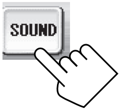
Available sound modes:

- **HARD ROCK / R&B / POP / JAZZ / DANCE / COUNTRY / REGGAE / CLASSIC**
- **USER1 / USER2 / USER3**
- **FLAT** (To cancel the sound mode)

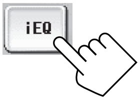
1



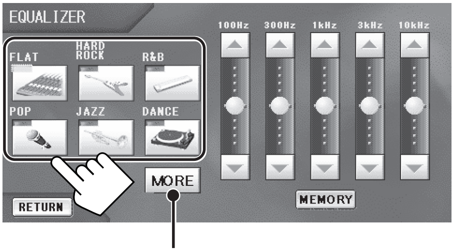
2



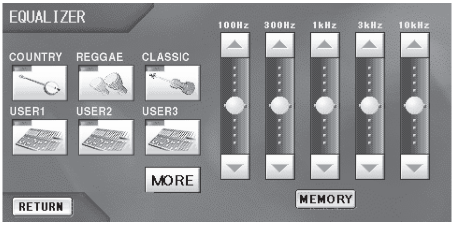
3



4 **Select one of the preset sound (iEQ) modes.**


EQUALIZER
100Hz
300Hz
1kHz
3kHz
10kHz
FLAT
HARD ROCK
R&B
POP
JAZZ
DANCE
MORE
RETURN
MEMORY

Display the other set of the sound modes (see below).

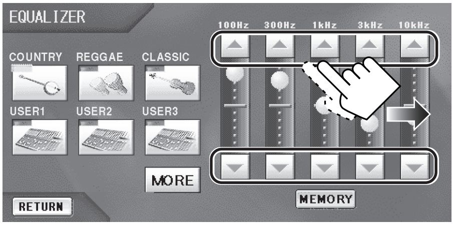

EQUALIZER
100Hz
300Hz
1kHz
3kHz
10kHz
COUNTRY
REGGAE
CLASSIC
USER1
USER2
USER3
MORE
RETURN
MEMORY

Storing your own sound modes

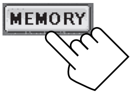
You can adjust the sound modes and store your own adjustments in memory.

1 **Repeat steps *1* to *4* on the left column to select a sound mode you want to adjust.**

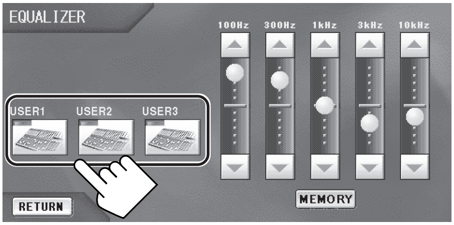
2 **Make adjustments as you like.**


EQUALIZER
100Hz
300Hz
1kHz
3kHz
10kHz
COUNTRY
REGGAE
CLASSIC
USER1
USER2
USER3
MORE
RETURN
MEMORY

3 **After adjustment is finished...**



4 **Select one of the user sound modes (USER1, USER2, or USER3) you want to store into.**

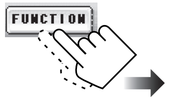

EQUALIZER
100Hz
300Hz
1kHz
3kHz
10kHz
USER1
USER2
USER3
RETURN
MEMORY

For details about the preset settings of each sound mode, see page 74.

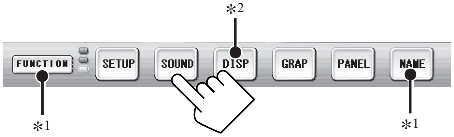
Other Sound Adjustments

Fader/Balance adjustments is only possible for the main source when using Dual Mode.

1



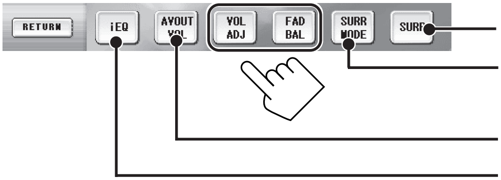
2


*2
FUNCTION
SETUP
SOUND
DISP
GRAP
PANEL
NAME
*1
*1

*1 It does not appear for some sources.

*2 It will be shaded when not available.

3


RETURN
iEQ
AVOUT VOL
VOL ADJ
FAD BAL
SURR MODE
SURR

See page 35.

See page 35.

See page 34.

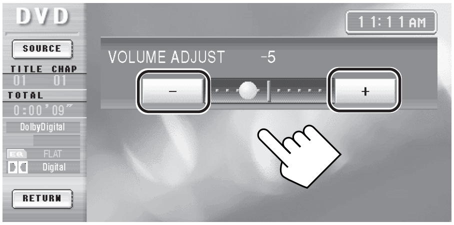
See page 39.

4 **Make adjustment as you like.**

To adjust the input level VOL ADJ

This setting is required for each source except FM.
Once you have made an adjustment, the volume level will automatically changes by adjusted level whenever you change the source.

Adjust to match the input level to the FM sound level.

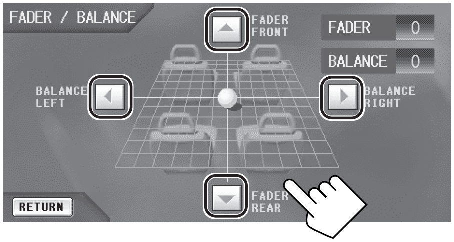

DVD
11:11 AM
SOURCE
TITLE CHAP
01 01
TOTAL
0:00'09"
DolbyDigital
EQ FLAT
Digital
RETURN
–
+

VOLUME ADJUST -5

To adjust fader and balance FAD BAL

Adjust fader—speaker output balance between the front and rear speakers.

Adjust the balance—speaker output balance between the left and right speakers.


FADER / BALANCE
FADER FRONT
BALANCE LEFT
BALANCE RIGHT
FADER REAR
RETURN

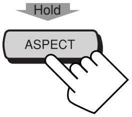
FADER 0

BALANCE 0

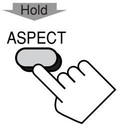
Monitor Adjustments

When no playback picture from the source is displayed, you can only adjust the brightness.

1 Display SCREEN CONTROL screen.

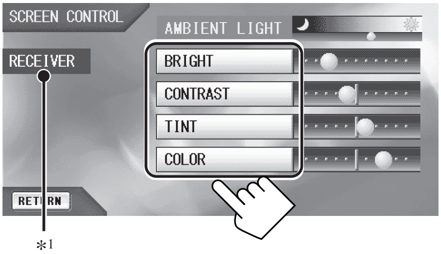

Hold
ASPECT

On the main unit

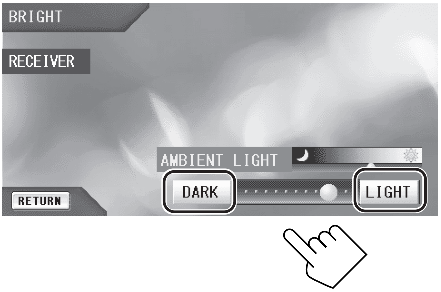

Hold
ASPECT

On the remote controller

2 Select an item to adjust.


SCREEN CONTROL
AMBIENT LIGHT
RECEIVER
BRIGHT
CONTRAST
TINT
COLOR
RETURN
*1

3 Adjust the item.


BRIGHT
RECEIVER
AMBIENT LIGHT
DARK
LIGHT
RETURN

Ex. When adjusting "BRIGHT."

*1 When you adjust the monitor, either "RECEIVER" or "CRADLE" (see page 33) appears. It indicates where the monitor is now loaded. You cannot store your adjustment separately for "RECEIVER" or "CRADLE."

Adjustable items

AMBIENT LIGHT

: Indicates the current ambient light level. As this level changes, the monitor adjusts the brightness automatically to match it to the current ambient light level.

BRIGHT

: Adjust the brightness separately for day time (☼) and night time (☾)—(LIGHT/ DARK).

- The monitor can memorize the difference between the ambient light level and adjusted level, and adjusts the brightness automatically, keeping the level difference memorized.

CONTRAST

: Adjust the contrast (DOWN/UP).

TINT

: Adjust the tint if the human skin color is unnatural (RED/GREEN).

COLOR

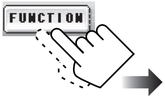
: Adjust the color of the picture—thinner (THIN) or thicker (THICK).

Initial Setup—DVD MENU

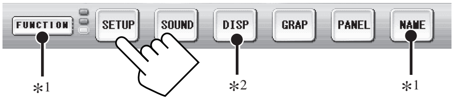
You can preset the initial disc playback conditions.

- While playing, no change can be made on the DVD Menu.

1

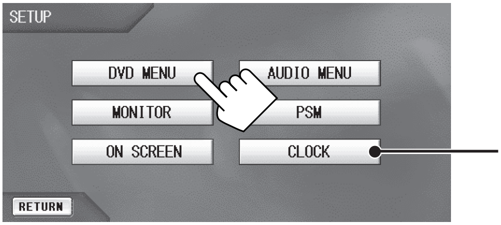


2


FUNCTION
SETUP
SOUND
DISP
GRAP
PANEL
NAME
*1
*2
*1

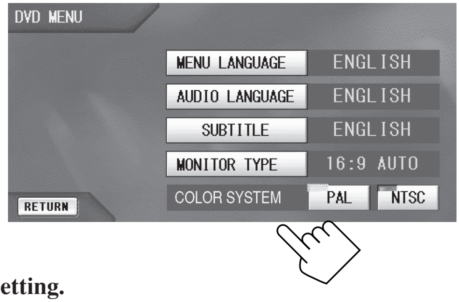
*1 It does not appear for some sources.
*2 It will be shaded when not available.

3


SETUP
DVD MENU
AUDIO MENU
MONITOR
PSM
ON SCREEN
CLOCK
RETURN

See page 13.

4 **Select the item you want.**

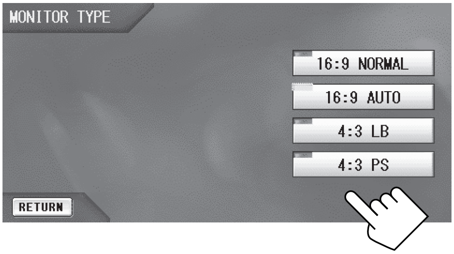


DVD MENU

MENU LANGUAGE ENGLISH
AUDIO LANGUAGE ENGLISH
SUBTITLE ENGLISH
MONITOR TYPE 16:9 AUTO
COLOR SYSTEM PAL NTSC

5 **Change the setting.**

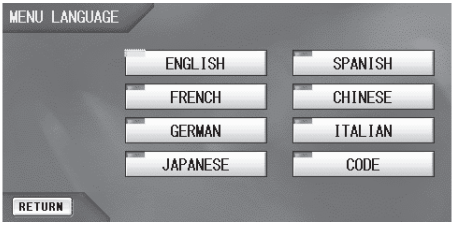
- For details, see the following pages.


MONITOR TYPE
16:9 NORMAL
16:9 AUTO
4:3 LB
4:3 PS
RETURN

Ex. When setting “MONITOR TYPE.”

MENU LANGUAGE

Select the menu language.


MENU LANGUAGE
ENGLISH
SPANISH
FRENCH
CHINESE
GERMAN
ITALIAN
JAPANESE
CODE
RETURN

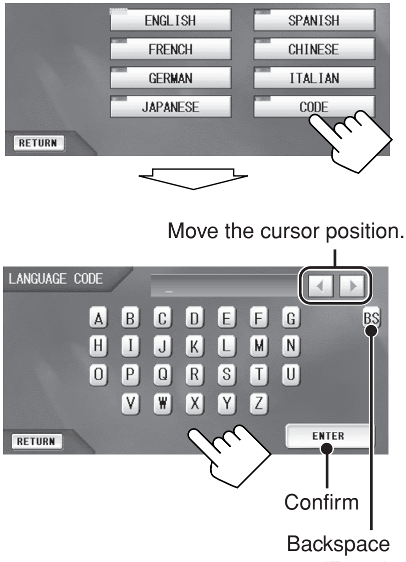
AUDIO LANGUAGE

Select the audio language.

SUBTITLE

Select the subtitle language.
To erase the subtitle, select "OFF."

If the language you want is not listed for the language menu list
See page 75 to find the language codes.


ENGLISH
SPANISH
FRENCH
CHINESE
GERMAN
ITALIAN
JAPANESE
CODE
RETURN
LANGUAGE CODE
A B C D E F G
H I J K L M N
O P Q R S T U
V W X Y Z
BS
ENTER
RETURN

Move the cursor position.

Confirm

Backspace
(Erase)

When the language you have selected is not recorded on a disc, the original language is automatically used as the initial language.

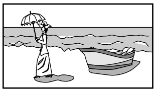
MONITOR TYPE

Select the monitor type of your TV (connected to the AV OUTPUT jacks) to play DVD Video recorded with aspect ratio of 16:9.

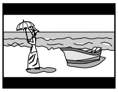
- For the removable monitor of this unit, set this to "16:9 AUTO."

- 16:9 NORMAL:
  Select when the aspect ratio of your TV is fixed to 16:9 (wide TV).
- 16:9 AUTO:
  Select when the aspect ratio of your TV is 16:9 (wide TV), and it is equipped with aspect ratio adjustment function.
- 4:3 LB (Letter Box):
  Select when the aspect ratio of your TV is 4:3 (conventional TV). While viewing a wide screen picture, the black bars appear on the top and the bottom of the screen.
- 4:3 PS (Pan Scan):
  Select when the aspect ratio of your TV is 4:3. While viewing a wide screen picture, the black bars do not appear; however, the left and right edges of the pictures will not be shown on the screen.

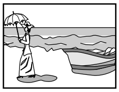
16:9



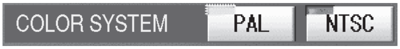
4:3 LB



4:3 PS



COLOR SYSTEM

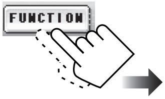

COLOR SYSTEM
PAL
NTSC

Select the color system of the playback disc (DVD/VCD).

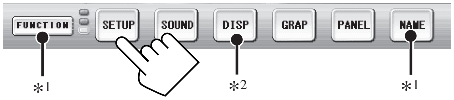
Initial Setup—MONITOR

You can preset the initial monitor conditions.

1

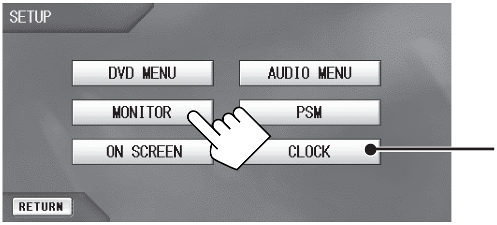


2


FUNCTION
SETUP
SOUND
DISP
GRAP
PANEL
NAME
*1
*2
*1

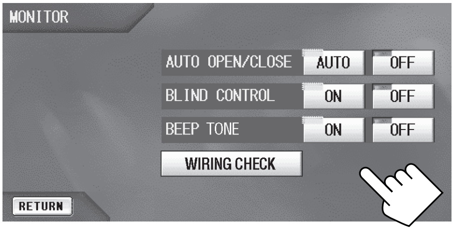
*1 It does not appear for some sources.
*2 It will be shaded when not available.

3


SETUP
DVD MENU
AUDIO MENU
MONITOR
PSM
ON SCREEN
CLOCK
RETURN

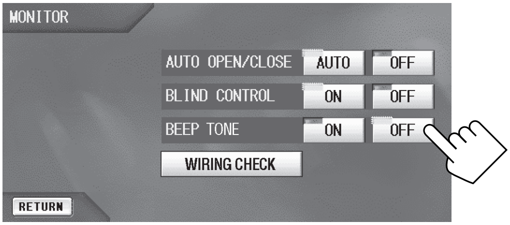
See page 13.

4 **Select the item you want.**


MONITOR
AUTO OPEN/CLOSE
AUTO
OFF
BLIND CONTROL
ON
OFF
BEEP TONE
ON
OFF
WIRING CHECK
RETURN

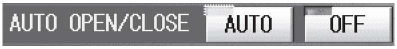
5 **Change the setting.**

- For details, see the following pages.


MONITOR
AUTO OPEN/CLOSE
AUTO
OFF
BLIND CONTROL
ON
OFF
BEEP TONE
ON
OFF
WIRING CHECK
RETURN

Ex. When setting “BEEP TONE” to “OFF.”

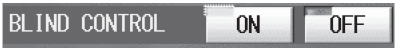
AUTO OPEN/CLOSE



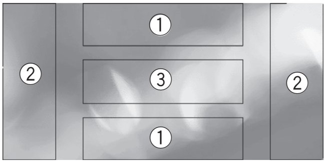
- AUTO: The monitor comes out* or goes in automatically when you turn on or off the power.
- OFF: Cancels this function.

* If you close the monitor before turning off the power, the monitor will not come out next time you turn on the power.

BLIND CONTROL



- ON: The monitor works as Touch Panel when playing back pictures on the monitor.



  – The boundaries cannot be shown on the monitor screen. This example is just to teach you where to touch on the Touch Panel when you operate on it.

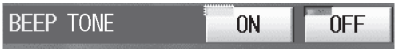
  ① Upper/lower portions:
  Adjust the volume.

  ② Left/right portions:
  - Skips the chapters/tracks for DVD/VCD.
  - Searches the chapters/tracks for DVD/VCD.
  - Searches for TV channels for TV (see page 63).

  ③ Center portion:
  Turns on and off the on-screen icons. (This also works even if “BLIND CONTROL” is set to “OFF.”)

- OFF: Cancels this function.

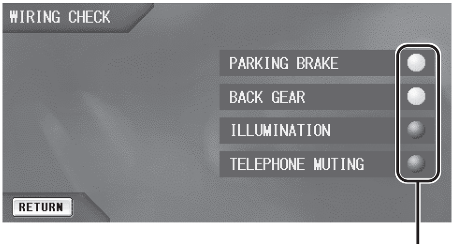
BEEP TONE



- ON: Sound beeps when you operate the unit.
- OFF: Cancels this function.

WIRING CHECK

You can confirm the wiring connection is correctly done for particular functions.



- When the listed wires have been connected and electrical signals are detected through the wires, the corresponding indicators light up.

Dimmer function

To use the dimmer function, you need to connect the ILLUMINATION wire to...

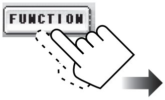
- **For Auto Dimmer:** Connect it to the car headlight switch. When you turn on the car lights, dimmer starts working—Auto Dimmer.
- **For Constant Dimmer:** Connect it to the car battery (constant 12V). Dimmer works whenever you turn on the power.
- **For Dimmer Off:** Connect it to nowhere.

- See also the Installation/Connection Manual (separate volume).

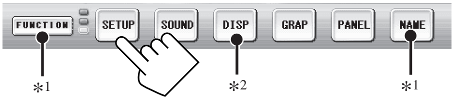
Initial Setup—ON SCREEN

You can preset the initial on-screen conditions.

1



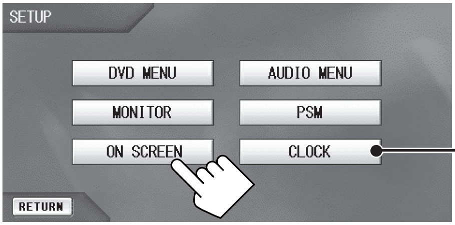
2


FUNCTION
SETUP
SOUND
DISP
GRAP
PANEL
NAME
*1
*2
*1

*1 It does not appear for some sources.

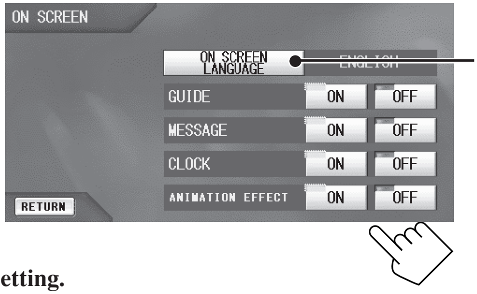
*2 It will be shaded when not available.

3


SETUP
DVD MENU
AUDIO MENU
MONITOR
PSM
ON SCREEN
CLOCK
RETURN

See page 13.

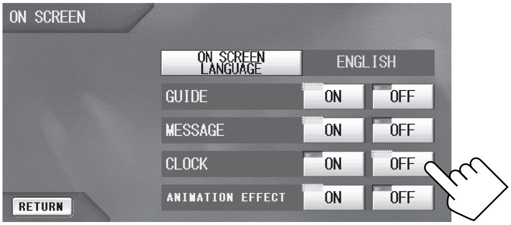
4 **Select the item you want.**


ON SCREEN
ON SCREEN LANGUAGE
ENGLISH
GUIDE
ON
OFF
MESSAGE
ON
OFF
CLOCK
ON
OFF
ANIMATION EFFECT
ON
OFF
RETURN

Language selection screen appears.

5 **Change the setting.**

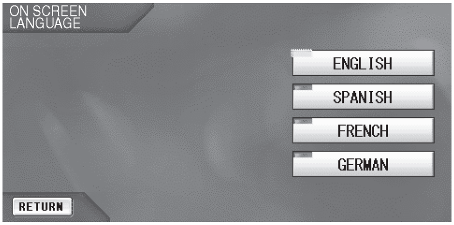
- For details, see the following pages.


ON SCREEN
ON SCREEN LANGUAGE
ENGLISH
GUIDE
ON
OFF
MESSAGE
ON
OFF
CLOCK
ON
OFF
ANIMATION EFFECT
ON
OFF
RETURN

Ex. When setting “CLOCK” to “OFF.”

ON SCREEN LANGUAGE

You can select the language for this Setup Menu and some of the messages displayed on the monitor.


ON SCREEN LANGUAGE
ENGLISH
SPANISH
FRENCH
GERMAN
RETURN

GUIDE

GUIDE
ON
OFF

- ON: On-screen guide icons (see page 23) are displayed on the monitor while operating the built-in disc player.
  - – When the TV tuner unit (KV-C1000/KV-C1001) is connected, its on-screen display will be shown.
- OFF: Cancels this function.

MESSAGE

MESSAGE
ON
OFF

- ON: Speaker/signal indicators (see page 69) and messages are displayed.

  Messages are displayed on the viewing window of the monitor screen...
  - – When selecting repeat mode, random mode, intro scan, etc.
  - – When starting Time Search, Title Search, Chapter Search, and Track Search.

REPEAT PLAY TRACK

Ex. One of the messages appears when selecting repeat mode.

- OFF: Cancels this function.

CLOCK

CLOCK
ON
OFF

- ON: Display the clock time on the monitor.
- OFF: Cancels this function.

ANIMATION EFFECT

ANIMATION EFFECT
ON
OFF

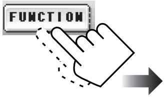
- ON: Source selection screen appears and disappears as if you open or close the curtain.
- OFF: Cancels this function.

Initial Setup—AUDIO MENU/PSM

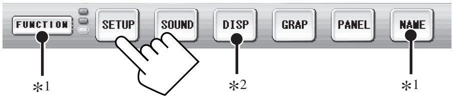
You can preset the initial audio-related conditions and Preferred Setting Modes (PSM).

- You cannot select "AUDIO MENU" when the subsidiary source operation screen is displayed on the monitor (with Dual Mode turned on; see page 33).

1

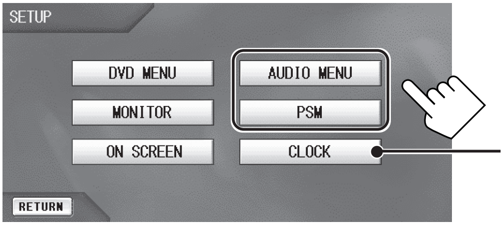


2


FUNCTION
SETUP
SOUND
DISP
GRAP
PANEL
NAME
*1
*2
*1

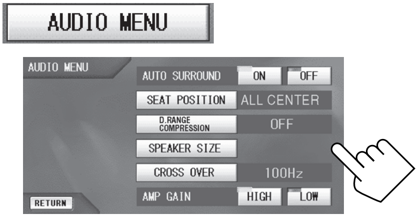
*1 It does not appear for some sources.
*2 It will be shaded when not available.

3

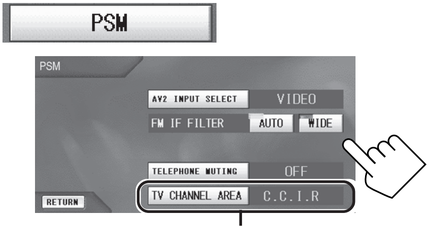

SETUP
DVD MENU
AUDIO MENU
MONITOR
PSM
ON SCREEN
CLOCK
RETURN

See page 13.

4 **Select the item you want.**


AUDIO MENU
AUDIO MENU
SPEAKER SIZE
RETURN

AUTO SURROUND ON OFF
SEAT POSITION ALL CENTER
D.RANGE COMPRESSION OFF
CROSS OVER 100Hz
AMP GAIN HIGH LOW

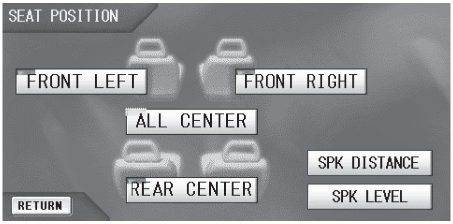

PSM
PSM
RETURN

AV2 INPUT SELECT VIDEO
FM IF FILTER AUTO WIDE
TELEPHONE MUTING OFF
TV CHANNEL AREA C.C.I.R

Appears when TV tuner unit KV-C1001 or KV-C1000 is connected. (Example above is when KV-C1001 is connected.)

5 **Change the setting or enter the setting screen.**

- For details, see the following pages.

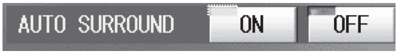

SEAT POSITION
FRONT LEFT
FRONT RIGHT
ALL CENTER
SPK DISTANCE
REAR CENTER
SPK LEVEL
RETURN

Ex. When entering "SEAT POSITION."

AUDIO MENU

AUTO SURROUND

You can activate an appropriate surround mode automatically when a loaded disc is detected.



- ON: An appropriate surround/DSP mode is automatically selected.

  While Dolby Digital multi-channel signals are detected, “Dolby Digital” is automatically selected.

  While DTS multi-channel signals are detected, “DTS” is automatically selected.

  While Dolby Surround (PL II) signals are detected, “Dolby Pro Logic II Movie” is automatically selected.

  While Linear PCM signals are detected (for DVD/CD), “Dolby Pro Logic II Music” is automatically selected.

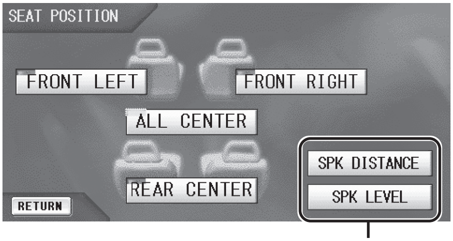
  While other signals are detected, Surround mode is defeated.
- OFF: Cancels this function.

> *Auto Surround does not work for any sources other than “DISC.” When another source is selected, the currently selected Surround or DSP mode is resumed (see page 37).*

SEAT POSITION

Select the listening seat position where you want to locate the sound image.

- Speaker distance and speaker level can be memorized for each position.

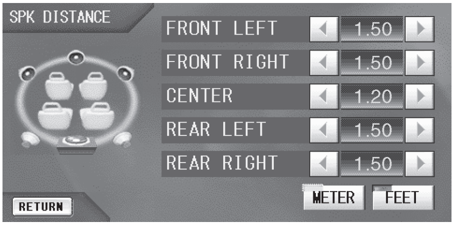


Display sub-setting screens.

- FRONT LEFT: For the front left seat.
- FRONT RIGHT: For the front right seat.
- ALL CENTER: For all front and rear seats.
- REAR CENTER: For the rear seats.

- **SPK DISTANCE** : Displays the SPK DISTANCE screen.

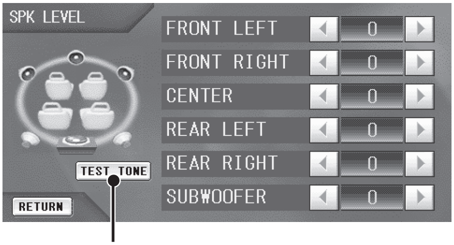
You can adjust the speaker distance from your listening position in meters or feet.



FRONT LEFT 1.50
FRONT RIGHT 1.50
CENTER 1.20
REAR LEFT 1.50
REAR RIGHT 1.50

- **SPK LEVEL** : Displays the SPK LEVEL screen.

You can adjust the speaker level referring to the test tone.



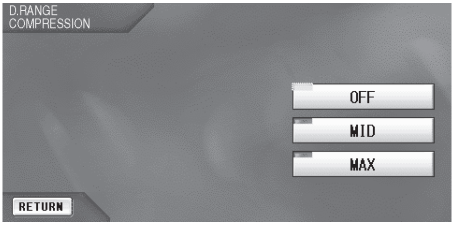
FRONT LEFT 0
FRONT RIGHT 0
CENTER 0
REAR LEFT 0
REAR RIGHT 0
SUBWOOFER 0

Emits the test tone from each speaker in sequence.
To stop, press again.

D (Dynamic). RANGE COMPRESSION

You can enjoy a powerful sound even at a low volume level by compressing dynamic range (difference between the lowest and the highest frequency sounds).

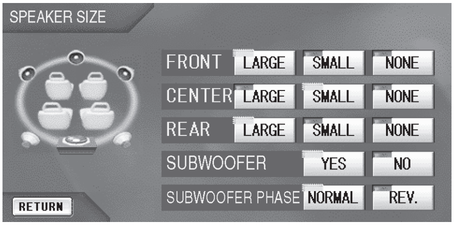
- This takes effect for all the playback sources.


D.RANGE
COMPRESSION
OFF
MID
MAX
RETURN

- OFF: Select when you want to enjoy playback with its full dynamic range (no effect applied).
- MID: Select when you want to reduce the dynamic range a little.
- MAX: Select when you want to apply the compress effect fully (useful at a low volume level).

SPEAKER SIZE

Set speaker information correctly.

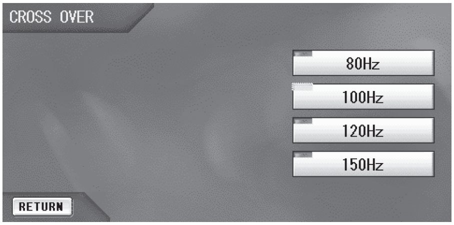

SPEAKER SIZE
FRONT
LARGE
SMALL
NONE
CENTER
LARGE
SMALL
NONE
REAR
LARGE
SMALL
NONE
SUBWOOFER
YES
NO
SUBWOOFER PHASE
NORMAL
REV.
RETURN

- FRONT/CENTER/REAR:
  Set the speaker size properly.
  - LARGE: If the cone speaker size is more than 13 cm.
  - SMALL: If the cone speaker size is less than 13 cm.
  - NONE: If not used.
- SUBWOOFER:
  Select “YES” (connected) or “NO” (disconnected).
- SUBWOOFER PHASE:
  Select either “NORMAL” or “REV. (reverse)” to obtain better subwoofer sounds.

> - *These settings are very related to one another; therefore, one setting is changed, some other settings will be changed automatically and appropriately (see page 73).*
> - *Sound comes out of the subwoofer for Dolby Pro Logic II only when either the front speakers or the center speaker is set to “SMALL.”*

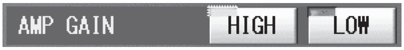
CROSS OVER

You can select the crossover frequency for the small speakers used. The signals below the preset frequency level will be sent to the subwoofer (or to the “LARGE” speakers when “SUBWOOFER” is set to “NO”).


CROSS OVER
80Hz
100Hz
120Hz
150Hz
RETURN

AMP GAIN

You can change the maximum volume level of this unit. When the maximum power of the speakers is less than 50 W, select “LOW” to prevent them from being damaged.

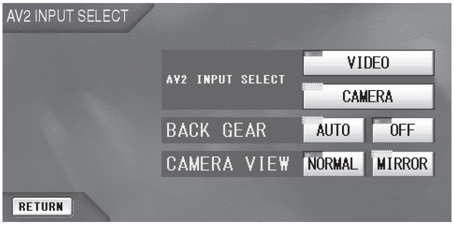

AMP GAIN
HIGH
LOW

- HIGH: You can adjust the volume level from “0” to “50.”
- LOW: You can adjust the volume level from “0” to “30.”

AV2 INPUT SELECT

You can determine the use of AV INPUT 2 jacks on the hideaway unit—select either “VIDEO” or “CAMERA.”

- When the playback source is “AV2,” this setting cannot be changed.


AV2 INPUT SELECT
AV2 INPUT SELECT
VIDEO
CAMERA
BACK GEAR
AUTO
OFF
CAMERA VIEW
NORMAL
MIRROR
RETURN

- VIDEO: The source “AV2” works for viewing the playback picture through the component connected to the AV INPUT 2 jacks.
- CAMERA: Select this when connecting the rear view camera.
  - – You can set the remaining two items (BACK GEAR/ CAMERA VIEW).

BACK GEAR

- AUTO: The rear view through the rear view camera is automatically displayed on the monitor when you change the gear to the back position.
- OFF: Cancels this function. To watch the rear view, select “AV2” for the source.

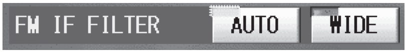
CAMERA VIEW

- NORMAL: You can watch the rear view as the camera takes.
- MIRROR: You can watch the rear view as reflected on the mirror.

While watching the camera view, you can change it to the source playback screen by touching the center portion of the monitor screen. (In this case, you cannot change the aspect ratio and make monitor adjustments—see pages 24 and 42.)

FM IF FILTER

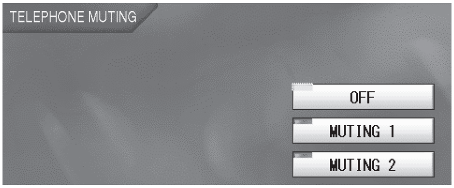
In some areas, adjacent stations may interfere with each other. If this interference occurs, noise may be heard.


FM IF FILTER
AUTO
WIDE

- AUTO: When this type of interference occurs, this unit automatically increases the tuner selectivity so that interference noise will be reduced. (But the stereo effect will also be lost.)
- WIDE: Subject to the interference from adjacent stations, but sound quality will not be degraded and the stereo effect will not be lost.

TELEPHONE MUTING

This mode works when a cellular phone system is connected. Select either “MUTING 1” or “MUTING 2,” whichever mutes the sounds from this unit.

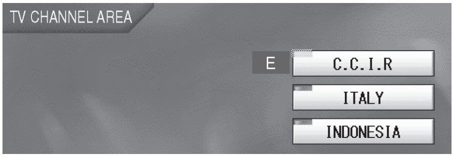

TELEPHONE MUTING
OFF
MUTING 1
MUTING 2

TV CHANNEL AREA

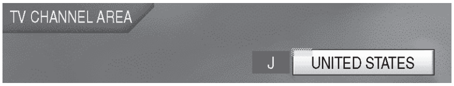
This setting appears only when TV tuner unit KV-C1000 or KV-C1001 is connected.

For KV-C1001 users: When you use the optional TV tuner unit either in Italy or Indonesia, select the country.

- Normally select “C.C.I.R.”


TV CHANNEL AREA
E
C.C.I.R
ITALY
INDONESIA

For KV-C1000 users: No setting is required.


TV CHANNEL AREA
J
UNITED STATES

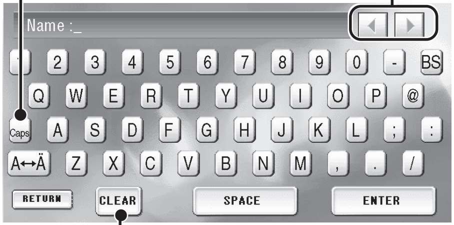
Assigning titles to the sources NAME

Roman alphabet list

Alternates between upper and lower cases.

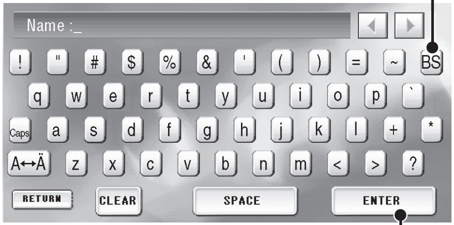
Moves the cursor position.

Backspace
(Erase the last entry)


Name :_
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 - BS
Q W E R T Y U I O P @
Caps A S D F G H J K L ; :
A↔Ä Z X C V B N M , . /
RETURN
CLEAR
SPACE
ENTER

Upper cases

Erase all entered character.


Name :_
! " # $ % & ' ( ) = ~ BS
q w e r t y u i o p `
Caps a s d f g h j k l + *
A↔Ä z x c v b n m < > ?
RETURN
CLEAR
SPACE
ENTER

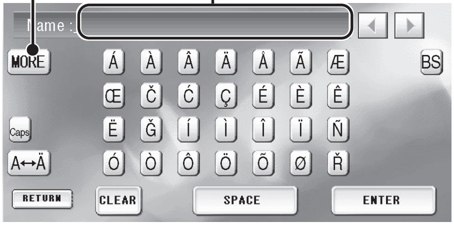
Lower cases

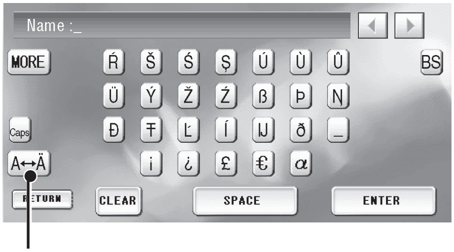
Confirm the entered name.

Accented characters: Upper cases

Display the other page of the character list of the same type.

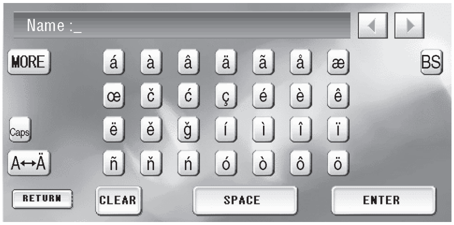
Entered name is displayed.

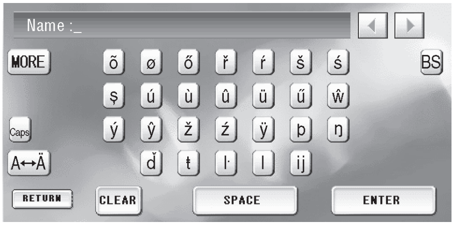

Name :
MORE Á À Â Ä Å Ã Æ BS
Œ Č Ć Ç É È Ê
Caps Ë Ğ Í Ì Î Ï Ñ
A↔Ä Ó Ò Ô Ö Õ Ø Ř
RETURN
CLEAR
SPACE
ENTER


Name :_
MORE Ŕ Š Ś Ş Ú Ù Û BS
Ü Ý Ž Ź ß Þ Ŋ
Caps Đ Ŧ Ľ Í Ĳ ð _
A↔Ä ¡ ¿ £ € α
RETURN
CLEAR
SPACE
ENTER

Alternates between Roman alphabet and accented letter lists.

Accented characters: Lower cases


Name :_
MORE á à â ä ã å æ BS
œ č ć ç é è ê
Caps ë ě ğ í ì î ï
A↔Ä ñ ň ń ó ò ô ö
RETURN
CLEAR
SPACE
ENTER


Name :_
MORE õ ø ő ř ŕ š ś BS
ş ú ù û ü ű ŵ
Caps ý ŷ ž ź ÿ þ ŋ
A↔Ä ď ŧ ŀ l ĳ
RETURN
CLEAR
SPACE
ENTER

You can assign titles to 30 FM/AM, 30 TV stations, and 40 CDs (both in this unit and in the CD changer).

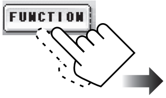
Source	Maximum character number
Stations:	10
CDs:	32

- You cannot assign a title to CD Text and MP3 discs.
- For the TV tuner unit KV-C1001 users: If you change the “TV CHANNEL AREA” setting (see page 52), assigned TV station names are all erased.

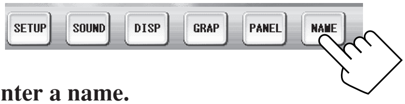
1 Prepare the source.

- **For FM/AM stations:** Change “FM” or “AM,” then select a station.
- **For a CD in this unit:** Insert a CD.
- **For CDs in the CD changer:** Select “CD-CH,” then select a disc number.
- **For TV stations:** Change “TV,” then select a TV station.

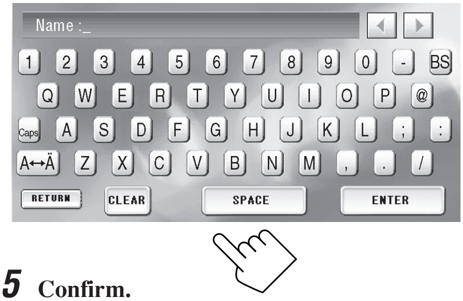
2



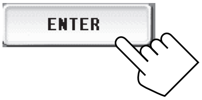
3


SETUP
SOUND
DISP
GRAP
PANEL
NAME

4 Enter a name.

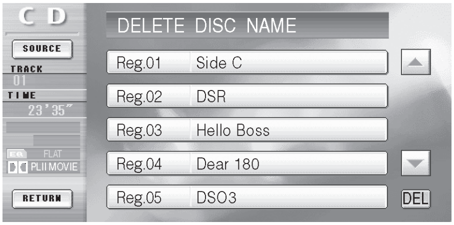

Name :_
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 - BS
Q W E R T Y U I O P @
Caps A S D F G H J K L ; :
A↔Ä Z X C V B N M , . /
RETURN
CLEAR
SPACE
ENTER

5 Confirm.



If the “DELETE DISC NAME” or “DELETE STATION NAME” screen appears

The internal memory is full. Delete unwanted names before assignment.

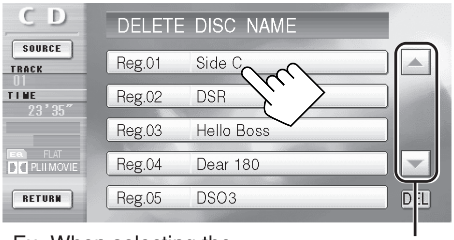

CD
SOURCE
TRACK
01
TIME
23'35"
EQ FLAT
PLII MOVIE
RETURN
DEL

DELETE DISC NAME

Reg.01 Side C
Reg.02 DSR
Reg.03 Hello Boss
Reg.04 Dear 180
Reg.05 DSO3

Ex. When trying a name to a 41st disc.

1 Select an unwanted name.


CD
SOURCE
TRACK
01
TIME
23'35"
EQ FLAT
PLII MOVIE
RETURN
DEL

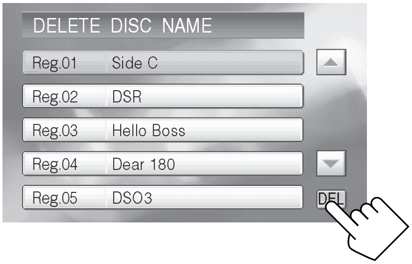
DELETE DISC NAME

Reg.01 Side C
Reg.02 DSR
Reg.03 Hello Boss
Reg.04 Dear 180
Reg.05 DSO3

Ex. When selecting the first registered name.

To next/previous page of the list

2 Delete.

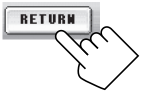


DELETE DISC NAME

Reg.01 Side C
Reg.02 DSR
Reg.03 Hello Boss
Reg.04 Dear 180
Reg.05 DSO3

3 Repeat the above steps if you want to delete more names.

4 Finish.

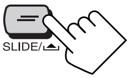


Changing the monitor position/angle

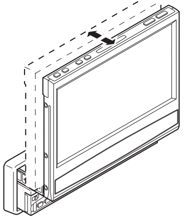
You can change the monitor position and the monitor angle.

- Once you change them, they are stored. The monitor opens at the stored position and angle, next time you eject the monitor.

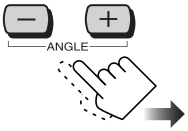
To change the monitor position

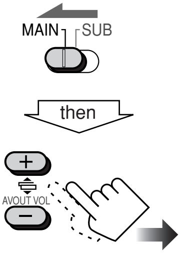


On the main unit

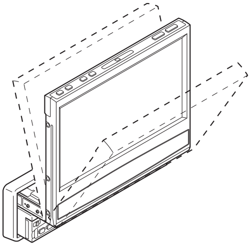


To change the monitor angle





On the main unit On the remote controller

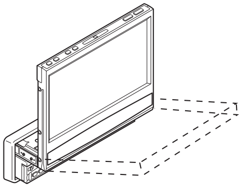


Each time you press the button, the monitor changes its angle step by step.

- By holding the button (+/–), you can easily change the angle to its extreme (+/–).

To operate the car switches behind the monitor, press OPEN once.

The monitor change its angle to the illustrated position for about 30 seconds.



To return to its previous angle within 30 seconds, press OPEN again.

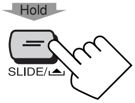
Removing the monitor

When detaching and attaching the monitor, observe the following:

- Be careful not to drop the monitor.
- Be careful not to damage the connectors.

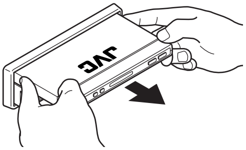
To detach the monitor

1

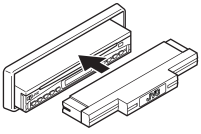


The monitor goes back into its compartment if it has been used, then comes out halfway.

2

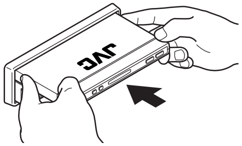


3 **Insert the blind cover to protect the internal mechanism from dust.**

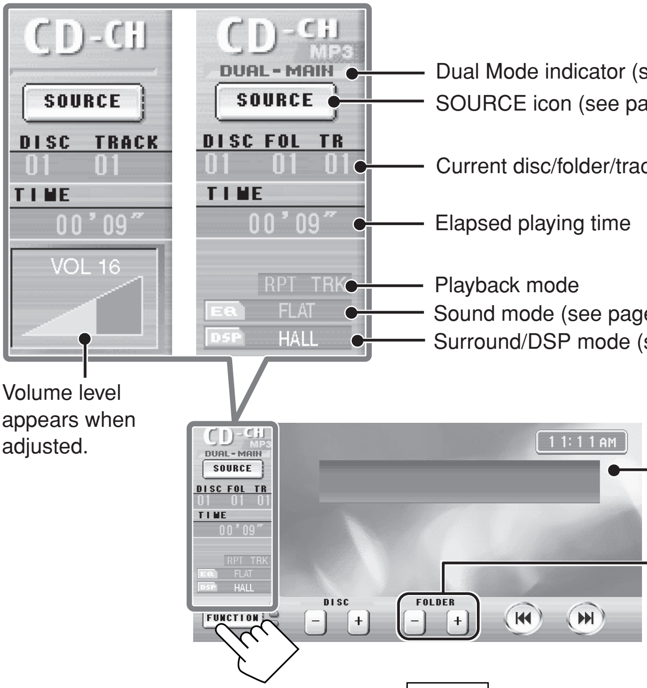


To attach the monitor

Insert the monitor into the compartment with the screen facing down.



CD Changer Operations


CD-CH
SOURCE
DISC TRACK
01 01
TIME
00'09"
VOL 16
CD-CH MP3
DUAL-MAIN
SOURCE
DISC FOL TR
01 01 01
TIME
00'09"
RPT TRK
EQ FLAT
DSP HALL
11:11 AM
FUNCTION
DISC
FOLDER

Dual Mode indicator (see page 33)

SOURCE icon (see pages 14 and 33)

Current disc/folder/track no.

Elapsed playing time

Playback mode

Sound mode (see page 39)

Surround/DSP mode (see page 36)

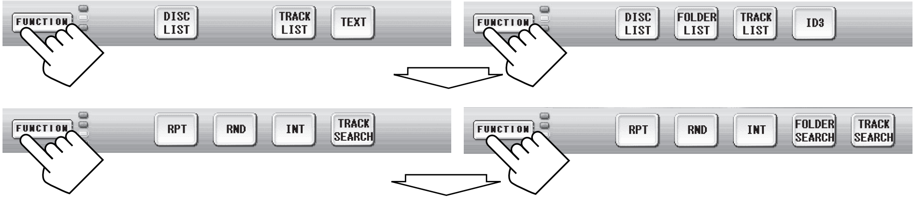
Volume level appears when adjusted.

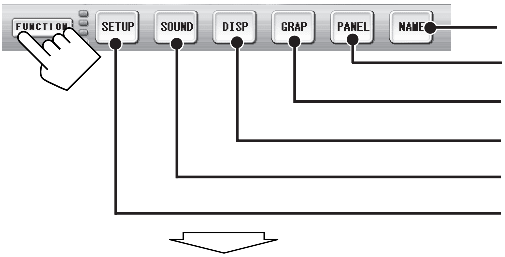
Disc text/ID3 tag information area

Only for MP3

CD/CD Text

MP3


FUNCTION
DISC LIST
TRACK LIST
TEXT
FUNCTION
DISC LIST
FOLDER LIST
TRACK LIST
ID3
FUNCTION
RPT
RND
INT
TRACK SEARCH
FUNCTION
RPT
RND
INT
FOLDER SEARCH
TRACK SEARCH


FUNCTION
SETUP
SOUND
DISP
GRAP
PANEL
NAME

Only for CD: See page 53.

See page 14.

See page 14.

See page 15.

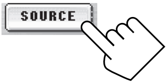
See page 39.

See pages 43 – 52.

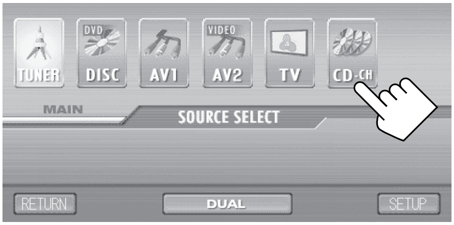
Back to the beginning

Basic CD Changer Operations

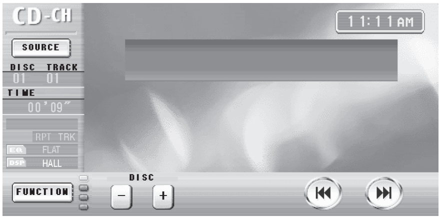
1 Select “CD-CH”



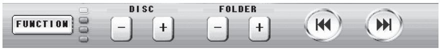
then


TUNER
DVD
DISC
AV1
VIDEO
AV2
TV
CD-CH
MAIN
SOURCE SELECT
RETURN
DUAL
SETUP

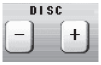
Ex. While playing CD/CD Text*


CD-CH
11:11 AM
SOURCE
DISC
TRACK
01
01
TIME
00'09"
RPT TRK
EQ
FLAT
DSP
HALL
FUNCTION
DISC
−
+

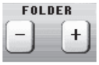
Ex. While playing MP3


FUNCTION
DISC
−
+
FOLDER
−
+

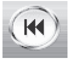
2 Operate the disc



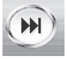
: Selects the disc.



: Selects the folder (only for MP3).



: Goes back to the beginning of the current track, then skips to the previous tracks if pressed repeatedly.



: Skips to the following tracks if pressed repeatedly.

* *Disc text information recorded in the CD Text can be displayed when a JVC CD Text compatible CD changer is connected.*

It is recommended to use the JVC MP3-compatible CD changer with your unit.

- You can also connect the CH-X series CD changers (except CH-X99 and CH-X100). However, they are not compatible with MP3 discs, so you cannot play back MP3 discs.
- You cannot use the KD-MK series CD changers with this unit.

Before operating your CD changer:

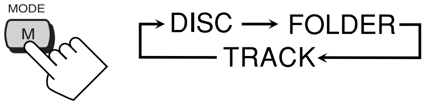
- Refer also to the Instructions supplied with your CD changer.
- If no discs are in the magazine of the CD changer or the discs are inserted upside down, “NO DISC” will appear on the monitor. If this happens, remove the magazine and set the discs correctly.
- If no magazine is loaded in the CD changer, “NO MAGAZINE” will appear on the monitor. If this happens, insert the magazine in the CD changer.

Advanced CD Changer Operations

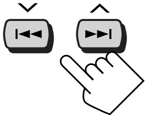
Selecting disc/folders/tracks

You can select the disc, (folder: only for MP3,) and tracks using the buttons on the main unit.

1


MODE
M
DISC
FOLDER
TRACK

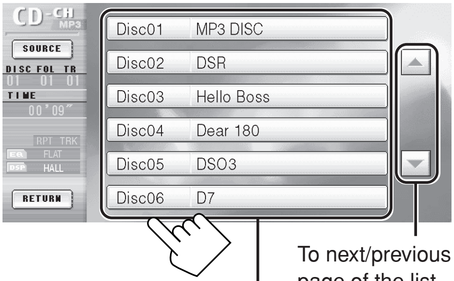
2



When using the remote controller

You can directly select the disc number by pressing the corresponding number buttons (1 – 12).

3 **Select a disc you want.**


CD-CH
MP3
SOURCE
DISC FOL TR
01 01 01
TIME
00'09"
RPT TRK
EQ FLAT
DSP HALL
RETURN

Disc01 MP3 DISC
Disc02 DSR
Disc03 Hello Boss
Disc04 Dear 180
Disc05 DSO3
Disc06 D7

To next/previous page of the list

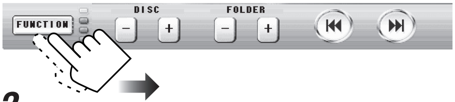
Disc names will be shown once it is recognized.

Locating a disc/folder/track using the list DISC LIST FOLDER LIST TRACK LIST

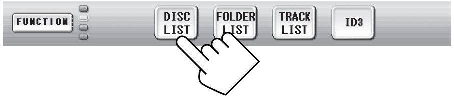
To locate a disc by displaying the disc list

Example: while playing MP3.

1


FUNCTION
DISC
FOLDER
–
+
–
+

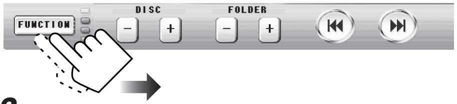
2


FUNCTION
DISC LIST
FOLDER LIST
TRACK LIST
ID3

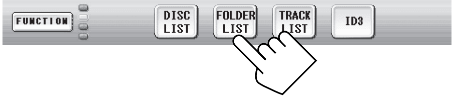
To locate a folder by displaying the folder list

- This functions only for MP3.
- Though you play back the same disc on the CD changer, its folder list may look differently from the one you display while playing it on the main unit. This happens because CD changer can also list up the folder in which no MP3 tracks are recorded.

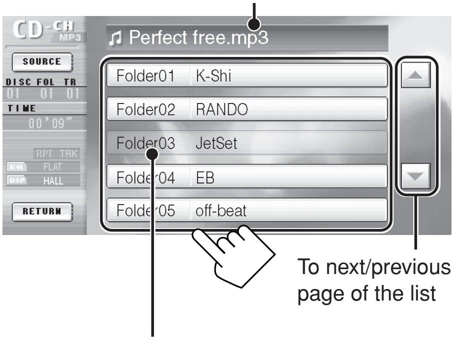
1


FUNCTION
DISC
FOLDER
–
+
–
+

2


FUNCTION
DISC LIST
FOLDER LIST
TRACK LIST
ID3

3 **Select a folder you want.**


CD-CH
MP3
SOURCE
DISC FOL TR
01 01 01
TIME
00'09"
RPT TRK
EQ FLAT
DSP HALL
RETURN

♫ Perfect free.mp3

Folder01	K-Shi
Folder02	RANDO
Folder03	JetSet
Folder04	EB
Folder05	off-beat

Current track name or ID3 Tag

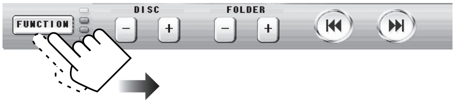
To next/previous page of the list

Shaded when no MP3 files are included. You cannot select this folder.

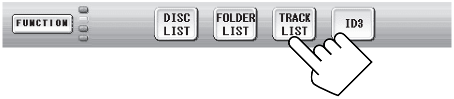
To locate a track by displaying the track list

Example: while playing MP3.

1

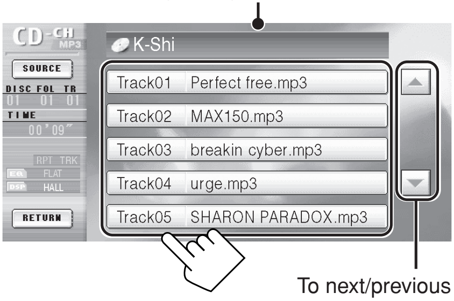

FUNCTION
DISC
FOLDER
−
+
−
+

2


FUNCTION
DISC LIST
FOLDER LIST
TRACK LIST
ID3

3 **Select a track you want.**

Current folder name or ID3 Tag (for MP3)
Disc name (for CD) or CD Text


CD-CH
MP3
SOURCE
DISC FOL TR
01 01 01
TIME
00'09"
RPT TRK
EQ FLAT
DSP HALL
RETURN

K-Shi

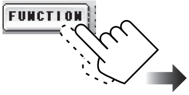
Track01	Perfect free.mp3
Track02	MAX150.mp3
Track03	breakin cyber.mp3
Track04	urge.mp3
Track05	SHARON PARADOX.mp3

To next/previous page of the list

Displaying the disc text information TEXT ID3

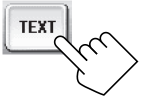
With Auto Scroll or Scroll selected, you can display the text and scroll it on the monitor if it is long and cannot be displayed at a time.

1

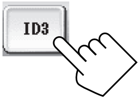


2

(For CD)



(For MP3)



→ Scroll → Auto Scroll → Off →

- Scroll: Text on the information area scrolls once.
- Auto Scroll: Text on the information area scrolls every 5 seconds.
- Off: The information area goes off (no text information will be shown).

Selecting playback modes

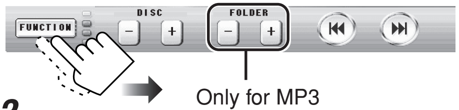
You can use only one of the following playback modes at a time—Repeat Play, Random Play, and Intro Scan.

Repeat Play RPT

You can repeat playback.

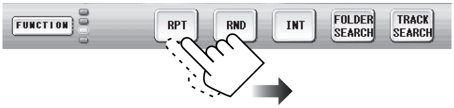
- Repeat Play cannot be deactivated.

1

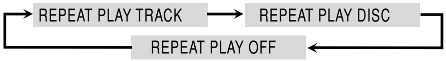

FUNCTION
DISC
FOLDER
–
+
–
+

Only for MP3

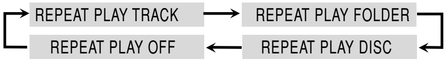
2


FUNCTION
RPT
RND
INT
FOLDER SEARCH
TRACK SEARCH

When playing CD:


REPEAT PLAY TRACK
REPEAT PLAY DISC
REPEAT PLAY OFF

When playing MP3:


REPEAT PLAY TRACK
REPEAT PLAY FOLDER
REPEAT PLAY DISC
REPEAT PLAY OFF

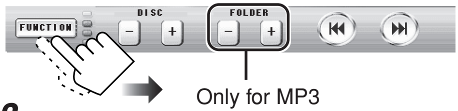
REPEAT PLAY

- TRACK: Repeats the current track.
- FOLDER: Repeats the current folder.
- DISC: Repeats the current disc.
- OFF: Repeats all loaded discs in the magazine.

Random Play RND

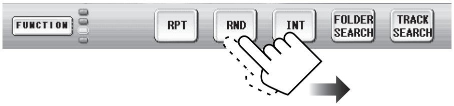
You can play back tracks at random.

1

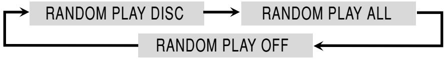

FUNCTION
DISC
FOLDER
–
+
–
+

Only for MP3

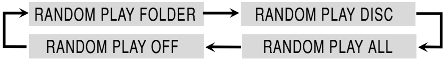
2


FUNCTION
RPT
RND
INT
FOLDER SEARCH
TRACK SEARCH

When playing CD:


RANDOM PLAY DISC
RANDOM PLAY ALL
RANDOM PLAY OFF

When playing MP3:


RANDOM PLAY FOLDER
RANDOM PLAY DISC
RANDOM PLAY ALL
RANDOM PLAY OFF

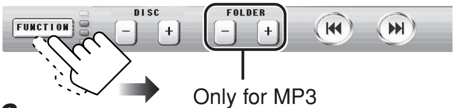
RANDOM PLAY

- FOLDER: Plays randomly all tracks of the current folder, then moves to the next folder and so on.
- DISC: Plays randomly all tracks on the current disc.
- ALL: Plays randomly all tracks of all discs in the magazine.
- OFF: Cancels Random Play.

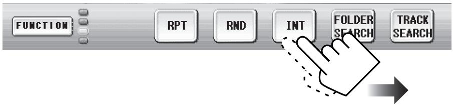
Intro Scan

You can play back the first 15 seconds of each track sequentially.

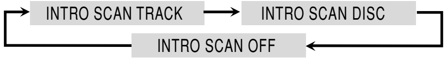
1


FUNCTION
DISC
FOLDER
Only for MP3

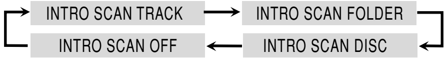
2


FUNCTION
RPT
RND
INT
FOLDER SEARCH
TRACK SEARCH

When playing CD:


INTRO SCAN TRACK
INTRO SCAN DISC
INTRO SCAN OFF

When playing MP3:


INTRO SCAN TRACK
INTRO SCAN FOLDER
INTRO SCAN DISC
INTRO SCAN OFF

INTRO SCAN

- TRACK: Plays the beginning of all tracks of the current disc.
- FOLDER: Plays the first tracks of all folders of the current disc (only for MP3).
- DISC: Plays the first tracks of all discs in the magazine.
- OFF: Cancels Intro Scan.

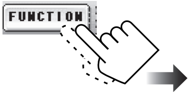
Searching for songs

You can use search functions to find your favorite tracks (for CD/MP3) and folders (for MP3).

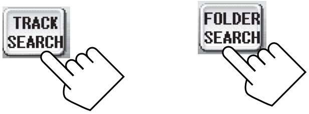
Folder/Track Search

You can select a specific track (for CD/MP3) or folder (for MP3).

1

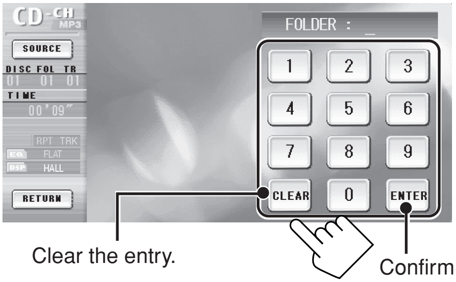


2 (For CD/MP3) (For MP3)


TRACK SEARCH
FOLDER SEARCH

3 **Enter a number, then confirm.**

Ex. when playing MP3:

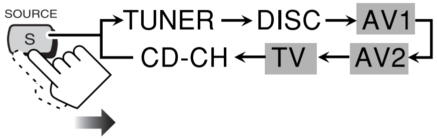

CD-CH MP3
SOURCE
DISC FOL TR
01 01 01
TIME
00'09"
RPT TRK
EQ FLAT
DSP HALL
RETURN
FOLDER : _
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
CLEAR
0
ENTER
Clear the entry.
Confirm

External Component Operations

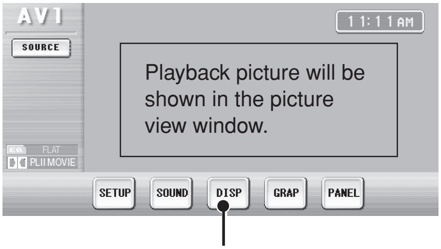
You can connect two video components as the playback components and an optional TV tuner unit (KV-C1000/KV-C1001).

- When you connect the video camera as a rear view camera to the AV INPUT 2 jacks to guide you to back the car, set the usage of the AV INPUT 2 jacks correctly (see page 52).
- For connections, see the Installation/ Connection Manual (separate volume).

1 Select the external source


SOURCE
S
TUNER
DISC
AV1
AV2
TV
CD-CH

- **AV1**: To watch the playback pictures through the component connected to the AV INPUT 1 jacks.
- **AV2**: To watch the playback pictures through the component connected to the AV INPUT 2 jacks.

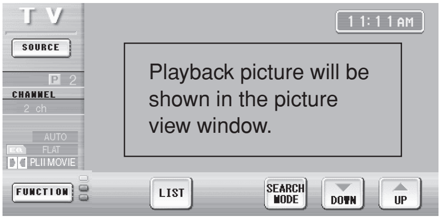

AV1
SOURCE
11:11 AM
FLAT
PLII MOVIE
SETUP
SOUND
DISP
GRAP
PANEL

Playback picture will be shown in the picture view window.

Not available while viewing the playback picture.

Ex. When “AV1” is selected.

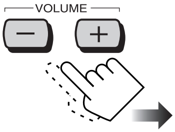
- **TV**: To watch TV programs through the TV tuner unit (KV-C1000/ KV-C1001).


TV
SOURCE
11:11 AM
P 2
CHANNEL
2 ch
AUTO
FLAT
PLII MOVIE
FUNCTION
LIST
SEARCH MODE
DOWN
UP

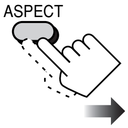
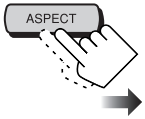
Playback picture will be shown in the picture view window.

To use the TV tuner unit (KV-C1000/KV-C1001), see the following pages.

2 Adjust the volume

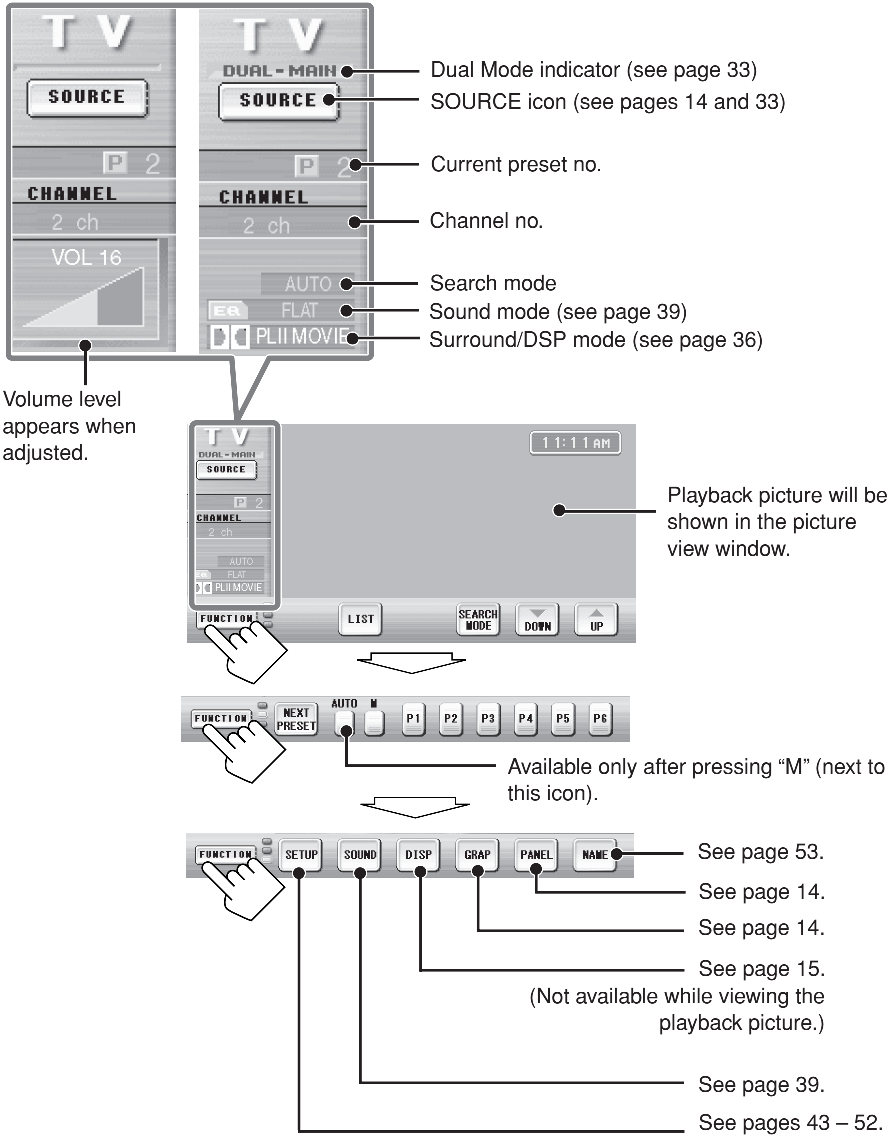


To change the aspect ratio...

On the remote controller	On the main unit
 ASPECT	 ASPECT

- For details, see page 24.
  When you selected “CAMERA” for “AV2 INPUT” (see page 52), you cannot change the aspect ratio of AV2.

TV Tuner Operations


T V
SOURCE
P 2
CHANNEL
2 ch
VOL 16
T V
DUAL - MAIN
SOURCE
P 2
CHANNEL
2 ch
AUTO
EQ FLAT
PLII MOVIE
11:11 AM
FUNCTION
LIST
SEARCH MODE
DOWN
UP
FUNCTION
NEXT PRESET
AUTO
M
P1
P2
P3
P4
P5
P6
FUNCTION
SETUP
SOUND
DISP
GRAP
PANEL
NAME

Dual Mode indicator (see page 33)

SOURCE icon (see pages 14 and 33)

Current preset no.

Channel no.

Search mode

Sound mode (see page 39)

Surround/DSP mode (see page 36)

Volume level appears when adjusted.

Playback picture will be shown in the picture view window.

Available only after pressing “M” (next to this icon).

See page 53.

See page 14.

See page 14.

See page 15.
(Not available while viewing the playback picture.)

See page 39.

See pages 43 – 52.

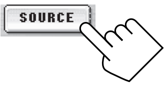
Back to the beginning

Watching TV programs

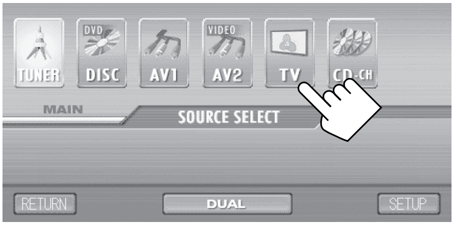
Only for TV tuner unit KV-C1001 users: Before watching TV, select the area (see page 52).

- To tune in to a station using Preset Search, first store your favorite TV stations into memory (12 stations).

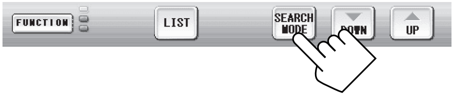
1 Select TV



then

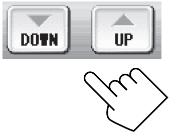

TUNER
DVD
DISC
AV1
VIDEO
AV2
TV
CD-CH
MAIN
SOURCE SELECT
RETURN
DUAL
SETUP

2 Select Search Mode


FUNCTION
LIST
SEARCH MODE
DOWN
UP

AUTO:	To start Auto Search.
MANUAL:	To start Manual Search.
PRESET:	To select preset station numbers (only possible after storing stations in memory).

3 Tune in to a TV station



- **For Auto Search,** press either icon once. "Auto Search" begins. When a station is received, searching stops.
- **For Manual Search,** press either icon repeatedly (or hold) until a station you want is selected.
- **For Preset Search,** press either icon repeatedly until a preset number you want is selected.

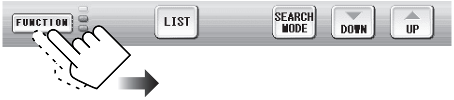
Storing stations in memory

You can preset 12 TV stations.

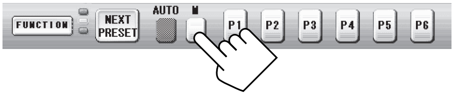
- To tune into a preset station, see "Watching TV programs."

TV station automatic presetting—Auto Memory

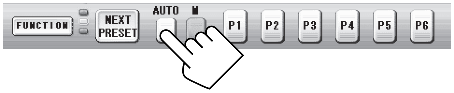
1


FUNCTION
LIST
SEARCH MODE
DOWN
UP

2 **Start Auto Memory.**


FUNCTION
NEXT PRESET
AUTO
M
P1
P2
P3
P4
P5
P6

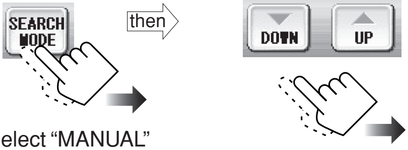
then


FUNCTION
NEXT PRESET
AUTO
M
P1
P2
P3
P4
P5
P6

Local TV stations with the strongest signals are searched and stored automatically.

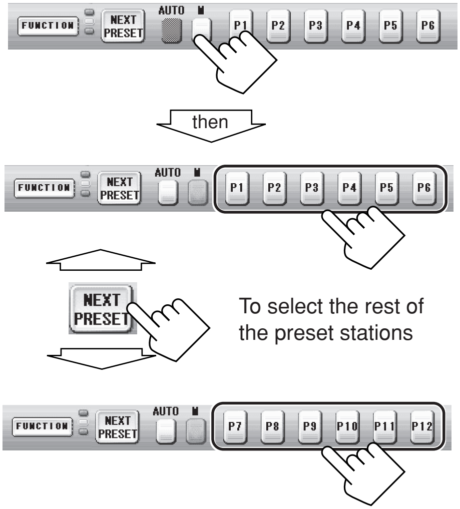
Manual presetting

1 **Tune into a TV station.**


SEARCH MODE
then
DOWN
UP

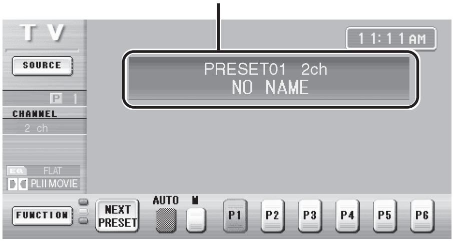
Select “MANUAL” (or “AUTO”).

2 **Store the station into a preset number.**


FUNCTION
NEXT PRESET
AUTO
M
P1
P2
P3
P4
P5
P6
then
P7
P8
P9
P10
P11
P12

To select the rest of the preset stations

Preset station information will be displayed.

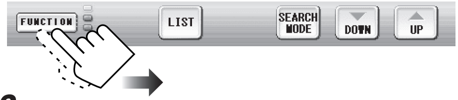

T V
SOURCE
P 1
CHANNEL
2 ch
EQ FLAT
PLII MOVIE
11:11 AM
FUNCTION
NEXT PRESET
AUTO
M
P1
P2
P3
P4
P5
P6

PRESET01 2ch
NO NAME

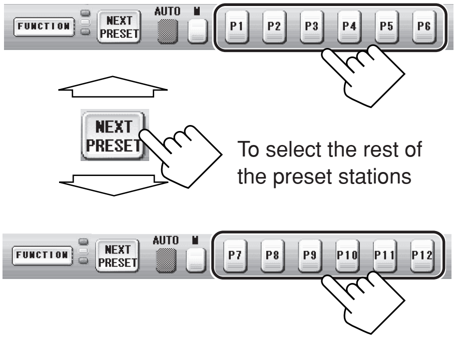
To tune in to a preset station

- See also “Watching TV programs” on page 64.

1


FUNCTION
LIST
SEARCH MODE
DOWN
UP

2 **Select a preset number.**


FUNCTION
NEXT PRESET
AUTO
M
P1
P2
P3
P4
P5
P6
P7
P8
P9
P10
P11
P12

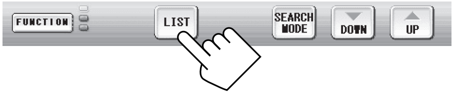
To select the rest of the preset stations

Displaying the preset list LIST

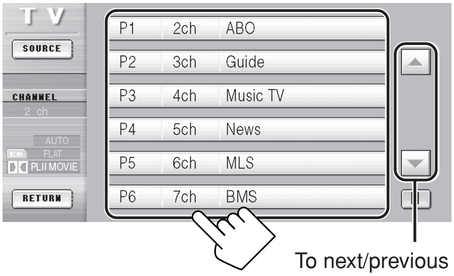
You can store and select the preset station using the preset list on the monitor screen.

To select a preset station using the preset list

1


FUNCTION
LIST
SEARCH MODE
DOWN
UP

2


T V
SOURCE
CHANNEL
2 ch
AUTO
EQ FLAT
PLII MOVIE
RETURN

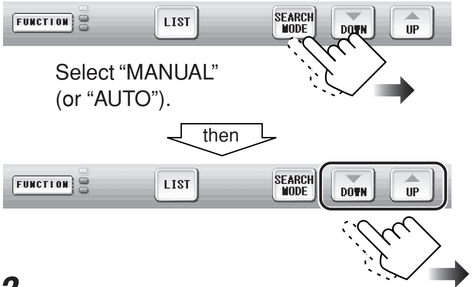
P1	2ch	ABO
P2	3ch	Guide
P3	4ch	Music TV
P4	5ch	News
P5	6ch	MLS
P6	7ch	BMS

To next/previous page of the list

- Preset numbers, channel numbers and assigned names (see page 53) of the preset TV stations are shown on the list.

To store a station using the preset list

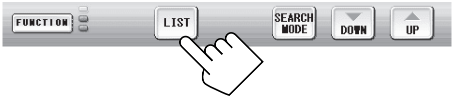
1 **Tune into a TV station.**


FUNCTION
LIST
SEARCH MODE
DOWN
UP

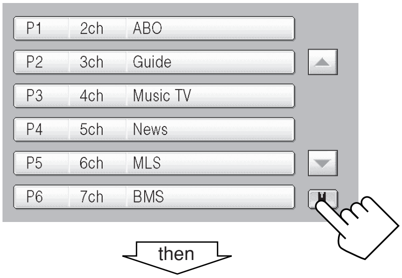
Select "MANUAL" (or "AUTO").

then

2

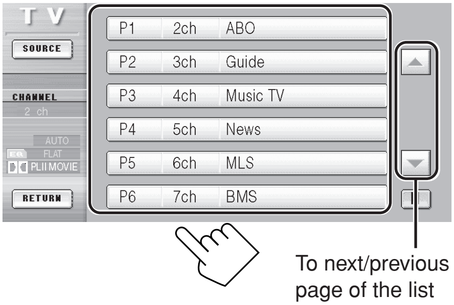

FUNCTION
LIST
SEARCH MODE
DOWN
UP

3 **Store the station into a preset number.**



P1	2ch	ABO
P2	3ch	Guide
P3	4ch	Music TV
P4	5ch	News
P5	6ch	MLS
P6	7ch	BMS

then


T V
SOURCE
CHANNEL
2 ch
AUTO
EQ FLAT
PLII MOVIE
RETURN

P1	2ch	ABO
P2	3ch	Guide
P3	4ch	Music TV
P4	5ch	News
P5	6ch	MLS
P6	7ch	BMS

To next/previous page of the list

Maintenance

How to clean the monitor

When removing stains or dust on the surface, turn off the monitor, then wipe with dry soft cloth.

- Be careful not to scratch the surface when wiping it.
- Do not use the following materials to clean the monitor:
  - Wet cloth
  - Volatile substance such as benzine and thinner
  - Acid detergent, alkaline detergent, and detergent composed of organic substance
- When using chemically processed duster, read its precautions carefully.

How to clean the connectors

Frequent detachment of the monitor will deteriorate the connectors.

To minimize this possibility, periodically wipe the connectors with a cotton swab or cloth moistened with alcohol, being careful not to damage the connectors.

- Attach the blind cover to the main unit whenever the monitor is removed to protect the internal mechanism from dust.

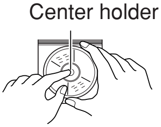
Moisture condensation

Moisture may condense on the lens inside the disc player in the following cases:

- After starting the heater in the car.
- If it becomes very humid inside the car.

Should this occur, the disc player may malfunction. In this case, eject the disc and leave the unit turned on for a few hours until the moisture evaporates.

How to handle discs



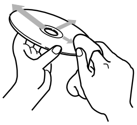
When removing a disc from its case, press down the center holder of the case and lift the disc out, holding it by the edges.

- Always hold the disc by the edges. Do not touch its recording surface.

When storing a disc into its case, gently insert the disc around the center holder (with the printed surface facing up).

- Make sure to store discs into the cases after use.

To keep discs clean

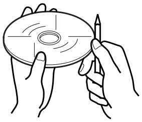


A dirty disc may not play correctly.

If a disc does become dirty, wipe it with a soft cloth in a straight line from center to edge.

- Do not use any solvent (for example, conventional record cleaner, spray, thinner, benzine, etc.) to clean discs.

To play new discs



New discs may have some rough spots around the inner and outer edges. If such a disc is used, this unit may reject the disc.

To remove these rough spots, rub the edges with a pencil or ball-point pen, etc.

More about This Receiver

Operation Methods

- Touch Panel screen goes off if no operations are made on it for about 30 seconds while viewing the playback picture.

Basic Operations

Turning off the power

- If you turn off the power while listening to a disc, disc play will start automatically, next time you turn on the power.

Changing the graphic screen

- If you select one of the graphic screens while playing a video source, no playback picture can be viewed.
- When you change the playback source to one of the video sources, the currently selected graphic screen is temporarily canceled in order to show the playback picture on the picture view window.

Radio Operations

Storing stations in memory

- When SSM is carried out for a band...
  – All stations previously stored for the band are erased and stations are stored newly.
  – Received stations are preset in No.1 (lowest frequency) to No.6 (highest frequency). When SSM is over, the station stored in No.1 will be automatically tuned in.
- When storing a station manually, a previously preset station is erased when a new station is stored in the same preset number.
- Preset stations are erased when the power supply to the memory circuit is interrupted (for example, during battery replacement). If this occurs, preset the stations again.

Basic Disc Operations

General

- In this manual, words “track” and “file” are interchangeably used when referring to MP3 files and their file names.
- When a disc has been already loaded, selecting “DISC” for the playback source starts disc play.

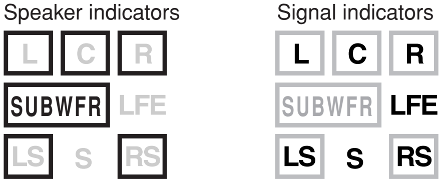
Inserting a disc

- When a disc is inserted upside down, the disc automatically ejects.

Playing a disc

- After loading an MP3 disc, this unit will take a long readout time. This readout time varies among the disc depending on its recording conditions.
- When playing an MP3 disc, sound interruption or skipping may occur. This is caused by the disc played back—its recording condition (missing data, etc.)
- When playing a DVD/VCD, no sound comes out during x5, x10, x20, and x60* Search (* only for DVD).
- Reverse Search stops automatically when it reaches the beginning of the disc. Playback resumes at normal speed.
- For some DVD/VCDs, changing the subtitle language and audio language (or audio channel) without using the disc menu is prohibited.
- One Touch Replay works only within the same title. (For some DVDs, this function does not work.)
- While zoomed in, the picture may look coarse.
- This unit cannot play back the files which have the data such as WMA, WAVE, ATRAC3, MPEG 2.5, etc.

- The speaker/signal indicators appear in the following cases (only for DVD/CD):
  - – When a different type of the digital signal is detected, or
  - – When you start playback or resume playback from pause.



  - – The speaker indicators—frames of “L,” “C,” “R,” “LS,” and “RS” light up, when the corresponding speakers are set to “LARGE” or “SMALL” (see page 51). Sounds come out of the speakers whose speaker indicators is lit on the display.
  - – The SUBWFR indicator lights up when “SUBWOOFER” is set to “YES” (see page 51).
  - – The signal indicators changes its color from white to yellow to indicate the incoming signals—L (front left) / R (front right) / C (center) / LFE (low frequency effect) / LS (left surround) / RS (right surround) / S (monaural surround).

Changing the source

- If you change the source, playback also stops (without ejecting the disc).
  Next time you select “DISC” for the playback source, disc play will start automatically.

Stopping play

- Except for MP3 discs: This unit can remember the end point (until the disc is ejected), and when you start playback again, playback begins from where it has been stopped (Resume play).
- For MP3 discs: This unit can remember the last playing track (until the disc is ejected), and when you start playback again, playback begins from the beginning of the same track.

Ejecting a disc

- If the ejected disc is not removed within 15 seconds, the disc is automatically inserted again into the loading slot to prevent it from dust. (Disc will not play this time.)

Displaying the disc text information

- For MP3: If no ID3 tag is recorded, folder and track names are displayed instead.

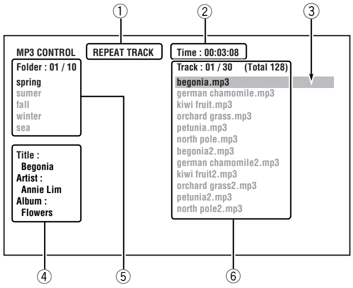
Notes on Recordable (R) and Rewritable (RW) discs

- Use only “finalized” discs.
- For DVD-R/DVD-RW: This unit can play back only discs recorded in the DVD-Video format. (Discs recorded in the DVD-VR format cannot be played.)
- For CD-R/CD-RW: This unit can play back only audio CD (CD-DA) files if a disc includes both audio CD (CD-DA) files and MP3 files.
- This unit can play back multi-session discs; however, unclosed sessions will be skipped while playing.
- Some discs may not play back on this unit because of their disc characteristics, and for the following causes:
  - – Discs are dirty or scratched.
  - – Discs are kept in a place where temperature becomes extremely high.
  - – Moisture condensation on the lens inside the unit.
  - – The pickup lens inside the unit is dirty.
  - – Discs on which the files are written with “Packet Write” method.
  - – There are improper recording conditions (missing data, etc.) or media conditions (stain, scratch, warp, etc.)
- Rewritable discs may require a longer readout time since the reflectance of rewritable discs is lower than that of regular DVD/CDs.
- Do not use following discs:
  - – Discs with stickers, labels, or protective seal stuck to the surface.
  - – Discs on which labels can be directly printed by an ink jet printer.

  Using these discs under high temperatures or high humidity may cause malfunctions or damage to discs.

Notes on MP3 files

- This unit can play back MP3 files only with the extension code <.mp3> (regardless of the letter case—upper/lower).
- This unit cannot play back the files encoded in the following formats—MP3i, MP3 PRO, Layer 1, Layer 2 format.
- This unit can show the names of albums, artists (performer), and tracks of ID3 Tag (Version 1.0 and 1.1).
- This unit can show up to 64 characters on the monitor screen.
- This unit can handle only one-byte characters. Any other characters cannot be correctly displayed.
- This unit can play back MP3 files meeting the conditions below
  – Bit rate: 8 kbps – 320 kbps
  – Sampling frequency:
  48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz (for MPEG-1)
  24 kHz, 22.05 kHz, 16 kHz (for MPEG-2)
  – Disc format:
  ISO 9660 Level 1/ Level 2, Romeo, Joliet, Windows long file name
- The maximum number of characters for file/ folder names varies among the disc format used (includes 4 extension characters—<.mp3>).
  – ISO 9660 Level 1: 12
  – ISO 9660 Level 2: 31
  – Romeo/Windows long file name: 128
  – Joliet: 64
- This unit can recognize 99 folders and 150 files in each folder, which recorded in 10 hierarchies.
- This unit can play back the files recorded in VBR (variable bit rate).
  The files recorded in VBR have a discrepancy in elapsed time display, and do not show the actual elapsed time. Especially, after performing the search function, this difference becomes noticeable.
- Playlist is not available on this unit.
- The search function works but search speed is not constant during search.
- When an optional monitor is connected to the AV OUTPUT terminal, you can view the following MP3 CONTROL screen on the optional monitor.


①
②
③
MP3 CONTROL
REPEAT TRACK
Time : 00:03:08
Folder : 01 / 10
spring
sumer
fall
winter
sea
Track : 01 / 30 (Total 128)
begonia.mp3
german chamomile.mp3
kiwi fruit.mp3
orchard grass.mp3
petunia.mp3
north pole.mp3
begonia2.mp3
german chamomile2.mp3
kiwi fruit2.mp3
orchard grass2.mp3
petunia2.mp3
north pole2.mp3
Title :
Begonia
Artist :
Annie Lim
Album :
Flowers
④
⑤
⑥

① Currently activated play mode
② Elapsed playing time of the current track
③ Cursor (highlighted position): Indicates your selection.
④ ID3 Tag information
⑤ Folder column—folder names
(Ex. The first folder is selected out of 10 folders)
  - Only 5 folders can be listed at a time.

⑥ Track column—track names
(Ex. The first track is selected out of 30 tracks in the current folder. 128 tracks are included in the disc)
  - Only 12 tracks can be listed at a time.
  - Only the first 32 characters can be displayed on the monitor.

  – While playing a CD, the current track and playback mode information is displayed on the optional monitor.

Dual Mode Operations

Adjusting AV OUTPUT volume

- This adjustment does not affect the volume level of the monitor inserted into the optional cradle (KV-CR100).

Surround Mode Operations

- Dolby Digital disc is not always encoded as multi-channel source. If it is not multi-channel encoded, “Dolby Digital” cannot be selected for surround mode.

Sound Mode (iEQ) Operations

- If you do not want to store your current adjustment, but only to apply the adjustment to the current playback source, press RETURN on the monitor screen to go back to the operation screen of the current source. Adjustment you made remains effective until you select a sound mode.

Other Sound Adjustments

- If fader or balance has been set close to its extreme, appropriate surround/DSP effect may not be obtained.
- If you are using a two-speaker system, set the fader level to "0."
- You cannot adjust the input level—Volume Adjustment—of the FM stations. If the source is FM, Volume Adjustment will not be used.

Monitor Adjustments

- You may not able to adjust the brightness in the following case:
  - – You cannot make it brighter when the ambient light is very bright.
  - – You cannot make it darker when the ambient light is very dark.

Initial Setup—DVD MENU

MENU/AUDIO/SUBTITLE LANGUAGE

- When the language you have selected is not recorded on a disc, the original language is automatically used as the initial language. In addition, for some discs, the initial languages settings will not work as you set due to their internal disc programming.
- Language setting change cannot be effective while playing (or pausing). After you change the language setting, eject the disc and insert it (or another disc) again so that your setting takes effect.

MONITOR TYPE

- When you select "16:9 NORMAL" for a picture whose aspect ratio is 4:3, the picture slightly changes due to the process for converting the picture width.
- Even if "4:3 PS" is selected, the screen size may become "4:3 LB" with some DVDs. This depends on how they are recorded.

Initial Setup—AUDIO MENU/PSM

- If you change the "**AMP GAIN**" setting from "HIGH" to "LOW" while the volume level is set higher than "30," the unit automatically changes the volume level to "30."

Other Main Functions

Assigning titles to the sources

- When the CD changer is connected, you can assign titles to CDs in the CD changer. These titles can also be shown on the display if you insert the CDs in this unit.

TV Tuner Operations

Storing stations in memory

- When Auto Memory is carried out...
  - – All TV stations previously stored are erased and TV stations are stored newly.
  - – Received TV stations are preset in No.1 (lowest frequency) to No.12 (highest frequency). When Auto Memory is over, the TV station stored in No.1 will be automatically tuned in.
- When storing a TV station manually, a previously preset TV station is erased when a new TV station is stored in the same preset number.
- Preset TV stations are erased when the power supply to the memory circuit is interrupted (for example, during battery replacement). If this occurs, preset the stations again.

Troubleshooting

What appears to be trouble is not always serious. Check the following points before calling a service center.

General

- **Sound is sometimes interrupted.**
  ⇨ You are driving on rough roads. Stop playback while driving on rough roads.
  ⇨ Disc is scratched.
- **Sound cannot be heard from the speakers.**
  ⇨ Connections are incorrect.
- **No sound comes out of the subwoofer (though it is activated—set to "YES").**
  ⇨ If Pro Logic II is activated with the front/center/rear speaker size all set to "LARGE," no sound comes out.
- **Surround/DSP mode is defeated and cannot be activated.**
  ⇨ It is fixed to "DEFEAT" if only rear speakers are activated (set to "LARGE" or "SMALL").

FM/AM broadcast

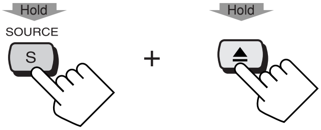
- **SSM automatic presetting does not work.**
  ⇨ Signals are too weak. Store stations manually.
- **Static noise is generated while listening to the radio.**
  ⇨ The antenna is not connected firmly.

Disc playback—DVD/VCD

- **You cannot watch the playback pictures on the additionally purchased monitor (KV-MAV7002) in the optional cradle (KV-CR100).**
  ⇨ If the original monitor is not removed from the main unit, you cannot watch the playback picture while driving.
- **The playback pictures cannot be shown correctly (they scroll vertically).**
  ⇨ The color system (NTSC/PAL) is not correct, see page 44.
- **You cannot change the aspect ratio.**
  ⇨ While the GUI operation is in use, you cannot change the aspect ratio.
- **The left and right edges of the picture are missing on the screen.**
  ⇨ "4:3 PS" is selected when viewing on a conventional TV (aspect ratio 4:3). Select "4:3 LB."
- **Audio language or subtitle language cannot be changed.**
  ⇨ For some DVDs and VCDs, changing the language without using the disc menu is prohibited.

Disc playback—CD/CD-R/CD-RW

- **Sounds are skipped or playback stops suddenly.**
  ⇨ Disc is warped or sticker on the disc comes off. Do not play such a disc.
- **Disc cannot be played back.**
  ⇨ Disc is inserted upside down.
- **Tracks on the CD-R/CD-RW cannot be skipped.**
  ⇨ CD-R/CD-RW is not finalized.
- **Disc cannot be ejected.**
- **Disc is not recognized.**
  ⇨ Disc is locked. Unlock the disc (see page 24).
  ⇨ The main unit may function incorrectly. Press SOURCE and ⏏ at the same time for more than 2 seconds to eject the disc.



Disc playback—MP3

- **Disc cannot be played back.**
  ⇨ MP3 tracks do not have the extension code—<.mp3>.
  ⇨ MP3 tracks are not recorded in the format compliant with ISO 9660 Level 1, ISO 9660 Level 2, Romeo, or Joliet.

- **Noise is generated.**
  ⇨ The current track is not an MP3 file (although it has the extension code—<.mp3>).
- **Elapsed playing time is not correct.**
  ⇨ This sometimes occurs during play. This is caused by how the tracks are recorded on the disc.
- **Correct characters are not displayed.**
  ⇨ This unit can only display a limited number of special characters (see the tables on page 53).

Initial setup—AUDIO MENU/PSM

- **"SPEAKER SIZE" settings change.**
  ⇨ Speaker size settings are very much related to one another. For example, if you set the FRONT speakers to "NONE," you cannot select "NONE" for the REAR speakers.
- **Rear view does not appear when you change the gear lever to the back position.**
  ⇨ "BACK GEAR" is to "OFF." In this case, you have to select "AV2" for the source to watch the rear view.
  ⇨ "BACK GEAR" is to "AUTO," but the back gear wire is not connected to the back lamp. To check whether the wiring is correctly done or not, see page 46.

TV tuner operations

- **TV tuner unit does not work at all.**
  ⇨ Press the reset button of the TV tuner unit.
- **"TV IS NOT CONNECTED" appears on the monitor.**
  ⇨ TV tuner unit is disconnected. Connect it again.
- **Auto Memory does not work.**
  ⇨ Signals are too weak. Store TV stations manually.
- **TV stations cannot be received.**
  ⇨ Only for the TV tuner unit KV-C1001 users: "TV CHANNEL AREA" setting is not correct, see page 52.
- **The TV's main power does not shut off automatically when you change the source from TV to another.**
  ⇨ TV is connected to the TV tuner unit. Connect it to the hideaway unit. Remember that audio/video signals are always transmitted to the TV while it is on.
- **"RESET 8" appears on the display of the main unit.**
  ⇨ This unit is not connected to a TV tuner unit correctly. Connect this unit and the TV tuner unit correctly and press the reset button of the TV tuner unit.

CD changer operations

- **"CD CHANGER IS NOT CONNECTED" appears on the monitor.**
  ⇨ CD changer is disconnected. Connect it again.
- **"NO MAGAZINE" appears on the monitor.**
  ⇨ Magazine is not loaded in the CD changer.
- **"NO FILES" appears on the monitor.**
  ⇨ Playable files are not recorded in the disc.
- **"NO DISC" appears on the monitor.**
  ⇨ No discs are in the magazine or the discs are inserted upside down.
- **"RESET 1" — "RESET 7" appears on the display of the main unit.**
  ⇨ The built-in microcomputer in the CD changer is malfunctioning. Press the reset button of the CD changer.
- **"RESET 8" appears on the display of the main unit.**
  ⇨ This unit is not connected to a CD changer correctly. Connect this unit and the CD changer correctly and press the reset button of the CD changer.

Additional Information

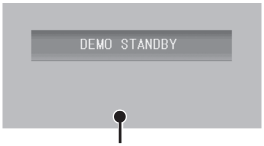
Preset iEQ mode

The table below shows the preset frequency level settings for each iEQ mode.

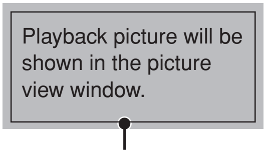
Sound	Preset equalizing values				
Mode	100 Hz	300 Hz	1 kHz	3 kHz	10 kHz
FLAT	00	00	00	00	00
HARD ROCK	+03	+02	00	+01	+01
R&B	+03	+02	00	+01	+03
POP	00	+01	00	+01	+02
JAZZ	+03	+02	+01	+02	+02
DANCE	+04	+01	–02	00	+01
COUNTRY	+02	+01	00	+01	+02
REGGAE	+03	00	+01	+02	+03
CLASSIC	+02	+02	00	+01	00
USER1	00	00	00	00	00
USER2	00	00	00	00	00
USER3	00	00	00	00	00

Graphic screens

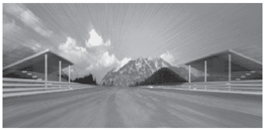
You can select one of the following graphic screens. For details, see page 14.



You can activate the display demonstration. To cancel it, select any other graphic screen.


Playback picture will be shown in the picture view window.

While playing a video source (except DVD/VCD), select no graphic screen (in other words, select the actual playback screen); otherwise, you cannot view the playback pictures.



LANGUAGE CODES

Code	Language
AA	Afar
AB	Abkhazian
AF	Afrikaans
AM	Ameharic
AR	Arabic
AS	Assamese
AY	Aymara
AZ	Azerbaijani
BA	Bashkir
BE	Byelorussian
BG	Bulgarian
BH	Bihari
BI	Bislama
BN	Bengali, Bangla
BO	Tibetan
BR	Breton
CA	Catalan
CO	Corsican
CS	Czech
CY	Welsh
DA	Danish
DZ	Bhutani
EL	Greek
EO	Esperanto
ET	Estonian
EU	Basque
FA	Persian
FI	Finnish
FJ	Fiji
FO	Faroese
FY	Frisian
GA	Irish
GD	Scots Gaelic
GL	Galician
GN	Guarani
GU	Gujarati
HA	Hausa
HI	Hindi
HR	Croatian
HU	Hungarian
HY	Armenian
IA	Interlingua
IE	Interlingue
IK	Inupiak
IN	Indonesian
IS	Icelandic
IW	Hebrew
JI	Yiddish
JW	Javanese
KA	Georgian
KK	Kazakh
KL	Greenlandic
KM	Cambodian
KN	Kannada
KO	Korean (KOR)
KS	Kashmiri
KU	Kurdish
KY	Kirghiz
LA	Latin
LN	Lingala
LO	Laothian
LT	Lithuanian
LV	Latvian, Lettish
MG	Malagasy
MI	Maori
MK	Macedonian
ML	Malayalam
MN	Mongolian
MO	Moldavian
MR	Marathi
MS	Malay (MAY)
MT	Maltese
MY	Burmese
NA	Nauru
NE	Nepali
NL	Dutch
NO	Norwegian
OC	Occitan
OM	(Afan) Oromo
OR	Oriya
PA	Panjabi
PL	Polish
PS	Pashto, Pushto
PT	Portuguese
QU	Quechua
RM	Rhaeto-Romance
RN	Kirundi
RO	Rumanian
RU	Russian
RW	Kinyarwanda
SA	Sanskrit
SD	Sindhi
SG	Sangho
SH	Serbo-Croatian
SI	Singhalese
SK	Slovak
SL	Slovenian
SM	Samoan
SN	Shona
SO	Somali
SQ	Albanian
SR	Serbian
SS	Siswati
ST	Sesotho
SU	Sundanese
SV	Swedish
SW	Swahili
TA	Tamil
TE	Telugu
TG	Tajik
TH	Thai
TI	Tigrinya
TK	Turkmen
TL	Tagalog
TN	Setswana
TO	Tonga
TR	Turkish
TS	Tsonga
TT	Tatar
TW	Twi
UK	Ukrainian
UR	Urdu
UZ	Uzbek
VI	Vietnamese
VO	Volapuk
WO	Wolof
XH	Xhosa
YO	Yoruba
ZU	Zulu

Specifications

Having TROUBLE with operation?
Please reset your unit.
Refer to page of How to reset your unit.

Main unit

AUDIO AMPLIFIER SECTION

Maximum Power Output:
Front: 50 W per channel
Rear: 50 W per channel
Center: 35 W
Continuous Power Output (RMS):
Front: 19 W per channel into 4 Ω, 40 Hz to 20 000 Hz at no more than 0.8% total harmonic distortion.
Rear: 19 W per channel into 4 Ω, 40 Hz to 20 000 Hz at no more than 0.8% total harmonic distortion.
Center: 15 W into 4 Ω, 40 Hz to 20 000 Hz at no more than 0.8% total harmonic distortion.
Load Impedance: 4 Ω (4 Ω to 8 Ω allowance)
Equalizer Control Range:
Frequencies: 100 Hz, 300 Hz, 1 kHz, 3 kHz, 10 kHz
Level: ±10 dB
Frequency Response: 40 Hz to 20 000 Hz
Signal-to-Noise Ratio: 70 dB

TUNER SECTION

Frequency Range:
FM: 87.5 MHz to 108.0 MHz
AM: 531 kHz to 1 602 kHz

[FM Tuner]

Usable Sensitivity: 11.3 dBf (1.0 µV/75 Ω)
50 dB Quieting Sensitivity: 16.3 dBf (1.8 µV/75 Ω)
Alternate Channel Selectivity (400 kHz): 65 dB
Frequency Response: 40 Hz to 15 000 Hz
Stereo Separation: 35 dB
Capture Ratio: 1.5 dB

[AM Tuner]

Sensitivity: 20 µV
Selectivity: 35 dB

DVD/CD PLAYER SECTION

Signal Detection System: Non-contact optical pickup (semiconductor laser)
Number of channels: 2 channels (stereo)
Frequency Response:
DVD, fs=48 kHz: 16 Hz to 22 000 Hz
DVD, fs=96 kHz: 16 Hz to 44 000 Hz
VCD, CD, MP3: 16 Hz to 20 000 Hz
Dynamic Range: 96 dB
Signal-to-Noise Ratio: 98 dB
Wow and Flutter: Less than measurable limit
MP3 Recording Format:
MPEG 1/2 Audio Layer 3
Max. Bit rate: 320 kbps

REMOVABLE MONITOR

Screen Size: 7 inch wide liquid crystal display
Number of Pixel: 336 960 pixels
(480 vertical × 234 horizontal × 3)
Drive Method:
TFT (Thin Film Transistor) active matrix format
Color System: PAL/NTSC
Aspect Ratio: 16:9 (wide)
Allowable Storage Temperature:
–10°C to +60°C
Allowable Operating Temperature:
0°C to +40°C
Dimensions (W × H × D):
170 mm × 141 mm × 15 mm
Mass: 475 g

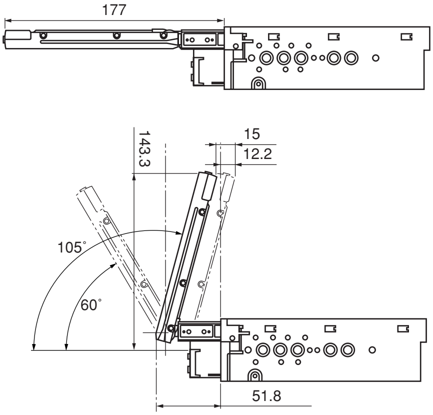
GENERAL

Power Requirement:
Operating Voltage: DC 14.4 V
(11 V to 16 V allowance)
Grounding System: Negative ground
Allowable Operating Temperature:
0°C to +40°C

Dimensions (W × H × D):
Installation Size:
- With sleeve-mounting plate Type B (standard)
  182 mm × 52 mm × 165 mm
- With sleeve-mounting plate Type A
  182 mm × 52 mm × 160 mm

Panel Size: 188 mm × 58 mm × 14 mm
Mass: 2.25 kg (including monitor)

Required space for the monitor ejection



mm

CAUTION: When ejecting the monitor, keep an open space for the monitor to come out. If not, the monitor may obstruct the steering wheel and gearshift lever operations, as this may result in a traffic accident.

Hideaway unit

Input Terminals:
AV INPUT 1/2:
Audio: 0.5 Vrms (Left/Right)
Video (composite): 1 Vp-p/75 Ω
Output Terminals (Level/Impedance):
AV OUTPUT:
Audio: 2.0 V/20 kΩ load (full scale)
Video (composite): 1 Vp-p/75 Ω
PRE OUT:
Audio: 2.0 V/20 kΩ load (full scale)
Other Terminals:
System integration (TO MAIN UNIT)
FM/AM antenna (FM/AM ANTENNA)
AV bus (AV BUS)
CD changer (TO CHANGER)
Rear view camera/Center speaker (BACKCAMERA REMOTE/CENTER SPEAKER)
Power cord (POWER)

Dimensions (W × H × D):
230 mm × 35 mm × 181 mm
Mass: 1.3 kg

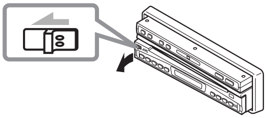
Design and specifications are subject to change without notice.

About mistracking:

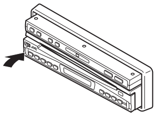
Mistracking may result from driving on extremely rough roads. This does not damage the unit and the disc, but will be annoying.
It is recommended to stop disc play while driving on such rough roads.

Removing the control panel

To detach the control panel



To attach the control panel



JVC

EN, CT, TH

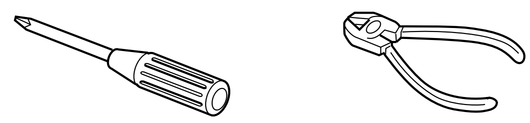
© 2004 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

1004MNMMDWJEIN

JVC

KD-AV7005
Installation/Connection Manual
安裝/連接手冊
การติดตั้ง/คู่มือการติดตั้ง

LVT1173-002A
[U]



1004MNMMDWJEIN
EN, CT, TH

© 2004 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

ENGLISH

This unit is designed to operate only on **12 V DC, NEGATIVE ground electrical systems**. If your vehicle does not have this system, a voltage inverter is required, which can be purchased at JVC car audio dealers.

WARNINGS

- DO NOT install any unit in locations where;
  - it may obstruct the steering wheel and gearshift lever operations, as this may result in a traffic accident.
  - it may obstruct the operation of safety devices such as air bags, as this may result in a fatal accident.
  - it may obstruct visibility.
- DO NOT operate any unit while manipulating the steering wheel, as this may result in a traffic accident.
- The driver must not watch the monitor while driving.
  If the driver watches the monitor while driving, it may lead to carelessness and cause an accident.
- If you need to operate the main unit while driving, be sure to look ahead carefully or you may be involved in a traffic accident.
- If the parking brake is not engaged, “DRIVER MUST NOT WATCH THE MONITOR WHILE DRIVING.” appears on the monitor, and no playback picture will be shown.
  - This warning appears only when the parking brake wire is connected to the parking brake system built in the car.

Notes on mounting the hideaway unit

- Mount on a firm surface, under the front seat or in the trunk.
- Since heat is generated inside the unit, do not mount near inflammable objects. In addition, mount in an area that will not prevent the unit from dissipating heat.
- Do not mount the unit in the places which are subject to heat such as near a radiator, in a glove compartment or in insulated area such as under a car mat that will prevent the unit from dissipating heat.

Notes on electrical connections

- Replace the fuse with one of the specified rating. If the fuse blows frequently, consult your JVC car audio dealer.
- Maximum input of the speakers should be more than 50 W at the rear, 50 W at the front, and 35 W at the center, with an impedance of **4** Ω to **8** Ω.
- **Be sure to ground each unit to the car’s chassis.**
- The main unit and the hideaway unit become very hot after use. Be careful not to get burned when removing them.
- To prevent short-circuit, cover the terminals of the UNUSED leads with insulating tape.
- **Take preventative measures to avoid unexpected disconnection of the cords and damage to the cords. This trouble may happen while moving or reclining the seat.**

中文

本機僅可使用直流 **12V，負極接地的電源系統**。如果您的車輛沒有這一電源系統，則需要一個電壓變換器，可以在 JVC 汽車音響分銷商處買到。

警告

- 不要將本機安裝在以下位置以致；
  - 阻礙方向盤和變速杆的操作，因為這可能會導致交通意外。
  - 阻礙保險氣袋等安全裝備的操作，因為這可能會導致致命意外。
  - 阻礙視線。
- 不要在操縱方向盤時操作本機，因為這可能會導致交通意外。
- 司機在駕駛時不可以觀看屏幕。
  若司機在駕駛時觀看屏幕，可能會導致粗心和引起意外。
- 若您需要在駕駛時操作主機，請務必小心注意前方，否則您可能會導致意外。
- 若沒有按停車制動器，屏幕將會顯示 “DRIVER MUST NOT WATCH THE MONITOR WHILE DRIVING. （司機不可以在駕駛時觀看屏幕。）” 並且不會顯示播放畫面。
  - 此警告只有當停車制動器電線被連接至內置在車內的停車制動系統時方會被顯示。

裝配隱蔽組件時注意

- 裝配在堅固的表面，例如前座底下或在行李箱內。
- 由於機身會產生熱量，不要將本機裝配在易燃物體附近。
  除此以外，將它裝配在不會妨礙它散熱的地方。
- 不要將本機裝配在受熱的地方，例如靠近散熱器、在儀表板雜物箱內或裝配在隔熱的地方，例如在汽車膠皮踏墊下，因為這會阻礙本機散熱。

進行電路連接時注意

- 把保險絲更換為額定負荷值的保險絲。如果保險絲經常燒壞，請向 JVC 汽車音響分銷商詢問。
- 揚聲器的最大輸入應該是後置揚聲器超過 50 W、前置揚聲器為50 W， 以及中央揚聲器為35 W，其抗阻為 **4** Ω 至 **8** Ω。
- **務必將每一機件的地至接至車身。**
- 主機和隱蔽組件在使用過後會變得很熱。拆卸時小心別被燙傷。
- 為防止電源短路，請用絕緣膠帶將沒有使用的電線終端包蓋好。
- **採取一些預防措施以避免電纜無意中鬆脫和避免損壞電纜。這情形可能會在移動座位或調節座位傾斜度時發生。**

ไทย

ชุดประกอบนี้ได้รับการออกแบบมาเพื่อใช้งานกับระบบกระแสไฟฟ้าสายดินขั้วลบกระแสตรง **12 โวลท์ หากรถยนต์ของคุณไม่ได้ใช้ระบบนี้ ต้องใช้เครื่องแปลงกระแสไฟช่วย** ซึ่งสามารถหาซื้อได้จากร้านขายเครื่องเสียงรถยนต์ JVC

คำเตือน

- อย่าติดตั้งเครื่องไว้ในตำแหน่งที่
  - อาจกีดขวางพวงมาลัย และคันเกียร์ เพราะอาจก่อให้เกิดอุบัติเหตุทางรถยนต์ได้
  - อาจกีดขวางการทำงานของอุปกรณ์นิรภัย เช่น ถุงลมนิรภัย เพราะอาจก่อให้เกิดอุบัติเหตุร้ายแรงได้
  - อาจกีดขวางทัศนะวิสัยในการมองได้
- อย่าใช้เครื่อง ขณะหมุนพวงมาลัย เพราะอาจก่อ ห้เกิดอุบัติเหตุทางรถยนต์ได้
- ผู้ขับต้องไม่มองจอภาพ ขณะขับขี่รถยนต์
  หากมองจอภาพขณะขับขี่ อาจก่อให้เกิดความประมาท และอุบัติเหตุได้
- หากต้องการใช้เครื่องขณะขับขี่ จะต้องแน่ใจว่ามองถนนอย่างระมัดระวัง ไม่เช่นนั้นอาจก่อให้เกิดอุบัติเหตุทางรถยนต์ได้
- หากไม่ได้ขึ้นเบรกมือไว้ ข้อความว่า “DRIVER MUST NOT WATCH THE MONITOR WHILE DRIVING. (ผู้ขับต้องไม่มองจอภาพขณะขับขี่)” จะปรากฏขึ้นบนหน้าจอ และไม่มีภาพแสดงบนหน้าจอ
  - คำเตือนนี้จะปรากฏขึ้น เมื่อต่อสายเบรกมือ กับระบบเบรกมือในรถไว้เท่านั้น

ข้อมูลในการติดตั้งอุปกรณ์สำหรับติดตั้งด้านใน

- ติดตั้งบนผิววัสดุที่มั่นคงใต้เบาะหน้า หรือในฝากระโปรงท้ายรถ
- เนื่องจากเครื่องจะร้อน ดังนั้นอย่าติดตั้งอุปกรณ์ชิ้นนี้ไว้ใกล้วัสดุติดไฟ ควรติดตั้งไว้ในบริเวณที่ไม่ปิดกั้นการกระจายความร้อน
- อย่าติดตั้งอุปกรณ์นี้ไว้ในบริเวณที่มีความร้อน เช่น ใกล้หม้อน้ำ ในช่องเก็บของ หรือในบริเวณที่หุ้มฉนวน เช่น ใต้พรมซึ่งจะทำให้เครื่องไม่สามารถกระจายความร้อนได้

ข้อมูลในการต่อระบบไฟ

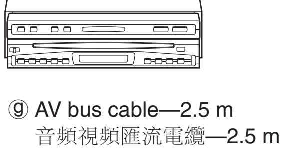
- เปลี่ยนฟิวส์ที่มีกำลังไฟตามที่กำหนด หากฟิวส์ขาดบ่อย ให้ปรึกษาตัวแทนจำหน่ายเครื่องเสียงของ JVC
- กำลังขับสูงสุดของลำโพงไม่ควรเกิน 50 W สำหรับลำโพงหลัง 50 W สำหรับลำโพงหน้า และ 35 W สำหรับลำโพงกลาง โดยมีค่าความต้านทาน **4** Ω ถึง **8** Ω
- **ดูให้แน่ใจว่าได้เดินสายดินต่อระหว่างอุปกรณ์แต่ละชิ้น กับตัวถังรถยนต์แล้ว**
- ตัวเครื่องและอุปกรณ์ติดตั้งด้านในจะร้อนจัดหลังจากการใช้งาน ระวังอย่าให้ถูกมือเพราะอาจทำให้พองได้ ระหว่างถอดอุปกรณ์ดังกล่าวออก
- เพื่อป้องกันไฟลัดวงจร ให้พันขั้วสายตะกั่วที่ไม่ใช้งาน ด้วยเทปพันสายไฟ
- **ขอให้ใช้มาตรการป้องกัน เพื่อหลีกเลี่ยงไม่ให้สายไฟหลุด และเกิดความเสียหายขึ้นได้ ปัญหานี้อาจเกิดขึ้นได้ระหว่างขยับ หรือปรับเอนเบาะนั่ง**

Parts list

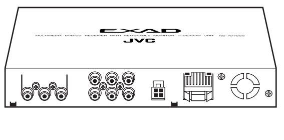
零件表

รายการส่วนประกอบ

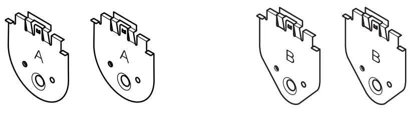
ⓐ Main unit
主機
ตัวเครื่อง



ⓑ Hideaway unit
隱蔽組件
อุปกรณ์ติดตั้งด้านใน



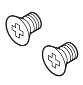
ⓒ Sleeve-mounting plates
外套機殼裝配框
แผ่นติดตั้งปลอกหุ้มเครื่อง



Type A
類型 A
แบบ A

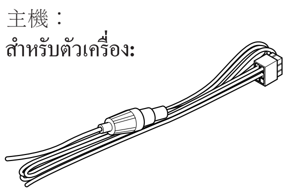
Type B
類型 B
แบบ B

ⓓ Fixing screws—M5 x 6 mm
定位螺絲釘—M5 x 6 mm
สกรูยึด—M5 x 6 มม

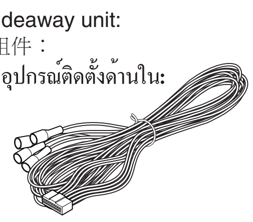


ⓔ, ⓕ
Power cords
電路連接用的配線束
สายไฟ

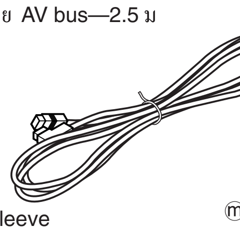
ⓔ For main unit:
主機：
สำหรับตัวเครื่อง:



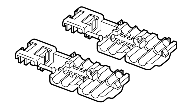
ⓕ For hideaway unit:
隱蔽組件：
สำหรับอุปกรณ์ติดตั้งด้านใน:



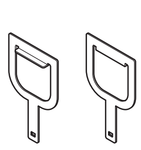
ⓖ AV bus cable—2.5 m
音頻視頻匯流電纜—2.5 m
สาย AV bus—2.5 ม



ⓗ Crimp connectors
卷曲連接器
กล่องต่อสาย

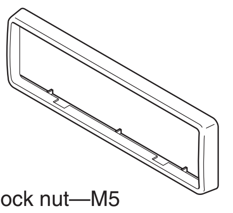


ⓘ Handles
板條型把手
คันบังคับ

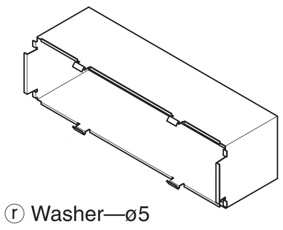


ⓙ Soft case
軟質箱子
กล่องควบคุมซีดี

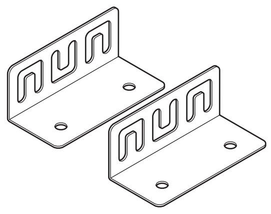
ⓚ Trim plate
裝飾框
แผ่นโลหะขอบแต่ง



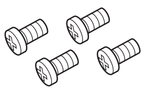
ⓛ Sleeve
外套機殼
ปลอกหุ้ม



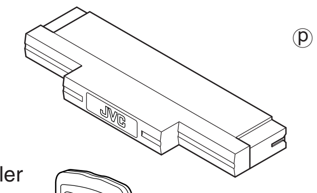
ⓜ Brackets
托座
เหล็กยึด



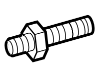
ⓝ Fixing screws—M4 x 8 mm
定位螺絲釘—M4 x 8 mm
สกรูยึด —M4 x 8 มม



ⓞ Blind cover
暗蓋
ฝาครอบด้านหน้า



ⓟ Mounting bolt—M5 x 20 mm
緊固螺栓—M5 x 20 mm
สลักติด—M5 x 20 มม

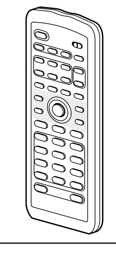


ⓠ Lock nut—M5
鎖定螺母—M5
นอตล็อค–M5

ⓡ Washer—ø5
墊圈—ø5
ประเก็นวงแหวน—ø5

ⓢ Rubber cushion
橡膠防震墊
ยางกันกระแทก

ⓣ Remote controller
遙控器
รีโมตคอนโทรล



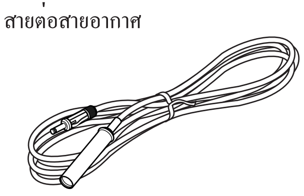
RM-RK220

ⓤ Battery
電池
แบตเตอรี่

CR2025

ⓥ Center speaker/rear camera cord
中央揚聲器/後錄像機電纜
สายลำโพงกลาง/กล้องหลัง

ⓦ Extension antenna cord
延長天線電纜
สายต่อสายอากาศ



SYSTEM CONNECTIONS

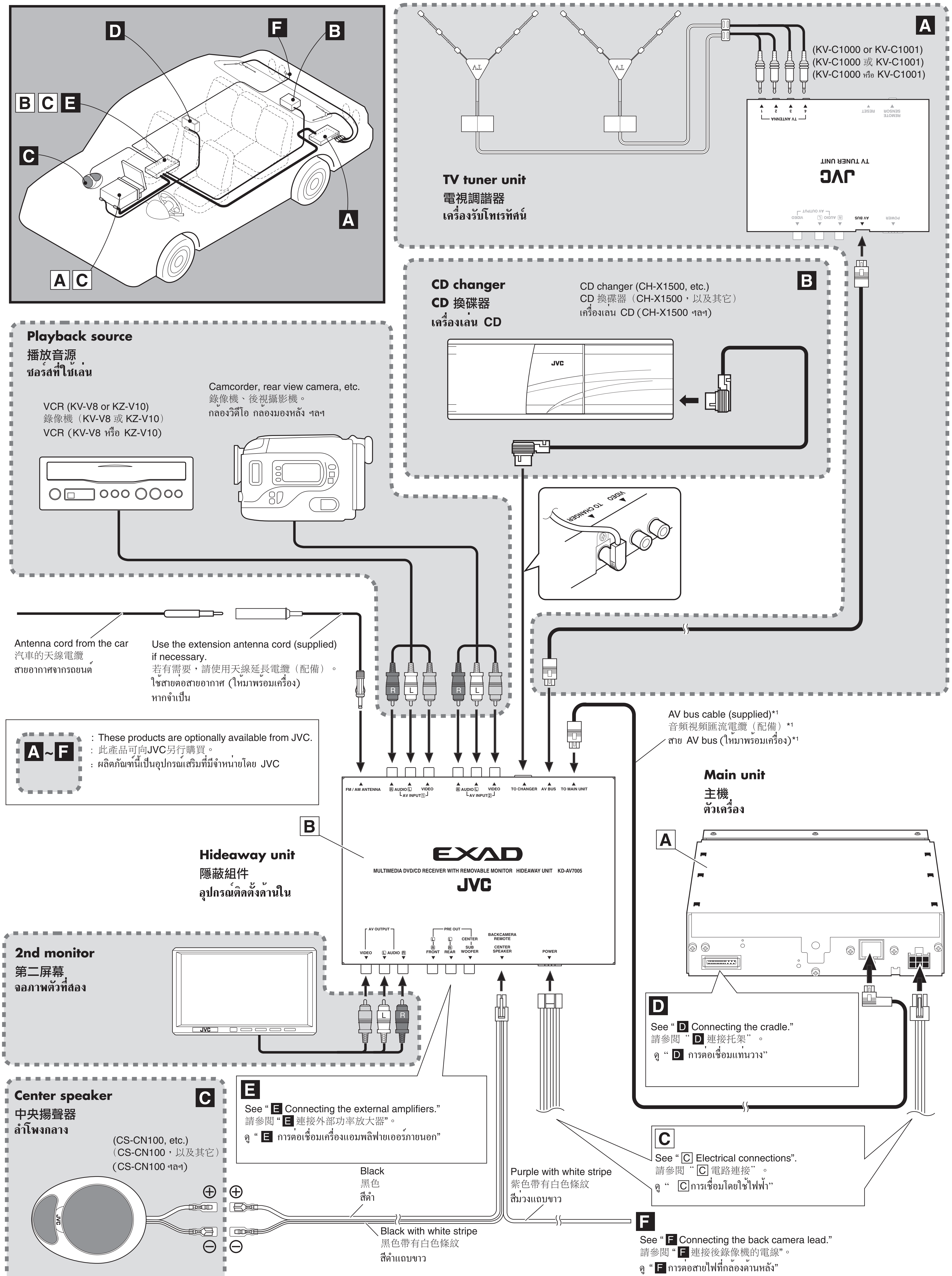
- For A, B, C, D, E, F, more information are given on the following pages.

系統連接

- 請參閱以下頁數有關 A、B、C、D、E、F 的更多詳情。

การต่อเชื่อมระบบ

- สำหรับ A, B, C, D, E, F ดูรายละเอียดเพิ่มเติมในหน้าถัดไป


D
F
B
B C E
C
A
A C
A
(KV-C1000 or KV-C1001)
(KV-C1000 或 KV-C1001)
(KV-C1000 หรือ KV-C1001)
TV tuner unit
電視調諧器
เครื่องรับโทรทัศน์
TV TUNER UNIT
JVC
B
CD changer
CD 換碟器
เครื่องเล่น CD
CD changer (CH-X1500, etc.)
CD 換碟器（CH-X1500，以及其它）
เครื่องเล่น CD (CH-X1500 ฯลฯ)
JVC
TO CHANGER
VIDEO
Playback source
播放音源
ซอร์สที่ใช้เล่น
VCR (KV-V8 or KZ-V10)
錄像機（KV-V8 或 KZ-V10）
VCR (KV-V8 หรือ KZ-V10)
Camcorder, rear view camera, etc.
錄像機、後視攝影機。
กล้องวิดีโอ กล้องมองหลัง ฯลฯ
Antenna cord from the car
汽車的天線電纜
สายอากาศจากรถยนต์
Use the extension antenna cord (supplied) if necessary.
若有需要，請使用天線延長電纜（配備）。
ใช้สายต่อสายอากาศ (ให้มาพร้อมเครื่อง) หากจำเป็น
R
L
R
L
AV bus cable (supplied)*1
音頻視頻匯流電纜（配備）*1
สาย AV bus (ให้มาพร้อมเครื่อง)*1
Main unit
主機
ตัวเครื่อง
A
B
Hideaway unit
隱蔽組件
อุปกรณ์ติดตั้งด้านใน
FM / AM ANTENNA
R AUDIO L
VIDEO
AV INPUT①
R AUDIO L
VIDEO
AV INPUT②
TO CHANGER
AV BUS
TO MAIN UNIT
EXAD
MULTIMEDIA DVD/CD RECEIVER WITH REMOVABLE MONITOR HIDEAWAY UNIT KD-AV7005
JVC
AV OUTPUT
VIDEO
L AUDIO R
PRE OUT
L R FRONT
L R REAR
CENTER SUB WOOFER
BACKCAMERA REMOTE
CENTER SPEAKER
POWER
2nd monitor
第二屏幕
จอภาพตัวที่สอง
JVC
L
R
D
Center speaker
中央揚聲器
ลำโพงกลาง
C
(CS-CN100, etc.)
（CS-CN100，以及其它）
(CS-CN100 ฯลฯ)
JVC
⊕
⊕
⊖
⊖
E
Black
黑色
สีดำ
Black with white stripe
黑色帶有白色條紋
สีดำแถบขาว
Purple with white stripe
紫色帶有白色條紋
สีม่วงแถบขาว
C
F

A ~ F : These products are optionally available from JVC.
: 此產品可向JVC另行購買。
: ผลิตภัณฑ์นี้เป็นอุปกรณ์เสริมที่มีจำหน่ายโดย JVC

See " D Connecting the cradle."
請參閱 " D 連接托架" 。
ดู " D การต่อเชื่อมแท่นวาง"

See " E Connecting the external amplifiers."
請參閱 " E 連接外部功率放大器"。
ดู " E การต่อเชื่อมเครื่องแอมพลิฟายเออร์ภายนอก"

See " C Electrical connections".
請參閱 " C 電路連接" 。
ดู " C การเชื่อมโดยใช้ไฟฟ้า"

See " F Connecting the back camera lead."
請參閱 " F 連接後錄像機的電線"。
ดู " F การต่อสายไฟที่กล้องด้านหลัง"

*1 Extension AV bus cable (KV-U1013: not supplied) can be used when the supplied AV bus cable is not long enough.
*1 若配備的音頻視頻匯流電纜不夠長，用戶可以使用延長音頻視頻匯流電纜（KV-U1013：沒有配備）。
*1 สายต่อ AV bus (KV-U1013: ไม่ได้มาพร้อมเครื่อง) นำมาใช้ได้ เมื่อสาย AV bus ที่ให้มาพร้อมเครื่องยาวไม่พอ

INSTALLATION

The following illustration shows a typical installation. However, you should make adjustments corresponding to your specific car. If you have any questions or require information regarding installation kits, consult your JVC car audio dealer or a company supplying kits.

安裝

以下插圖顯示典型的安裝方法。無論如何，您仍然需要要您的汽車做些少調整。若您有任何疑問或需要安裝工具的資料，請向 JVC 汽車音響分銷商或供應有關安裝工具的公司詢問。

การติดตั้ง

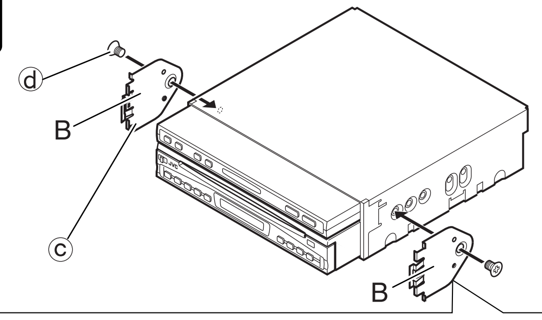
ภาพตัวอย่างต่อไปนี้แสดงถึงการติดตั้งแบบทั่วไป อย่างไรก็ตามท่านควรปรับแต่งให้เหมาะสมกับรถยนต์ หากมีคำถาม หรือต้องการข้อมูลเกี่ยวกับชุดอุปกรณ์ติดตั้ง ให้ปรึกษาตัวแทนจำหน่ายเครื่องเสียงรถยนต์ของ JVC หรือบริษัทผู้ขายอุปกรณ์ดังกล่าว

A Installing the main unit (in-dash mounting)

A 安裝主機（裝設，固定在儀表板內）

A การติดตั้งตัวเครื่อง (การประกอบแผงหน้าปัด)

1

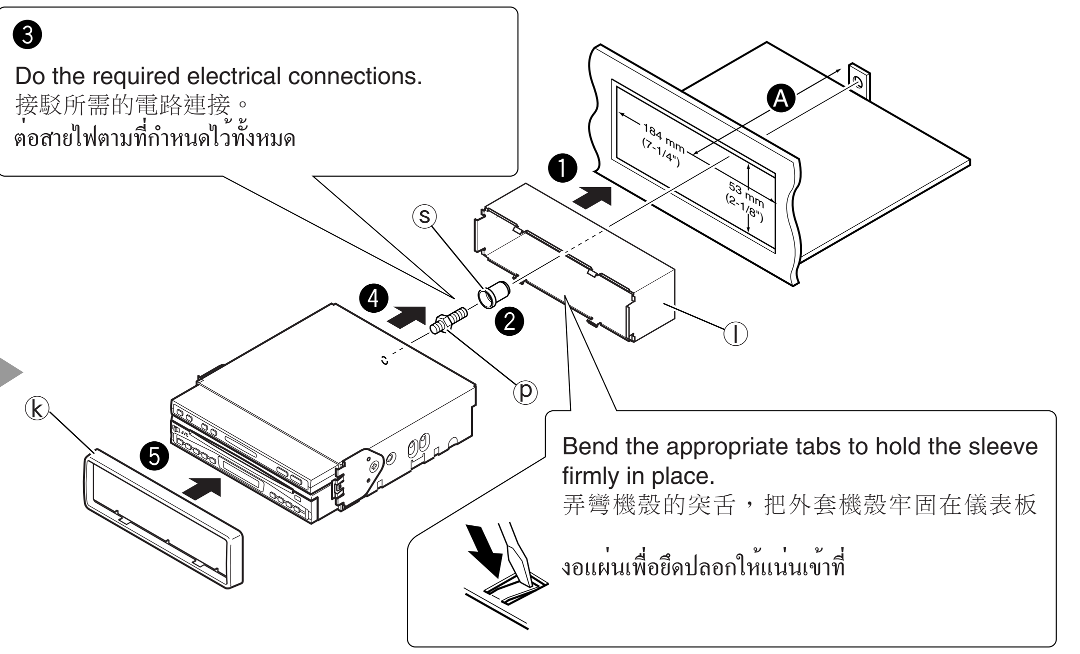


Attach the sleeve-mounting plates—either type, corresponding to the depth of the mounting area (Ⓐ: see the next step).
Use Type B when Ⓐ is 165 mm while use Type A when Ⓐ is less than 165 mm

裝上外套機殼裝配框—選配合裝配位置深度的類型
(Ⓐ：參閱下一步驟）。
使用類型 B 若 Ⓐ 是165 mm，或 A 若 Ⓐ 少過165 mm。

ติดแผ่นที่ใช้ในการติดตั้งปลอกหุ้มแบบใดก็ได้ ให้พอดีกับความลึกของช่องที่จะติดตั้ง
(Ⓐ : ดูขั้นตอนถัดไป)
ใช้แบบ B เมื่อ Ⓐ มีขนาด 165 มม และใช้แบบ A เมื่อ Ⓐ มีขนาดน้อยกว่า 165 มม

2



❸ Do the required electrical connections.
接駁所需的電路連接。
ต่อสายไฟตามที่กำหนดไว้ทั้งหมด

Bend the appropriate tabs to hold the sleeve firmly in place.
弄彎機殼的突舌，把外套機殼牢固在儀表板

งอแผ่นเพื่อยึดปลอกให้แน่นเข้าที่

Removing the main unit

Before removing the main unit, release the rear section.

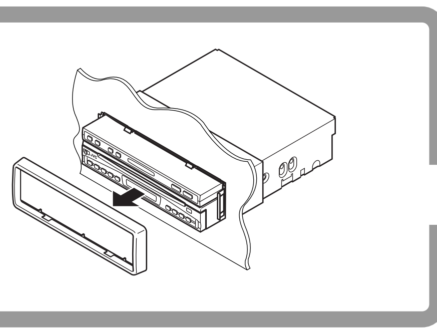
拆卸主機

拆卸主機前，先鬆開本機後部的固定和連接部分。

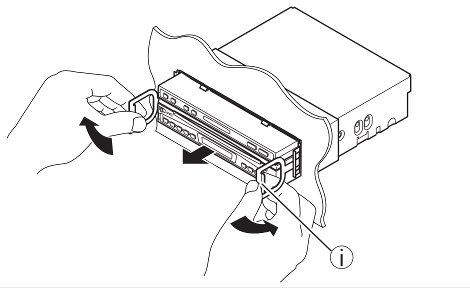
การถอดชุดประกอบ

ก่อนถอดชุดประกอบ ให้ปลดหน้าตัดส่วนท้ายก่อน

1



2

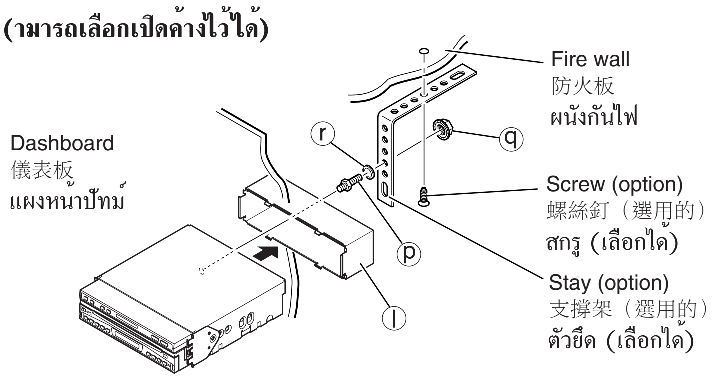


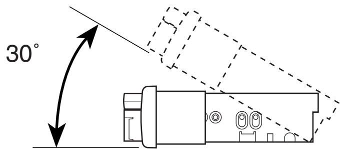
Insert the two handles, then pull them as illustrated so that the unit can be removed.

按圖所示，將兩片板條型把手插入卡槽，然後輕穩地從兩側向外拉兩片把手，本機隨之拉出。

ใส่คันบังคับ 2 อันลงในร่องสำหรับใช้พันลวดดังภาพ จากนั้นให้เลื่อนชุดประกอบออก ในขณะที่ค่อยๆ ดึงคันบังคับทั้งสองออกจากกัน

When using the optional stay / 若選用支撐架 / เมื่อใช้ตัวยึดแบบเลือกได้ (วมารถเลือกเปิดค้างไว้ได้)

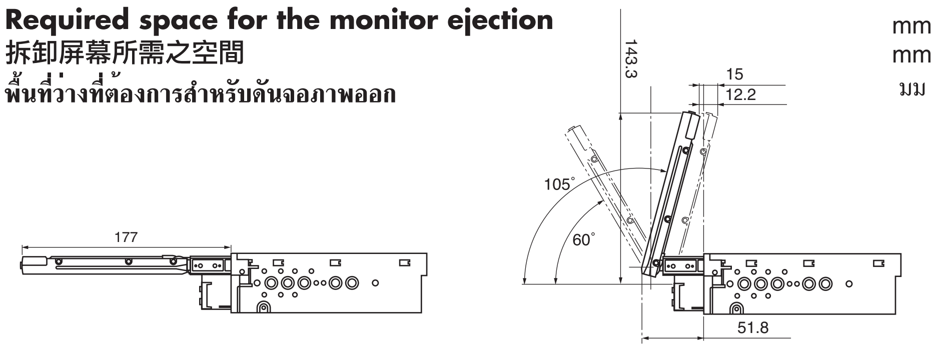




Install the unit at an angle of less than 30˚, taking it into account that the monitor would eject when in use (see below).
將本機安裝在少於 30˚ 的角度 (請看下圖)。
ติดตั้งชุดประกอบที่มุมต่ำกว่า 30˚ องศา (ดูที่ด้านล่าง)

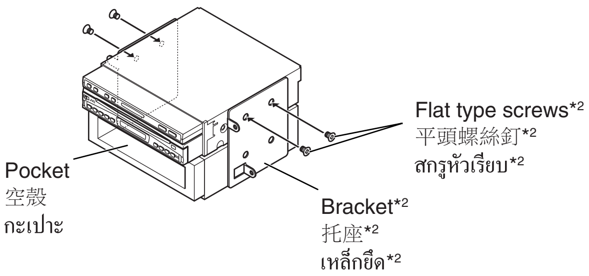
Required space for the monitor ejection
拆卸屏幕所需之空間
พื้นที่ว่างที่ต้องการสำหรับดันจอภาพออก

mm
mm
มม



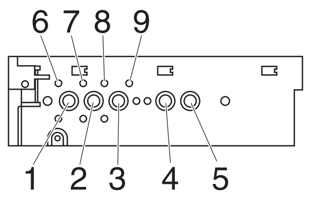
When installing the unit without using the sleeve / 若不使用外套機殼安裝本機 / เมื่อติดตั้งชุดประกอบโดยไม่ใช้ปลอกหุ้ม

In a Toyota for example, first remove the car radio and install the unit in its place.
以豐田牌（Toyota）氣車為例：首先取出氣車收音機，然後將本機裝入其空出的位置。
ตัวอย่างเช่น ในรถยนต์โตโยต้า ให้ถอดวิทยุติดรถยนต์ออกก่อนและติดตั้งชุดประกอบนี้เข้าไปแทน



*2 Not included with this unit.
*2 不包括在本機中。
*2 ไม่ได้ให้มากับชุดประกอบน

Use the following screws
使用以下螺絲
ใช้สกรูดังนี้



For No.1 – 5 For No.6 – 9	M5 x 8 mm*2 M4 x 3 mm*2
1至5 6至9	M5 x 8 mm*2 M4 x 3 mm*2
สำหรับหมายเลข 1 – 5 สำหรับหมายเลข 6 – 9	M5 x 8 มม*2 M4 x 3 มม*2

Note : When installing the unit on the mounting bracket, make sure to use screws of proper length refering to the table above. If longer screws are used, they could damage the unit.

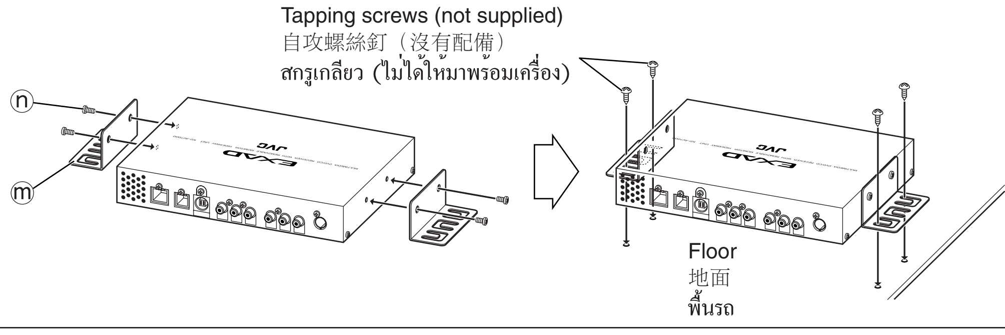
備註 : 將本機安裝在裝配架上的時候，務必根據以上列表使用長度適當的螺絲。若使用過長的螺絲則可能會損壞本機。

หมายเหตุ : ขณะติดตั้งเครื่องบนแท่นรอง ขอให้ดูให้แน่ใจว่าใช้สกรูที่มีความยาวเหมาะสม ตามที่ระบุในตารางข้างต้น หากใช้สกรูยาวกว่าที่ระบุอาจทำให้เครื่องเสียได้

B Installing the hideaway unit (under the front seat)

B 安裝隱蔽組件（在前座底下）

B การติดตั้งอุปกรณ์สำหรับติดตั้งด้านใน (ใต้เบาะหน้า)



Tapping screws (not supplied)
自攻螺絲釘（沒有配備）
สกรูเกลียว (ไม่ได้ให้มาพร้อมเครื่อง)
n
m
Floor
地面
พื้นรถ

- Be sure to use the tapping screws (not supplied) of appropriate length so that they will not damage any parts of the car.
- 務必使用長度適當的自攻螺絲釘（沒有配備）以避免損壞汽車的任何部分。
- ดูให้แน่ใจว่าใช้สกรูเกลียว (ไม่ได้ให้มาพร้อมเครื่อง) ที่มีความยาวเหมาะสม เพื่อป้องกันไม่ให้โดนส่วนอื่นของรถเสียหาย

ENGLISH

C Electrical connections

Before connecting...

- Make sure that the antenna cord from the car is connected to the hideaway unit (see page 2). If the antenna cord is not long enough, use the extension antenna cord (supplied).
- Check the wiring in the car carefully. Incorrect connection may cause serious damage to the units. The leads of the power cord and those of the connector from the car body may be different in color.

1 Connect the colored leads of the power cord in the order specified in the illustration below.

2 Connect the wiring harness to the units.

3 Connect the main unit and the hideaway unit using AV bus cable (supplied).

中文

C 電路連接

連接之前...

- 確定汽車的天線電纜已經連接至隱蔽組件（參閱第2頁）。若天線電纜不夠長，請使用天線延長電纜（配備）。
- 小心檢查汽車內的配線。連接錯誤可能會導致本機嚴重損壞。電力線的引線和車身的連接器引線在顏色上可能有所不同。

1 依照下圖所示之次序連接電源線的顏色導線。

2 將線束連接至機身。

3 用音頻視頻匯流電纜（配備）連接主機和隱蔽組件。

ไทย

C การเชื่อมโดยใช้ไฟฟ้า

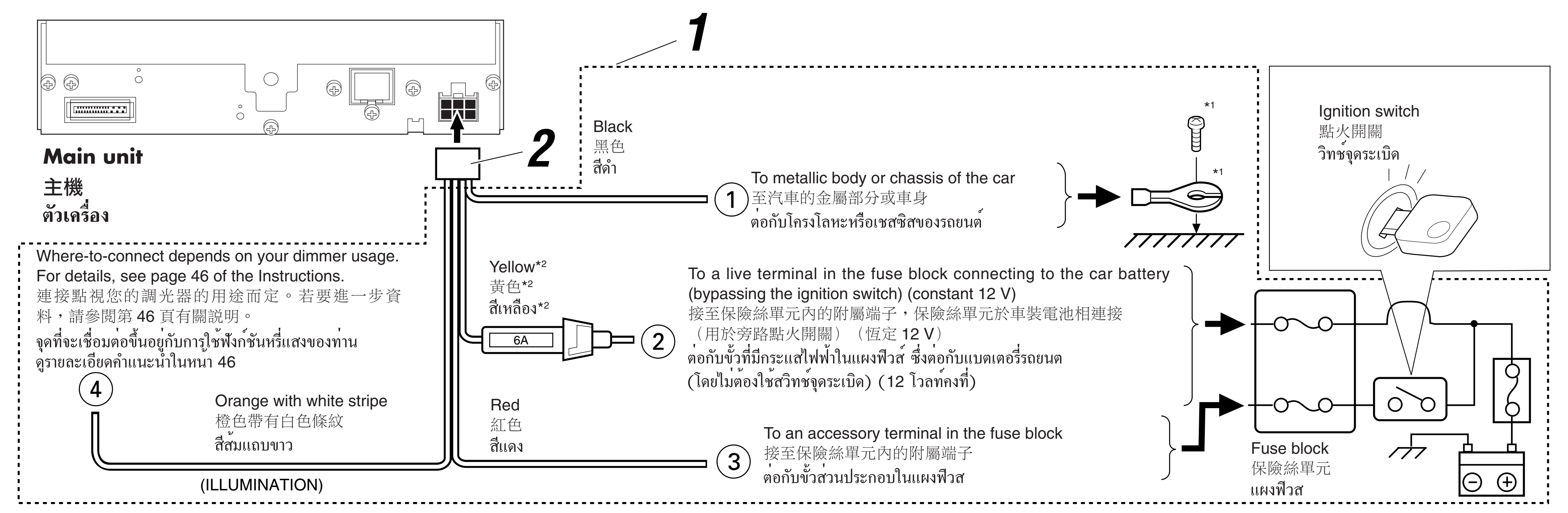
ก่อนทำการต่อเชื่อม...

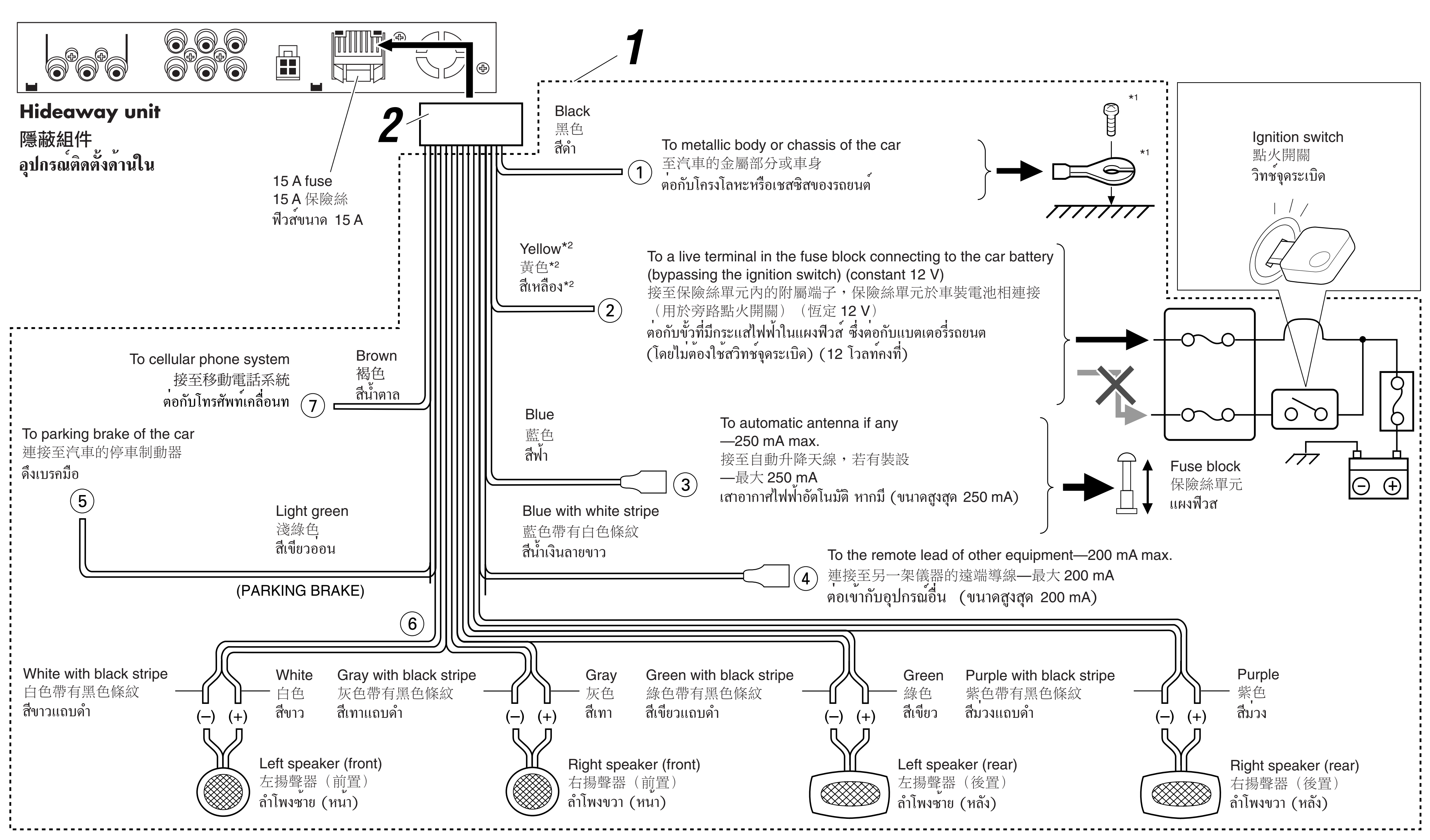
- ดูให้แน่ใจว่าได้ต่อสายอากาศของรถ กับอุปกรณ์ติดตั้งด้านในแล้ว (ดูหน้า 2) หากสายอากาศยาวไม่พอ ให้ใช้สายต่อช่วย (ให้มาพร้อมเครื่อง)
- ตรวจสอบการเดินสายในรถอย่างรอบคอบ การต่อสายผิดอาจทำให้เครื่องเสียหายหนักได้ สายไฟและสายสัญญาณต่างๆ ที่ใช้ต่อกับขั้วในรถยนต์อา จมีสีแตกต่างกัน

1 ต่อสายไฟสีตามลำดับที่ระบุในรูปด้านล่าง

2 ต่อส่วนควบคุมการเดินสายไฟเข้ากับชุดประกอบ

3 ต่อกับตัวเครื่อง และอุปกรณ์ที่ติดตั้งด้านใน โดยใช้สาย AV bus (ให้มาพร้อมเครื่อง)


1
2
Main unit
主機
ตัวเครื่อง
Black
黑色
สีดำ
① To metallic body or chassis of the car
至汽車的金屬部分或車身
ต่อกับโครงโลหะหรือเชสซิสของรถยนต์
*1
*1
Ignition switch
點火開關
วิทช์จุดระเบิด
Where-to-connect depends on your dimmer usage.
For details, see page 46 of the Instructions.
連接點視您的調光器的用途而定。若要進一步資料，請參閱第 46 頁有關說明。
จุดที่จะเชื่อมต่อขึ้นอยู่กับการใช้ฟังก์ชันหรี่แสงของท่าน ดูรายละเอียดคำแนะนำในหนา 46
Yellow*2
黃色*2
สีเหลือง*2
6A
② To a live terminal in the fuse block connecting to the car battery (bypassing the ignition switch) (constant 12 V)
接至保險絲單元內的附屬端子，保險絲單元於車裝電池相連接（用於旁路點火開關）（恆定 12 V）
ต่อกับขั้วที่มีกระแสไฟฟ้าในแผงฟิวส์ ซึ่งต่อกับแบตเตอรี่รถยนต (โดยไม่ต้องใช้สวิทช์จุดระเบิด) (12 โวลท์คงที่)
④
Orange with white stripe
橙色帶有白色條紋
สีส้มแถบขาว
Red
紅色
สีแดง
③ To an accessory terminal in the fuse block
接至保險絲單元內的附屬端子
ต่อกับขั้วส่วนประกอบในแผงฟิวส
(ILLUMINATION)
Fuse block
保險絲單元
แผงฟิวส


1
2
Hideaway unit
隱蔽組件
อุปกรณ์ติดตั้งด้านใน
15 A fuse
15 A 保險絲
ฟิวส์ขนาด 15 A
Black
黑色
สีดำ
① To metallic body or chassis of the car
至汽車的金屬部分或車身
ต่อกับโครงโลหะหรือเชสซิสของรถยนต์
*1
*1
Ignition switch
點火開關
วิทช์จุดระเบิด
Yellow*2
黃色*2
สีเหลือง*2
② To a live terminal in the fuse block connecting to the car battery (bypassing the ignition switch) (constant 12 V)
接至保險絲單元內的附屬端子，保險絲單元於車裝電池相連接（用於旁路點火開關）（恆定 12 V）
ต่อกับขั้วที่มีกระแสไฟฟ้าในแผงฟิวส์ ซึ่งต่อกับแบตเตอรี่รถยนต (โดยไม่ต้องใช้สวิทช์จุดระเบิด) (12 โวลท์คงที่)
To cellular phone system
接至移動電話系統
ต่อกับโทรศัพท์เคลื่อนท ⑦
Brown
褐色
สีน้ำตาล
To parking brake of the car
連接至汽車的停車制動器
ดึงเบรคมือ
⑤
Blue
藍色
สีฟ้า
③ To automatic antenna if any —250 mA max.
接至自動升降天線，若有裝設 —最大 250 mA
เสาอากาศไฟฟ้าอัตโนมัติ หากมี (ขนาดสูงสุด 250 mA)
Fuse block
保險絲單元
แผงฟิวส
Light green
淺綠色
สีเขียวออน
Blue with white stripe
藍色帶有白色條紋
สีน้ำเงินลายขาว
④ To the remote lead of other equipment—200 mA max.
連接至另一架儀器的遠端導線—最大 200 mA
ต่อเข้ากับอุปกรณ์อื่น (ขนาดสูงสุด 200 mA)
(PARKING BRAKE)
⑥
White with black stripe
白色帶有黑色條紋
สีขาวแถบดำ
(–) (+)
White
白色
สีขาว
Gray with black stripe
灰色帶有黑色條紋
สีเทาแถบดำ
(–) (+)
Gray
灰色
สีเทา
Green with black stripe
綠色帶有黑色條紋
สีเขียวแถบดำ
(–) (+)
Green
綠色
สีเขียว
Purple with black stripe
紫色帶有黑色條紋
สีม่วงแถบดำ
(–) (+)
Purple
紫色
สีม่วง
Left speaker (front)
左揚聲器（前置）
ลำโพงซ้าย (หน้า)
Right speaker (front)
右揚聲器（前置）
ลำโพงขวา (หน้า)
Left speaker (rear)
左揚聲器（後置）
ลำโพงซ้าย (หลัง)
Right speaker (rear)
右揚聲器（後置）
ลำโพงขวา (หลัง)

---

*1 Not supplied with this unit.

*2 Before checking the operation of this unit prior to installation, this lead must be connected, otherwise power cannot be turned on.

*1 本機沒有配備。

*2 本機未安裝時，進行工作狀況檢查之前，必須把這導線接上，否則不能開啟電源。

*1 ไม่ได้ให้มาพร้อมเครื่อง

*2 ก่อนการตรวจสอบการทำงานของชุดประกอบนี้ก่อนที่จะติดตั้ง ต้องต่อสายตะกั่ วนี้ก่อน มิฉะนั้นจะไม่สามารถเปิดเครื่องได

PRECAUTIONS on power supply and speaker connections:

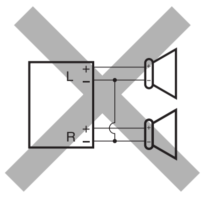
- **DO NOT connect the speaker leads of the power cord to the car battery; otherwise, the units will be seriously damaged.**
- BEFORE connecting the speaker leads of the power cord to the speakers, check the speaker wiring in your car.

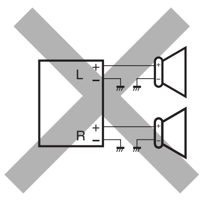
電源和揚聲器接線注意事項：

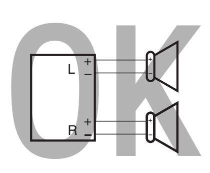
- **切勿把揚聲器導線接頭接至電池，否則本機將會嚴重損壞。**
- 在把揚聲器導線接頭接至揚聲器之前，檢查您汽車上的揚聲器線路。

ข้อควรระวังสำหรับการต่อแหล่งจ่ายกำลังและลำโพง:

- **อย่าต่อสายตะกั่วเคเบิลกำลังของลำโพงเข้ากับแบตเตอรี่รถยนต์ มิฉะนั้นชุดประกอบจะ ได้รับความเสียหายมาก**
- ก่อนที่จะต่อสายตะกั่วเคเบิลกำลังของลำโพงเข้ากับลำโพง ให้ตรวจสอบการเดินสายไฟลำโพงในรถของคุณให้เรียบร้อยเสียก่อน







Connecting the parking brake wire

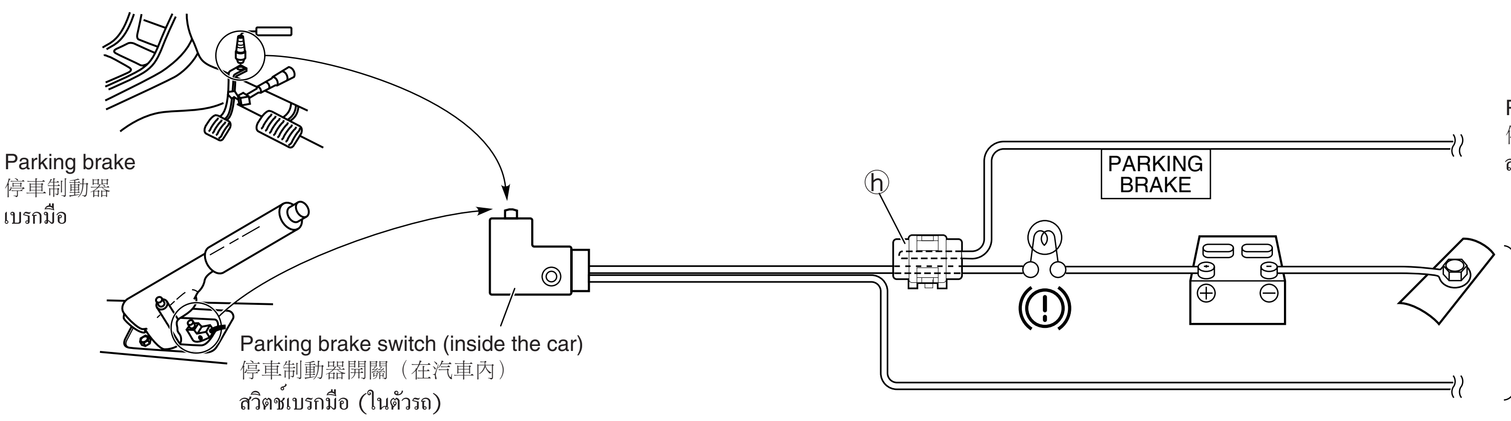
Connect the parking brake wire to the parking brake system built in the car.

連接停車制動器電線

將停車制動器電線連接至內置在車內的停車制動系統。

การต่อสายเบรกมือ

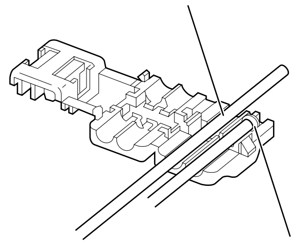
ต่อสายเบรกมือ กับระบบเบรกมือในรถ


Parking brake
停車制動器
เบรกมือ
Parking brake switch (inside the car)
停車制動器開關（在汽車內）
สวิตช์เบรกมือ (ในตัวรถ)
ⓗ
PARKING
BRAKE
Parking brake wire (light green)
停車制動器電線（淺綠色）
สายเบรกมือ (สีเขียวอ่อน)
To metallic body or chassis of the car
至汽車的金屬部分或車身
ต่อกับโครงโลหะหรือเชสซิสของรถยนต์

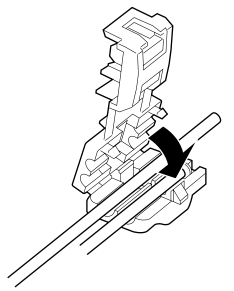
How to connect the crimp connector

如何連接卷曲連接器

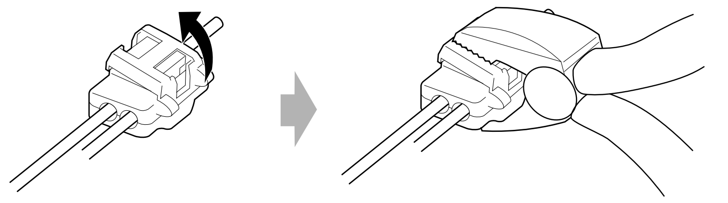
วิธีต่อกล่องต่อสาย


Wire connecting the battery and the parking brake switch.
連接電池和停車制動器開關的電線。
สายต่อแบตเตอรี่ และสวิตช์เบรกมือ

Attach the parking brake wire (light green) to this point.
將停車制動器電線（淺綠色）接至此點。
ต่อสายเบรกมือ (สีเขียวอ่อน) ที่จุดนี้



Contact the metallic part of the crimp to the wires inside.
將卷曲連接器的金屬部分觸碰裏面的電線。
ให้ส่วนที่เป็นโลหะของขั้วสัมผัสกับสายไฟด้านใน



Pinch the crimp firmly.
捏緊卷曲連接器。
บีบขั้วต่อให้แน่น

D Connecting the cradle

By using the cradle (KV-CR100), you can remove the monitor from the main unit and insert it into the cradle so that the persons sitting on the rear seat can view the playback picture even while the driver are driving your car.

- The driver must not put on the headphones while driving. It is dangerous to shut off the outside sounds while driving.
- Additional monitor (KV-MAV7002) can also be purchased to used so that you do not need to remove the monitor from the main unit.

D 連接托架

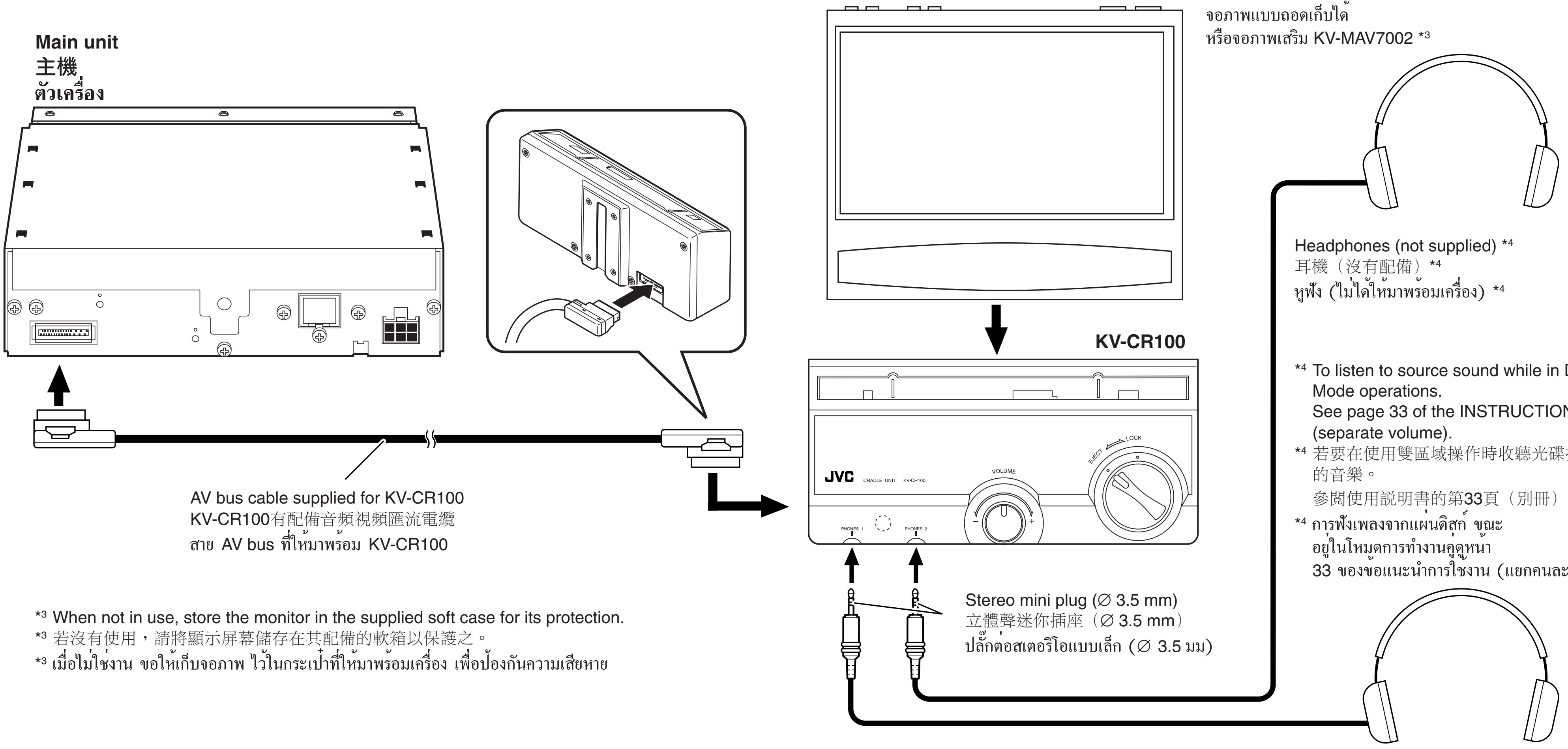
您可以使用托架（KV-CR100）拆卸主機的顯示屏幕，然後將顯示屏幕入托架讓坐在後座的乘客可以在您駕駛汽車時觀看播放畫面。

- 司機不可以在駕駛時戴上耳機。駕駛時與外界音響完全隔絕是非常危險的。
- 您也可以購買附加屏幕（KV-MAV7002）使用，那麼 ，您便不需要拆卸主機的屏幕了。

D การต่อเชื่อมแท่นวาง

การใช้แท่นวาง (KV-CR100) จะช่วยให้ท่านสามารถถอดจอภาพ ออกจากตัวเครื่อง และใส่กับแท่นวางได้ เพื่อให้ผู้โดยสารด้านหลังสามารถดูภาพบนจอได้ แม้ขณะมีคนขับรถให้ท่านอยู่

- ผู้ขับจะต้องไม่สวมหูฟังขณะขับรถ เพราะอาจเกิดอันตรายจากการไม่ได้ยินเสียงภายนอกขณะขับรถได้
- จอภาพเสริม (KV-MAV7002) สามารถซื้อเพิ่มเพื่อใช้งานได้ โดยไม่จำเป็นต้องถอดจอภาพออกจากตัวเครื่อง


Main unit
主機
ตัวเครื่อง
Removable monitor
or additional monitor KV-MAV7002 *3
可拆卸屏幕
或附加屏幕 KV-MAV7002 *3
จอภาพแบบถอดเก็บได้
หรือจอภาพเสริม KV-MAV7002 *3
Headphones (not supplied) *4
耳機（沒有配備）*4
หูฟัง (ไม่ได้ให้มาพร้อมเครื่อง) *4
KV-CR100
JVC
CRADLE UNIT KV-CR100
VOLUME
EJECT
LOCK
PHONES 1
PHONES 2
AV bus cable supplied for KV-CR100
KV-CR100有配備音頻視頻匯流電纜
สาย AV bus ที่ให้มาพร้อม KV-CR100
Stereo mini plug (∅ 3.5 mm)
立體聲迷你插座（∅ 3.5 mm）
ปลั๊กต่อสเตอริโอแบบเล็ก (∅ 3.5 มม)

[4] To listen to source sound while in Dual Mode operations. See page 33 of the INSTRUCTIONS (separate volume).

[4] 若要在使用雙區域操作時收聽光碟播放的音樂。
參閱使用説明書的第33頁（別冊）。

[4] การฟังเพลงจากแผ่นดิสก์ ขณะอยู่ในโหมดการทำงานคู่ดูหน้า 33 ของข้อแนะนำการใช้งาน (แยกคนละเล่ม)

[3] When not in use, store the monitor in the supplied soft case for its protection.

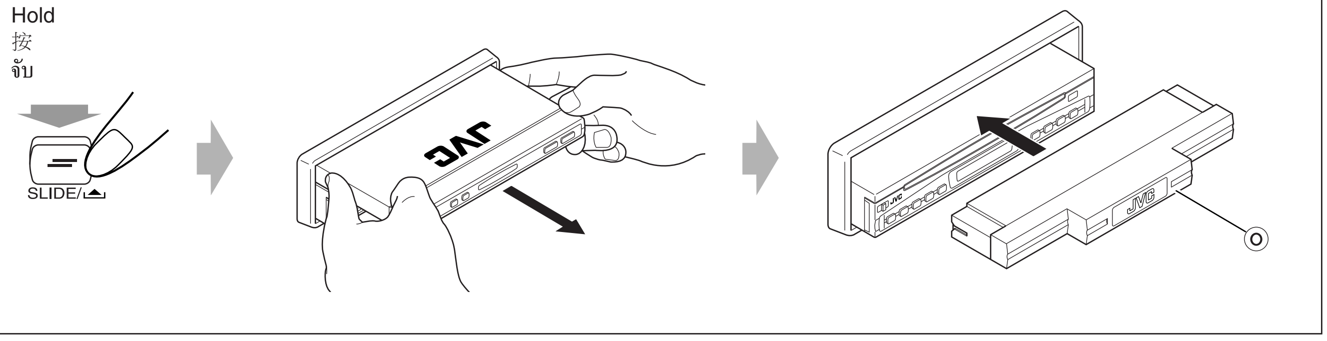
[3] 若沒有使用，請將顯示屏幕儲存在其配備的軟箱以保護之。

[3] เมื่อไม่ใช่งาน ขอให้เก็บจอภาพ ไว้ในกระเป๋าที่ให้มาพร้อมเครื่อง เพื่อป้องกันความเสียหาย

After removing the monitor from the main unit, insert the blind cover into the main unit to prevent internal dust accumulation.

把屏幕從主機拆下後，將暗蓋放入主機以避免灰塵堆積。

หลังจากถอดจอภาพออกจากตัวเครื่องแล้ว ให้ใส่ฝาครอบด้านหน้าปิดที่ตัวเครื่อง เพื่อป้องกันฝุ่น


Hold
按
จับ
SLIDE/⏏
JVC
ⓞ

E Connecting the external amplifiers

You can connect amplifiers to upgrade surround system in the car compartment.

- Connect the PRE OUT terminals of the hideaway unit to the amplifier's line-in terminals.
- **Disconnect the speakers from the hideaway unit, connect them to the amplifier. Leave the speaker leads of the unit unused.**

E 連接外部功率放大器

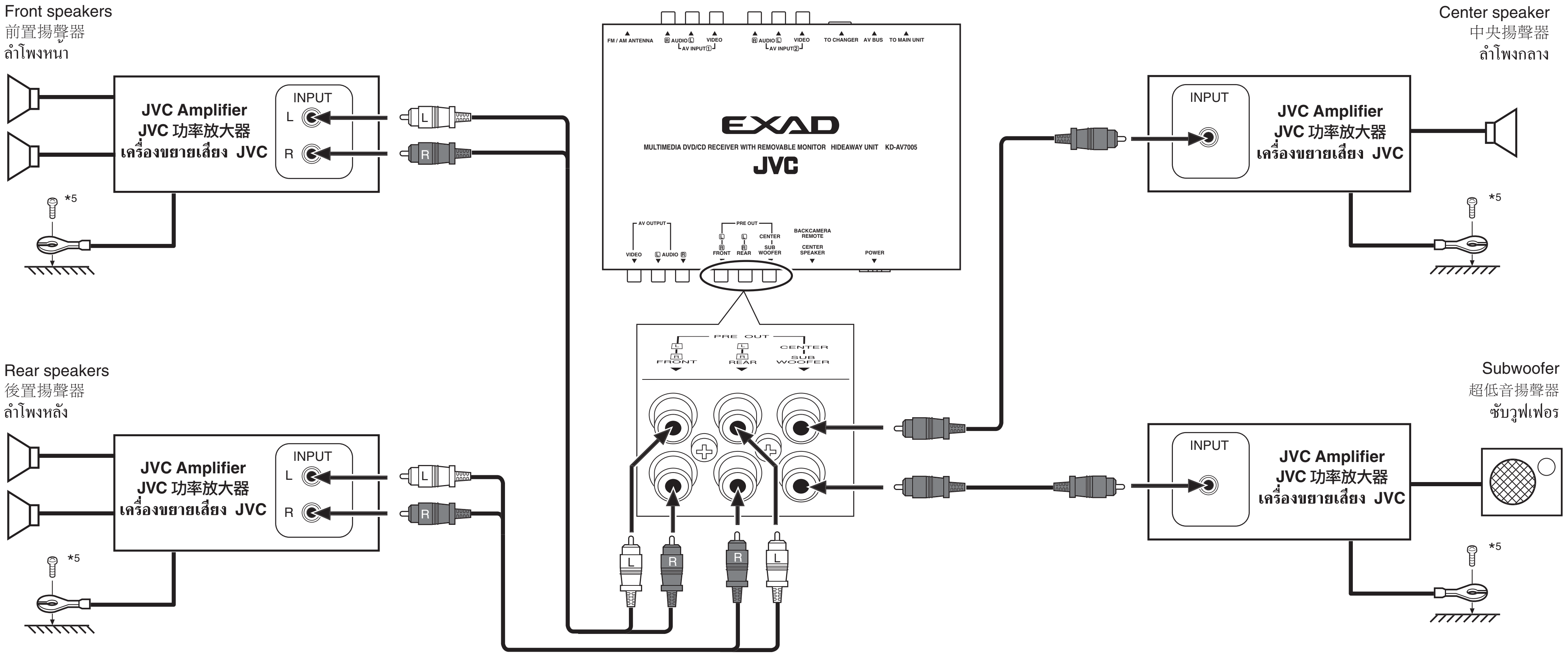
您可以連接功率放大器以提升車廂內的環繞音響系統。

- 將隱蔽組件的預功率放大器（PRE OUT）終端連接至功率放大器的輸入終端。
- **將揚聲器從隱蔽組件拆下，然後將之連接至功率放大器。不用揚聲器的導線。**

E การต่อเชื่อมเครื่องแอมพลิฟายเออร์ภายนอก

ท่านสามารถต่อเชื่อมเครื่องแอมพลิฟายเออร์ เพื่อเพิ่มคุณภาพระบบเซอร์ราวด์ในห้อง โดยสารได้

- ต่อขั้ว PRE OUT ที่อุปกรณ์ติดตั้งด้านใน กับขั้วต่อสัญญาณเข้าของเครื่องแอมพลิฟายเออร์
- **ปลดสายลำโพงออกจากอุปกรณ์ติดตั้งด้านใน นำไปต่อกับเครื่องแอมพลิฟายเออร์ โดยไม่ต้องใช้สายต่อลำโพงของตัวเครื่อง**


Front speakers
前置揚聲器
ลำโพงหน้า
JVC Amplifier
JVC 功率放大器
เครื่องขยายเสียง JVC
INPUT
L
R
*5
Rear speakers
後置揚聲器
ลำโพงหลัง
Center speaker
中央揚聲器
ลำโพงกลาง
Subwoofer
超低音揚聲器
ซับวูฟเฟอร
FM / AM ANTENNA
R AUDIO L
VIDEO
AV INPUT①
AV INPUT②
TO CHANGER
AV BUS
TO MAIN UNIT
EXAD
MULTIMEDIA DVD/CD RECEIVER WITH REMOVABLE MONITOR HIDEAWAY UNIT KD-AV7005
JVC
AV OUTPUT
L AUDIO R
PRE OUT
FRONT
REAR
CENTER
SUB WOOFER
BACKCAMERA REMOTE
CENTER SPEAKER
POWER

*5 Firmly attach the ground wire to the metallic body or to the chassis of the car—to the place uncoated with paint (if coated with paint, remove the paint before attaching the wire). Failure to do so may cause damage to the unit.

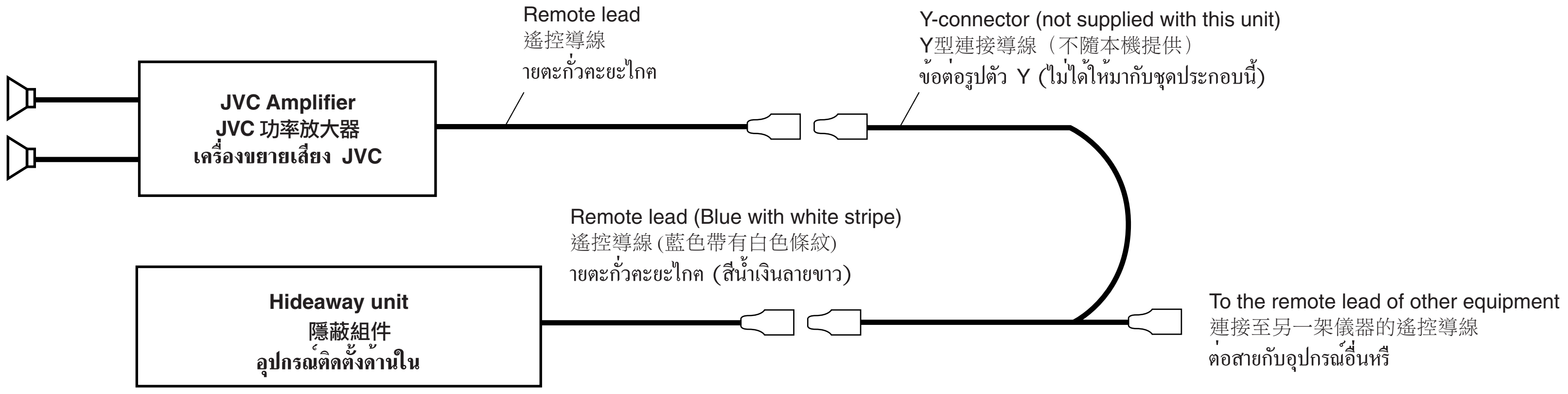
*5 將地線與金屬車體或者汽車底盤緊密連接，連接處應該沒有被油漆覆蓋（如果已塗上油漆，在連接電線前，將油漆刮去）。如果不這樣做，可能會損壞本機。

*5 ต่อลวดสายดินให้แน่นเข้ากับตัวถังเหล็ก หรือตัวถังรถ — ตรงส่วนที่ไม่มีสีเคลือบ (หากมีสีเคลือบอยู่ ให้ขูดสีออกก่อน ก่อนต่อลวดสายดิน) หากไม่ปฏิบัติตามคำแนะ นำนี้ เครื่องอาจชำรุดหรือเสียหายได้

If you connect the remote lead (blue with white stripe) to the remote lead of the other equipment, they can be turned on and off automatically with this unit.

若您將遠端導線（藍色配白色斑條）連接至另一架儀器的遠端導線，此儀器將會自動隨本機一起開關。

หากต่อสายรีโมท (สีน้ำเงินริ้วขาว) กับสายรีโมทของอุปกรณ์อื่น จะทำให้เครื่องสามารถเปิด และปิดเองอัตโนมัติ โดยใช้อุปกรณ์นี้


Remote lead
遙控導線
ายตะกั่วตะยะไกศ
Y-connector (not supplied with this unit)
Y型連接導線（不隨本機提供）
ข้อต่อรูปตัว Y (ไม่ได้ให้มากับชุดประกอบนี้)
JVC Amplifier
JVC 功率放大器
เครื่องขยายเสียง JVC
Remote lead (Blue with white stripe)
遙控導線 (藍色帶有白色條紋)
ายตะกั่วตะยะไกศ (สีน้ำเงินลายขาว)
Hideaway unit
隱蔽組件
อุปกรณ์ติดตั้งด้านใน
To the remote lead of other equipment
連接至另一架儀器的遙控導線
ต่อสายกับอุปกรณ์อื่นหรื

F Connecting the back camera lead

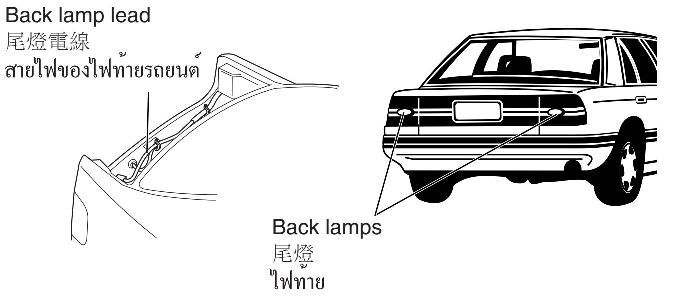
Locate the back lamp lead in the trunk.

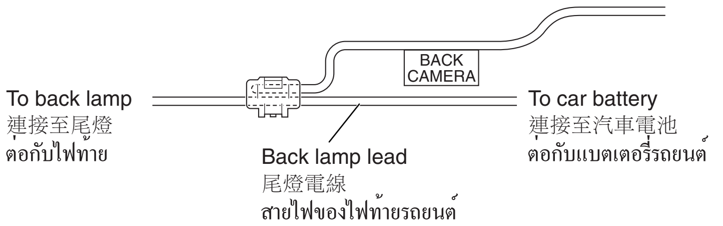
F 連接後錄像機的電線

在行李箱內尋找尾燈電線。

F การต่อสายไฟที่กล้องด้านหลัง

ค้นหาสายไฟของไฟท้ายรถยนต์ที่กระโปรงหลัง


Back lamp lead
尾燈電線
สายไฟของไฟท้ายรถยนต์
Back lamps
尾燈
ไฟท้าย


To back lamp
連接至尾燈
ต่อกับไฟท้าย
BACK CAMERA
To car battery
連接至汽車電池
ต่อกับแบตเตอรี่รถยนต์
Back lamp lead
尾燈電線
สายไฟของไฟท้ายรถยนต์

TROUBLESHOOTING

- **The fuse blows.**
  * Are the red and black leads connected correctly?
- **Power cannot be turned on.**
  * Is the yellow lead connected?
- **No sound from the speakers.**
  * Is the speaker output lead short-circuited?
- **Sound is distorted.**
  * Is the speaker output lead grounded?
  * Are the "–" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?
- **Noise interfere with sounds.**
  * Is the rear ground terminal connected to the car's chassis using shorter and thicker cords?
- **Unit becomes hot.**
  * Is the speaker output lead grounded?
  * Are the "–" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?

故障排除

- **保險絲燒斷。**
  * 檢查紅色導線接頭和黑色導線接頭是否接觸正確？
- **電源不能接通。**
  * 檢查黃色導線接頭是否接上？
- **揚聲器沒有聲音。**
  * 檢查揚聲器輸出導線接頭是否短路？
- **聲音失真。**
  * 檢查揚聲器輸出端子是否接地？
  * 檢查揚聲器的左（L），右（R）端子的負極（–）是否共同接地？
- **噪音干擾音響。**
  * 後接地端子與車身是否使用較短和較厚的電線連接？
- **本機發熱。**
  * 檢查揚聲器輸出端子是否接地？
  * 檢查揚聲器的左（L），右（R）端子的負極（–）是否共同接地？

การตรวจสอบปัญหาขัดข้อง

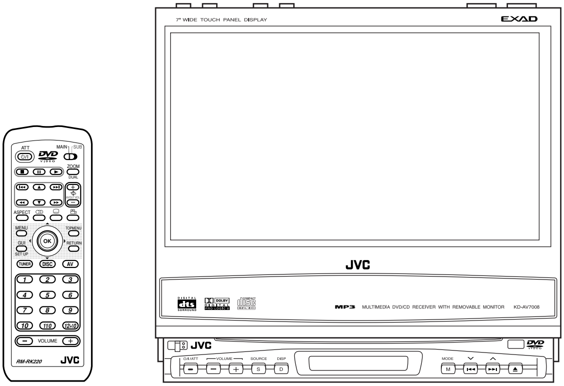
- **ฟิวส์ขาด**
  * มีการเชื่อมสายตะกั่วสีดำและสีแดงอย่างถูกต้องหรือไม่
- **ไม่สามารถเปิดเครื่องได้**
  * มีการเชื่อมสายตะกั่วสีเหลืองหรือไม่
- **ไม่มีเสียงออกจากลำโพง**
  * สายตะกั่วส่วนที่ออกทางลำโพงเกิดไฟฟ้าลัดวงจรหรือไม่
- **เสียงเพี้ยน**
  * สายตะกั่วส่วนที่ออกทางลำโพงต่อลงดินหรือไม่
  * ท สายขั้วลบของลำโพงด้านซ้าย (L) และขวา (R) ต่อลงดินตามปกติหรือไม่
- **เสียงรบกวน**
  * มีการใช้สายสั้นๆ หรือหนาๆ ต่อจากเครื่องส่วนที่ติดตั้ง ไว้บนพื้นด้านหลังกับตัวถังรถยนต์หรือไม่
- **ชุดประกอบร้อนขึ้น**
  * สายตะกั่วส่วนที่ออกทางลำโพงต่อลงดินหรือไม่
  * ท สายขั้วลบของลำโพงด้านซ้าย (L) และขวา (R) ต่อลงดินตามปกติหรือไม่

JVC

DVD RECEIVER WITH MONITOR

KD-AV7008

EXAD


7" WIDE TOUCH PANEL DISPLAY
EXAD
JVC
MULTIMEDIA DVD/CD RECEIVER WITH REMOVABLE MONITOR KD-AV7008
ATT
MAIN
SUB
ZOOM
DUAL
ASPECT
MENU
TOP MENU
OK
RETURN
SET UP
TUNER
DISC
AV
VOLUME
RM-RK220
JVC
SOURCE
DISP
MODE

Detachable

MP3

DIGITAL dts SURROUND

DOLBY DIGITAL PRO LOGIC II

COMPACT disc DIGITAL VIDEO

DVD VIDEO™

- This unit is equipped with the display demonstration. To cancel it, see page 14.

For installation and connections, refer to the separate manual.

INSTRUCTIONS

LVT1174-001A
[A]

Thank you for purchasing a JVC product.
Please read all instructions carefully before operation, to ensure your complete understanding and to obtain the best possible performance from the unit.

IMPORTANT FOR LASER PRODUCTS

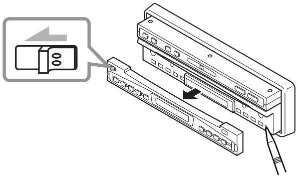
1. CLASS 1 LASER PRODUCT
2. **CAUTION:** Do not open the top cover. There are no user serviceable parts inside the unit; leave all servicing to qualified service personnel.
3. **CAUTION:** Visible and invisible laser radiation when open and interlock failed or defeated. Avoid direct exposure to beam.
4. REPRODUCTION OF LABEL: CAUTION LABEL, PLACED OUTSIDE THE UNIT.

CAUTION : Visible and invisible laser radiation when open and interlock failed or defeated. AVOID DIRECT EXPOSURE TO BEAM. (e)	**ADVARSEL :** Synlig og usynlig laserstråling når maskinen er åben eller interlocken fejler. Undgå direkte eksponering til stråling. (d)	**VARNING :** Synlig och osynlig laserstrålning när den öppnas och spärren är urkopplad. Betrakta ej strålen. (s)	**VARO :** Avattaessa ja suojalukitus ohitettuna tai viallisena olet alttiina näkyvälle ja näkymättömälle lasersäteilylle. Vältä säteen kohdistumista suoraan itseesi. (f)

After installing the unit, reset it before use following the procedure below:

How to reset your unit

Detach the control panel (see page 77), then press the reset button on the main unit using a ball-point pen or a similar tool.
This will reset the built-in microcomputer.



Your preset adjustments—such as preset channels or sound adjustments—will also be erased.

- *The monitor will go into its place if opened.*

CAUTIONS:

- Do not insert any disc of unusual shape—like a heart or flower; otherwise, it will cause a malfunction.
- Do not expose discs to direct sunlight or any heat source or place them in a place subject to high temperature and humidity. Do not leave them in a car.

For safety....

- Do not raise the volume level too much, as this will block outside sounds, making driving dangerous.
- Stop the car before performing any complicated operations.

Temperature inside the car....

If you have parked the car for a long time in hot or cold weather, wait until the temperature in the car becomes normal before operating the unit.

WARNINGS

- **DO NOT install any unit in locations where;**
  - **it may obstruct the steering wheel and gearshift lever operations, as this may result in a traffic accident.**
  - **it may obstruct the operation of safety devices such as air bags, as this may result in a fatal accident.**
  - **it may obstruct visibility.**
- **DO NOT operate any unit while manipulating the steering wheel, as this may result in a traffic accident.**
- **The driver must not watch the monitor while driving.**
  If the driver watches the monitor while driving, it may lead to carelessness and cause an accident.
- **If you need to operate the main unit while driving, be sure to look ahead carefully or you may be involved in a traffic accident.**
- **If the parking brake is not engaged, “DRIVER MUST NOT WATCH THE MONITOR WHILE DRIVING.” appears on the monitor, and no playback picture will be shown.**
  - **This warning appears only when the parking brake wire is connected to the parking brake system built in the car (refer to the Installation/Connection Manual).**

CAUTIONS on the monitor

- The monitor built in this receiver has been produced with high precision, but it may have some ineffective dots. This is inevitable and is not malfunction.
- Do not expose the monitor to direct sunlight.
- When the temperature is very cold or very hot...
  - Chemical changes occur inside, causing it to malfunction.
  - Pictures may not appear clearly or may move slowly. Pictures may not be synchronized with the sound or the picture quality may decline in such environments.

CAUTION on Volume Setting:

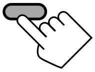
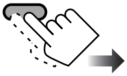
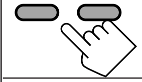
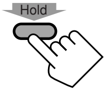
Discs produce very little noise compared with other sources. If the volume level is adjusted for the tuner, for example, the speakers may be damaged by the sudden increase in the output level. Therefore, lower the volume before playing a disc and adjust it as required during playback.

Important!

How to read this manual:

To make the explanations as simple and easy-to-understand as possible, we have adapted the following methods:

- **Some related tips and notes are explained later in the sections “More about This Receiver” (see page 68), but not in the same section explaining the operations.** If you want to know more about the functions, or if you have a doubt about the function, go to the section and you will find the answers.
- Operations are explained only with the illustrations as follows:

	Press briefly.
	Press repeatedly.
	Press either one.
	Press and hold until your desired response begins.

Contents

How to reset your unit 2
Important! (How to read this manual) 3

Introduction—Playable Discs 5

Quick Guide—How to Use the Controls 6
Remote controller 6
Main unit (front) 8

Preparation
(Remote Controller—RM-RK220) 9

Operation Methods 10
Basic Operations 12
Setting the clock 13
Changing the source 14
Changing the graphic screen 14
Changing the touch panel color 14
Displaying the level meter 15

Radio Operations 16
Listening to the Radio 17
Storing stations in memory 18
Displaying the preset list 19

DVD/VCD Operations 20
CD/MP3 Operations 21
Basic Disc Operations 22
Changing the aspect ratio 24
Prohibiting disc ejection 24
Selecting MP3 folders 24
Operating the disc menu 25
Replaying the previous scenes 26
Zooming in 26
Selecting subtitles 27
Selecting audio languages 27
Selecting multi-angle views 28
Locating a folder/track using the list 29
Displaying the disc text information 30
Displaying the time information 30
Selecting playback modes 30
Searching for scenes or songs 31

Dual Mode Operations 33
Selecting the sources 33
Adjusting AV OUTPUT volume 34

Surround Mode Operations 35
Introducing surround/DSP mode 36
Turning on and off the surround/DSP mode 37

Sound Modes (iEQ) Operations 39
Selecting preset sound modes 40
Storing your own sound modes 40

Other Sound Adjustments 41
Monitor Adjustments 42
Initial Setup—DVD MENU 43
Initial Setup—MONITOR 45
Initial Setup—ON SCREEN 47
Initial Setup—AUDIO MENU/PSM 49

Other Main Functions 53
Assigning titles to the sources 53
Changing the monitor position/angle 55
Removing the monitor 55

CD Changer Operations 56
Basic CD Changer Operations 57

Advanced CD Changer Operations 58
Selecting disc/folders/tracks 58
Locating a disc/folder/track using the list 58
Displaying the disc text information 59
Selecting playback modes 60
Searching for songs 61

External Component Operations 62
TV Tuner Operations 63
Watching TV programs 64
Storing stations in memory 64
Displaying the preset list 66

Maintenance 67
More about This Receiver 68
Troubleshooting 72
Additional Information 74
Specifications 76

Introduction—Playable Discs

Discs you can play

You can play back the following discs on this unit:

- DVD Video: whose video format is NTSC or PAL and whose region code is "4."
  –DVD-Rs and DVD-RWs recorded in the DVD-Video format can also be played (see page 69).
- Video CD (VCD)/Audio CD
- MP3: CD-Rs or CD-RWs including MP3 files with the file extension code <mp3>. They must be recorded in the format compliant with ISO 9660 Level 1, ISO 9660 Level 2, Romeo, and Joliet.

> On some discs, the actual operations may be different from what is explained in this manual.

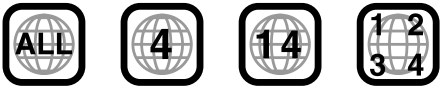
The following discs cannot be played back

DVD Audio, DVD-ROM, DVD-RAM, DVD-RW recorded in the DVD-VR format, CD-ROM, CD-I (CD-I Ready), Photo CD, etc.

- Playing back these discs will generate noise and damage the speakers.

* Note on Region Code

DVD players and DVD Video discs have their own Region Code numbers. This unit can only play back DVD discs whose Region Code numbers include "4."



Examples:

If you insert a DVD Video disc of an incorrect Region Code

"REGION CODE ERROR!" appears on the monitor.

- *"DVD Logo" is a trademark of DVD Format/Logo Licensing Corporation registered in the US, Japan and other countries.*

DVD Video—digital audio formats

The System can play back the following digital audio formats.

Linear PCM: Uncompressed digital audio, the same format used for CDs and most studio masters.

Dolby Digital *: Compressed digital audio, developed by Dolby Laboratories, which enables multi-channel encode to create the realistic surround sound.

DTS ** (Digital Theater Systems): Compressed digital audio, developed by Digital Theater Systems, Inc., which enables multi-channel like Dolby Digital. As the compression ratio is lower than for Dolby Digital, it provides wider dynamic range and better separation.

MPEG Multichannel: Another compressed digital audio which also enables multi-channel encode to create the realistic surround sound. However, this System downmix the multi-channel singnals into 2 channels (decoded PCM) and play it back.

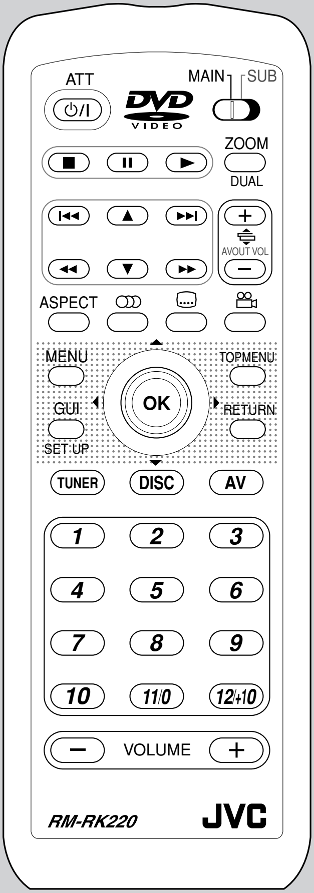
> This product incorporates copyright protection technology that is protected by U.S. patents and other intellectual property rights. Use of this copyright protection technology must be authorized by Macrovision, and is intended for home and other limited viewing uses only unless otherwise authorized by Macrovision. Reverse engineering or disassembly is prohibited.

* *Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. "Dolby", "Pro Logic", and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.*

** *"DTS" and "DTS Digital Surround" are registered trademarks of Digital Theater Systems, Inc.*

Quick Guide—How to Use the Controls

Remote controller


ATT
⏻/I
DVD VIDEO
MAIN
SUB
ZOOM
DUAL
AVOUT VOL
ASPECT
MENU
TOPMENU
OK
GUI
RETURN
SET UP
TUNER
DISC
AV
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11/0
12/+10
VOLUME
RM-RK220
JVC

*1 *When using Dual Mode, the remote controller operates either main or sub source depending on the MAIN/SUB setting.*
*2 *Only for MP3*
*3 *While playing a DVD, chapter is selected; on the other hands, title is selected before or after playback.*

General operations

Buttons	To do:
ATT ⏻/I	Turn on the main unit.
	▨ Turn off the main unit.
	Attenuate sounds.
TUNER	Select "TUNER."
DISC	Select "DISC" and "CD-CH."
AV	Select external components: TV → AV1 → AV2 →
− VOLUME +	Adjust the volume.
MAIN / SUB	Set the main or sub-operation for Dual Mode. *1
ZOOM DUAL	▨ Turn on/off Dual Mode.
+ AVOUT VOL −	Adjust the monitor angle (with MAIN/SUB set MAIN).
	Adjust the AV output level (with MAIN/SUB set SUB).
ASPECT	Change the aspect ratio.
	▨ Display the monitor adjustment screen.
GUI SET UP	Display and erase GUI screen.
	▨ Display Setup Menus.
↑ ← OK → ↓	Change menu items.
	Confirm.

▨ : functions if pressed and held.

Tuner operations

Buttons	To do:
TUNER	Select the band.
⏮ ⏭	Start Auto Search.
	Start Manual Search.
▲ ▼	Change preset numbers.
1 2 3 4 5 6	Select preset numbers directly.

Disc operations

Buttons	To do:
▶	Play.
⏸	Pause.
■	Stop.
⏮ ⏭	Select chapters/tracks.
	Search.
▲ ▼	Selects folders. *2
← OK then OK ↑↓	
OK → then OK ↑↓	Select tracks. *2
◀◀ ▶▶	Search.
○○○	Select audio language.
▭	Select subtitle language.
🎥	Select view angle.
ZOOM DUAL	Zoom the picture.
MENU TOPMENU	Display disc menu.
← ↑ OK ↓ →	Change menu items.
	Confirm.

Disc operations—continued

Buttons	To do:
RETURN	Return to the previous screen while operating the disc menu.
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11/0 12/+10	Select title/chapter/track number. *3

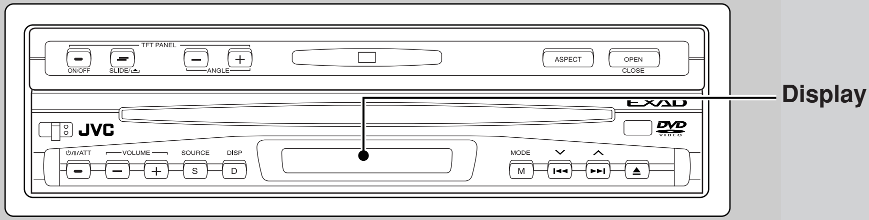
CD changer operations

Buttons	To do:
▲ ▼	Select folders. *2
⏮ ⏭	Select tracks.
	Search.
↑ OK ↓	Change discs.
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11/0 12/+10	Select disc numbers.

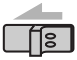
TV tuner operations

Buttons	To do:
⏮ ⏭	Start Auto Search.
	Start Manual Search.
▲ ▼	Change preset channel numbers.
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11/0 12/+10	Select preset channel numbers.

Main unit (front)



General operations

Buttons	To do:
⏻/I/ATT −	Turn on the main unit.
	Turn off the main unit.
	Attenuate sounds.
SOURCE S	Change the sources. (If power is off, it comes on.)
VOLUME − +	Adjust the volume.
DISP D	Change the display information.
	Detach the control panel.

Tuner operations

Buttons	To do:
SOURCE S	Select the band.
∨ ⏮ ∧ ⏭	Start Auto Search.
	Start Manual Search.
MODE M	Change FM reception mode.

Disc operations

Buttons	To do:
⏏	Eject the disc.
∨ ⏮ ∧ ⏭	Select chapters/tracks.
	Search.
MODE M then ∨ ⏮ ∧ ⏭	Display “FOLDER” → select folders. *1

CD changer operations

Buttons	To do:
∨ ⏮ ∧ ⏭	Select tracks.
	Search.
MODE M then ∨ ⏮ ∧ ⏭	(once): Display “DISC” → select discs. (twice): Display “FOLDER” → select folders.*1

TV tuner operations

Buttons	To do:
∨ ⏮ ∧ ⏭	Start Auto Search.
	Start Manual Search.

Monitor operations

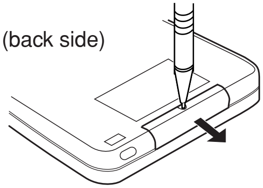
Buttons	To do:
− ON/OFF	Turn on the monitor.
	Turn off the monitor.
OPEN CLOSE	Open the monitor. (See page 55.)
	Close the monitor.
= SLIDE/⏏	Slide in/out the monitor.
	Remove the monitor.
− + ANGLE	Adjust the monitor angle. (See page 55.)
ASPECT	Change the aspect ratio.
	Display the monitor adjustment screen.

▨ : functions if pressed and held.

*1 *Only for MP3*

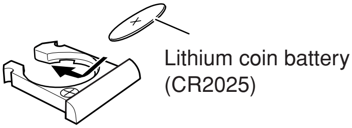
Preparation (Remote Controller—RM-RK220)

1

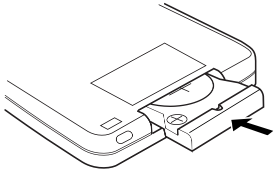


2

With the + side facing upwards



3

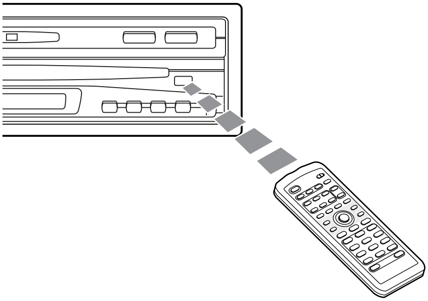


WARNINGS on the battery:

- Store the battery in a place where children cannot reach. If a child accidentally swallows the battery, consult a doctor immediately.
- Do not recharge, short, disassemble, or heat the battery or dispose of it in a fire. These behaviors may cause the battery to be overheated, crack or fire.
- Do not leave the battery with other metallic materials. Doing this may cause the battery to give off heat, crack, or start a fire.
- When throwing away or saving the battery, wrap it in tape and insulate; otherwise, the battery may be overheated, crack or fire.
- Do not poke the battery with tweezers or similar tools. Doing this may cause the battery to be overheated, crack or fire.

CAUTION:

DO NOT leave the remote controller in a place (such as dashboards) exposed to direct sunlight for a long time. Otherwise, it may be damaged.



DO NOT expose the remote sensor on the control panel to strong light (direct sunlight or artificial lighting).

Operation Methods

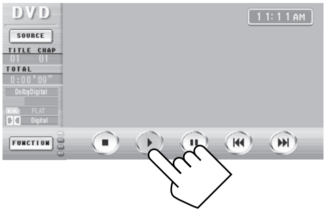
You can operate this unit using three types of operation methods.

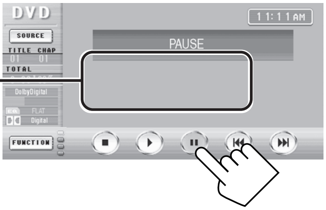
- This instruction manual explains the operations mainly using the Touch Panel Icons shown on the monitor.

- **Using the Touch Panel Icons directly** (See "BLIND CONTROL" on page 46.)

Press the Touch Panel Icons with your finger directly (if you wear a glove, take it off).

Examples: The following is just an example. On the actual monitor screen, the playback picture is shown (while video source is played back).


DVD
11:11 AM
SOURCE
TITLE CHAP
01 01
TOTAL
0:00'09"
DolbyDigital
EQ FLAT
Digital
FUNCTION

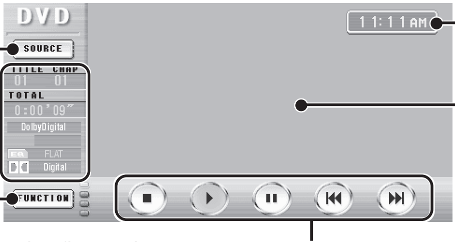

DVD
11:11 AM
SOURCE
PAUSE
TITLE CHAP
01 01
TOTAL
DolbyDigital
EQ FLAT
Digital
FUNCTION

Do not operate the Touch Panel using a ball-point pen or similar tool with the sharp tip (it may damage the Touch Panel).

To erase and display the Touch Panel icons and indications, press the center portion of the monitor screen.

- You can erase them only while viewing the playback pictures.

Ex. DVD playback


DVD
SOURCE
11:11 AM
TITLE CHAP
01 01
TOTAL
0:00'09"
DolbyDigital
EQ FLAT
Digital
FUNCTION

Changes the source.

Clock time indication

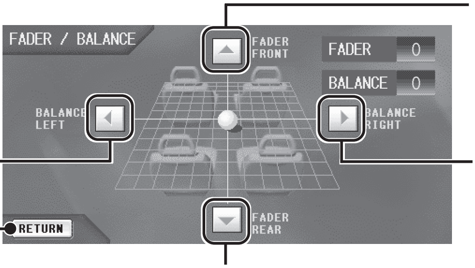
Source and play mode information

Picture view window

Changes the function modes (icons shown to the right change accordingly).

Icons shown on this column change each time you press FUNCTION.

Ex. Fader/balance adjustment


FADER / BALANCE
FADER FRONT
FADER 0
BALANCE 0
BALANCE LEFT
BALANCE RIGHT
RETURN
FADER REAR

Operation icon (FADER FRONT)

Operation icon (BALANCE LEFT)

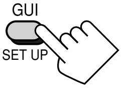
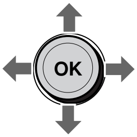
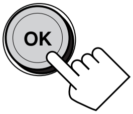
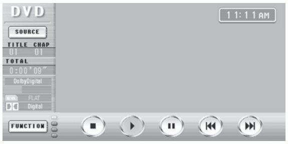
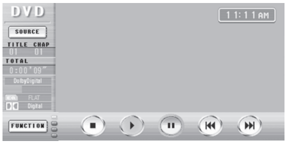
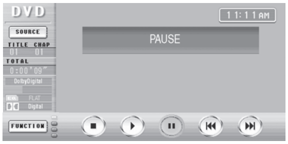
Operation icon (BALANCE RIGHT)

Returns to the previous screen.

Operation icon (FADER REAR)

- **Using the Graphic User Interface (GUI) from the remote controller**
  You can use the Graphic User Interface in the same way as you touch the panel icons.

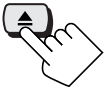
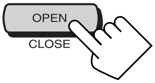
Examples:

1	2	3
 	 	
Display GUI on the monitor (the cursor—yellow frame—appears around the currently selected icon). • While one of the video sources is selected, the GUI function turns on and off at a press of the button.  DVD 11:11 AM SOURCE TITLE CHAP TOTAL FUNCTION	Move the cursor to an icon you want.  DVD 11:11 AM SOURCE TITLE CHAP TOTAL FUNCTION	Confirm.  DVD 11:11 AM PAUSE SOURCE TITLE CHAP TOTAL FUNCTION

To exit from GUI operation mode, press GUI again so that the yellow frame disappears.

- **Using the buttons and controls directly**
  Some operations are only performed by pressing the buttons directly.
  You can also use the buttons and controls on the main unit and remote controller if they have the same or similar name or marks as shown on the touch panel.

Examples:

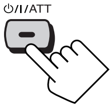
	To eject a loaded disc.	 	To eject the monitor or store it in the compartment.

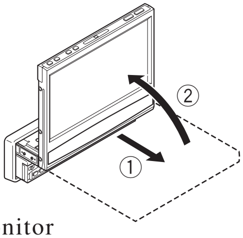
Basic Operations

CAUTION on the monitor :
Do not open or close the monitor by hand.
Do not apply any force to the monitor while it is moving.
Such a behavior may damage the monitor loading mechanism.

For turning on the power, use the buttons on the main unit and the remote controller.

1 Turn on the power

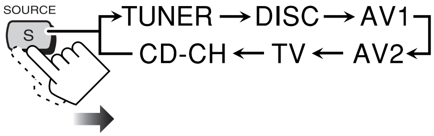




"WAITING" scrolls on the main display of the main unit (and the monitor comes out *).

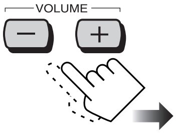
- When the monitor comes out, power comes on to the monitor even if you have turned it off.
- For the space required for the monitor ejection, see page 77.

2 Select the source

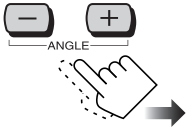


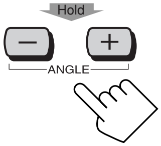
- **DISC**: If a disc is not in the loading slot, you cannot select "DISC" as the source to play.
- **CD-CH/TV**: Without connecting the CD changer or TV tuner unit, you cannot select "CD-CH (CD changer)" or "TV."

3 Adjust the volume



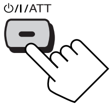
To change the monitor angle:





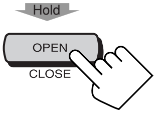
- See page 55 for details.

To drop the volume in a moment (ATT):



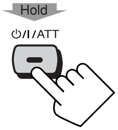
To restore the sound, press it again.

To store the monitor in place:

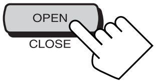


- When the unit is turned off, the power is temporarily turned on.

To turn off the power:



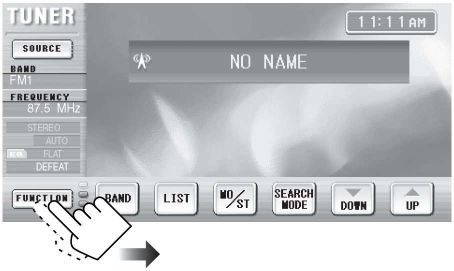
* *This depends on the "AUTO OPEN/ CLOSE" setting (see page 46).*
If the monitor does not come out...



Setting the clock

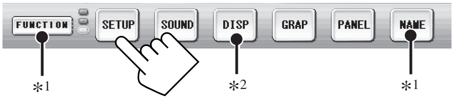
You can also set the clock system to 24 hours or 12 hours.

1 **While playing any source...**

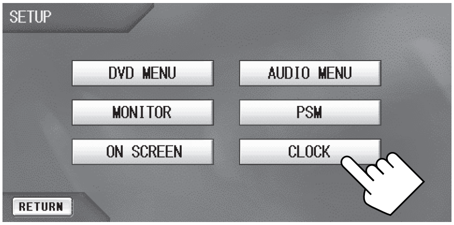

TUNER
11:11 AM
SOURCE
BAND
FM1
FREQUENCY
87.5 MHz
NO NAME
STEREO
AUTO
EQ
FLAT
DEFEAT
FUNCTION
BAND
LIST
MO/ST
SEARCH MODE
DOWN
UP

- If the touch panel icons are not shown on the monitor, touch the center portion of the monitor screen.

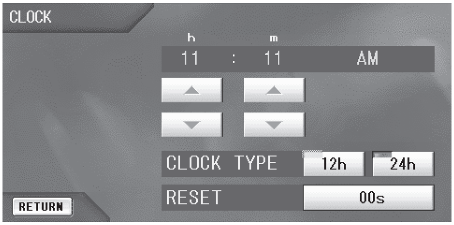
2


FUNCTION
SETUP
SOUND
DISP
GRAP
PANEL
NAME
*1
*2
*1

3

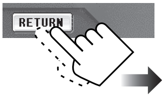

SETUP
DVD MENU
AUDIO MENU
MONITOR
PSM
ON SCREEN
CLOCK
RETURN

4 **Set the clock time.**


CLOCK
h
m
11 : 11 AM
CLOCK TYPE
12h
24h
RESET
00s
RETURN

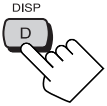
- Press 00s to start the clock time counting exactly from 00 second.

5



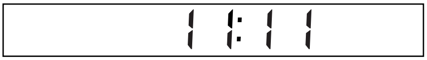
Exit

To display the clock time:



On the main unit

When the unit is turned off, the clock time is displayed on the display of the main unit for a while.



When the unit is turned on...
Each time you press the button, the information shown on the display of the main unit changes.

Information shown on the display differs according to the selected source.

TUNER:	Frequency → Clock → Band&Preset no. →
DISC:	Play time → Clock → Title/Chapter/Folder/Track no. →
AV1/AV2:	Source name → Clock →
TV:	Channel → Clock → TV&Preset no. →
CD-CH:	Elapsed time → Clock → Disc no. → Folder/Track no. →

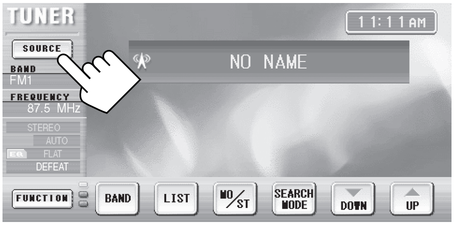
---

*1 It does not appear for some sources.

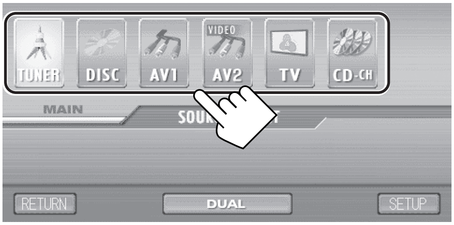
*2 It will be shaded when not available.

Changing the source SOURCE

1 **While playing any source...**


TUNER
11:11 AM
SOURCE
NO NAME
BAND
FM1
FREQUENCY
87.5 MHz
STEREO
AUTO
EQ FLAT
DEFEAT
FUNCTION
BAND
LIST
MO/ST
SEARCH MODE
DOWN
UP

2


TUNER
DISC
AV1
VIDEO
AV2
TV
CD-CH
MAIN
SOU
RETURN
DUAL
SETUP

The current source is highlighted.

Newly selected source operation screen appears.

Other icons	Reference pages
MAIN	See page 33.
DUAL	See page 33.
SETUP	See pages 43 – 52.
RETURN	Returns to the previous screen.

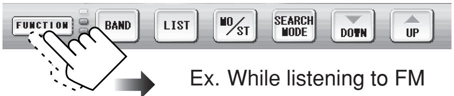
Changing the graphic screen GRAP

You can select one of eight graphics in the picture view window.

- See page 74 for each graphic screen.

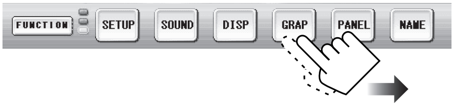
When shipped from the factory, display demonstration has been activated, and starts automatically when no operations are done for about 30 seconds (except while playing a DVD/ VCD).
To cancel it, select one of the graphic screen.

1 **While playing any source...**


FUNCTION
BAND
LIST
MO/ST
SEARCH MODE
DOWN
UP

Ex. While listening to FM broadcast.

2

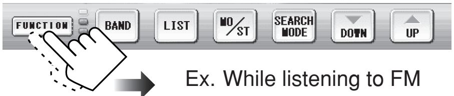

FUNCTION
SETUP
SOUND
DISP
GRAP
PANEL
NAME

- To view the playback picture from any video source, select the screen where the actual playback pictures are shown.

Changing the touch panel color PANEL

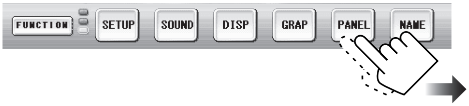
You can change the touch panel color (excluding the picture view window) by selecting from four preset color—blue, silver, red, and black.

1 **While playing any source...**


FUNCTION
BAND
LIST
MO/ST
SEARCH MODE
DOWN
UP

Ex. While listening to FM broadcast.

2

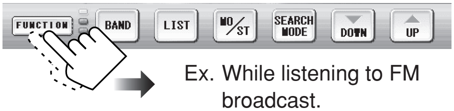

FUNCTION
SETUP
SOUND
DISP
GRAP
PANEL
NAME

Displaying the level meter DISP

You can display the level meter on the graphic screen, by selecting from four preset patterns.

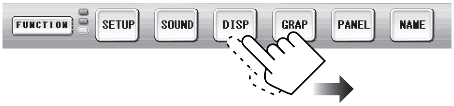
- While viewing the playback picture or display demonstration, you cannot show the level meter.

1 **While playing any source...**



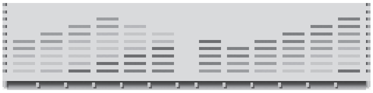
Ex. While listening to FM broadcast.

2

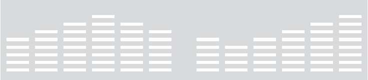


The following level meters are displayed in sequence.

Level meter 1

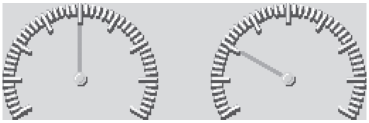


Level meter 2

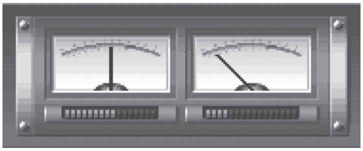


No level meter will appear when no sound comes in.

Level meter 3

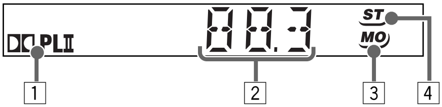


Level meter 4



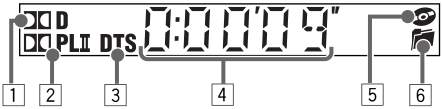
How to read the display of the main unit:

While listening to radio (FM/AM):



1 Lights up when Dolby Pro Logic II is activated (see page 36).
2 Main information—Frequency/Band/Preset no.
3 MO indicator lights when FM reception mode is “MONO.”
4 ST indicator lights while receiving an FM stereo broadcast.

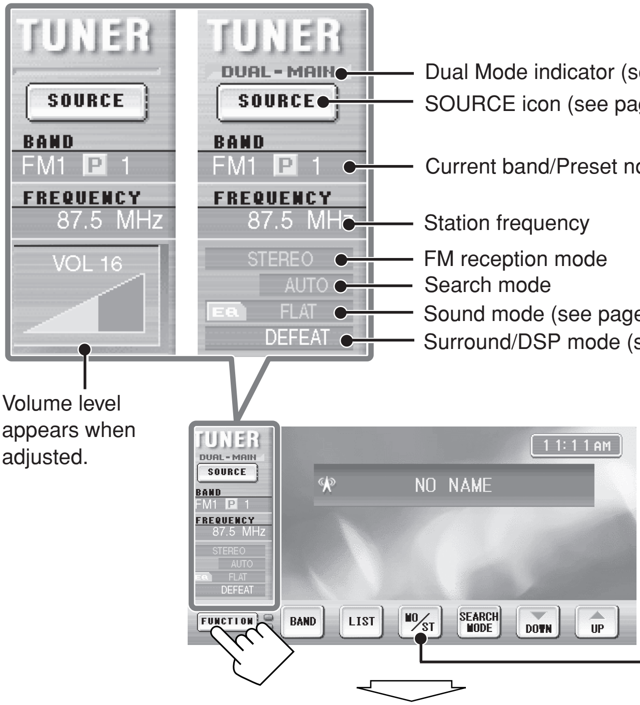
While playing a disc:



1 Lights up when Dolby Digital signal is detected (see page 36).
2 Lights up when Dolby Pro Logic II is activated (see page 36).
3 Lights up when DTS signal is detected (see page 36).
4 Main information—Play time/Title no./Chapter no./Folder no./Track no.
5 Lights up when the disc is detected.
6 Lights up when an MP3 CD is detected.

- You can dim the display and the buttons on the front panel.
  For details see page 46 and also the Installation/Connection Manual (separate volume).

Radio Operations


TUNER
DUAL-MAIN
SOURCE
BAND
FM1 P 1
FREQUENCY
87.5 MHz
VOL 16
STEREO
AUTO
EQ FLAT
DEFEAT
11:11 AM
NO NAME
FUNCTION
BAND
LIST
MO/ST
SEARCH MODE
DOWN
UP

Dual Mode indicator (see page 33)

SOURCE icon (see pages 14 and 33)

Current band/Preset no.

Station frequency

FM reception mode

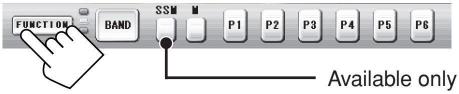
Search mode

Sound mode (see page 39)

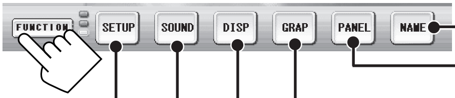
Surround/DSP mode (see page 36)

Volume level appears when adjusted.

Not available for AM.


FUNCTION
BAND
SSM
M
P1
P2
P3
P4
P5
P6

Available only after pressing “M” (next to this icon).


FUNCTION
SETUP
SOUND
DISP
GRAP
PANEL
NAME

See page 53.

See page 14.

See page 14.

See page 15.

See page 39.

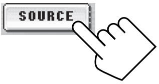
See pages 43 – 52.

Back to the beginning

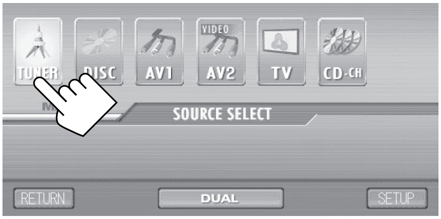
Listening to the Radio

- To tune in to a station using Preset Search, first store your favorite stations into memory (6 stations for each band: see page 18).

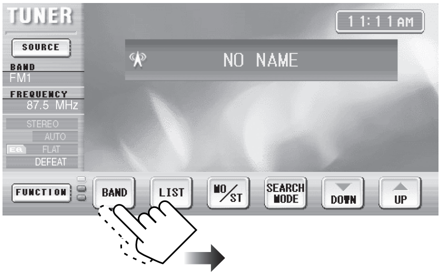
1 Select the Tuner



then

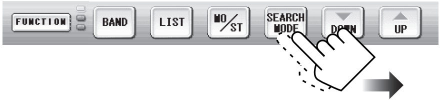

TUNER
DISC
AV1
VIDEO
AV2
TV
CD-CH
SOURCE SELECT
RETURN
DUAL
SETUP

2 Select the band (FM/AM)


TUNER
11:11 AM
SOURCE
BAND
FM1
FREQUENCY
87.5 MHz
STEREO
AUTO
EQ
FLAT
DEFEAT
NO NAME
FUNCTION
BAND
LIST
MO/ST
SEARCH MODE
DOWN
UP

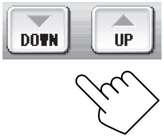
This receiver has three FM bands (FM1, FM2, FM3). You can use any one of them to listen to an FM broadcast.

3 Select Search Mode


FUNCTION
BAND
LIST
MO/ST
SEARCH MODE
DOWN
UP

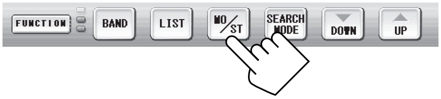
AUTO:	To start Auto Search.
MANUAL:	To start Manual Search.
PRESET:	To select preset station numbers (only possible after storing stations in memory).

4 Tune in to a station



- **For Auto Search,** press either icon once. "Auto Search" begins. When a station is received, searching stops.
- **For Manual Search,** press either icon repeatedly (or hold) until a station you want is selected.
- **For Preset Search,** press either icon repeatedly until a preset number you want is selected.

When an FM stereo broadcast is hard to receive:


FUNCTION
BAND
LIST
MO/ST
SEARCH MODE
DOWN
UP

FM reception mode changes to "MONO." Each time you press the icon, monaural reception mode turns on and off.

- When FM reception mode is "MONO," reception improves, but stereo effect will be lost.

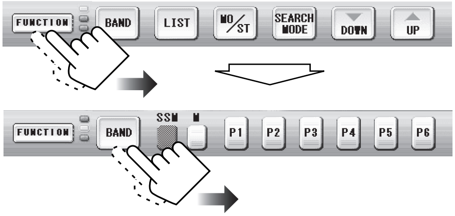
Storing stations in memory

You can preset 6 stations for each band.

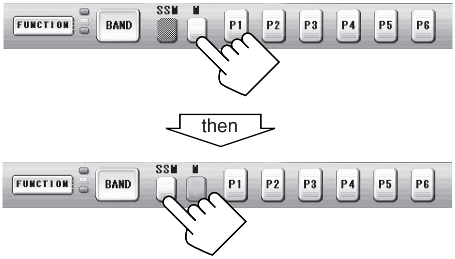
FM station automatic presetting—SSM (Strong-station Sequential Memory)

- This functions only for FM bands.

1 **Select the FM band (FM1 – FM3) you want to store FM stations into.**


FUNCTION
BAND
LIST
MO/ST
SEARCH MODE
DOWN
UP
FUNCTION
BAND
SSM
M
P1
P2
P3
P4
P5
P6

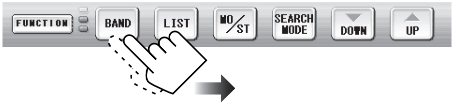
2 **Start SSM.**


FUNCTION
BAND
SSM
M
P1
P2
P3
P4
P5
P6
then
FUNCTION
BAND
SSM
M
P1
P2
P3
P4
P5
P6

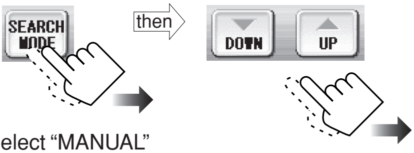
Local FM stations with the strongest signals are searched and stored automatically in the selected FM band.

Manual presetting

1 **Select the band (FM1 – FM3, and AM) you want to store a station into.**

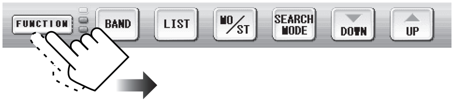

FUNCTION
BAND
LIST
MO/ST
SEARCH MODE
DOWN
UP

2 **Tune in to a station.**

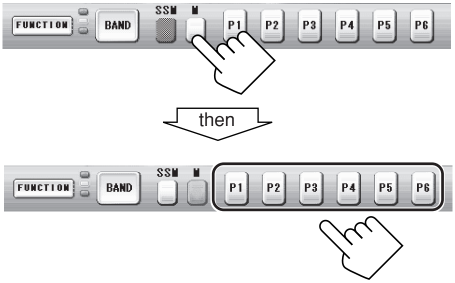

SEARCH MODE
then
DOWN
UP

Select “MANUAL” (or “AUTO”).

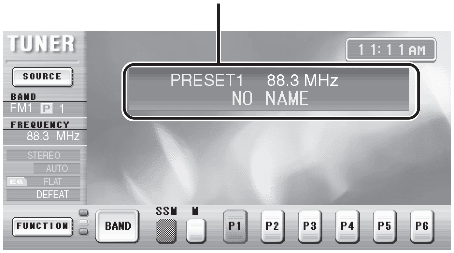
3


FUNCTION
BAND
LIST
MO/ST
SEARCH MODE
DOWN
UP

4 **Store the station into a preset number.**


FUNCTION
BAND
SSM
M
P1
P2
P3
P4
P5
P6
then
FUNCTION
BAND
SSM
M
P1
P2
P3
P4
P5
P6

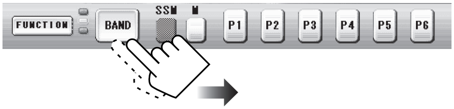
Preset station information will be displayed.


TUNER
11:11 AM
SOURCE
BAND
FM1 P 1
FREQUENCY
88.3 MHz
STEREO
AUTO
EQ
FLAT
DEFEAT
PRESET1 88.3 MHz
NO NAME
FUNCTION
BAND
SSM
M
P1
P2
P3
P4
P5
P6

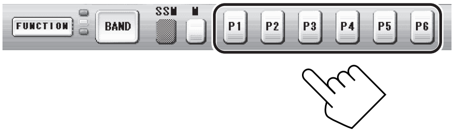
To tune in to a preset station

- See also “Listening to the Radio” on page 17.

1


FUNCTION
BAND
SSM
M
P1
P2
P3
P4
P5
P6

2

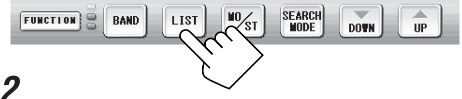

FUNCTION
BAND
SSM
M
P1
P2
P3
P4
P5
P6

Displaying the preset list LIST

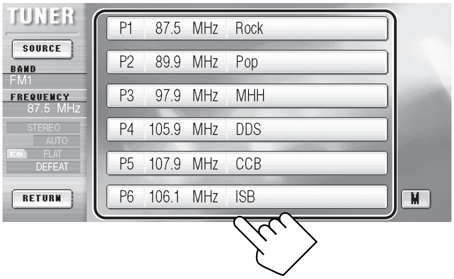
You can store and select the preset stations using the preset list on the monitor screen.

To select a preset station using the preset list

1


FUNCTION
BAND
LIST
MO/ST
SEARCH MODE
DOWN
UP

2

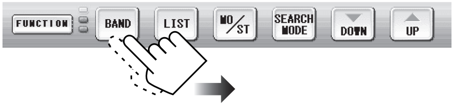

TUNER
SOURCE
BAND
FM1
FREQUENCY
87.5 MHz
STEREO
AUTO
EQ
FLAT
DEFEAT
RETURN
M

P1	87.5	MHz	Rock
P2	89.9	MHz	Pop
P3	97.9	MHz	MHH
P4	105.9	MHz	DDS
P5	107.9	MHz	CCB
P6	106.1	MHz	ISB

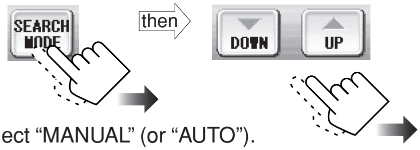
- Preset numbers, station frequencies and assigned names (see page 53) are shown on the list.

To store a station using the preset list

1 **Select the band (FM1 – FM3, and AM) you want to store a station into.**

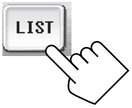

FUNCTION
BAND
LIST
MO/ST
SEARCH MODE
DOWN
UP

2 **Tune into a station.**

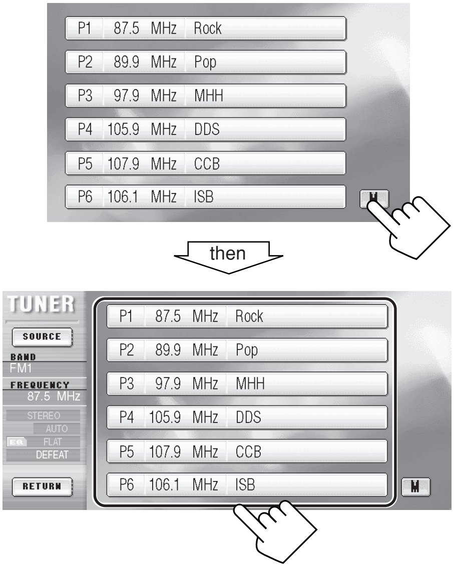

SEARCH MODE
then
DOWN
UP

Select “MANUAL” (or “AUTO”).

3

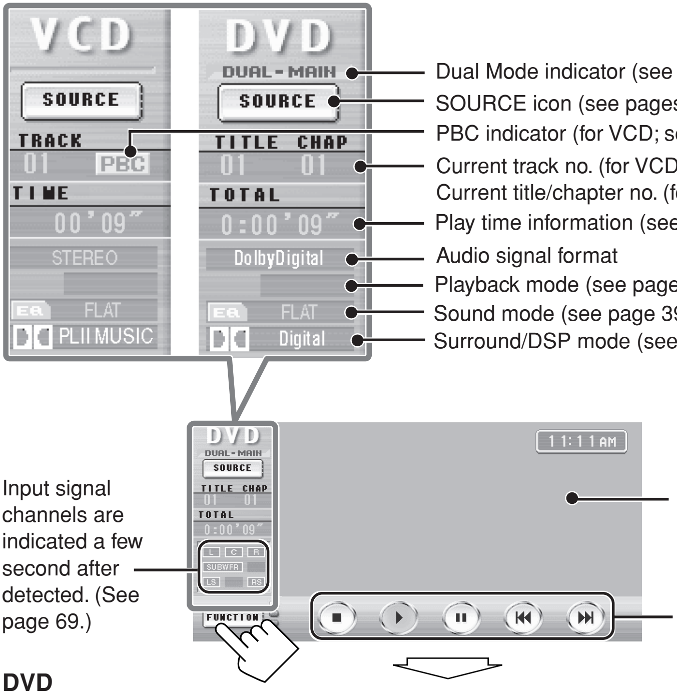


4 **Store the station into a preset number.**


M
then
TUNER
SOURCE
BAND
FM1
FREQUENCY
87.5 MHz
STEREO
AUTO
EQ
FLAT
DEFEAT
RETURN
M

P1	87.5	MHz	Rock
P2	89.9	MHz	Pop
P3	97.9	MHz	MHH
P4	105.9	MHz	DDS
P5	107.9	MHz	CCB
P6	106.1	MHz	ISB

DVD/VCD Operations



VCD
SOURCE
TRACK
01 PBC
TIME
00’09”
STEREO
EQ FLAT
PLII MUSIC
DVD
DUAL-MAIN
SOURCE
TITLE CHAP
01 01
TOTAL
0:00’09”
DolbyDigital
EQ FLAT
Digital
11:11 AM
L C R
SUBWFR
LS RS
FUNCTION

Dual Mode indicator (see page 33)

SOURCE icon (see pages 14 and 33)

PBC indicator (for VCD; see page 25)

Current track no. (for VCD)
Current title/chapter no. (for DVD)

Play time information (see page 30)

Audio signal format

Playback mode (see page 30)

Sound mode (see page 39)

Surround/DSP mode (see page 36)

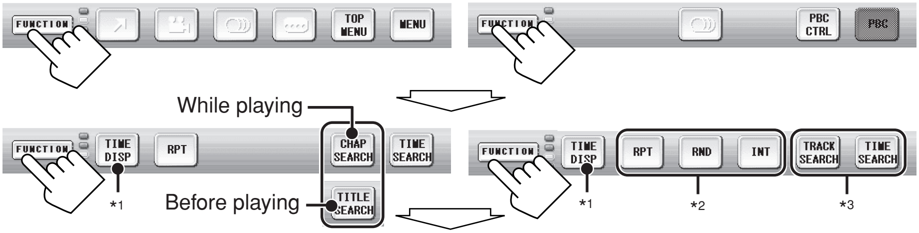
Input signal channels are indicated a few second after detected. (See page 69.)

Playback picture will be shown in the picture view window.

Playback buttons (see page 22)

DVD

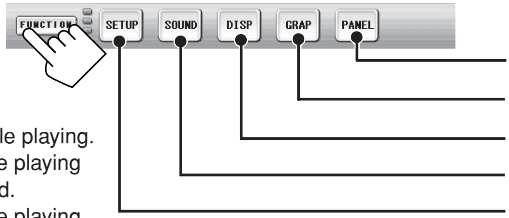
VCD



FUNCTION
TOP MENU
MENU
PBC CTRL
PBC
TIME DISP
RPT
CHAP SEARCH
TIME SEARCH
TITLE SEARCH
RND
INT
TRACK SEARCH
*1
*1
*2
*3

While playing

Before playing



FUNCTION
SETUP
SOUND
DISP
GRAP
PANEL

See page 14.

See page 14.

See page 15.

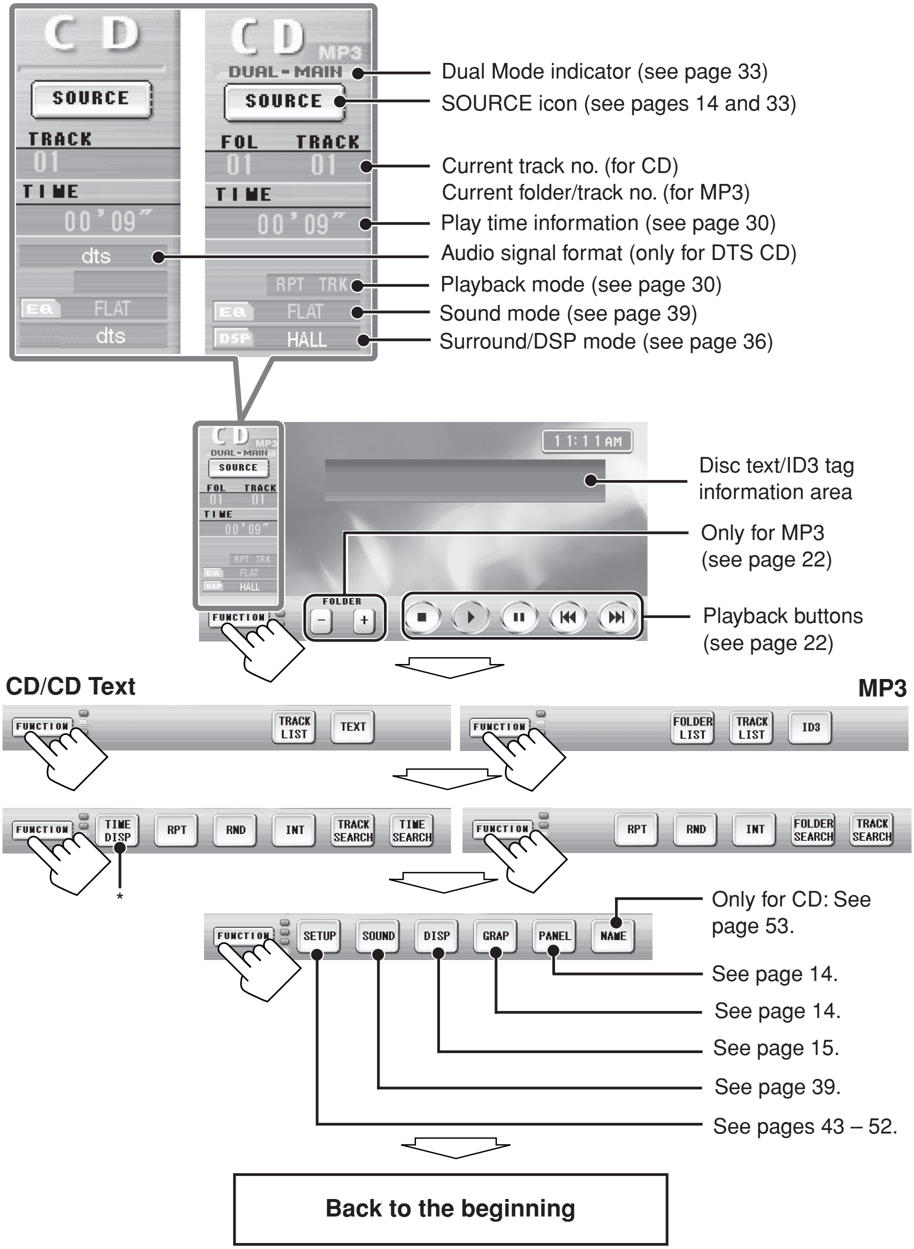
See page 39.

See pages 43 – 52.

Back to the beginning

[*1] Available only while playing.
[*2] Not available while playing with PBC activated.
[*3] Not available while playing with PBC activated, but available while not playing.

CD/MP3 Operations


CD
SOURCE
TRACK
01
TIME
00'09"
dts
EQ FLAT
dts
CD MP3
DUAL-MAIN
SOURCE
FOL TRACK
01 01
TIME
00'09"
RPT TRK
EQ FLAT
DSP HALL
11:11 AM
FOLDER
– +
FUNCTION
TRACK LIST
TEXT
FOLDER LIST
TRACK LIST
ID3
TIME DISP
RPT
RND
INT
TRACK SEARCH
TIME SEARCH
FOLDER SEARCH
TRACK SEARCH
SETUP
SOUND
DISP
GRAP
PANEL
NAME
*

Dual Mode indicator (see page 33)

SOURCE icon (see pages 14 and 33)

Current track no. (for CD)
Current folder/track no. (for MP3)

Play time information (see page 30)

Audio signal format (only for DTS CD)

Playback mode (see page 30)

Sound mode (see page 39)

Surround/DSP mode (see page 36)

Disc text/ID3 tag information area

Only for MP3 (see page 22)

Playback buttons (see page 22)

CD/CD Text

MP3

Only for CD: See page 53.

See page 14.

See page 14.

See page 15.

See page 39.

See pages 43 – 52.

Back to the beginning

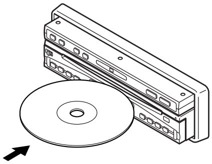
* Available only while playing

Basic Disc Operations

Before performing any operations, observe the following...

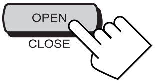
- For DVD playback, change the Setup Menu setting (see page 43).
- If "⊘" appears on the monitor, the disc cannot accept the operation you have tried.
  - – In some cases, "⊘" is not display, but operations will not be accepted.

1 Insert a disc



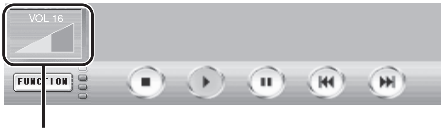
The unit turns on, then draws the disc, and starts playback automatically.

- The monitor does not come out from its compartment if "AUTO OPEN/CLOSE" is set to "OFF" (see page 46).
  If the monitor does not comes out...



- It takes several seconds for the unit to detect a disc type.
- If a disc menu appears, see page 25.

2 Adjust the volume



Volume level appears.

3 Operate the disc

FOLDER [–] [+] : Selects the folder (only for MP3).

■ : Stops (see "Stopping play" on page 69).
- VCD/CD/MP3 playback will continue endlessly until you stop it.

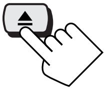
▶ : Starts playback.

❚❚ : Pauses. To resume playback, press ►.

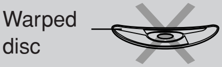
⏮ : Goes back to the beginning of the current chapter/track, then skips to the previous chapters/tracks if pressed repeatedly.

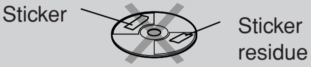
⏭ : Skips to the following chapters/tracks if pressed repeatedly.

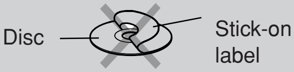
To stop play and eject the disc:



Do not use the following discs:







The following marks used in this manual indicate the playable discs.

DVD DVD	VCD VCD with/without PBC	VCD PBC VCD with PBC
CD CD	MP3 MP3	ALL All playable discs

On-screen guide icons

DVD VCD

During play, the following guide icons may appear for a while on the monitor.

- The following guide icons are displayed when “GUIDE” is set to “ON” (see page 48).

💬	: Appears at the beginning of a scene containing multi-subtitle languages (only for DVD).
🔊	: Appears at the beginning of a scene containing multi-audio languages (only for DVD).
🎥	: Appears at the beginning of a scene containing multi-angle views (only for DVD).
►	: Appears when you press ►.
❚❚	: Appears when you press ❚❚.
►►	: Appears when you start forward search (search speed also appears).
◄◄	: Appears when you start reverse search (search speed also appears).
❚►	: Appears when you start forward slow motion. (Slow motion speed also appears.)
◄❚	: Appears when you start reverse slow motion (slow motion speed also appears) (only for DVD).

To fast-forward or reverse the chapter or track, press ►► or ◄◄ **on the remote controller** while playing a disc.

ALL

Each time you press the button, the search speed changes as follows:

x2 ➡ x5 ➡ x10 ➡ x20 ➡ x60*

To resume normal speed, press ►.

If you hold ►►I or I◄◄ while playing a disc, the search speed changes: x2 ➡ x10.

- If you release the button, normal speed playback resumes.

To play back the still picture

DVD VCD

Press ❚❚. A still picture appears.

Frame by Frame Playback—You can advance the still picture frame by frame by pressing ❚❚ repeatedly.

To resume normal playback, press ►.

Slow Motion Playback—You can advance or reverse* the still picture in slow motion by pressing ►► or ◄◄ **on the remote controller**. Each time you press the button, the search speed changes as follows:

1/32 ➡ 1/16 ➡ 1/8 ➡ 1/4 ➡ 1/2

To resume normal speed, press ►.

If you hold ►►I or I◄◄ during pause, the slow motion speed changes: 1/32 ➡ 1/8.

- If you release the button, normal speed playback resumes.

* *Only for DVD.*

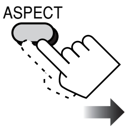
Changing the aspect ratio

DVD VCD

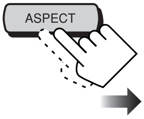
You can change the aspect ratio of the playback pictures.

- This function is only possible using the buttons on the main unit or on the remote controller.
- Aspect ratio cannot be changed while the GUI operation mode is activated.

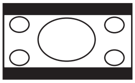
On the remote controller

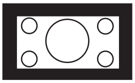


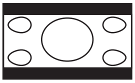
On the main unit

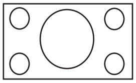


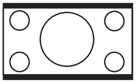
- **When viewing 16:9 video signals:**


FULL

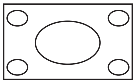

NORMAL

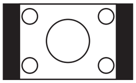

WIDE

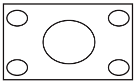

ZOOM

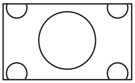

CINEMA

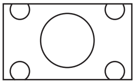
- **When viewing 4:3 video signals:**


FULL


NORMAL


WIDE


ZOOM


CINEMA

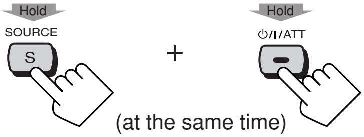
- When you change the aspect ratio, either "RECEIVER" or "CRADLE" (see page 33) appears with the selected aspect ratio. It indicates where the monitor is now loaded. Aspect ratio cannot be set separately for "RECEIVER" or "CRADLE."

Prohibiting disc ejection

ALL

You can lock a disc in the loading slot.

While playing any source...



"NO EJT" appears on the display of the main unit, and the disc cannot be ejected.

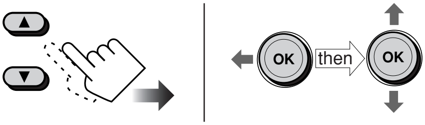
To cancel the prohibition, press the same buttons again.
"EJT OK" appears.

Selecting MP3 folders

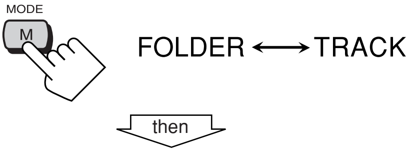
MP3

You can also select the MP3 folder using the buttons on the main unit and on the remote controller.

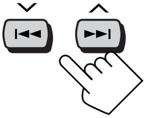
On the remote controller



On the main unit



While "FOLDER" is displayed on the display of the main unit:



Operating the disc menu

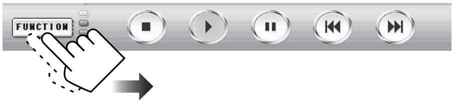
Menu-driven playback is possible while playing back a DVD with menu-driven features or a VCD with the PlayBack Control (PBC) function.

While playing a DVD:

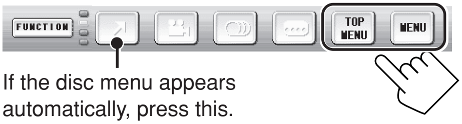
TOP MENU
MENU

DVD discs generally have their own menus or title lists. A title list (TOP MENU) usually contains titles of movies and songs recorded. On the other hand, a menu (MENU) usually contains various information about the disc and playback selections.

1



2

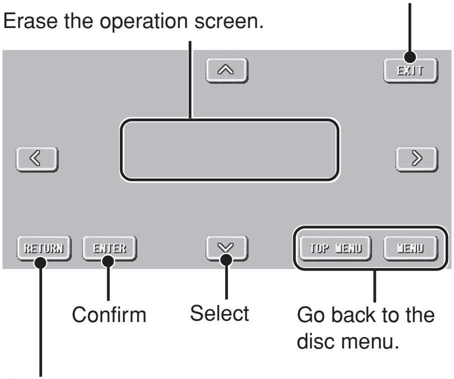


If the disc menu appears automatically, press this.

3 Select an item, then confirm.

Return to the display in Step ***2*** above.

Erase the operation screen.



Confirm

Select

Go back to the disc menu.

Return to the previous page of the discs menu.

When using the remote controller

1. Press TOPMENU or MENU.
2. Push the cursor controller (OK) up/down/ left/right (▲/▼/◄/►) to select an item.
3. Press OK to confirm.

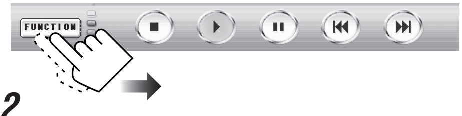
While playing a VCD:

The PBC function allows you to operate the VCD using menus.

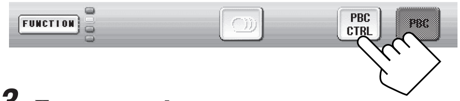
When you start playback, a menu will automatically appear on the monitor.

- A menu may be a list of items, divided screens, or some moving pictures.
- When a VCD with PBC is detected, the PBC indicator appears on the monitor.
- When "►" or "SELECT" is displayed on the monitor, press ► (or OK on the remote controller if pressing ► does not work) to start playback.

1

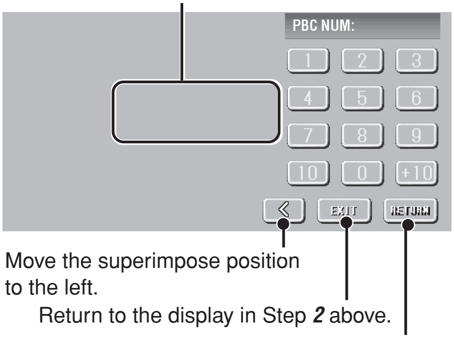


2



3 Enter a number.

Erase the operation screen.



Move the superimpose position to the left.

Return to the display in Step ***2*** above.

Return to the previous page of the PBC menu.

- To select number 5, press 5.
- To select number 10, press 10.
- To select number 20, press +10, then 10.

When using the number buttons on the remote controller

- *To select number 5, press 5.*
- *To select number 10, press 10.*
- *To select number 23, press +10, +10, then 3.*

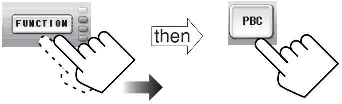
To cancel the PBC playback

You can cancel the menu-driven operations (PBC function) using the remote controller.

1. Press ■ to stop playback.
2. Press number buttons to select a track. Playback without PBC starts from the selected track.
   - You can also use Track Search icon (see page 31) and Time Search icon (see page 32) on the Touch Panel to start playback without PBC.

To resume the PBC function again, press TOPMENU or MENU **on the remote controller**.

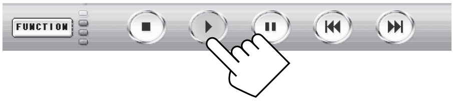
- You can also use PBC icon on the Touch Panel.



Replaying the previous scenes

DVD

You can replay about 10-second portion of the previous scene while playing a DVD—One Touch Replay.



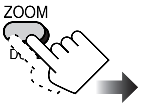
Zooming in

DVD VCD

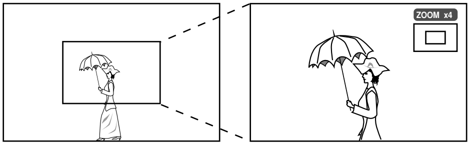
You can zoom into a particular portion of the picture.

- This function is only possible using the remote controller.

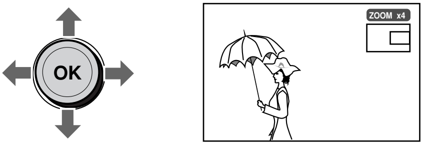
1



➡ x2 ➡ x4 ➡ x8 ➡ x1 ➡ x2 ➡ x4 ➡ x8 ➡ • • • •



2 **Move the zoomed-in portion on the monitor.**



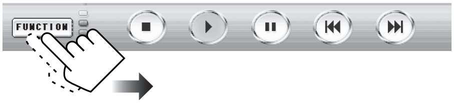
To cancel Zoom, press OK or press ZOOM repeatedly until “ZOOM x1” appears.

Selecting subtitles

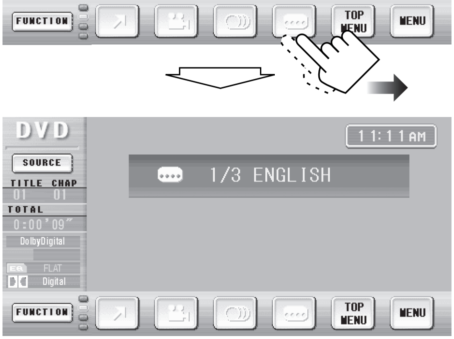
While playing a chapter containing subtitles in different languages, you can select the subtitle language to display on the monitor.

- You can also select the subtitle language using SETUP menu (see page 44).

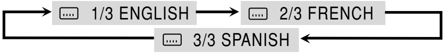
1



2 **Select a subtitle language you want.**


FUNCTION
TOP MENU
MENU
DVD
11:11 AM
SOURCE
1/3 ENGLISH
TITLE CHAP
01 01
TOTAL
0:00'09"
DolbyDigital
EQ FLAT
Digital

Ex.


1/3 ENGLISH
2/3 FRENCH
3/3 SPANISH

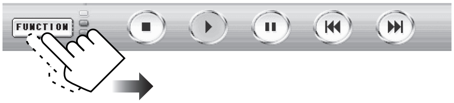
Selecting audio languages

For DVD: While playing a chapter containing audio languages, you can select the language to listen to.

- You can also select the audio language using SETUP menu (see page 44).

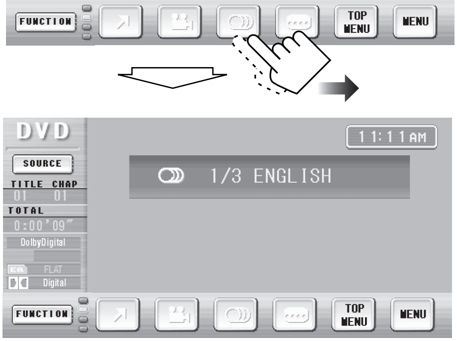
For VCD: While playing a track, you can select the audio channel to play. This is convenient when playing a Karaoke VCD.

1

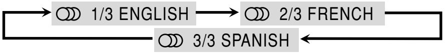


2 **Select an audio language you want.**

When playing DVD:

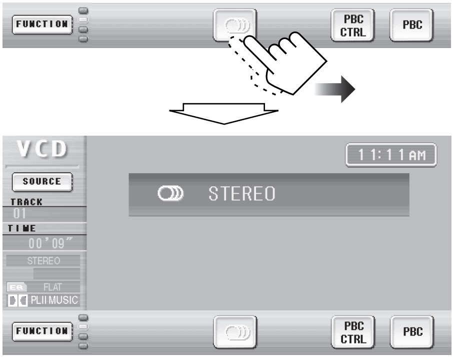

FUNCTION
TOP MENU
MENU
DVD
11:11 AM
SOURCE
1/3 ENGLISH
TITLE CHAP
01 01
TOTAL
0:00'09"
DolbyDigital
EQ FLAT
Digital

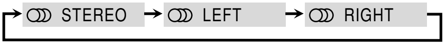
Ex.


1/3 ENGLISH
2/3 FRENCH
3/3 SPANISH

To be continued...

When playing VCD:


FUNCTION
PBC CTRL
PBC
VCD
11:11 AM
SOURCE
TRACK
01
TIME
00' 09"
STEREO
FLAT
PLII MUSIC
STEREO

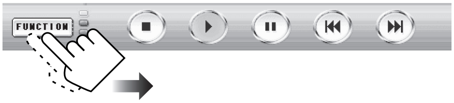

STEREO
LEFT
RIGHT

- STEREO: To listen to normal stereo (left/right) playback.
- LEFT: To listen to the left audio channel.
- RIGHT: To listen to the right audio channel.

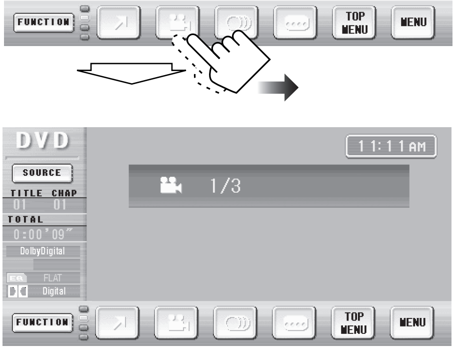
Selecting multi-angle views

While playing a disc containing multi-angle views, you can view the same scene at different angles.

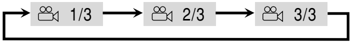
1

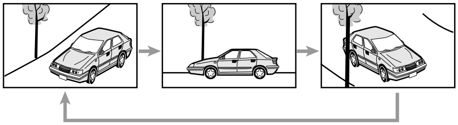


2 **Select a view angle you want.**


FUNCTION
TOP MENU
MENU
DVD
11:11 AM
SOURCE
TITLE CHAP
01 01
TOTAL
0:00' 09"
DolbyDigital
FLAT
Digital
1/3

Ex.





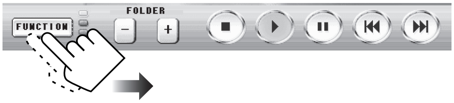
Locating a folder/track using the list FOLDER LIST TRACK LIST

To locate a folder by displaying the folder list

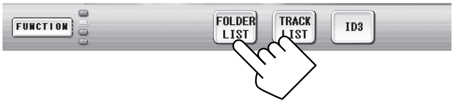
MP3

- This functions only for MP3.

1

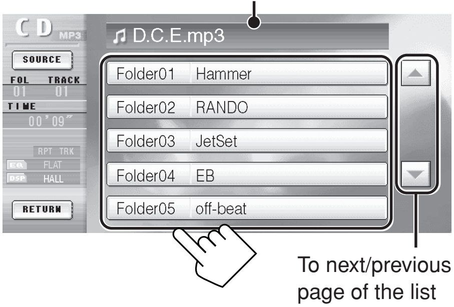

FUNCTION
FOLDER
–
+

2


FUNCTION
FOLDER LIST
TRACK LIST
ID3

3 **Select a folder you want.**

Current track name or ID3 Tag


CD MP3
SOURCE
FOL
TRACK
01
01
TIME
00'09"
RPT TRK
EQ FLAT
DSP HALL
RETURN

♫ D.C.E.mp3

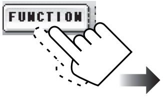
Folder01 Hammer
Folder02 RANDO
Folder03 JetSet
Folder04 EB
Folder05 off-beat

To next/previous page of the list

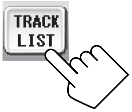
To locate a track by displaying the track list

CD MP3

1

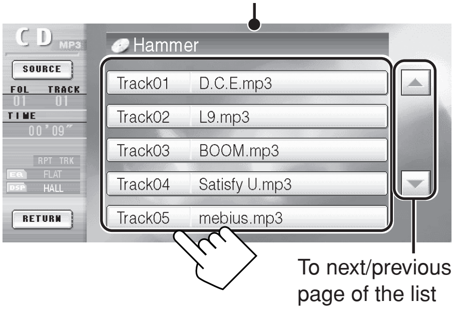


2



3 **Select a track you want.**

Current folder name or ID3 Tag (for MP3)
Disc name (for CD) or CD Text


CD MP3
SOURCE
FOL
TRACK
01
01
TIME
00'09"
RPT TRK
EQ FLAT
DSP HALL
RETURN

Hammer

Track01 D.C.E.mp3
Track02 L9.mp3
Track03 BOOM.mp3
Track04 Satisfy U.mp3
Track05 mebius.mp3

To next/previous page of the list

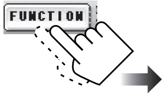
Ex. when playing MP3

Displaying the disc text information TEXT ID3

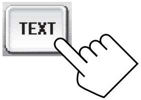
CD MP3

With Auto Scroll or Scroll selected, you can display the text and scroll it on the monitor if it is long and cannot be displayed at a time.

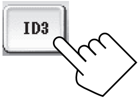
1



2



(For CD)



(For MP3)

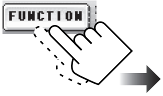
Scroll → Auto Scroll → Off → Scroll

- Scroll: Text on the information area scrolls once.
- Auto Scroll: Text on the information area scrolls every 5 seconds.
- Off: The information area goes off (no text information will be shown).

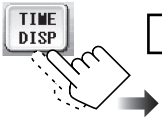
Displaying the time information TIME DISP

DVD VCD CD

1



2



TIME → REM → TOTAL → T.REM → TIME

- TIME: Elapsed playing time of the current chapter/track
- REM: Remaining time of the current chapter/track
- TOTAL: Elapsed title time (for DVD)
  Elapsed disc time (for other discs)
- T.REM: Remaining title time (for DVD)
  Remaining disc time (for other discs)

Selecting playback modes

You can use only one of the following playback modes at a time—Repeat Play, Random Play, and Intro Scan.

- For VCD: While PBC is not in use.

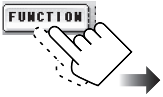
Repeat Play RPT

ALL

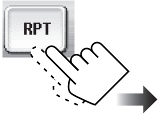
You can repeat playback.

- Repeat Play can be deactivated only for DVD.

1



2



When playing DVD:

REPEAT PLAY CHAPTER → REPEAT PLAY TITLE → REPEAT PLAY OFF → REPEAT PLAY CHAPTER

When playing VCD/CD:

REPEAT PLAY TRACK → REPEAT PLAY OFF → REPEAT PLAY TRACK

When playing MP3:

REPEAT PLAY TRACK → REPEAT PLAY FOLDER → REPEAT PLAY OFF → REPEAT PLAY TRACK

REPEAT PLAY

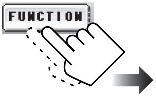
- CHAPTER: Repeats the current chapter.
- TITLE: Repeats the current title.
- TRACK: Repeats the current track.
- FOLDER: Repeats the current folder.
- OFF: For DVD: Cancels Repeat Play.
  For VCD/CD/MP3:
  Repeats the disc.

Random Play RND

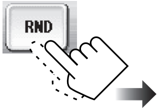
VCD CD MP3

You can play back tracks at random.

1



2



When playing VCD/CD:

→ RANDOM PLAY DISC → RANDOM PLAY OFF

When playing MP3:

→ RANDOM PLAY FOLDER → RANDOM PLAY DISC → RANDOM PLAY OFF ←

RANDOM PLAY

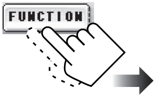
- DISC: Plays randomly all tracks on the disc.
- FOLDER: Plays randomly all tracks of the current folder, then moves to the next folder and so on.
- OFF: Cancels Random Play.

Intro Scan INT

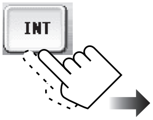
VCD CD MP3

You can play back the first 15 seconds of each track sequentially.

1



2



When playing VCD/CD:

→ INTRO SCAN TRACK → INTRO SCAN OFF

When playing MP3:

→ INTRO SCAN TRACK → INTRO SCAN FOLDER → INTRO SCAN OFF ←

INTRO SCAN

- TRACK: Plays the beginning of all tracks.
- FOLDER: Plays the first tracks of all folders.
- OFF: Cancels Intro Scan.

Searching for scenes or songs

You can use various search functions to find your favorite scenes or songs.

Title/Chapter/Folder/Track Search

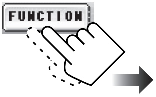
TITLE SEARCH CHAP SEARCH DVD

TRACK SEARCH VCD CD

FOLDER SEARCH TRACK SEARCH MP3

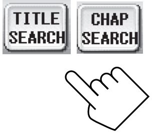
- For DVD: Title Search before playing, and Chapter Search while playing.
- For VCD: During stop when PBC is in use.

1

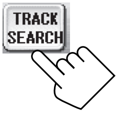


2

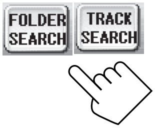
(For DVD)



(For VCD/CD)



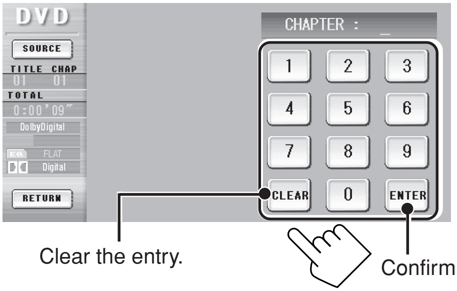
(For MP3)



To be continued...

3 Enter a number, then confirm.

Ex. when playing DVD:


DVD
SOURCE
TITLE CHAP
01 01
TOTAL
0:00'09"
DolbyDigital
FLAT
Digital
RETURN
CHAPTER : _
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
CLEAR
0
ENTER

Clear the entry.

Confirm

When using the number buttons on the remote controller

- *To select number 5, press 5.*
- *To select number 10, press 10.*
- *To select number 23, press +10, +10, then 3.*

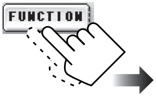
You cannot select folder using the remote controller.

Time Search

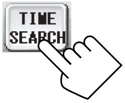
You can start playing a particular point by specifying the elapsed playing time of the current title (for DVD) and of the disc (for VCD/CD).

- For DVD: During play or pause. (For some DVDs: any time)
- For VCD: While not playing with PBC activated.

1

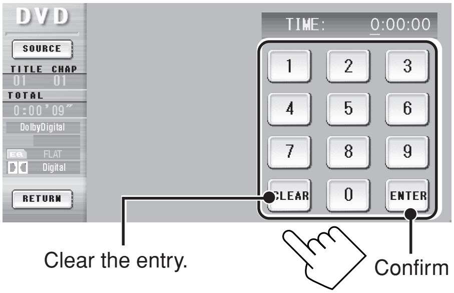


2


TIME SEARCH

3 Enter a number, then confirm.

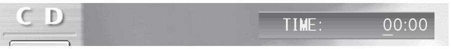
Ex. when playing DVD:


DVD
SOURCE
TITLE CHAP
01 01
TOTAL
0:00'09"
DolbyDigital
FLAT
Digital
RETURN
TIME: 0:00:00
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
CLEAR
0
ENTER

Clear the entry.

Confirm

Ex. when playing CD:


C D
TIME: 00:00

Examples (for DVD)

To play back from 2(H):34(M):00(S)
Press number buttons 2, 3, 4, then ENTER.

TIME 2 : 34 :00

To play back from 58(M):00(S)
Press number buttons 0, 5, 8, then ENTER.

TIME 0 : 58 :00

Example (for VCD/CD)

To play back from 23(M):40(S)
Press number buttons 2, 3, 4, then ENTER.

TIME 23 : 40

- You do not have to press “0” to enter the trailing zeros.

Dual Mode Operations

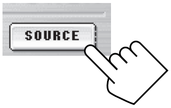
You can play back two different sources as the main source (MAIN) and subsidiary source (SUB).
You can listen to the main source through the speakers, while the subsidiary source through the monitor inserted into the cradle or the one connected to the AV OUTPUT jacks.

- For connections of the cradle and an optional monitor, refer to the Installation/Connection Manual (separate volume).

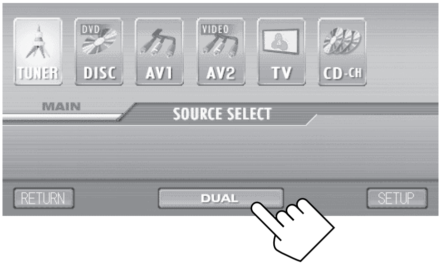
Selecting the sources

To activate Dual Mode and select the subsidiary source

1

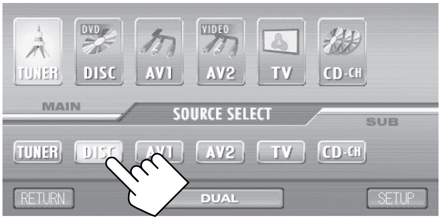


2


TUNER
DVD
DISC
AV1
VIDEO
AV2
TV
CD-CH
MAIN
SOURCE SELECT
RETURN
DUAL
SETUP

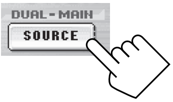
3 **Select the subsidiary source (SUB) you want.**

- The current sources for MAIN and SUB are highlighted.


TUNER
DVD
DISC
AV1
VIDEO
AV2
TV
CD-CH
MAIN
SOURCE SELECT
SUB
TUNER
DISC
AV1
AV2
TV
CD-CH
RETURN
DUAL
SETUP

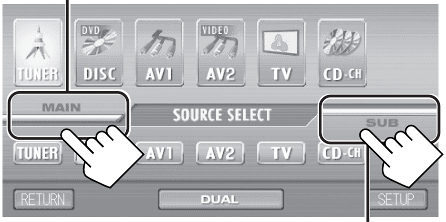
To show the main/subsidiary source operation screen on the monitor

1

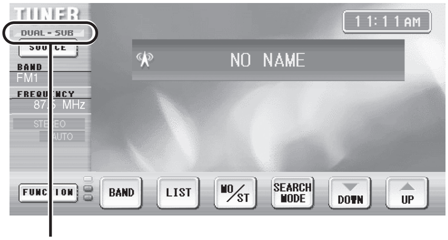

DUAL - MAIN
SOURCE

2

To show the main source operation screen (DUAL–MAIN)


TUNER
DVD
DISC
AV1
VIDEO
AV2
TV
CD-CH
MAIN
SOURCE SELECT
SUB
TUNER
AV1
AV2
TV
CD-CH
RETURN
DUAL
SETUP

To show the subsidiary source operation screen (DUAL–SUB)


TUNER
DUAL - SUB
SOURCE
BAND
FM1
FREQUENCY
87.5 MHz
STEREO
AUTO
11:11 AM
NO NAME
FUNCTION
BAND
LIST
MO/ST
SEARCH MODE
DOWN
UP

Dual Mode indicator (DUAL–MAIN or DUAL–SUB) appears.

Ex. When the subsidiary source operation screen (DUAL–SUB) is displayed.

To cancel the Dual Mode, press DUAL.
Each time you press the icon, Dual Mode is turned on and off alternately.

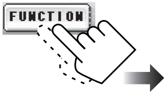
- When Dual Mode is turned off, the main source screen appears.

Adjusting AV OUTPUT volume

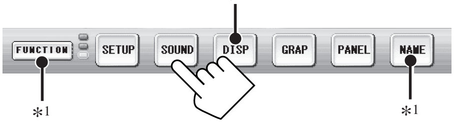
Select an appropriate volume level for the component connected to the AV OUTPUT jacks on the hideaway unit.

- This functions without respect to the Dual Mode setting.

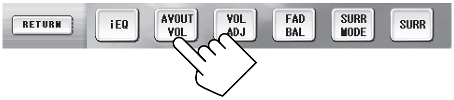
1



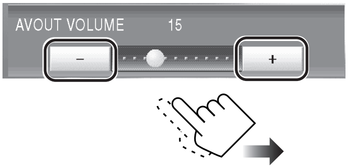
2


*2
FUNCTION
SETUP
SOUND
DISP
GRAP
PANEL
NAME
*1
*1

3


RETURN
iEQ
AVOUT VOL
VOL ADJ
FAD BAL
SURR MODE
SURR

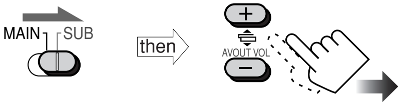
4 **Adjust the AV output volume.**


AVOUT VOLUME
15
–
+

*1 It does not appear for some sources.

*2 It will be shaded when not available.

On the remote controller


MAIN
SUB
then
AVOUT VOL
+
–

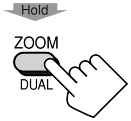
While Dual Mode is in use...

- The playback source does not change to “DISC” though you insert a disc. “DUAL” flashes on the display of the main unit.
- You can only adjust the volume level for the subsidiary source (the other sound adjustments cannot be used for the subsidiary source).

When using the remote controller:

- For Dual Mode operations...
  - – When controlling the monitor connected to the AV OUTPUT jacks, aim the remote controller at the remote sensor on the main unit.
  - – When controlling the monitor inserted into the cradle, aim the remote controller at the remote sensor on the cradle.

To activate Dual Mode

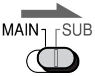

Hold
ZOOM
DUAL

Each time you press and hold the button, Dual Mode turns on and off.

- When Dual Mode is turned on, the source selection screen appears on the monitor (see page 33).

To operate the subsidiary source

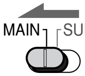
1



2 Press the source buttons, then the source operation buttons.

To operate the main source

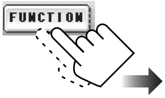
1



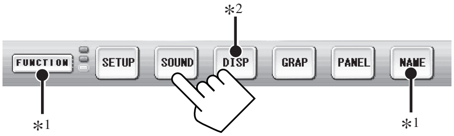
2 Press the source buttons, then the source operation buttons.

Surround Mode Operations

1

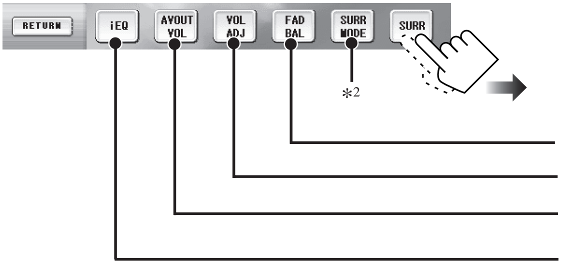


2


FUNCTION
SETUP
SOUND
DISP
GRAP
PANEL
NAME
*2
*1
*1

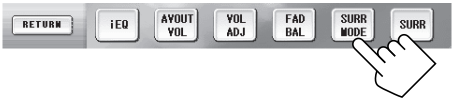
*1 It does not appear for some sources.
*2 It will be shaded when not available.

3 Activate and select the surround mode or DSP mode.

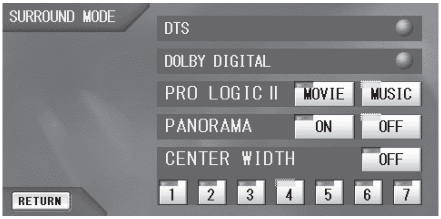

RETURN
iEQ
AVOUT VOL
VOL ADJ
FAD BAL
SURR MODE
SURR
*2

See page 41.
See page 41.
See page 34.
See page 39.

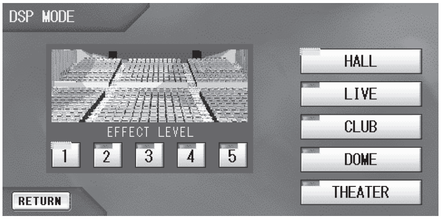
4 Make adjustment if you want to.
- If neither surround mode nor DSP mode is activated, you cannot make adjustment.


RETURN
iEQ
AVOUT VOL
VOL ADJ
FAD BAL
SURR MODE
SURR

When surround mode is activated:


SURROUND MODE
DTS
DOLBY DIGITAL
PRO LOGIC II
MOVIE
MUSIC
PANORAMA
ON
OFF
CENTER WIDTH
OFF
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
RETURN

When DSP mode is activated:


DSP MODE
EFFECT LEVEL
1
2
3
4
5
HALL
LIVE
CLUB
DOME
THEATER
RETURN

Introducing surround/DSP mode

Surround modes

Dolby Digital

Dolby Digital is a digital signal compression method, developed by Dolby Laboratories, and enables multi-channel encoding and decoding (1ch up to 5.1ch).

Dolby Digital 5.1 CH

Dolby Digital 5.1 CH encoding method records and digitally compresses the left front channel, right front channel, center channel, left surround channel, right surround channel, and LFE channel signals (total 6 channels, but the LFE channel is counted as 0.1 channel. Therefore, called 5.1 channel).
Dolby Digital enables stereo surround sounds, and sets the cutoff frequency of the surround treble at 20 kHz, compared to 7 kHz for Dolby Pro Logic. As such, the sound movement and "being there" feeling are enhanced much more than Dolby Pro Logic.

DTS

DTS is another digital signal compression method, developed by Digital Theater Systems, Inc., and enables multi-channel encoding and decoding (1ch up to 6.1ch).

DTS Digital Surround

DTS Digital Surround is another discrete 5.1-channel digital audio format available on CD, LD, and DVD software.
Compared to Dolby Digital, the DTS Digital Surround format has a lower audio compression rate which enables it to add breadth and depth to the sounds reproduced. As such, DTS Digital Surround features natural, solid, and clear sound.

Dolby Pro Logic II

It is a multi-channel playback format to convert 2-channel software into 5-channel (plus subwoofer). The matrix-based conversion method used for Dolby Pro Logic II makes no limitation for the cutoff frequency of the surround treble and enables stereo surround sound.

- This unit provides two types of Dolby Pro Logic II modes—**Pro Logic II "MOVIE"** and **Pro Logic II "MUSIC**."

MOVIE:	Suitable for playing any Dolby Surround encoded software.
MUSIC:	Suitable for playing any 2-channel stereo software.

No sound may come out of the subwoofer (though the subwoofer is activated) with Dolby Pro Logic II in use. (This depends on your speaker setting—see page 51).

Digital Signal Processor (DSP) mode—reproducing the sound field

The sound heard in a concert hall, club, etc. consists of direct sound and indirect sound—early reflections and reflections from behind. Direct sounds reach the listener directly without any reflection. On the other hand, indirect sounds are delayed by the distances of the ceiling and walls. These direct sounds and indirect sounds are the most important elements of the acoustic surround effects.
DSP modes can create these important elements, and give you a real "being there" feeling.

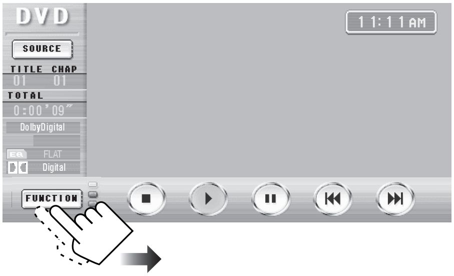
Turning on and off the surround/DSP mode SURR MODE SURR

You can use surround or Digital Signal Processor (DSP) mode while playing any source.

However, when playing a multi-channel encoded disc, you cannot apply DSP mode to the playback sounds.

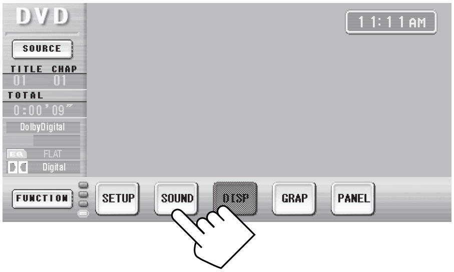
- When “AUTO SURROUND” is set to “ON” (initial setting when shipped from factory), an appropriate surround mode is automatically selected without any setting operation (see page 50).
- To obtain the best possible surround sounds, set the seat position and speaker size correctly (see pages 50 and 51). **If only rear speakers are activated (set to “LARGE” or “SMALL”), surround/DSP mode is defeated (set to “DEFEAT”) and cannot be changed.**

1

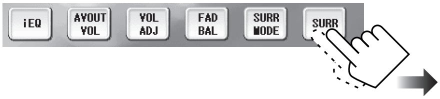

DVD
SOURCE
TITLE CHAP
01 01
TOTAL
0:00’09”
DolbyDigital
EQ FLAT
Digital
11:11 AM
FUNCTION

Ex. When playing DVD.

2


DVD
SOURCE
TITLE CHAP
01 01
TOTAL
0:00’09”
DolbyDigital
EQ FLAT
Digital
11:11 AM
FUNCTION
SETUP
SOUND
DISP
GRAP
PANEL

3


iEQ
AVOUT VOL
VOL ADJ
FAD BAL
SURR MODE
SURR

- **While playing a multi-channel encoded disc:**

Surround On (DSP Off) ⟷ DEFEAT (Surround Off)

- **While playing a 2-channel (stereo) disc:**

Surround On (DSP Off) → DSP On (Surround Off) → DEFEAT (Surround/DSP Off) → Surround On (DSP Off)

- **Surround On (DSP Off)**

  While playing a multi-channel Dolby Digital encoded disc, “Dolby Digital” is automatically selected.

  While playing a multi-channel DTS encoded disc, “DTS” is automatically selected.

  While playing any other disc, “Dolby Pro Logic II” is automatically selected.

  - You can select either “Dolby Pro Logic II Movie” or “Dolby Pro Logic II Music.”

- **DSP On (Surround Off)**

  Currently selected DSP mode is activated.

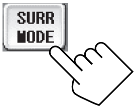
- **DEFEAT (Surround/DSP Off)**

  Both surround and DSP mode is canceled.

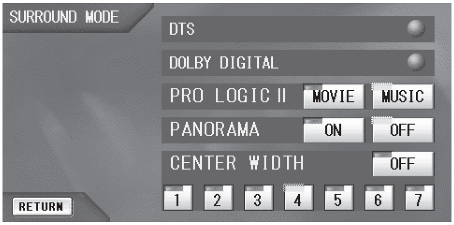
  - You cannot go to the next step.

To be continued...

4 Adjust the selected surround or DSP mode.



When surround mode is activated:


SURROUND MODE
DTS
DOLBY DIGITAL
PRO LOGIC II
MOVIE
MUSIC
PANORAMA
ON
OFF
CENTER WIDTH
OFF
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
RETURN

DTS ○ : Selected automatically when multi-channel DTS signal is detected (while playing a DVD or a DTS CD). No further adjustment is allowed.

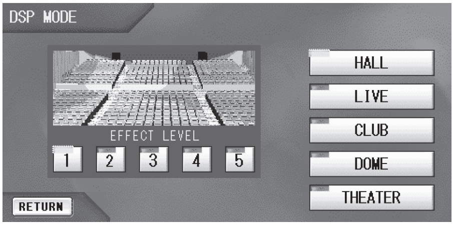
DOLBY DIGITAL ○ : Selected automatically when multi-channel Dolby Digital signal is detected (while playing a DVD). No further adjustment is allowed.

PRO LOGIC II : Select either “MOVIE” or “MUSIC.”

When you select “MUSIC,” you can adjust the following items.

- PANORAMA : Select “ON” to add “wraparound” sound effect with side-wall image. To cancel it, select “OFF.”
- CENTER WIDTH : Adjust the center image so it may be heard only from the center speaker, only from the left/right front speakers as a “phantom” center image, or various combinations of these speakers. As the number increases, the “phantom” effect becomes stronger. (Normally select “4.”) To cancel it, select “OFF.”

When DSP mode is activated:


DSP MODE
EFFECT LEVEL
1
2
3
4
5
RETURN
HALL
LIVE
CLUB
DOME
THEATER

Ex. When selecting “HALL.”

① Select one of the DSP modes.

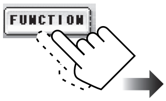
HALL:	Reproduces the spatial feeling of a large shoebox-shaped hall designed primarily for classical concerts.
LIVE:	Reproduces the spatial feeling of a live music club with a low ceiling.
CLUB:	Reproduces the spatial feeling of a rocking dance club.
DOME:	Reproduces the spatial feeling of a stadium with a high ceiling.
THEATER:	Reproduces the spatial feeling of a theater.

② Adjust the effect level (from 1 to 5). As the number increases, the effect becomes stronger.

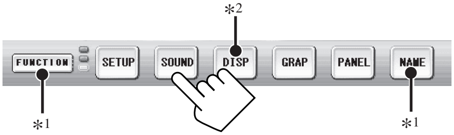
Sound Modes (iEQ) Operations

The following operations are only possible for the main source when using Dual Mode.

1

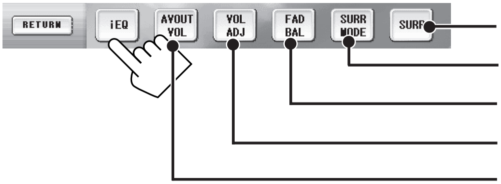


2


*2
FUNCTION
SETUP
SOUND
DISP
GRAP
PANEL
NAME
*1
*1

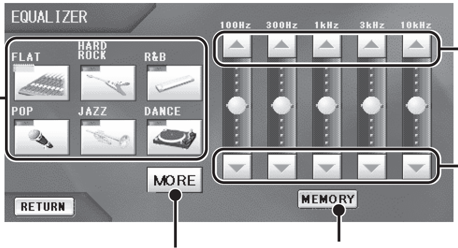
*1 It does not appear for some sources.
*2 It will be shaded when not available.

3


RETURN
iEQ
AYOUT VOL
VOL ADJ
FAD BAL
SURR MODE
SURF

See page 35.
See page 35.
See page 41.
See page 41.
See page 34.

4 **Select one of the preset sound (iEQ) modes (then make adjustment if you want to make your own sound mode).**

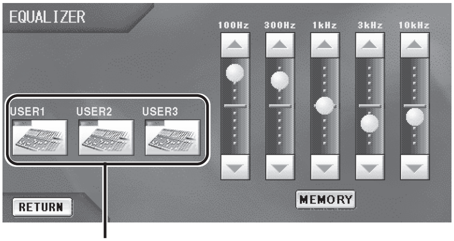

EQUALIZER
100Hz
300Hz
1kHz
3kHz
10kHz
FLAT
HARD ROCK
R&B
POP
JAZZ
DANCE
MORE
RETURN
MEMORY

Select sound modes.

Adjust the level of each frequency band.

Display the other set of the sound modes.

Store your adjustment (display the screen below).


EQUALIZER
100Hz
300Hz
1kHz
3kHz
10kHz
USER1
USER2
USER3
RETURN
MEMORY

Select memory no. to store.

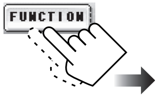
Selecting preset sound modes

You can select a sound mode suitable to the music genre.

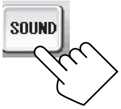
Available sound modes:

- **HARD ROCK / R&B / POP / JAZZ / DANCE / COUNTRY / REGGAE / CLASSIC**
- **USER1 / USER2 / USER3**
- **FLAT** (To cancel the sound mode)

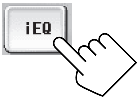
1



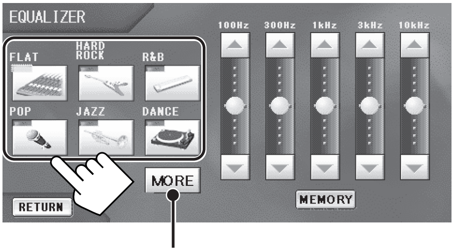
2



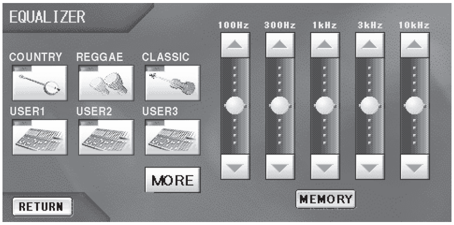
3



4 Select one of the preset sound (iEQ) modes.


EQUALIZER
100Hz
300Hz
1kHz
3kHz
10kHz
FLAT
HARD ROCK
R&B
POP
JAZZ
DANCE
MORE
RETURN
MEMORY

Display the other set of the sound modes (see below).

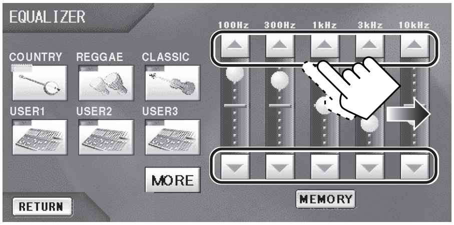

EQUALIZER
100Hz
300Hz
1kHz
3kHz
10kHz
COUNTRY
REGGAE
CLASSIC
USER1
USER2
USER3
MORE
RETURN
MEMORY

Storing your own sound modes

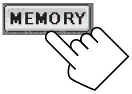
You can adjust the sound modes and store your own adjustments in memory.

1 Repeat steps *1* to *4* on the left column to select a sound mode you want to adjust.

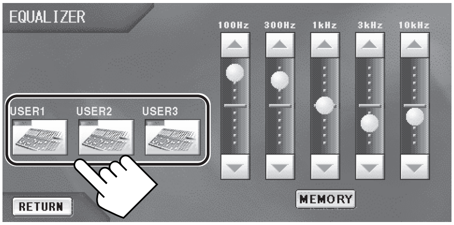
2 Make adjustments as you like.


EQUALIZER
100Hz
300Hz
1kHz
3kHz
10kHz
COUNTRY
REGGAE
CLASSIC
USER1
USER2
USER3
MORE
RETURN
MEMORY

3 After adjustment is finished...



4 Select one of the user sound modes (USER1, USER2, or USER3) you want to store into.

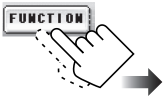

EQUALIZER
100Hz
300Hz
1kHz
3kHz
10kHz
USER1
USER2
USER3
RETURN
MEMORY

For details about the preset settings of each sound mode, see page 74.

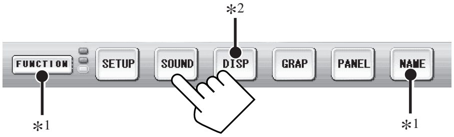
Other Sound Adjustments

Fader/Balance adjustments is only possible for the main source when using Dual Mode.

1

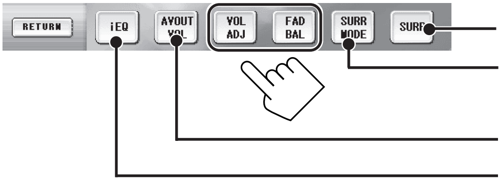


2


*2
FUNCTION
SETUP
SOUND
DISP
GRAP
PANEL
NAME
*1
*1

*1 It does not appear for some sources.
*2 It will be shaded when not available.

3


RETURN
iEQ
AVOUT VOL
VOL ADJ
FAD BAL
SURR MODE
SURR

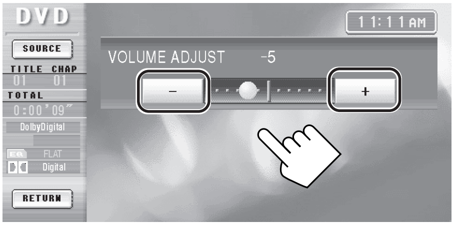
See page 35.
See page 35.
See page 34.
See page 39.

4 **Make adjustment as you like.**

To adjust the input level VOL ADJ

This setting is required for each source except FM.
Once you have made an adjustment, the volume level will automatically changes by adjusted level whenever you change the source.

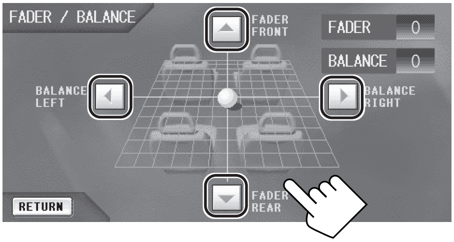
Adjust to match the input level to the FM sound level.


DVD
11:11 AM
SOURCE
TITLE CHAP
01 01
TOTAL
0:00'09"
DolbyDigital
FLAT
Digital
RETURN
VOLUME ADJUST -5
–
+

To adjust fader and balance FAD BAL

Adjust fader—speaker output balance between the front and rear speakers.

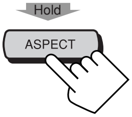
Adjust the balance—speaker output balance between the left and right speakers.


FADER / BALANCE
FADER FRONT
FADER 0
BALANCE 0
BALANCE LEFT
BALANCE RIGHT
RETURN
FADER REAR

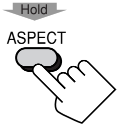
Monitor Adjustments

When no playback picture from the source is displayed, you can only adjust the brightness.

1 Display SCREEN CONTROL screen.

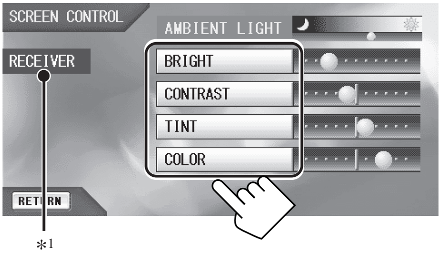

Hold
ASPECT

On the main unit

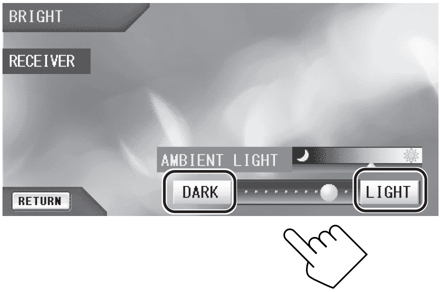

Hold
ASPECT

On the remote controller

2 Select an item to adjust.


SCREEN CONTROL
RECEIVER
AMBIENT LIGHT
BRIGHT
CONTRAST
TINT
COLOR
RETURN
*1

3 Adjust the item.


BRIGHT
RECEIVER
AMBIENT LIGHT
DARK
LIGHT
RETURN

Ex. When adjusting “BRIGHT.”

[*1] When you adjust the monitor, either “RECEIVER” or “CRADLE” (see page 33) appears. It indicates where the monitor is now loaded. You cannot store your adjustment separately for “RECEIVER” or “CRADLE.”

Adjustable items

AMBIENT LIGHT

: Indicates the current ambient light level. As this level changes, the monitor adjusts the brightness automatically to match it to the current ambient light level.

BRIGHT

: Adjust the brightness separately for day time (☼) and night time (☾)—(LIGHT/DARK).

- The monitor can memorize the difference between the ambient light level and adjusted level, and adjusts the brightness automatically, keeping the level difference memorized.

CONTRAST

: Adjust the contrast (DOWN/UP).

TINT

: Adjust the tint if the human skin color is unnatural (RED/GREEN).

COLOR

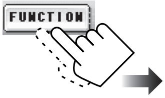
: Adjust the color of the picture—thinner (THIN) or thicker (THICK).

Initial Setup—DVD MENU

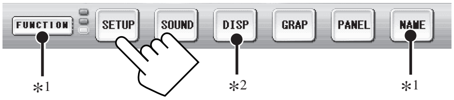
You can preset the initial disc playback conditions.

- While playing, no change can be made on the DVD Menu.

1



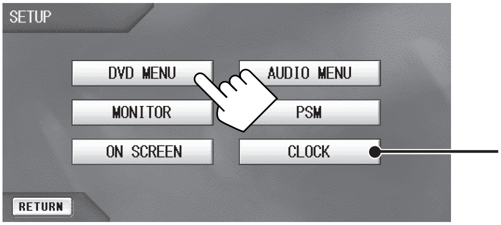
2


FUNCTION
SETUP
SOUND
DISP
GRAP
PANEL
NAME
*1
*2
*1

*1 It does not appear for some sources.

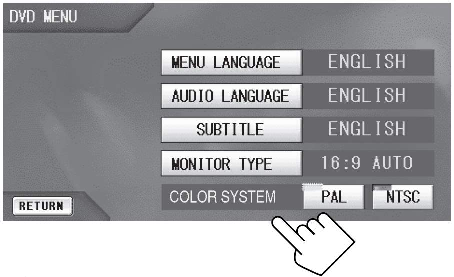
*2 It will be shaded when not available.

3


SETUP
DVD MENU
AUDIO MENU
MONITOR
PSM
ON SCREEN
CLOCK
RETURN

See page 13.

4 **Select the item you want.**


DVD MENU
RETURN

MENU LANGUAGE ENGLISH

AUDIO LANGUAGE ENGLISH

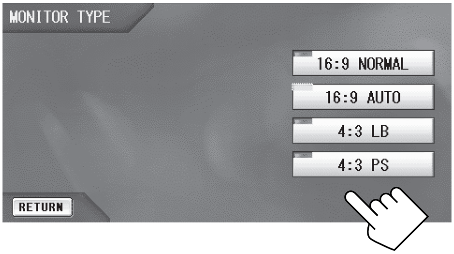
SUBTITLE ENGLISH

MONITOR TYPE 16:9 AUTO

COLOR SYSTEM PAL NTSC

5 **Change the setting.**

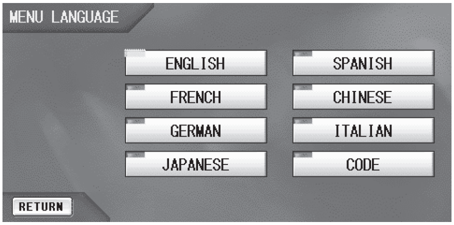
- For details, see the following pages.


MONITOR TYPE
16:9 NORMAL
16:9 AUTO
4:3 LB
4:3 PS
RETURN

Ex. When setting “MONITOR TYPE.”

MENU LANGUAGE

Select the menu language.


MENU LANGUAGE
ENGLISH
SPANISH
FRENCH
CHINESE
GERMAN
ITALIAN
JAPANESE
CODE
RETURN

AUDIO LANGUAGE

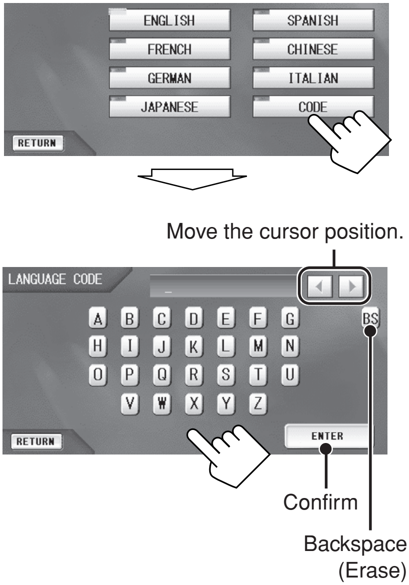
Select the audio language.

SUBTITLE

Select the subtitle language.
To erase the subtitle, select "OFF."

If the language you want is not listed for the language menu list

See page 75 to find the language codes.


ENGLISH
SPANISH
FRENCH
CHINESE
GERMAN
ITALIAN
JAPANESE
CODE
RETURN
Move the cursor position.
LANGUAGE CODE
A B C D E F G
H I J K L M N
O P Q R S T U
V W X Y Z
BS
ENTER
RETURN
Confirm
Backspace (Erase)

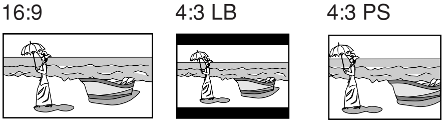
When the language you have selected is not recorded on a disc, the original language is automatically used as the initial language.

MONITOR TYPE

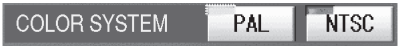
Select the monitor type of your TV (connected to the AV OUTPUT jacks) to play DVD Video recorded with aspect ratio of 16:9.

- For the removable monitor of this unit, set this to "16:9 AUTO."

- 16:9 NORMAL:
  Select when the aspect ratio of your TV is fixed to 16:9 (wide TV).
- 16:9 AUTO:
  Select when the aspect ratio of your TV is 16:9 (wide TV), and it is equipped with aspect ratio adjustment function.
- 4:3 LB (Letter Box):
  Select when the aspect ratio of your TV is 4:3 (conventional TV). While viewing a wide screen picture, the black bars appear on the top and the bottom of the screen.
- 4:3 PS (Pan Scan):
  Select when the aspect ratio of your TV is 4:3. While viewing a wide screen picture, the black bars do not appear; however, the left and right edges of the pictures will not be shown on the screen.


16:9
4:3 LB
4:3 PS

COLOR SYSTEM

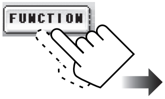

COLOR SYSTEM
PAL
NTSC

Select the color system of the playback disc (DVD/VCD).

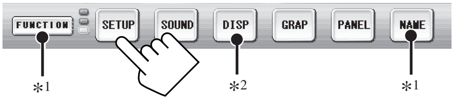
Initial Setup—MONITOR

You can preset the initial monitor conditions.

1

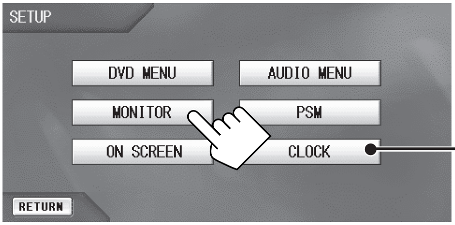


2


FUNCTION
SETUP
SOUND
DISP
GRAP
PANEL
NAME
*1
*2
*1

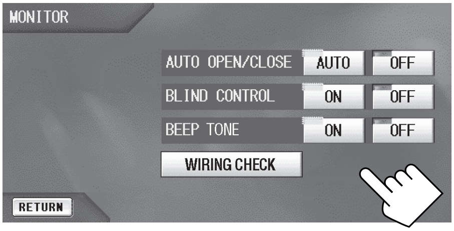
*1 It does not appear for some sources.
*2 It will be shaded when not available.

3


SETUP
DVD MENU
AUDIO MENU
MONITOR
PSM
ON SCREEN
CLOCK
RETURN

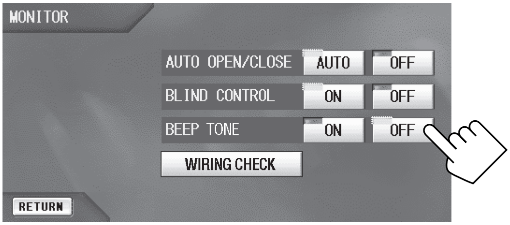
See page 13.

4 **Select the item you want.**


MONITOR
AUTO OPEN/CLOSE
AUTO
OFF
BLIND CONTROL
ON
OFF
BEEP TONE
ON
OFF
WIRING CHECK
RETURN

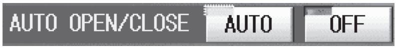
5 **Change the setting.**

- For details, see the following pages.


MONITOR
AUTO OPEN/CLOSE
AUTO
OFF
BLIND CONTROL
ON
OFF
BEEP TONE
ON
OFF
WIRING CHECK
RETURN

Ex. When setting “BEEP TONE” to “OFF.”

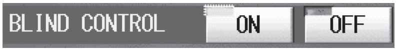
AUTO OPEN/CLOSE



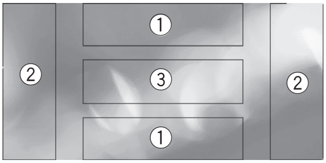
- AUTO: The monitor comes out* or goes in automatically when you turn on or off the power.
- OFF: Cancels this function.

* If you close the monitor before turning off the power, the monitor will not come out next time you turn on the power.

BLIND CONTROL



- ON: The monitor works as Touch Panel when playing back pictures on the monitor.



– The boundaries cannot be shown on the monitor screen. This example is just to teach you where to touch on the Touch Panel when you operate on it.

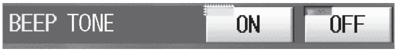
① Upper/lower portions:
Adjust the volume.

② Left/right portions:
- Skips the chapters/tracks for DVD/VCD.
- Searches the chapters/tracks for DVD/VCD.
- Searches for TV channels for TV (see page 63).

③ Center portion:
Turns on and off the on-screen icons. (This also works even if “BLIND CONTROL” is set to “OFF.”)

- OFF: Cancels this function.

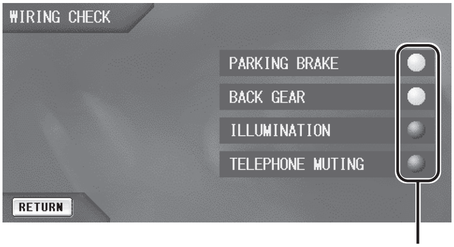
BEEP TONE



- ON: Touch tone beeps when you touch the Touch Panel icon.
- OFF: Cancels this function.

WIRING CHECK

You can confirm the wiring connection is correctly done for particular functions.



Indicators

- When the listed wires have been connected and electrical signals are detected through the wires, the corresponding indicators light up.

Dimmer function

To use the dimmer function, you need to connect the ILLUMINATION wire to...

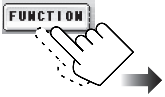
- **For Auto Dimmer:** Connect it to the car headlight switch. When you turn on the car lights, dimmer starts working—Auto Dimmer.
- **For Constant Dimmer:** Connect it to the car battery (constant 12V). Dimmer works whenever you turn on the power.
- **For Dimmer Off:** Connect it to nowhere.

- See also the Installation/Connection Manual (separate volume).

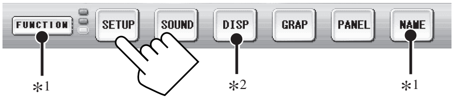
Initial Setup—ON SCREEN

You can preset the initial on-screen conditions.

1



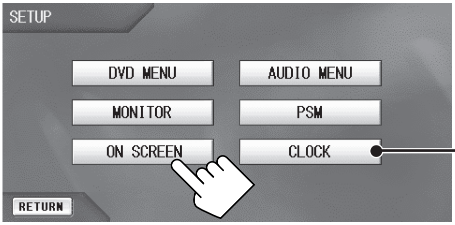
2


FUNCTION
SETUP
SOUND
DISP
GRAP
PANEL
NAME
*1
*2
*1

*1 It does not appear for some sources.

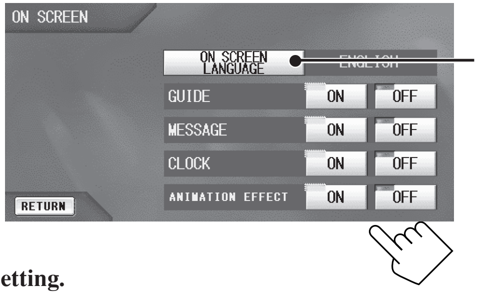
*2 It will be shaded when not available.

3


SETUP
DVD MENU
AUDIO MENU
MONITOR
PSM
ON SCREEN
CLOCK
RETURN

See page 13.

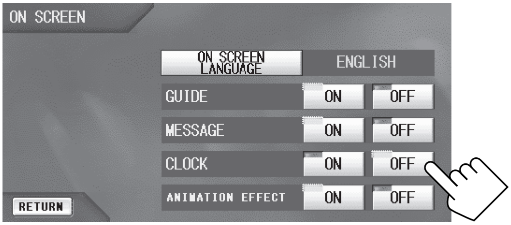
4 **Select the item you want.**


ON SCREEN
ON SCREEN LANGUAGE
ENGLISH
GUIDE
ON
OFF
MESSAGE
ON
OFF
CLOCK
ON
OFF
ANIMATION EFFECT
ON
OFF
RETURN

Language selection screen appears.

5 **Change the setting.**

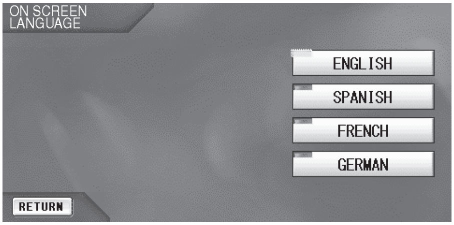
- For details, see the following pages.


ON SCREEN
ON SCREEN LANGUAGE
ENGLISH
GUIDE
ON
OFF
MESSAGE
ON
OFF
CLOCK
ON
OFF
ANIMATION EFFECT
ON
OFF
RETURN

Ex. When setting “CLOCK” to “OFF.”

ON SCREEN LANGUAGE

You can select the language for this Setup Menu and some of the messages displayed on the monitor.


ON SCREEN LANGUAGE
ENGLISH
SPANISH
FRENCH
GERMAN
RETURN

GUIDE

GUIDE
ON
OFF

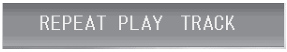
- ON: On-screen guide icons (see page 23) are displayed on the monitor while operating the built-in disc player.
  - – When the TV tuner unit (KV-C1008) is connected, its on-screen display will be shown.
- OFF: Cancels this function.

MESSAGE

MESSAGE
ON
OFF

- ON: Speaker/signal indicators (see page 69) and messages are displayed.

  Messages are displayed on the viewing window of the monitor screen...
  - – When selecting repeat mode, random mode, intro scan, etc.
  - – When starting Time Search, Title Search, Chapter Search, and Track Search.


REPEAT PLAY TRACK

Ex. One of the messages appears when selecting repeat mode.

- OFF: Cancels this function.

CLOCK

CLOCK
ON
OFF

- ON: Display the clock time on the monitor.
- OFF: Cancels this function.

ANIMATION EFFECT

ANIMATION EFFECT
ON
OFF

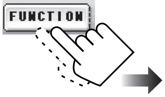
- ON: Source selection screen appears and disappears as if you open or close the curtain.
- OFF: Cancels this function.

Initial Setup—AUDIO MENU/PSM

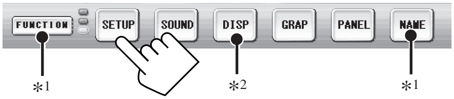
You can preset the initial audio-related conditions and Preferred Setting Modes (PSM).

- You cannot select "AUDIO MENU" when the subsidiary source operation screen is displayed on the monitor (with Dual Mode turned on; see page 33).

1



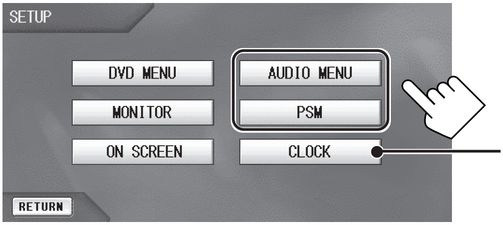
2


FUNCTION
SETUP
SOUND
DISP
GRAP
PANEL
NAME
*1
*2
*1

*1 It does not appear for some sources.

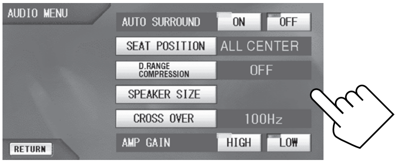
*2 It will be shaded when not available.

3

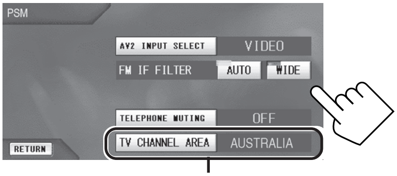

SETUP
DVD MENU
AUDIO MENU
MONITOR
PSM
ON SCREEN
CLOCK
RETURN

See page 13.

4 **Select the item you want.**


AUDIO MENU
RETURN
SPEAKER SIZE

AUTO SURROUND ON OFF
SEAT POSITION ALL CENTER
D.RANGE COMPRESSION OFF
CROSS OVER 100Hz
AMP GAIN HIGH LOW

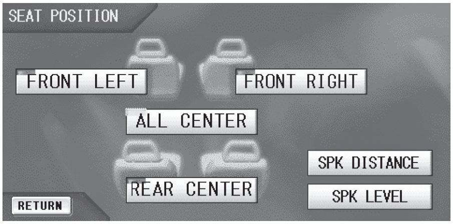


AV2 INPUT SELECT VIDEO
FM IF FILTER AUTO WIDE
TELEPHONE MUTING OFF
TV CHANNEL AREA AUSTRALIA

Appears when TV tuner unit KV-C1008 is connected.

5 **Change the setting or enter the setting screen.**

- For details, see the following pages.

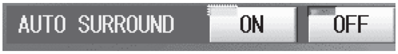

SEAT POSITION
FRONT LEFT
FRONT RIGHT
ALL CENTER
SPK DISTANCE
REAR CENTER
SPK LEVEL
RETURN

Ex. When entering "SEAT POSITION."

AUDIO MENU

AUTO SURROUND

You can activate an appropriate surround mode automatically when a loaded disc is detected.



- ON: An appropriate surround/DSP mode is automatically selected.

  While Dolby Digital multi-channel signals are detected, "Dolby Digital" is automatically selected.

  While DTS multi-channel signals are detected, "DTS" is automatically selected.

  While Dolby Surround (PL II) signals are detected, "Dolby Pro Logic II Movie" is automatically selected.

  While Linear PCM signals are detected (for DVD/CD), "Dolby Pro Logic II Music" is automatically selected.

  While other signals are detected, Surround mode is defeated.

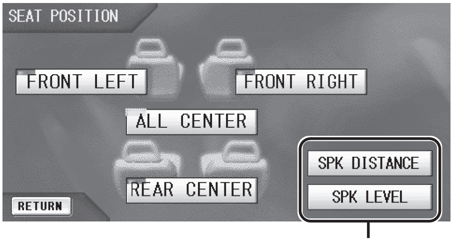
- OFF: Cancels this function.

> *Auto Surround does not work for any sources other than "DISC." When another source is selected, the currently selected Surround or DSP mode is resumed (see page 37).*

SEAT POSITION

Select the listening seat position where you want to locate the sound image.

- Speaker distance and speaker level can be memorized for each position.

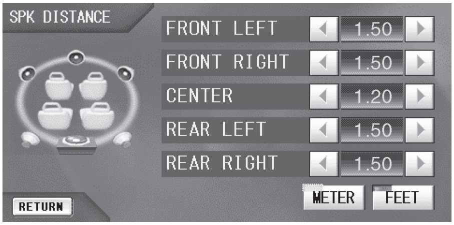


Display sub-setting screens.

- FRONT LEFT: For the front left seat.
- FRONT RIGHT: For the front right seat.
- ALL CENTER: For all front and rear seats.
- REAR CENTER: For the rear seats.

- **SPK DISTANCE** : Displays the SPK DISTANCE screen.

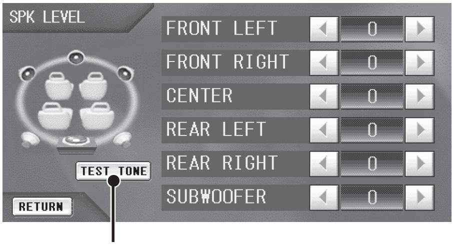
You can adjust the speaker distance from your listening position in meters or feet.



FRONT LEFT 1.50
FRONT RIGHT 1.50
CENTER 1.20
REAR LEFT 1.50
REAR RIGHT 1.50

- **SPK LEVEL** : Displays the SPK LEVEL screen.

You can adjust the speaker level referring to the test tone.



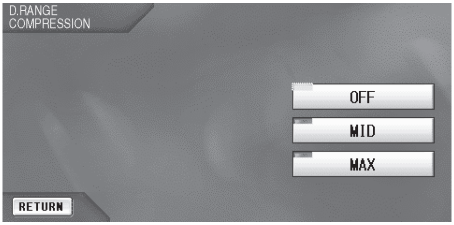
FRONT LEFT 0
FRONT RIGHT 0
CENTER 0
REAR LEFT 0
REAR RIGHT 0
SUBWOOFER 0

Emits the test tone from each speaker in sequence.
To stop, press again.

D (Dynamic). RANGE COMPRESSION

You can enjoy a powerful sound even at a low volume level by compressing dynamic range (difference between the lowest and the highest frequency sounds).

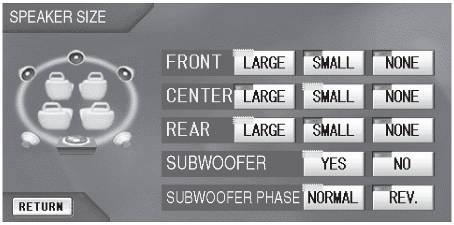
- This takes effect for all the playback sources.


D.RANGE
COMPRESSION
OFF
MID
MAX
RETURN

- OFF: Select when you want to enjoy playback with its full dynamic range (no effect applied).
- MID: Select when you want to reduce the dynamic range a little.
- MAX: Select when you want to apply the compress effect fully (useful at a low volume level).

SPEAKER SIZE

Set speaker information correctly.

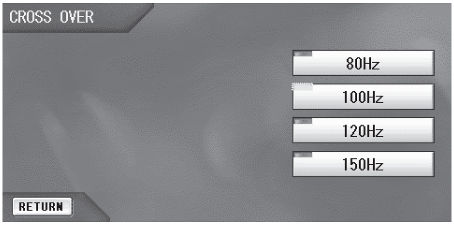

SPEAKER SIZE
FRONT
LARGE
SMALL
NONE
CENTER
LARGE
SMALL
NONE
REAR
LARGE
SMALL
NONE
SUBWOOFER
YES
NO
SUBWOOFER PHASE
NORMAL
REV.
RETURN

- FRONT/CENTER/REAR:
  Set the speaker size properly.
  – LARGE: If the cone speaker size is more than 13 cm (5 $^{1}/_{4}$ in.)
  – SMALL: If the cone speaker size is less than 13 cm (5 $^{1}/_{4}$ in.)
  – NONE: If not used.
- SUBWOOFER:
  Select "YES" (connected) or "NO" (disconnected).
- SUBWOOFER PHASE:
  Select either "NORMAL" or "REV. (reverse)" to obtain better subwoofer sounds.

- *These settings are very related to one another; therefore, one setting is changed, some other settings will be changed automatically and appropriately (see page 73).*
- *Sound comes out of the subwoofer for Dolby Pro Logic II only when either the front speakers or the center speaker is set to "SMALL."*

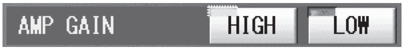
CROSS OVER

You can select the crossover frequency for the small speakers used. The signals below the preset frequency level will be sent to the subwoofer (or to the "LARGE" speakers when "SUBWOOFER" is set to "NO").


CROSS OVER
80Hz
100Hz
120Hz
150Hz
RETURN

AMP GAIN

You can change the maximum volume level of this unit. When the maximum power of the speakers is less than 50 W, select "LOW" to prevent them from being damaged.


AMP GAIN
HIGH
LOW

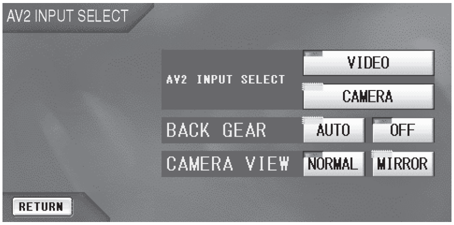
- HIGH: You can adjust the volume level from "0" to "50."
- LOW: You can adjust the volume level from "0" to "30."

PSM

AV2 INPUT SELECT

You can determine the use of AV INPUT 2 jacks on the hideaway unit—select either "VIDEO" or "CAMERA."

- When the playback source is "AV2," this setting cannot be changed.


AV2 INPUT SELECT
AV2 INPUT SELECT
VIDEO
CAMERA
BACK GEAR
AUTO
OFF
CAMERA VIEW
NORMAL
MIRROR
RETURN

- VIDEO: The source "AV2" works for viewing the playback picture through the component connected to the AV INPUT 2 jacks.
- CAMERA: Select this when connecting the rear view camera.
  – You can set the remaining two items (BACK GEAR/ CAMERA VIEW).

BACK GEAR

- AUTO: The rear view through the rear view camera is automatically displayed on the monitor when you change the gear to the back position.
- OFF: Cancels this function. To watch the rear view, select "AV2" for the source.

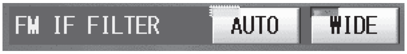
CAMERA VIEW

- NORMAL: You can watch the rear view as the camera takes.
- MIRROR: You can watch the rear view as reflected on the mirror.

While watching the camera view, you can change it to the source playback screen by touching the center portion of the monitor screen. (In this case, you cannot change the aspect ratio and make monitor adjustments—see pages 24 and 42.)

FM IF FILTER

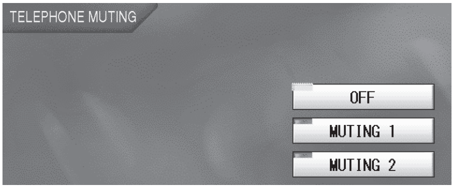
In some areas, adjacent stations may interfere with each other. If this interference occurs, noise may be heard.


FM IF FILTER
AUTO
WIDE

- AUTO: When this type of interference occurs, this unit automatically increases the tuner selectivity so that interference noise will be reduced. (But the stereo effect will also be lost.)
- WIDE: Subject to the interference from adjacent stations, but sound quality will not be degraded and the stereo effect will not be lost.

TELEPHONE MUTING

This mode works when a cellular phone system is connected. Select either "MUTING 1" or "MUTING 2," whichever mutes the sounds from this unit.

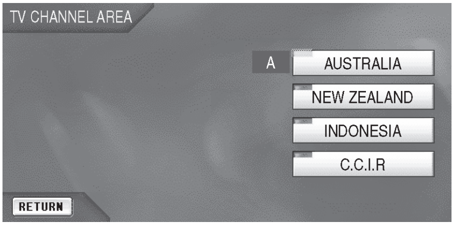

TELEPHONE MUTING
OFF
MUTING 1
MUTING 2

TV CHANNEL AREA

This setting appears only when TV tuner unit KV-C1008 is connected.

When you use the optional TV tuner unit, select the country.

- If you are living in the area where TV broadcasting system is C.C.I.R., select "C.C.I.R."


TV CHANNEL AREA
A
AUSTRALIA
NEW ZEALAND
INDONESIA
C.C.I.R
RETURN

Other Main Functions

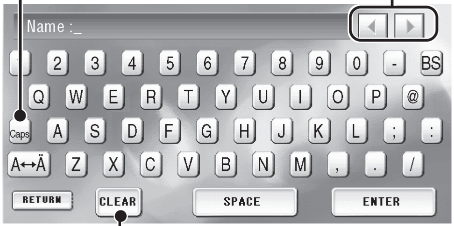
Assigning titles to the sources NAME

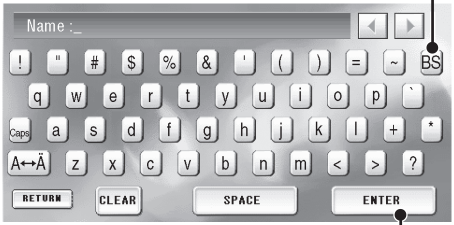
Roman alphabet list

Alternates between upper and lower cases.

Moves the cursor position.

Backspace
(Erase the last entry.)


Name :_
2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 - BS
Q W E R T Y U I O P @
Caps A S D F G H J K L ; :
A↔Ä Z X C V B N M , . /
RETURN CLEAR SPACE ENTER


Name :_
! " # $ % & ' ( ) = ~ BS
q w e r t y u i o p `
Caps a s d f g h j k l + *
A↔Ä z x c v b n m < > ?
RETURN CLEAR SPACE ENTER

Upper cases

Erase all entered character.

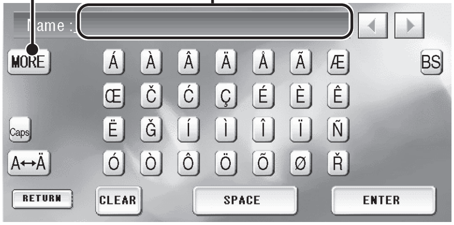
Lower cases

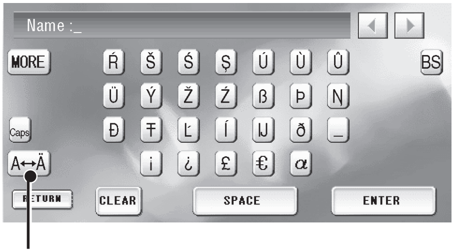
Confirm the entered name.

Accented characters: Upper cases

Display the other page of the character list of the same type.

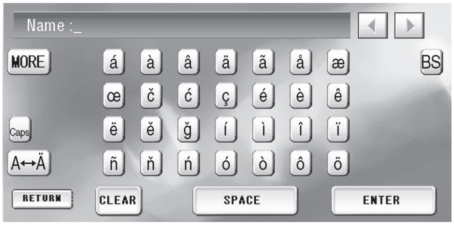
Entered name is displayed.

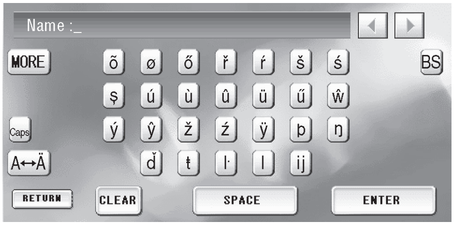

Name :
MORE Á À Â Ä Å Ã Æ BS
Œ Č Ć Ç É È Ê
Caps Ë Ğ Í Ì Î Ï Ñ
A↔Ä Ó Ò Ô Ö Õ Ø Ř
RETURN CLEAR SPACE ENTER


Name :_
MORE Ŕ Š Ś Ş Ú Ù Û BS
Ü Ý Ž Ź ß Þ Ŋ
Caps Đ Ŧ Ľ Ĺ Ĳ ð _
A↔Ä ¡ ¿ £ € α
RETURN CLEAR SPACE ENTER

Alternates between Roman alphabet and accented letter lists.

Accented characters: Lower cases


Name :_
MORE á à â ä ã å æ BS
œ č ć ç é è ê
Caps ë ě ğ í ì î ï
A↔Ä ñ ň ń ó ò ô ö
RETURN CLEAR SPACE ENTER


Name :_
MORE õ ø ő ř ŕ š ś BS
ş ú ù û ü ű ŵ
Caps ý ŷ ž ź ÿ þ ŋ
A↔Ä ď ŧ ŀ ł ĳ
RETURN CLEAR SPACE ENTER

You can assign titles to 30 FM/AM, 30 TV stations, and 40 CDs (both in this unit and in the CD changer).

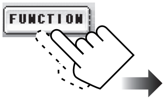
Source	Maximum character number
Stations:	10
CDs:	32

- You cannot assign a title to CD Text and MP3 discs.
- If you change the “TV CHANNEL AREA” setting (see page 52), assigned TV station names are all erased.

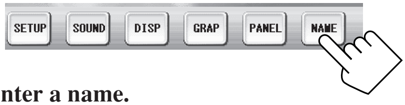
1 **Prepare the source.**

- **For FM/AM stations:** Change “FM” or “AM,” then select a station.
- **For a CD in this unit:** Insert a CD.
- **For CDs in the CD changer:** Select “CD-CH,” then select a disc number.
- **For TV stations:** Change “TV,” then select a TV station.

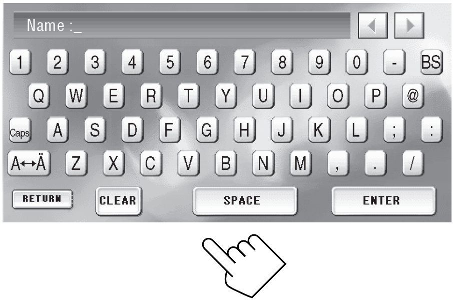
2



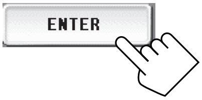
3


SETUP
SOUND
DISP
GRAP
PANEL
NAME

4 **Enter a name.**

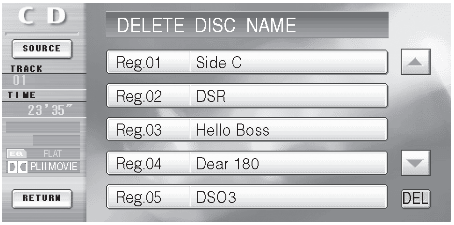

Name :_
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 - BS
Q W E R T Y U I O P @
Caps A S D F G H J K L ; :
A↔Ä Z X C V B N M , . /
RETURN
CLEAR
SPACE
ENTER

5 **Confirm.**



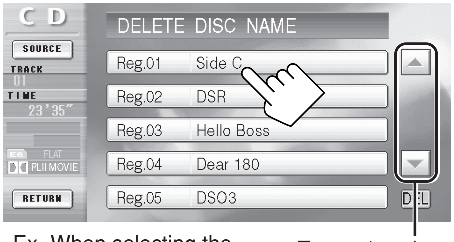
If the “DELETE DISC NAME” or “DELETE STATION NAME” screen appears

The internal memory is full. Delete unwanted names before assignment.


CD
SOURCE
TRACK
01
TIME
23'35"
EQ FLAT
PLII MOVIE
RETURN
DELETE DISC NAME
Reg.01 Side C
Reg.02 DSR
Reg.03 Hello Boss
Reg.04 Dear 180
Reg.05 DSO3
DEL

Ex. When trying a name to a 41st disc.

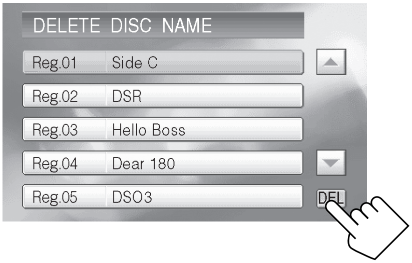
1 **Select an unwanted name.**


CD
SOURCE
TRACK
01
TIME
23'35"
EQ FLAT
PLII MOVIE
RETURN
DELETE DISC NAME
Reg.01 Side C
Reg.02 DSR
Reg.03 Hello Boss
Reg.04 Dear 180
Reg.05 DSO3
DEL

Ex. When selecting the first registered name.

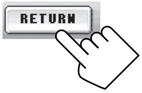
To next/previous page of the list

2 **Delete.**


DELETE DISC NAME
Reg.01 Side C
Reg.02 DSR
Reg.03 Hello Boss
Reg.04 Dear 180
Reg.05 DSO3
DEL

3 **Repeat the above steps if you want to delete more names.**

4 **Finish.**

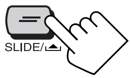


Changing the monitor position/angle

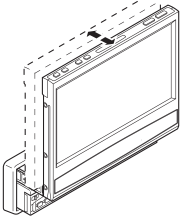
You can change the monitor position and the monitor angle.

- Once you change them, they are stored. The monitor opens at the stored position and angle, next time you eject the monitor.

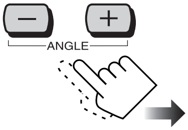
To change the monitor position

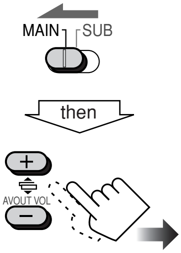


On the main unit

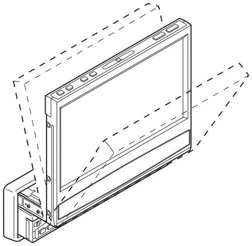


To change the monitor angle





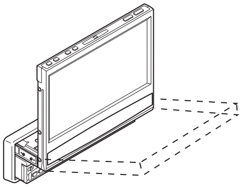
On the main unit On the remote controller



Each time you press the button, the monitor changes its angle step by step.

- By holding the button (+/–), you can easily change the angle to its extreme (+/–).

To operate the car switches behind the monitor, press OPEN once.
The monitor change its angle to the illustrated position for about 30 seconds.



To return to its previous angle within 30 seconds, press OPEN again.

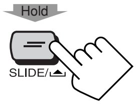
Removing the monitor

When detaching and attaching the monitor, observe the following:

- Be careful not to drop the monitor.
- Be careful not to damage the connectors.

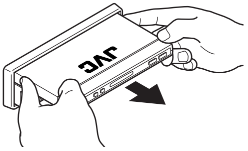
To detach the monitor

1

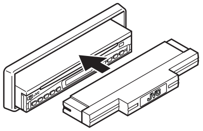


The monitor goes back into its compartment if it has been used, then comes out halfway.

2

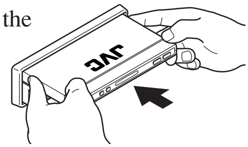


3 **Insert the blind cover to protect the internal mechanism from dust.**

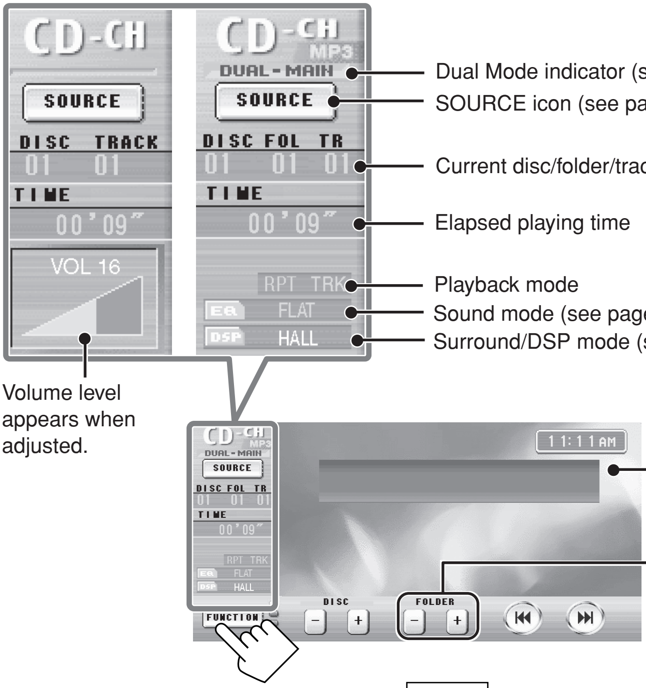


To attach the monitor

Insert the monitor into the compartment with the screen facing down.



CD Changer Operations


CD-CH
SOURCE
DISC TRACK
01 01
TIME
00'09"
VOL 16
CD-CH MP3
DUAL-MAIN
SOURCE
DISC FOL TR
01 01 01
TIME
00'09"
RPT TRK
EQ FLAT
DSP HALL
11:11 AM
FUNCTION
DISC
FOLDER

Dual Mode indicator (see page 33)

SOURCE icon (see pages 14 and 33)

Current disc/folder/track no.

Elapsed playing time

Playback mode

Sound mode (see page 39)

Surround/DSP mode (see page 36)

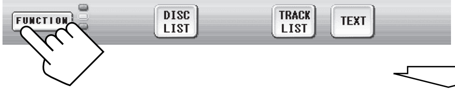
Volume level appears when adjusted.

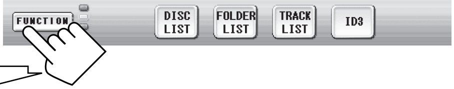
Disc text/ID3 tag information area

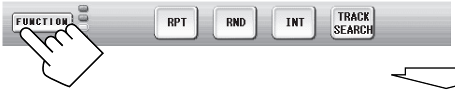
Only for MP3

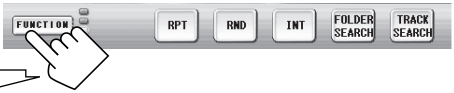
CD/CD Text

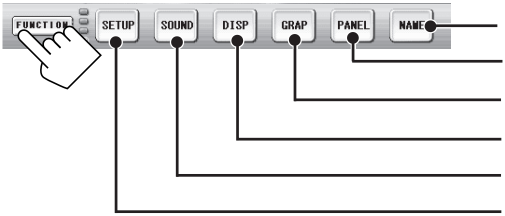
MP3


FUNCTION
DISC LIST
TRACK LIST
TEXT


FUNCTION
DISC LIST
FOLDER LIST
TRACK LIST
ID3


FUNCTION
RPT
RND
INT
TRACK SEARCH


FUNCTION
RPT
RND
INT
FOLDER SEARCH
TRACK SEARCH


FUNCTION
SETUP
SOUND
DISP
GRAP
PANEL
NAME

Only for CD: See page 53.

See page 14.

See page 14.

See page 15.

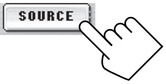
See page 39.

See pages 43 – 52.

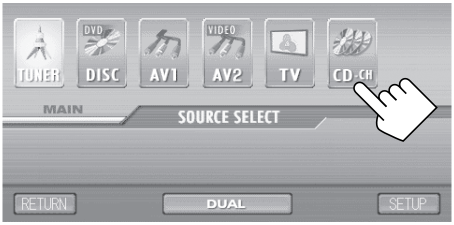
Back to the beginning

Basic CD Changer Operations

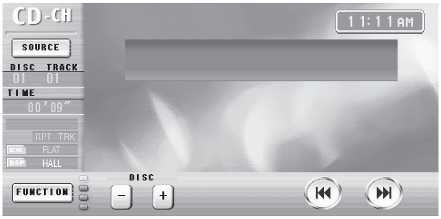
1 Select “CD-CH”



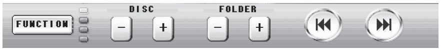
then


TUNER
DVD
DISC
AV1
VIDEO
AV2
TV
CD-CH
MAIN
SOURCE SELECT
RETURN
DUAL
SETUP

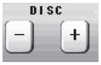
Ex. While playing CD/CD Text*


CD-CH
11:11 AM
SOURCE
DISC
TRACK
01
01
TIME
00'09"
RPT TRK
EQ
FLAT
DSP
HALL
FUNCTION
DISC
–
+

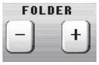
Ex. While playing MP3


FUNCTION
DISC
–
+
FOLDER
–
+

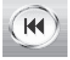
2 Operate the disc



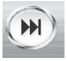
: Selects the disc.



: Selects the folder (only for MP3).



: Goes back to the beginning of the current track, then skips to the previous tracks if pressed repeatedly.



: Skips to the following tracks if pressed repeatedly.

* *Disc text information recorded in the CD Text can be displayed when a JVC CD Text compatible CD changer is connected.*

It is recommended to use the JVC MP3-compatible CD changer with your unit.

- You can also connect the CH-X series CD changers (except CH-X99 and CH-X100). However, they are not compatible with MP3 discs, so you cannot play back MP3 discs.
- You cannot use the KD-MK series CD changers with this unit.

Before operating your CD changer:

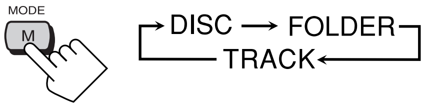
- Refer also to the Instructions supplied with your CD changer.
- If no discs are in the magazine of the CD changer or the discs are inserted upside down, “NO DISC” will appear on the monitor. If this happens, remove the magazine and set the discs correctly.
- If no magazine is loaded in the CD changer, “NO MAGAZINE” will appear on the monitor. If this happens, insert the magazine in the CD changer.

Advanced CD Changer Operations

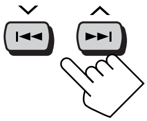
Selecting disc/folders/tracks

You can select the disc, (folder: only for MP3,) and tracks using the buttons on the main unit.

1


MODE
M
DISC
FOLDER
TRACK

2



When using the remote controller

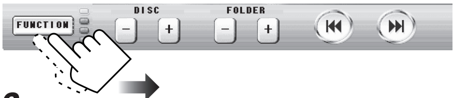
You can directly select the disc number by pressing the corresponding number buttons (1 – 12).

Locating a disc/folder/track using the list DISC LIST FOLDER LIST TRACK LIST

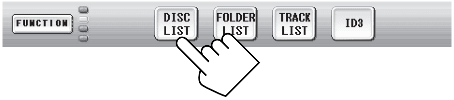
To locate a disc by displaying the disc list

Example: while playing MP3.

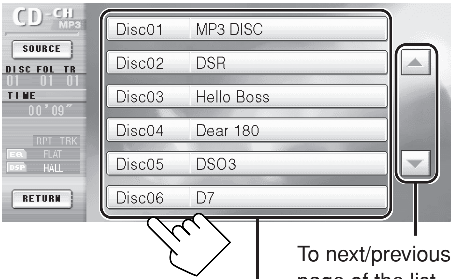
1


FUNCTION
DISC
FOLDER
–
+

2


FUNCTION
DISC LIST
FOLDER LIST
TRACK LIST
ID3

3 **Select a disc you want.**


CD-CH MP3
SOURCE
DISC FOL TR
01 01 01
TIME
00'09"
RPT TRK
EQ FLAT
DSP HALL
RETURN

Disc01 MP3 DISC
Disc02 DSR
Disc03 Hello Boss
Disc04 Dear 180
Disc05 DSO3
Disc06 D7

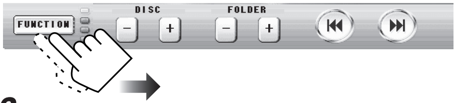
To next/previous page of the list

Disc names will be shown once it is recognized.

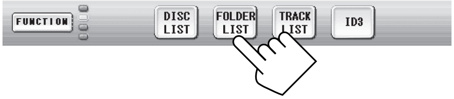
To locate a folder by displaying the folder list

- This functions only for MP3.
- Though you play back the same disc on the CD changer, its folder list may look differently from the one you display while playing it on the main unit. This happens because CD changer can also list up the folder in which no MP3 tracks are recorded.

1

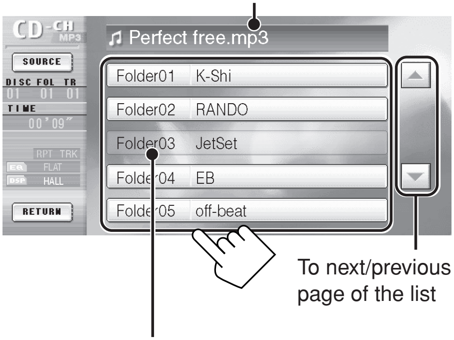

FUNCTION
DISC
FOLDER
–
+

2


FUNCTION
DISC LIST
FOLDER LIST
TRACK LIST
ID3

3 **Select a folder you want.**

Current track name or ID3 Tag


CD-CH MP3
SOURCE
DISC FOL TR
01 01 01
TIME
00'09"
RPT TRK
EQ FLAT
DSP HALL
RETURN
Perfect free.mp3
Folder01 K-Shi
Folder02 RANDO
Folder03 JetSet
Folder04 EB
Folder05 off-beat

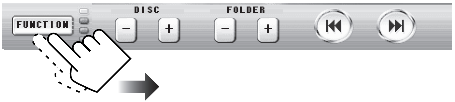
To next/previous page of the list

Shaded when no MP3 files are included.
You cannot select this folder.

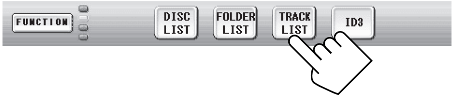
To locate a track by displaying the track list

Example: while playing MP3.

1

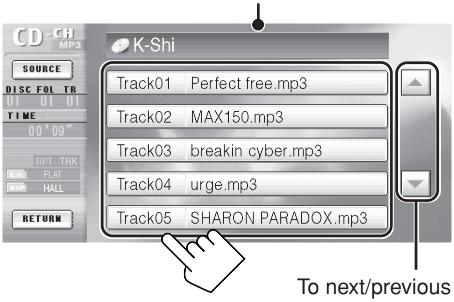

FUNCTION
DISC
FOLDER
–
+
–
+

2


FUNCTION
DISC LIST
FOLDER LIST
TRACK LIST
ID3

3 **Select a track you want.**

Current folder name or ID3 Tag (for MP3)
Disc name (for CD) or CD Text

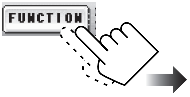

CD-CH MP3
SOURCE
DISC FOL TR
01 01 01
TIME
00'09"
RPT TRK
EQ FLAT
DSP HALL
RETURN
K-Shi
Track01 Perfect free.mp3
Track02 MAX150.mp3
Track03 breakin cyber.mp3
Track04 urge.mp3
Track05 SHARON PARADOX.mp3

To next/previous page of the list

Displaying the disc text information TEXT ID3

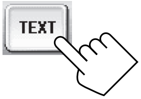
With Auto Scroll or Scroll selected, you can display the text and scroll it on the monitor if it is long and cannot be displayed at a time.

1

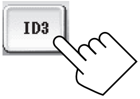


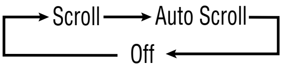
2

(For CD)



(For MP3)




Scroll
Auto Scroll
Off

- Scroll: Text on the information area scrolls once.
- Auto Scroll: Text on the information area scrolls every 5 seconds.
- Off: The information area goes off (no text information will be shown).

Selecting playback modes

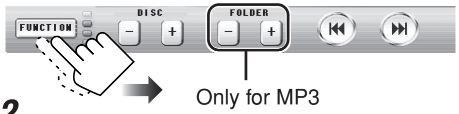
You can use only one of the following playback modes at a time—Repeat Play, Random Play, and Intro Scan.

Repeat Play RPT

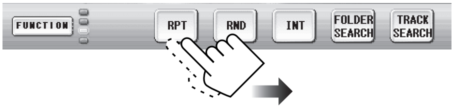
You can repeat playback.

- Repeat Play cannot be deactivated.

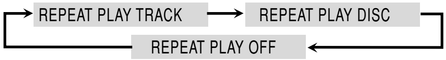
1


FUNCTION
DISC
FOLDER
Only for MP3

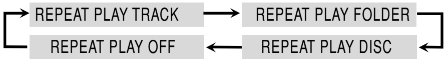
2


FUNCTION
RPT
RND
INT
FOLDER SEARCH
TRACK SEARCH

When playing CD:


REPEAT PLAY TRACK
REPEAT PLAY DISC
REPEAT PLAY OFF

When playing MP3:


REPEAT PLAY TRACK
REPEAT PLAY FOLDER
REPEAT PLAY DISC
REPEAT PLAY OFF

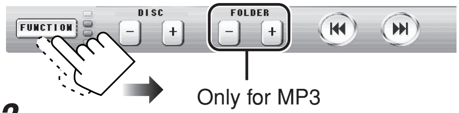
REPEAT PLAY

• TRACK:	Repeats the current track.
• FOLDER:	Repeats the current folder.
• DISC:	Repeats the current disc.
• OFF:	Repeats all loaded discs in the magazine.

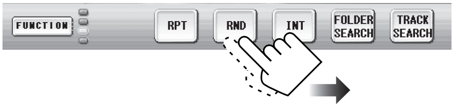
Random Play RND

You can play back tracks at random.

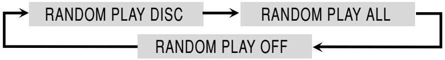
1


FUNCTION
DISC
FOLDER
Only for MP3

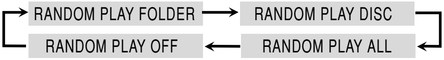
2


FUNCTION
RPT
RND
INT
FOLDER SEARCH
TRACK SEARCH

When playing CD:


RANDOM PLAY DISC
RANDOM PLAY ALL
RANDOM PLAY OFF

When playing MP3:


RANDOM PLAY FOLDER
RANDOM PLAY DISC
RANDOM PLAY ALL
RANDOM PLAY OFF

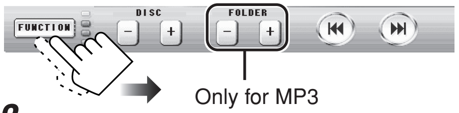
RANDOM PLAY

• FOLDER:	Plays randomly all tracks of the current folder, then moves to the next folder and so on.
• DISC:	Plays randomly all tracks on the current disc.
• ALL:	Plays randomly all tracks of all discs in the magazine.
• OFF:	Cancels Random Play.

Intro Scan INT

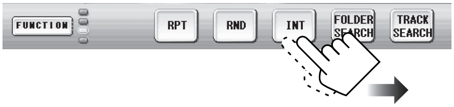
You can play back the first 15 seconds of each track sequentially.

1

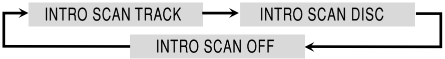

FUNCTION
DISC
FOLDER
–
+

Only for MP3

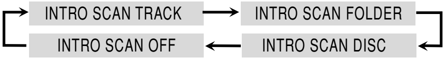
2


FUNCTION
RPT
RND
INT
FOLDER SEARCH
TRACK SEARCH

When playing CD:


INTRO SCAN TRACK
INTRO SCAN DISC
INTRO SCAN OFF

When playing MP3:


INTRO SCAN TRACK
INTRO SCAN FOLDER
INTRO SCAN DISC
INTRO SCAN OFF

INTRO SCAN

• TRACK:	Plays the beginning of all tracks of the current disc.
• FOLDER:	Plays the first tracks of all folders of the current disc (only for MP3).
• DISC:	Plays the first tracks of all discs in the magazine.
• OFF:	Cancels Intro Scan.

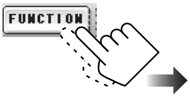
Searching for songs TRACK SEARCH FOLDER SEARCH

You can use search functions to find your favorite tracks (for CD/MP3) and folders (for MP3).

Folder/Track Search

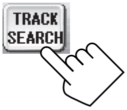
You can select a specific track (for CD/MP3) or folder (for MP3).

1

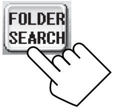


2

(For CD/MP3)

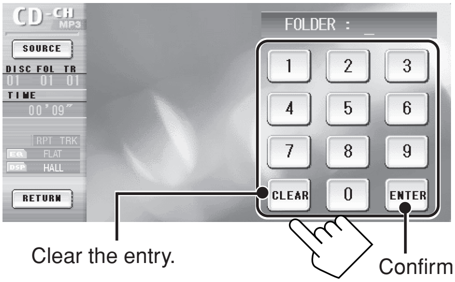

TRACK SEARCH

(For MP3)


FOLDER SEARCH

3 **Enter a number, then confirm.**

Ex. when playing MP3:


CD-CH MP3
SOURCE
DISC FOL TR
01 01 01
TIME
00'09"
RPT TRK
EQ FLAT
DSP HALL
RETURN
FOLDER : _
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
CLEAR
0
ENTER

Clear the entry.

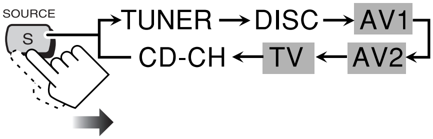
Confirm

External Component Operations

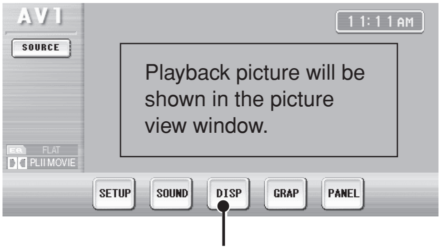
You can connect two video components as the playback components and an optional TV tuner unit (KV-C1008).

- When you connect the video camera as a rear view camera to the AV INPUT 2 jacks to guide you to back the car, set the usage of the AV INPUT 2 jacks correctly (see page 52).
- For connections, see the Installation/ Connection Manual (separate volume).

1 Select the external source


SOURCE
S
TUNER
DISC
AV1
AV2
TV
CD-CH

- **AV1**: To watch the playback pictures through the component connected to the AV INPUT 1 jacks.
- **AV2**: To watch the playback pictures through the component connected to the AV INPUT 2 jacks.

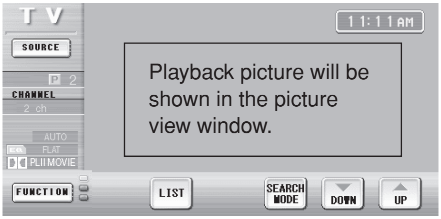

AV1
SOURCE
11:11 AM
EQ FLAT
PLII MOVIE
SETUP
SOUND
DISP
GRAP
PANEL

Playback picture will be shown in the picture view window.

Not available while viewing the playback picture.

Ex. When "AV1" is selected.

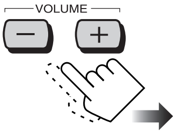
- **TV**: To watch TV programs through the TV tuner unit (KV-C1008).


TV
SOURCE
11:11 AM
P 2
CHANNEL
2 ch
AUTO
EQ FLAT
PLII MOVIE
FUNCTION
LIST
SEARCH MODE
DOWN
UP

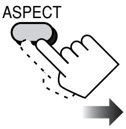
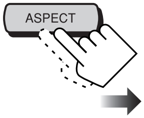
Playback picture will be shown in the picture view window.

To use the TV tuner unit (KV-C1008), see the following pages.

2 Adjust the volume

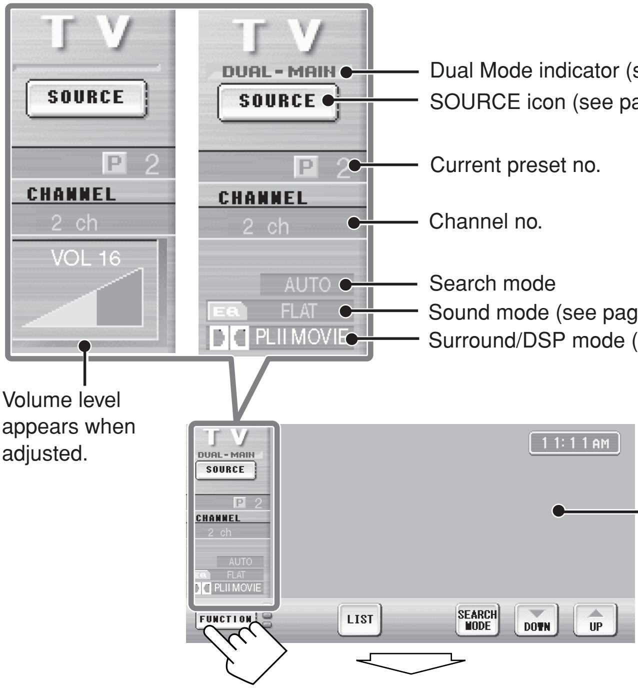


To change the aspect ratio...

On the remote controller	On the main unit
	

- For details, see page 24.
  When you selected "CAMERA" for "AV2 INPUT" (see page 52), you cannot change the aspect ratio of AV2.

TV Tuner Operations


T V
SOURCE
P 2
CHANNEL
2 ch
VOL 16
DUAL - MAIN
AUTO
FLAT
PLII MOVIE
11:11 AM
FUNCTION
LIST
SEARCH MODE
DOWN
UP

Dual Mode indicator (see page 33)

SOURCE icon (see pages 14 and 33)

Current preset no.

Channel no.

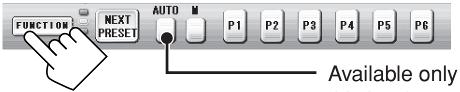
Search mode

Sound mode (see page 39)

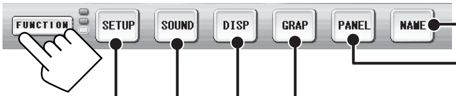
Surround/DSP mode (see page 36)

Volume level appears when adjusted.

Playback picture will be shown in the picture view window.


FUNCTION
NEXT PRESET
AUTO
M
P1
P2
P3
P4
P5
P6

Available only after pressing “M” (next to this icon).


FUNCTION
SETUP
SOUND
DISP
GRAP
PANEL
NAME

See page 53.

See page 14.

See page 14.

See page 15.
(Not available while viewing the playback picture.)

See page 39.

See pages 43 – 52.

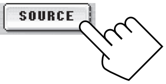
Back to the beginning

Watching TV programs

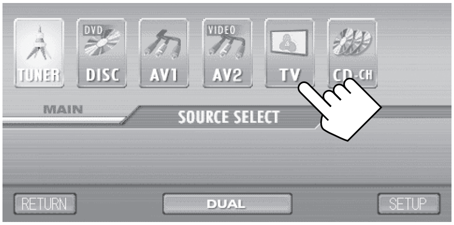
Before watching TV, select the area where you use the optional TV tuner unit (KV-C1008)—see page 52.

- To tune in to a station using Preset Search, first store your favorite TV stations into memory (12 stations).

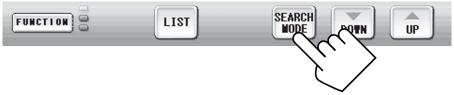
1 Select TV



then

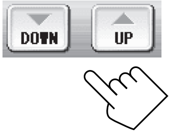

TUNER
DVD
DISC
AV1
VIDEO
AV2
TV
CD-CH
MAIN
SOURCE SELECT
RETURN
DUAL
SETUP

2 Select Search Mode


FUNCTION
LIST
SEARCH MODE
DOWN
UP

AUTO:	To start Auto Search.
MANUAL:	To start Manual Search.
PRESET:	To select preset station numbers (only possible after storing stations in memory).

3 Tune in to a TV station



- **For Auto Search,** press either icon once. "Auto Search" begins.
  When a station is received, searching stops.
- **For Manual Search,** press either icon repeatedly (or hold) until a station you want is selected.
- **For Preset Search,** press either icon repeatedly until a preset number you want is selected.

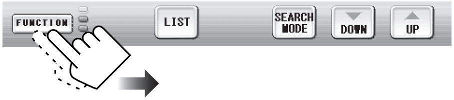
Storing stations in memory

You can preset 12 TV stations.

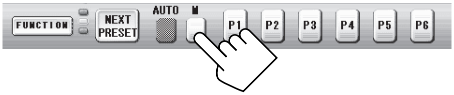
- To tune in to a preset station, see "Watching TV programs."

TV station automatic presetting—Auto Memory

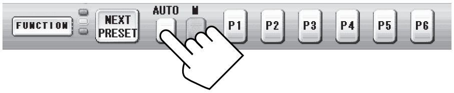
1


FUNCTION
LIST
SEARCH MODE
DOWN
UP

2 **Start Auto Memory.**


FUNCTION
NEXT PRESET
AUTO
M
P1
P2
P3
P4
P5
P6

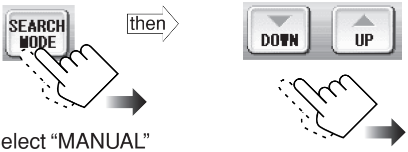
then


FUNCTION
NEXT PRESET
AUTO
M
P1
P2
P3
P4
P5
P6

Local TV stations with the strongest signals are searched and stored automatically.

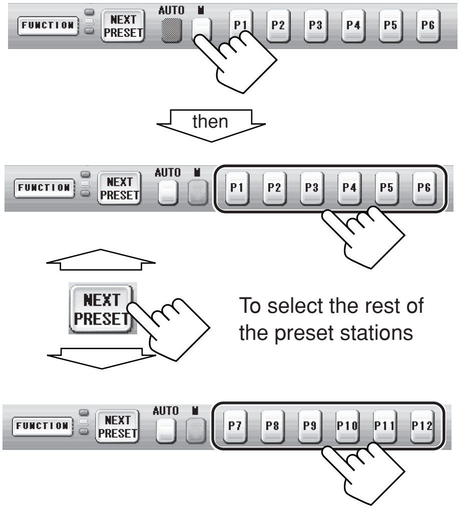
Manual presetting

1 **Tune in to a TV station.**


SEARCH MODE
then
DOWN
UP

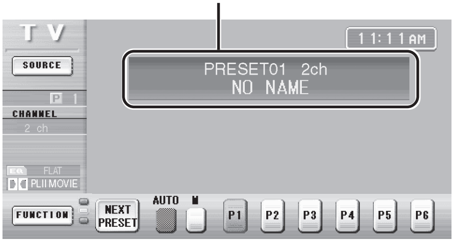
Select “MANUAL” (or “AUTO”).

2 **Store the station into a preset number.**


FUNCTION
NEXT PRESET
AUTO
M
P1
P2
P3
P4
P5
P6
then
P7
P8
P9
P10
P11
P12

To select the rest of the preset stations

Preset station information will be displayed.

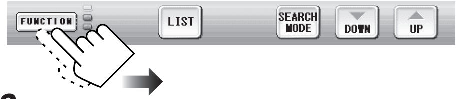

TV
SOURCE
P 1
CHANNEL
2 ch
FLAT
PLII MOVIE
11:11 AM
FUNCTION
NEXT PRESET
AUTO
M
P1
P2
P3
P4
P5
P6

PRESET01 2ch
NO NAME

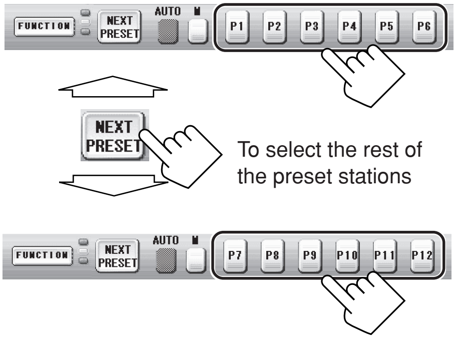
To tune in to a preset station

- See also “Watching TV programs” on page 64.

1


FUNCTION
LIST
SEARCH MODE
DOWN
UP

2 **Select a preset number.**


FUNCTION
NEXT PRESET
AUTO
M
P1
P2
P3
P4
P5
P6
P7
P8
P9
P10
P11
P12

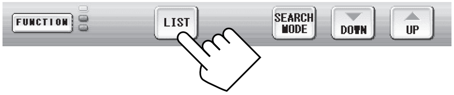
To select the rest of the preset stations

Displaying the preset list

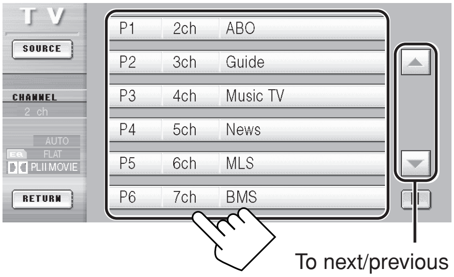
You can store and select the preset station using the preset list on the monitor screen.

To select a preset station using the preset list

1


FUNCTION
LIST
SEARCH MODE
DOWN
UP

2


T V
SOURCE
CHANNEL
2 ch
AUTO
FLAT
PLII MOVIE
RETURN

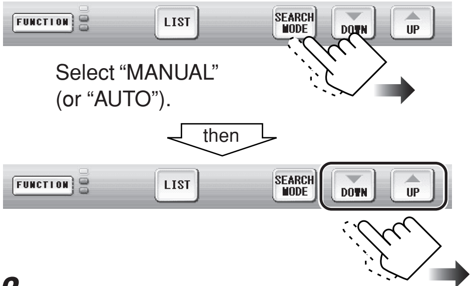
P1	2ch	ABO
P2	3ch	Guide
P3	4ch	Music TV
P4	5ch	News
P5	6ch	MLS
P6	7ch	BMS

To next/previous page of the list

- Preset numbers, channel numbers and assigned names (see page 53) of the preset TV stations are shown on the list.

To store a station using the preset list

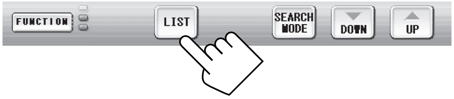
1 **Tune into a TV station.**


FUNCTION
LIST
SEARCH MODE
DOWN
UP
FUNCTION
LIST
SEARCH MODE
DOWN
UP

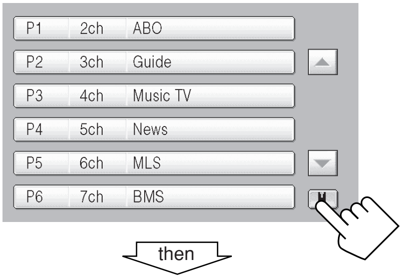
Select "MANUAL" (or "AUTO").

then

2

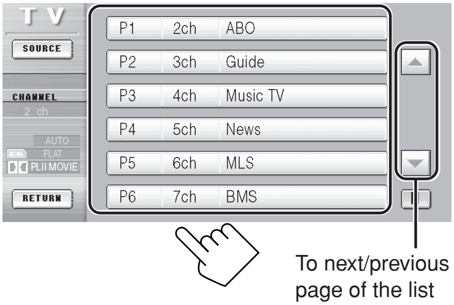

FUNCTION
LIST
SEARCH MODE
DOWN
UP

3 **Store the station into a preset number.**



P1	2ch	ABO
P2	3ch	Guide
P3	4ch	Music TV
P4	5ch	News
P5	6ch	MLS
P6	7ch	BMS

then


T V
SOURCE
CHANNEL
2 ch
AUTO
FLAT
PLII MOVIE
RETURN

P1	2ch	ABO
P2	3ch	Guide
P3	4ch	Music TV
P4	5ch	News
P5	6ch	MLS
P6	7ch	BMS

To next/previous page of the list

Maintenance

How to clean the monitor

When removing stains or dust on the surface, turn off the monitor, then wipe with dry soft cloth.

- Be careful not to scratch the surface when wiping it.
- Do not use the following materials to clean the monitor:
  - Wet cloth
  - Volatile substance such as benzine and thinner
  - Acid detergent, alkaline detergent, and detergent composed of organic substance
- When using chemically processed duster, read its precautions carefully.

How to clean the connectors

Frequent detachment of the monitor will deteriorate the connectors.

To minimize this possibility, periodically wipe the connectors with a cotton swab or cloth moistened with alcohol, being careful not to damage the connectors.

- Attach the blind cover to the main unit whenever the monitor is removed to protect the internal mechanism from dust.

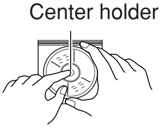
Moisture condensation

Moisture may condense on the lens inside the disc player in the following cases:

- After starting the heater in the car.
- If it becomes very humid inside the car.

Should this occur, the disc player may malfunction. In this case, eject the disc and leave the unit turned on for a few hours until the moisture evaporates.

How to handle discs



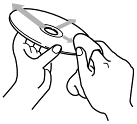
When removing a disc from its case, press down the center holder of the case and lift the disc out, holding it by the edges.

- Always hold the disc by the edges. Do not touch its recording surface.

When storing a disc into its case, gently insert the disc around the center holder (with the printed surface facing up).

- Make sure to store discs into the cases after use.

To keep discs clean

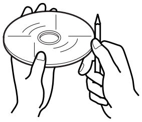


A dirty disc may not play correctly.

If a disc does become dirty, wipe it with a soft cloth in a straight line from center to edge.

- Do not use any solvent (for example, conventional record cleaner, spray, thinner, benzine, etc.) to clean discs.

To play new discs



New discs may have some rough spots around the inner and outer edges. If such a disc is used, this unit may reject the disc.

To remove these rough spots, rub the edges with a pencil or ball-point pen, etc.

More about This Receiver

Operation Methods

- Touch Panel screen goes off if no operations are made on it for about 30 seconds while viewing the playback picture.

Basic Operations

Turning on the power

- By pressing SOURCE on the main unit, you can also turn on the power.

Turning off the power

- If you turn off the power while listening to a disc, disc play will start automatically, next time you turn on the power.

Changing the graphic screen

- If you select one of the graphic screens while playing a video source, no playback picture can be viewed.
- When you change the playback source to one of the video sources, the currently selected graphic screen is temporarily canceled in order to show the playback picture on the picture view window.

Radio Operations

Storing stations in memory

- When SSM is carried out for a band...
  - All stations previously stored for the band are erased and stations are stored newly.
  - Received stations are preset in No.1 (lowest frequency) to No.6 (highest frequency). When SSM is over, the station stored in No.1 will be automatically tuned in.
- When storing a station manually, a previously preset station is erased when a new station is stored in the same preset number.
- Preset stations are erased when the power supply to the memory circuit is interrupted (for example, during battery replacement). If this occurs, preset the stations again.

Basic Disc Operations

General

- In this manual, words “track” and “file” are interchangeably used when referring to MP3 files and their file names.
- When a disc has been already loaded, selecting “DISC” for the playback source starts disc play.

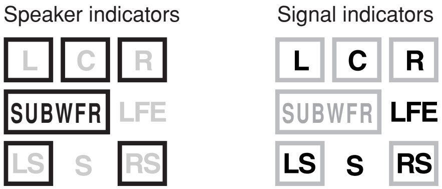
Inserting a disc

- When a disc is inserted upside down, the disc automatically ejects.

Playing a disc

- After loading an MP3 disc, this unit will take a long readout time. This readout time varies among the disc depending on its recording conditions.
- When playing an MP3 disc, sound interruption or skipping may occur. This is caused by the disc played back—its recording condition (missing data, etc.)
- When playing a DVD/VCD, no sound comes out during x5, x10, x20, and x60* Search (* only for DVD).
- Reverse Search stops automatically when it reaches the beginning of the disc. Playback resumes at normal speed.
- For some DVD/VCDs, changing the subtitle language and audio language (or audio channel) without using the disc menu is prohibited.
- One Touch Replay works only within the same title. (For some DVDs, this function does not work.)
- While zoomed in, the picture may look coarse.
- This unit cannot play back the files which have the data such as WMA, WAVE, ATRAC3, MPEG 2.5, etc.

- The speaker/signal indicators appear in the following cases (only for DVD/CD):
  - When a different type of the digital signal is detected, or
  - When you start playback or resume playback from pause.



  - The speaker indicators—frames of "L," "C," "R," "LS," and "RS" light up, when the corresponding speakers are set to "LARGE" or "SMALL" (see page 51). Sounds come out of the speakers whose speaker indicators is lit on the display.
  - The SUBWFR indicator lights up when "SUBWOOFER" is set to "YES" (see page 51).
  - The signal indicators changes its color from white to yellow to indicate the incoming signals—L (front left) / R (front right) / C (center) / LFE (low frequency effect) / LS (left surround) / RS (right surround) / S (monaural surround).

Changing the source

- If you change the source, playback also stops (without ejecting the disc).
  Next time you select "DISC" for the playback source, will start automatically.

Stopping play

- Except for MP3 discs: This unit can remember the end point (until the disc is ejected), and when you start playback again, playback begins from where it has been stopped (Resume play).
- For MP3 discs: This unit can remember the last playing track (until the disc is ejected), and when you start playback again, playback begins from the beginning of the same track.

Ejecting a disc

- If the ejected disc is not removed within 15 seconds, the disc is automatically inserted again into the loading slot to prevent it from dust. (Disc will not play this time.)

Displaying the disc text information

- For MP3: If no ID3 tag is recorded, folder and track names are displayed instead.

Notes on Recordable (R) and Rewritable (RW) discs

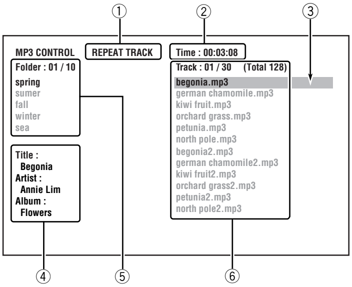
- Use only "finalized" discs.
- For DVD-R/DVD-RW: This unit can play back only discs recorded in the DVD-Video format. (Discs recorded in the DVD-VR format cannot be played.)
- For CD-R/CD-RW: This unit can play back only audio CD (CD-DA) files if a disc includes both audio CD (CD-DA) files and MP3 files.
- This unit can play back multi-session discs; however, unclosed sessions will be skipped while playing.
- Some discs may not play back on this unit because of their disc characteristics, and for the following causes:
  - Discs are dirty or scratched.
  - Discs are kept in a place where temperature becomes extremely high.
  - Moisture condensation on the lens inside the unit.
  - The pickup lens inside the unit is dirty.
  - Discs on which the files are written with "Packet Write" method.
  - There are improper recording conditions (missing data, etc.) or media conditions (stain, scratch, warp, etc.)
- Rewritable discs may require a longer readout time since the reflectance of rewritable discs is lower than that of regular DVD/CDs.
- Do not use following discs:
  - Discs with stickers, labels, or protective seal stuck to the surface.
  - Discs on which labels can be directly printed by an ink jet printer.

  Using these discs under high temperatures or high humidity may cause malfunctions or damage to discs.

Notes on MP3 files

- This unit can play back MP3 files only with the extension code <.mp3> (regardless of the letter case—upper/lower).
- This unit cannot play back the files encoded in the following formats—MP3i, MP3 PRO, Layer 1, Layer 2 format.
- This unit can show the names of albums, artists (performer), and tracks of ID3 Tag (Version 1.0 and 1.1).
- This unit can show up to 64 characters on the monitor screen.
- This unit can handle only one-byte characters. Any other characters cannot be correctly displayed.
- This unit can play back MP3 files meeting the conditions below
  – Bit rate: 8 kbps – 320 kbps
  – Sampling frequency:
  48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz (for MPEG-1)
  24 kHz, 22.05 kHz, 16 kHz (for MPEG-2)
  – Disc format:
  ISO 9660 Level 1/ Level 2, Romeo, Joliet, Windows long file name
- The maximum number of characters for file/folder names varies among the disc format used (includes 4 extension characters—<.mp3>).
  – ISO 9660 Level 1: 12
  – ISO 9660 Level 2: 31
  – Romeo/Windows long file name: 128
  – Joliet: 64
- This unit can recognize 99 folders and 150 files in each folder, which recorded in 10 hierarchies.
- This unit can play back the files recorded in VBR (variable bit rate).
  The files recorded in VBR have a discrepancy in elapsed time display, and do not show the actual elapsed time. Especially, after performing the search function, this difference becomes noticeable.
- Playlist is not available on this unit.
- The search function works but search speed is not constant during search.

- When an optional monitor is connected to the AV OUTPUT terminal, you can view the following MP3 CONTROL screen on the optional monitor.



MP3 CONTROL
REPEAT TRACK
Time : 00:03:08
Folder : 01 / 10
spring
sumer
fall
winter
sea
Title :
Begonia
Artist :
Annie Lim
Album :
Flowers
Track : 01 / 30 (Total 128)
begonia.mp3
german chamomile.mp3
kiwi fruit.mp3
orchard grass.mp3
petunia.mp3
north pole.mp3
begonia2.mp3
german chamomile2.mp3
kiwi fruit2.mp3
orchard grass2.mp3
petunia2.mp3
north pole2.mp3

① Currently activated play mode
② Elapsed playing time of the current track
③ Cursor (highlighted position): Indicates your selection.
④ ID3 Tag information
⑤ Folder column—folder names
(Ex. The first folder is selected out of 10 folders)
- Only 5 folders can be listed at a time.

⑥ Track column—track names
(Ex. The first track is selected out of 30 tracks in the current folder. 128 tracks are included in the disc)
- Only 12 tracks can be listed at a time.
- Only the first 32 characters can be displayed on the monitor.

– While playing a CD, the current track and playback mode information is displayed on the optional monitor.

Dual Mode Operations

Adjusting AV OUTPUT volume

- This adjustment does not affect the volume level of the monitor inserted into the optional cradle (KV-CR100).

Surround Mode Operations

- Dolby Digital disc is not always encoded as multi-channel source. If it is not multi-channel encoded, “Dolby Digital” cannot be selected for surround mode.

Sound Mode (iEQ) Operations

- If you do not want to store your current adjustment, but only to apply the adjustment to the current playback source, press RETURN on the monitor screen to go back to the operation screen of the current source. Adjustment you made remains effective until you select a sound mode.

Other Sound Adjustments

- If fader or balance has been set close to its extreme, appropriate surround/DSP effect may not be obtained.
- If you are using a two-speaker system, set the fader level to “0.”
- You cannot adjust the input level—Volume Adjustment—of the FM stations. If the source is FM, Volume Adjustment will not be used.

Monitor Adjustments

- You may not able to adjust the brightness in the following case:
  - You cannot make it brighter when the ambient light is very bright.
  - You cannot make it darker when the ambient light is very dark.

Initial Setup—DVD MENU

MENU/AUDIO/SUBTITLE LANGUAGE

- When the language you have selected is not recorded on a disc, the original language is automatically used as the initial language. In addition, for some discs, the initial languages settings will not work as you set due to their internal disc programming.
- Language setting change cannot be effective while playing (or pausing). After you change the language setting, eject the disc and insert it (or another disc) again so that your setting takes effect.

MONITOR TYPE

- When you select “16:9 NORMAL” for a picture whose aspect ratio is 4:3, the picture slightly changes due to the process for converting the picture width.
- Even if “4:3 PS” is selected, the screen size may become “4:3 LB” with some DVDs. This depends on how they are recorded.

Initial Setup—AUDIO MENU/PSM

- If you change the “**AMP GAIN**” setting from “HIGH” to “LOW” while the volume level is set higher than “30,” the unit automatically changes the volume level to “30.”

Other Main Functions

Assigning titles to the sources

- When the CD changer is connected, you can assign titles to CDs in the CD changer. These titles can also be shown on the display if you insert the CDs in this unit.

TV Tuner Operations

Storing stations in memory

- When Auto Memory is carried out...
  - All TV stations previously stored are erased and TV stations are stored newly.
  - Received TV stations are preset in No.1 (lowest frequency) to No.12 (highest frequency). When Auto Memory is over, the TV station stored in No.1 will be automatically tuned in.
- When storing a TV station manually, a previously preset TV station is erased when a new TV station is stored in the same preset number.
- Preset TV stations are erased when the power supply to the memory circuit is interrupted (for example, during battery replacement). If this occurs, preset the stations again.

Troubleshooting

What appears to be trouble is not always serious. Check the following points before calling a service center.

General

- **Sound is sometimes interrupted.**
  ⇨ You are driving on rough roads. Stop playback while driving on rough roads.
  ⇨ Disc is scratched.
- **Sound cannot be heard from the speakers.**
  ⇨ Connections are incorrect.
- **No sound comes out of the subwoofer (though it is activated—set to "YES").**
  ⇨ If Pro Logic II is activated with the front/center/rear speaker size all set to "LARGE," no sound comes out.
- **Surround/DSP mode is defeated and cannot be activated.**
  ⇨ It is fixed to "DEFEAT" if only rear speakers are activated (set to "LARGE" or "SMALL").

FM/AM broadcast

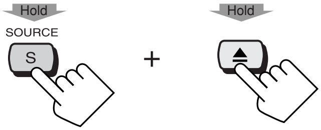
- **SSM automatic presetting does not work.**
  ⇨ Signals are too weak. Store stations manually.
- **Static noise is generated while listening to the radio.**
  ⇨ The antenna is not connected firmly.

Disc playback—DVD/VCD

- **You cannot watch the playback pictures on the additionally purchased monitor (KV-MAV7001) in the optional cradle (KV-CR100).**
  ⇨ If the original monitor is not removed from the main unit, you cannot watch the playback picture while driving.
- **The playback pictures cannot be shown correctly (they scroll vertically).**
  ⇨ The color system (NTSC/PAL) is not correct, see page 44.
- **You cannot change the aspect ratio.**
  ⇨ While the GUI operation is in use, you cannot change the aspect ratio.
- **The left and right edges of the picture are missing on the screen.**
  ⇨ "4:3 PS" is selected when viewing on a conventional TV (aspect ratio 4:3). Select "4:3 LB."
- **Audio language or subtitle language cannot be changed.**
  ⇨ For some DVDs and VCDs, changing the language without using the disc menu is prohibited.

Disc playback—CD/CD-R/CD-RW

- **Sounds are skipped or playback stops suddenly.**
  ⇨ Disc is warped or sticker on the disc comes off. Do not play such a disc.
- **Disc cannot be played back.**
  ⇨ Disc is inserted upside down.
- **Tracks on the CD-R/CD-RW cannot be skipped.**
  ⇨ CD-R/CD-RW is not finalized.
- **Disc cannot be ejected.**
- **Disc is not recognized.**
  ⇨ Disc is locked. Unlock the disc (see page 24).
  ⇨ The main unit may function incorrectly. Press SOURCE and ⏏ at the same time for more than 2 seconds to eject the disc.



Disc playback—MP3

- **Disc cannot be played back.**
  ⇨ MP3 tracks do not have the extension code—<.mp3>.
  ⇨ MP3 tracks are not recorded in the format compliant with ISO 9660 Level 1, ISO 9660 Level 2, Romeo, or Joliet.

- **Noise is generated.**
  ⇨ The current track is not an MP3 file (although it has the extension code—<.mp3>).
- **Elapsed playing time is not correct.**
  ⇨ This sometimes occurs during play. This is caused by how the tracks are recorded on the disc.
- **Correct characters are not displayed.**
  ⇨ This unit can only display a limited number of special characters (see the tables on page 53).

Initial setup—AUDIO MENU/PSM

- **"SPEAKER SIZE" settings change.**
  ⇨ Speaker size settings are very much related to one another. For example, if you set the FRONT speakers to "NONE," you cannot select "NONE" for the REAR speakers.
- **Rear view does not appear when you change the gear lever to the back position.**
  ⇨ "BACK GEAR" is to "OFF." In this case, you have to select "AV2" for the source to watch the rear view.
  ⇨ "BACK GEAR" is to "AUTO," but the back gear wire is not connected to the back lamp. To check whether the wiring is correctly done or not, see page 46.

TV tuner operations

- **TV tuner unit does not work at all.**
  ⇨ Press the reset button of the TV tuner unit.
- **"TV IS NOT CONNECTED" appears on the monitor.**
  ⇨ TV tuner unit is disconnected. Connect it again.
- **Auto Memory does not work.**
  ⇨ Signals are too weak. Store TV stations manually.
- **TV stations cannot be received.**
  ⇨ "TV CHANNEL AREA" setting is not correct, see page 52.
- **The TV's main power does not shut off automatically when you change the source from TV to another.**
  ⇨ TV is connected to the TV tuner unit. Connect it to the hideaway unit. Remember that audio/video signals are always transmitted to the TV while it is on.
- **"RESET 8" appears on the display of the main unit.**
  ⇨ This unit is not connected to a TV tuner unit correctly. Connect this unit and the TV tuner unit correctly and press the reset button of the TV tuner unit.

CD changer operations

- **"CD CHANGER IS NOT CONNECTED" appears on the monitor.**
  ⇨ CD changer is disconnected. Connect it again.
- **"NO MAGAZINE" appears on the monitor.**
  ⇨ Magazine is not loaded in the CD changer.
- **"NO FILES" appears on the monitor.**
  ⇨ Playable files are not recorded in the disc.
- **"NO DISC" appears on the monitor.**
  ⇨ No discs are in the magazine or the discs are inserted upside down.
- **"RESET 1" — "RESET 7" appears on the display of the main unit.**
  ⇨ The built-in microcomputer in the CD changer is malfunctioning. Press the reset button of the CD changer.
- **"RESET 8" appears on the display of the main unit.**
  ⇨ This unit is not connected to a CD changer correctly. Connect this unit and the CD changer correctly and press the reset button of the CD changer.

Additional Information

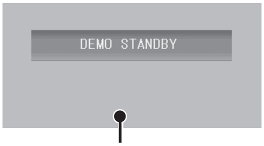
Preset iEQ mode

The table below shows the preset frequency level settings for each iEQ mode.

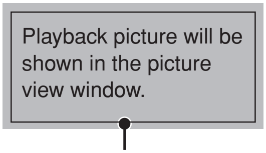
Sound	Preset equalizing values				
Mode	100 Hz	300 Hz	1 kHz	3 kHz	10 kHz
FLAT	00	00	00	00	00
HARD ROCK	+03	+02	00	+01	+01
R&B	+03	+02	00	+01	+03
POP	00	+01	00	+01	+02
JAZZ	+03	+02	+01	+02	+02
DANCE	+04	+01	–02	00	+01
COUNTRY	+02	+01	00	+01	+02
REGGAE	+03	00	+01	+02	+03
CLASSIC	+02	+02	00	+01	00
USER1	00	00	00	00	00
USER2	00	00	00	00	00
USER3	00	00	00	00	00

Graphic screens

You can select one of the following graphic screens. For details, see page 14.

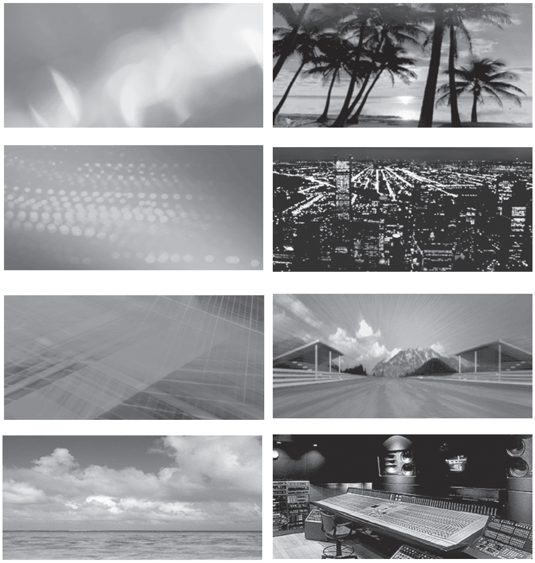


You can activate the display demonstration. To cancel it, select any other graphic screen.



Playback picture will be shown in the picture view window.

While playing a video source (except DVD/VCD), select no graphic screen (in other words, select the actual playback screen); otherwise, you cannot view the playback pictures.



LANGUAGE CODES

Code	Language
AA	Afar
AB	Abkhazian
AF	Afrikaans
AM	Ameharic
AR	Arabic
AS	Assamese
AY	Aymara
AZ	Azerbaijani
BA	Bashkir
BE	Byelorussian
BG	Bulgarian
BH	Bihari
BI	Bislama
BN	Bengali, Bangla
BO	Tibetan
BR	Breton
CA	Catalan
CO	Corsican
CS	Czech
CY	Welsh
DA	Danish
DZ	Bhutani
EL	Greek
EO	Esperanto
ET	Estonian
EU	Basque
FA	Persian
FI	Finnish
FJ	Fiji
FO	Faroese
FY	Frisian
GA	Irish
GD	Scots Gaelic
GL	Galician
GN	Guarani
GU	Gujarati
HA	Hausa
HI	Hindi
HR	Croatian
HU	Hungarian
HY	Armenian
IA	Interlingua
IE	Interlingue
IK	Inupiak
IN	Indonesian
IS	Icelandic
IW	Hebrew
JI	Yiddish
JW	Javanese
KA	Georgian
KK	Kazakh
KL	Greenlandic
KM	Cambodian
KN	Kannada
KO	Korean (KOR)
KS	Kashmiri
KU	Kurdish
KY	Kirghiz
LA	Latin
LN	Lingala
LO	Laothian
LT	Lithuanian
LV	Latvian, Lettish
MG	Malagasy
MI	Maori
MK	Macedonian
ML	Malayalam
MN	Mongolian
MO	Moldavian
MR	Marathi
MS	Malay (MAY)
MT	Maltese
MY	Burmese
NA	Nauru
NE	Nepali
NL	Dutch
NO	Norwegian
OC	Occitan
OM	(Afan) Oromo
OR	Oriya
PA	Panjabi
PL	Polish
PS	Pashto, Pushto
PT	Portuguese
QU	Quechua
RM	Rhaeto-Romance
RN	Kirundi
RO	Rumanian
RU	Russian
RW	Kinyarwanda
SA	Sanskrit
SD	Sindhi
SG	Sangho
SH	Serbo-Croatian
SI	Singhalese
SK	Slovak
SL	Slovenian
SM	Samoan
SN	Shona
SO	Somali
SQ	Albanian
SR	Serbian
SS	Siswati
ST	Sesotho
SU	Sundanese
SV	Swedish
SW	Swahili
TA	Tamil
TE	Telugu
TG	Tajik
TH	Thai
TI	Tigrinya
TK	Turkmen
TL	Tagalog
TN	Setswana
TO	Tonga
TR	Turkish
TS	Tsonga
TT	Tatar
TW	Twi
UK	Ukrainian
UR	Urdu
UZ	Uzbek
VI	Vietnamese
VO	Volapuk
WO	Wolof
XH	Xhosa
YO	Yoruba
ZU	Zulu

Specifications

Main unit

AUDIO AMPLIFIER SECTION

Maximum Power Output:
Front: 50 W per channel
Rear: 50 W per channel
Center: 35 W
Continuous Power Output (RMS):
Front: 19 W per channel into 4 Ω, 40 Hz to 20 000 Hz at no more than 0.8% total harmonic distortion.
Rear: 19 W per channel into 4 Ω, 40 Hz to 20 000 Hz at no more than 0.8% total harmonic distortion.
Center: 15 W into 4 Ω, 40 Hz to 20 000 Hz at no more than 0.8% total harmonic distortion.
Load Impedance: 4 Ω (4 Ω to 8 Ω allowance)
Equalizer Control Range:
Frequencies: 100 Hz, 300 Hz, 1 kHz, 3 kHz, 10 kHz
Level: ±10 dB
Frequency Response: 40 Hz to 20 000 Hz
Signal-to-Noise Ratio: 70 dB

TUNER SECTION

Frequency Range:
FM: 87.5 MHz to 108.0 MHz
AM: 531 kHz to 1 602 kHz

[FM Tuner]

Usable Sensitivity: 11.3 dBf (1.0 µV/75 Ω)
50 dB Quieting Sensitivity: 16.3 dBf (1.8 µV/75 Ω)
Alternate Channel Selectivity (400 kHz): 65 dB
Frequency Response: 40 Hz to 15 000 Hz
Stereo Separation: 35 dB
Capture Ratio: 1.5 dB

[AM Tuner]

Sensitivity: 20 µV
Selectivity: 35 dB

DVD/CD PLAYER SECTION

Signal Detection System: Non-contact optical pickup (semiconductor laser)
Number of channels: 2 channels (stereo)
Frequency Response:
DVD, fs=48 kHz: 16 Hz to 22 000 Hz
DVD, fs=96 kHz: 16 Hz to 44 000 Hz
VCD, CD, MP3: 16 Hz to 20 000 Hz
Dynamic Range: 96 dB
Signal-to-Noise Ratio: 98 dB
Wow and Flutter: Less than measurable limit
MP3 Recording Format:
MPEG 1/2 Audio Layer 3
Max. Bit rate: 320 kbps

REMOVABLE MONITOR

Screen Size: 7 inch wide liquid crystal display
Number of Pixel: 336 960 pixels
(480 vertical × 234 horizontal × 3)
Drive Method:
TFT (Thin Film Transistor) active matrix format
Color System: PAL/NTSC
Aspect Ratio: 16:9 (wide)
Allowable Storage Temperature:
–10°C to +60°C
Allowable Operating Temperature:
0°C to +40°C
Dimensions (W × H × D):
170 mm × 141 mm × 15 mm
Mass: 475 g

GENERAL

Power Requirement:
Operating Voltage: DC 14.4 V
(11 V to 16 V allowance)
Grounding System: Negative ground
Allowable Operating Temperature:
0°C to +40°C

Dimensions (W × H × D):

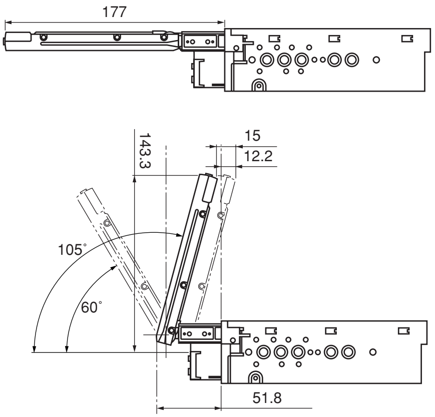
Installation Size:

- With sleeve-mounting plate Type B (standard)
  182 mm × 52 mm × 165 mm
- With sleeve-mounting plate Type A
  182 mm × 52 mm × 160 mm

Panel Size: 188 mm × 58 mm × 14 mm

Mass: 2.25 kg (including monitor)

Required space for the monitor ejection



CAUTION: When ejecting the monitor, keep an open space for the monitor to come out. If not, the monitor may obstruct the steering wheel and gearshift lever operations, as this may result in a traffic accident.

Hideaway unit

Input Terminals:
  AV INPUT 1/2:
    Audio: 0.5 Vrms (Left/Right)
    Video (composite): 1 Vp-p/75 Ω
Output Terminals (Level/Impedance):
  AV OUTPUT:
    Audio: 2.0 V/20 kΩ load (full scale)
    Video (composite): 1 Vp-p/75 Ω
  PRE OUT:
    Audio: 2.0 V/20 kΩ load (full scale)
Other Terminals:
  System integration (TO MAIN UNIT)
  FM/AM antenna (FM/AM ANTENNA)
  AV bus (AV BUS)
  CD changer (TO CHANGER)
  Rear view camera/Center speaker
  (BACKCAMERA REMOTE/CENTER SPEAKER)
  Power cord (POWER)

Dimensions (W × H × D):
  230 mm × 35 mm × 181 mm
Mass: 1.3 kg

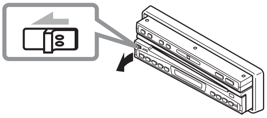
Design and specifications are subject to change without notice.

About mistracking:

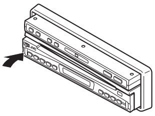
Mistracking may result from driving on extremely rough roads. This does not damage the unit and the disc, but will be annoying.
It is recommended to stop disc play while driving on such rough roads.

Removing the control panel

To detach the control panel



To attach the control panel



Having TROUBLE with operation?

Please reset your unit.
Refer to page of How to reset your unit.

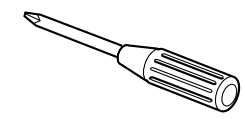
JVC

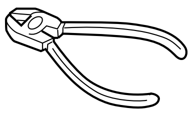
EN

© 2004 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

1004MNMMDWJEIN

JVC KD-AV7008
Installation/Connection Manual





LVT1174-002A
[A]

1004MNMMDWJEIN
EN

© 2004 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

This unit is designed to operate only on **12 V DC, NEGATIVE ground electrical systems**. If your vehicle does not have this system, a voltage inverter is required, which can be purchased at JVC car audio dealers.

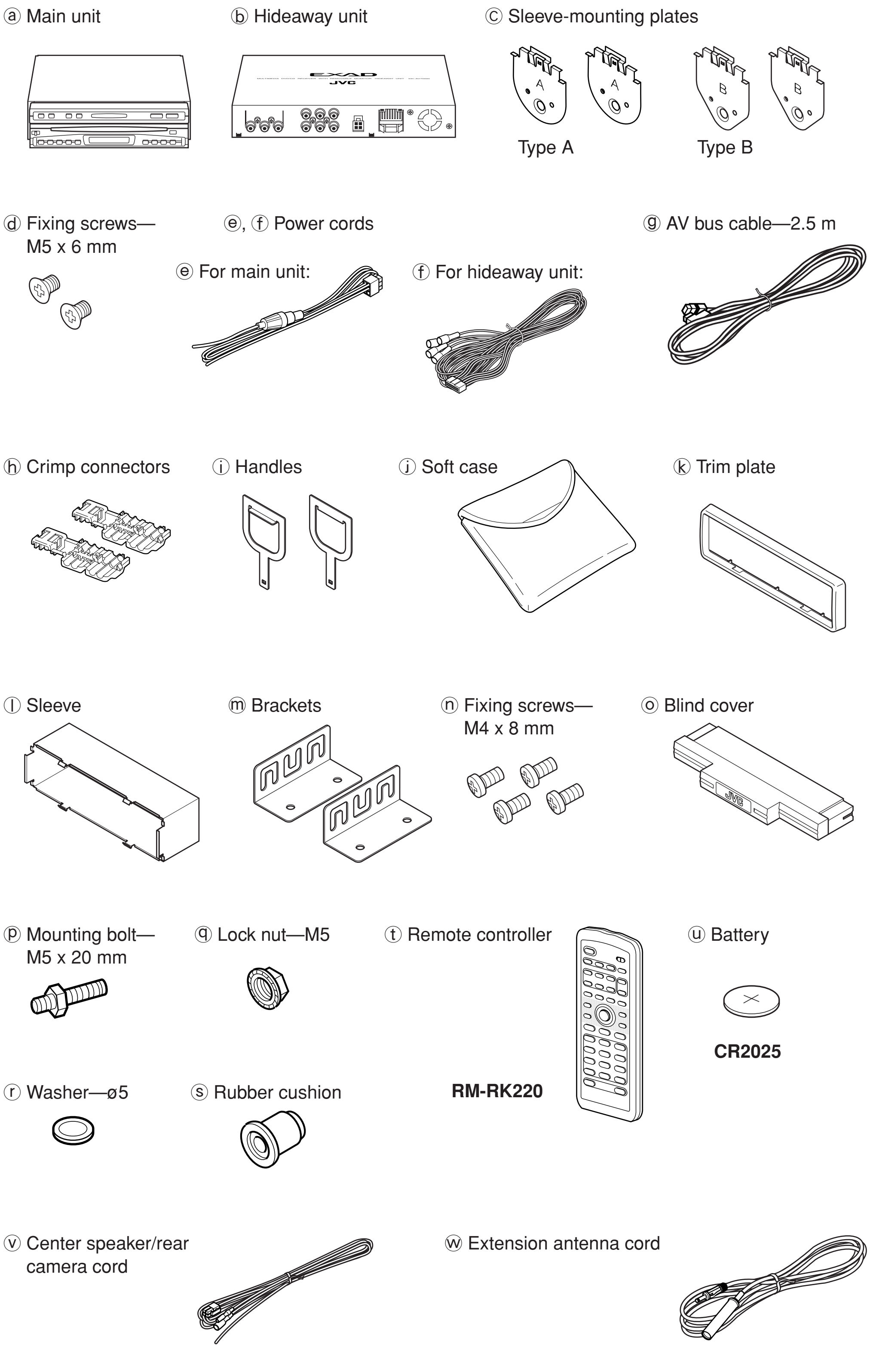
WARNINGS

- DO NOT install any unit in locations where;
  - it may obstruct the steering wheel and gearshift lever operations, as this may result in a traffic accident.
  - it may obstruct the operation of safety devices such as air bags, as this may result in a fatal accident.
  - it may obstruct visibility.
- DO NOT operate any unit while manipulating the steering wheel, as this may result in a traffic accident.
- The driver must not watch the monitor while driving.
  If the driver watches the monitor while driving, it may lead to carelessness and cause an accident.
- If you need to operate the main unit while driving, be sure to look ahead carefully or you may be involved in a traffic accident.
- If the parking brake is not engaged, "DRIVER MUST NOT WATCH THE MONITOR WHILE DRIVING." appears on the monitor, and no playback picture will be shown.
  - This warning appears only when the parking brake wire is connected to the parking brake system built in the car.

Notes on mounting the hideaway unit
- Mount on a firm surface, under the front seat or in the trunk.
- Since heat is generated inside the unit, do not mount near inflammable objects. In addition, mount in an area that will not prevent the unit from dissipating heat.
- Do not mount the unit in the places which are subject to heat such as near a radiator, in a glove compartment or in insulated area such as under a car mat that will prevent the unit from dissipating heat.

Notes on electrical connections
- Replace the fuse with one of the specified rating. If the fuse blows frequently, consult your JVC car audio dealer.
- Maximum input of the speakers should be more than 50 W at the rear, 50 W at the front, and 35 W at the center, with an impedance of **4** Ω to **8** Ω.
- **Be sure to ground each unit to the car's chassis.**
- The main unit and the hideaway unit become very hot after use. Be careful not to get burned when removing them.
- To prevent short-circuit, cover the terminals of the UNUSED leads with insulating tape.
- **Take preventative measures to avoid unexpected disconnection of the cords and damage to the cords. This trouble may happen while moving or reclining the seat.**

Parts list



ⓐ Main unit

ⓑ Hideaway unit

ⓒ Sleeve-mounting plates
Type A
Type B

ⓓ Fixing screws—M5 x 6 mm

ⓔ, ⓕ Power cords
ⓔ For main unit:
ⓕ For hideaway unit:

ⓖ AV bus cable—2.5 m

ⓗ Crimp connectors

ⓘ Handles

ⓙ Soft case

ⓚ Trim plate

ⓛ Sleeve

ⓜ Brackets

ⓝ Fixing screws—M4 x 8 mm

ⓞ Blind cover

ⓟ Mounting bolt—M5 x 20 mm

ⓠ Lock nut—M5

ⓡ Washer—ø5

ⓢ Rubber cushion

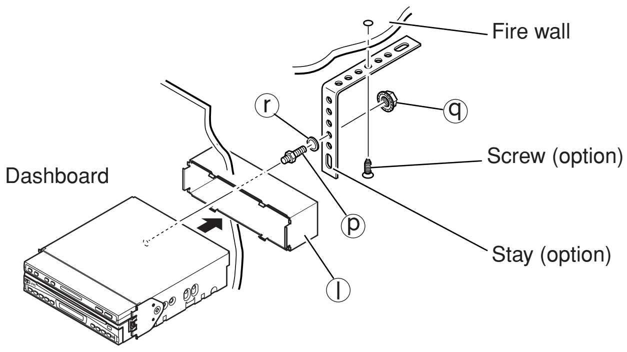
ⓣ Remote controller
RM-RK220

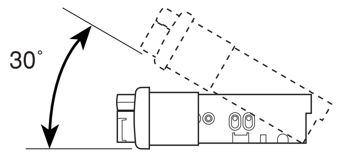
ⓤ Battery
CR2025

ⓥ Center speaker/rear camera cord

ⓦ Extension antenna cord

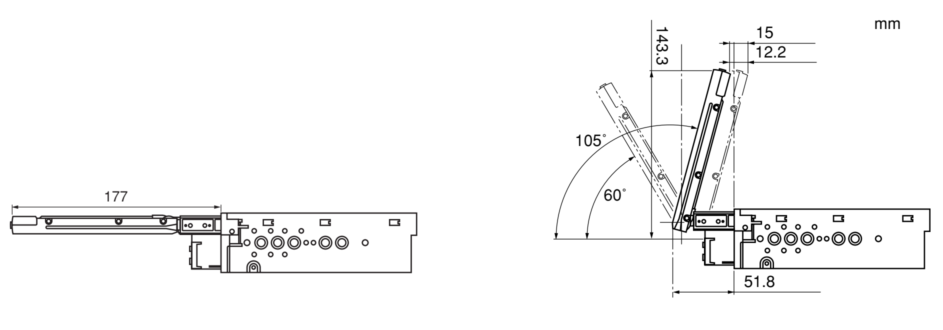
When using the optional stay





Install the unit at an angle of less than 30˚, taking it into account that the monitor would eject when in use (see below).

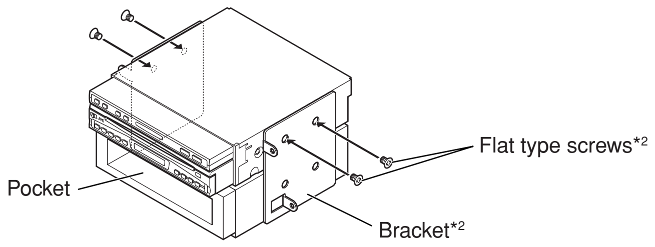
Required space for the monitor ejection

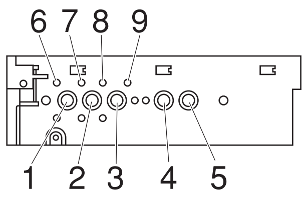


When installing the unit without using the sleeve

In a Toyota for example, first remove the car radio and install the unit in its place.

*2 Not included with this unit.





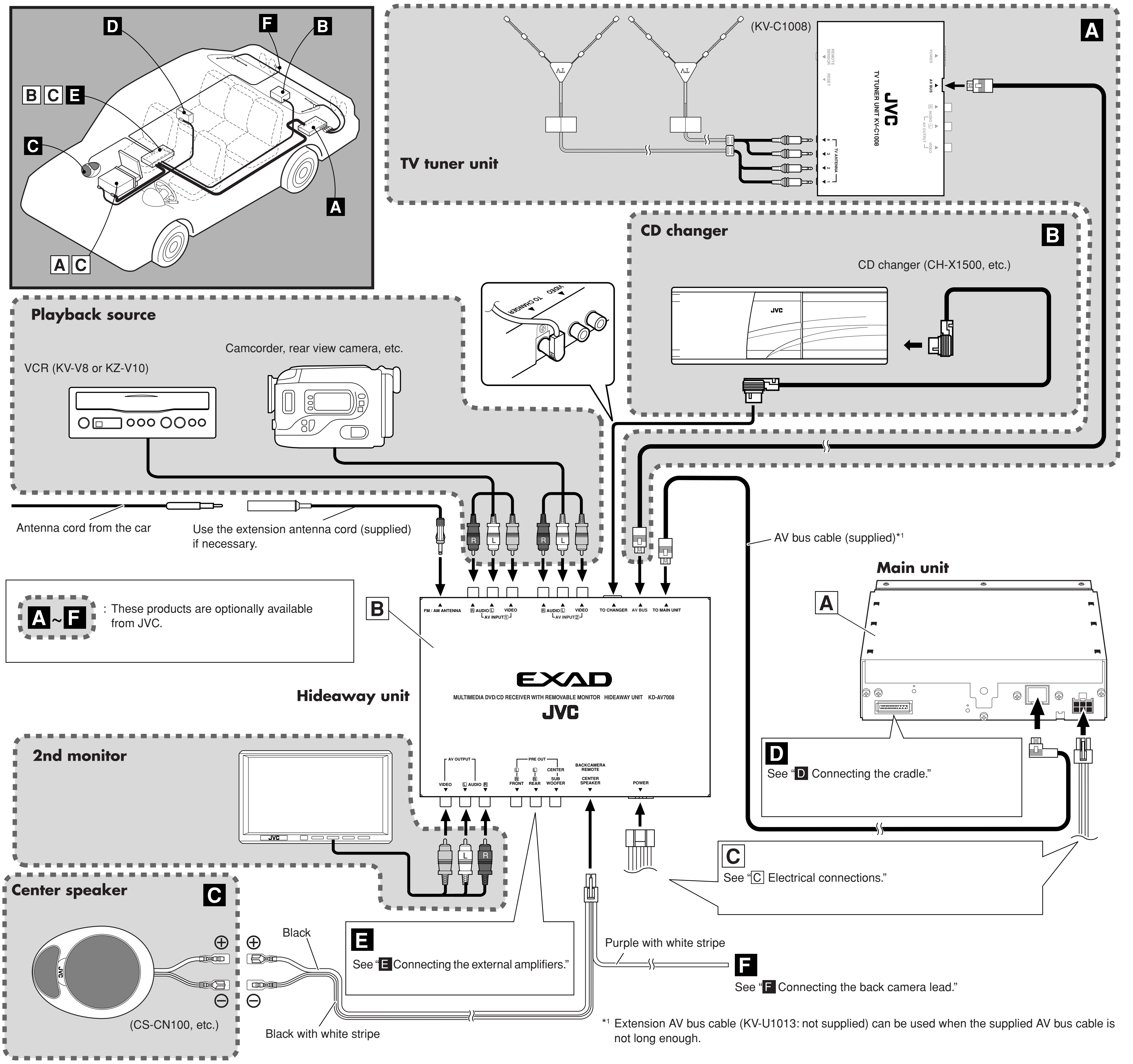
Use the following screws

For No.1 – 5	M5 x 8 mm*2
For No.6 – 9	M4 x 3 mm*2

Note : When installing the unit on the mounting bracket, make sure to use screws of proper length refering to the table above. If longer screws are used, they could damage the unit.

SYSTEM CONNECTIONS

- For A, B, C, D, E, F, more information are given on the following pages.



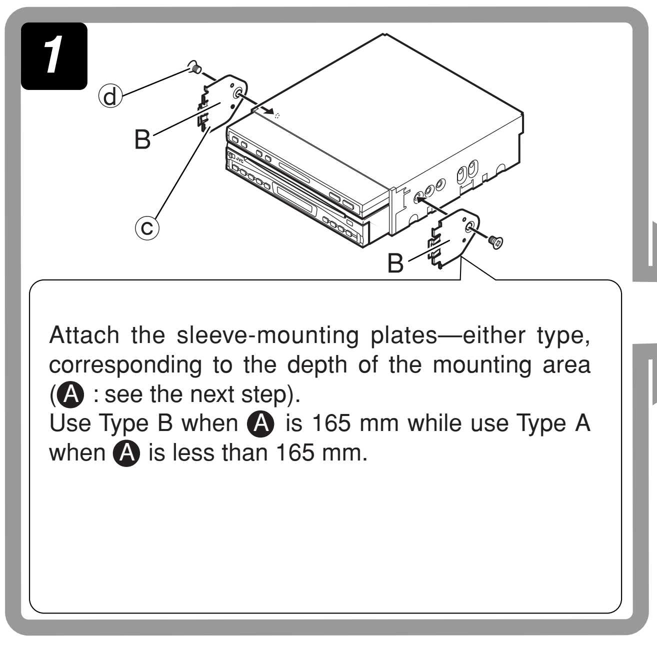
D
F
B
B C E
C
A
A C
(KV-C1008)
A
JVC
TV TUNER UNIT KV-C1008
TV tuner unit
CD changer
B
CD changer (CH-X1500, etc.)
JVC
TO CHANGER
VIDEO
Playback source
Camcorder, rear view camera, etc.
VCR (KV-V8 or KZ-V10)
Antenna cord from the car
Use the extension antenna cord (supplied) if necessary.
R
L
R
L
AV bus cable (supplied)*1
Main unit
A
A~F
: These products are optionally available from JVC.
B
FM / AM ANTENNA
R AUDIO L
VIDEO
AV INPUT1
R AUDIO L
VIDEO
AV INPUT2
TO CHANGER
AV BUS
TO MAIN UNIT
Hideaway unit
EXAD
MULTIMEDIA DVD/CD RECEIVER WITH REMOVABLE MONITOR HIDEAWAY UNIT KD-AV7008
JVC
AV OUTPUT
VIDEO
L AUDIO R
PRE OUT
L R FRONT
L R REAR
CENTER SUB WOOFER
BACKCAMERA REMOTE
CENTER SPEAKER
POWER
D
See "D Connecting the cradle."
2nd monitor
JVC
L
R
C
See "C Electrical connections."
Center speaker
C
JVC
⊕
⊕
⊖
⊖
Black
E
See "E Connecting the external amplifiers."
Purple with white stripe
F
See "F Connecting the back camera lead."
(CS-CN100, etc.)
Black with white stripe

*1 Extension AV bus cable (KV-U1013: not supplied) can be used when the supplied AV bus cable is not long enough.

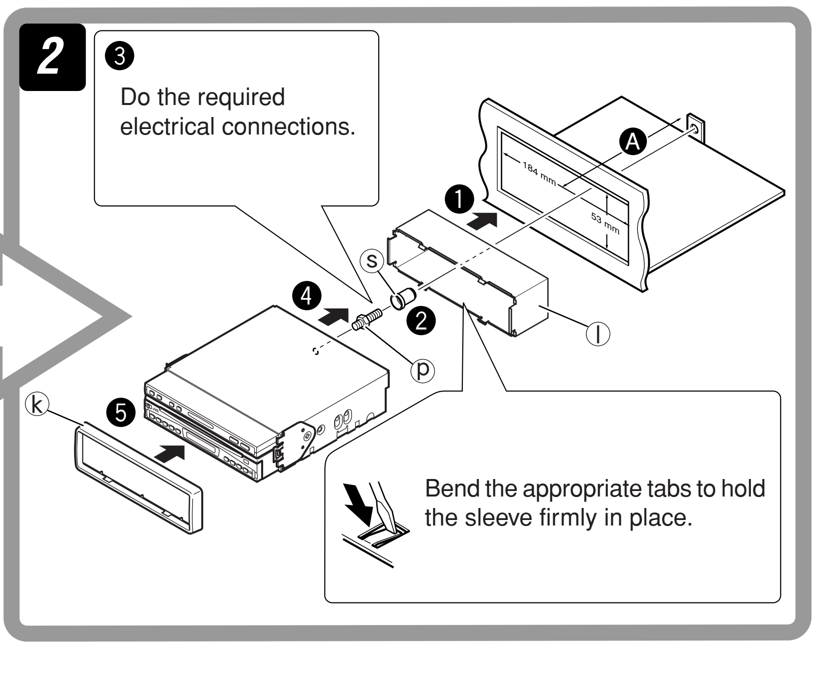
INSTALLATION

The following illustration shows a typical installation. However, you should make adjustments corresponding to your specific car. If you have any questions or require information regarding installation kits, consult your JVC car audio dealer or a company supplying kits.

A Installing the main unit (in-dash mounting)



Attach the sleeve-mounting plates—either type, corresponding to the depth of the mounting area (A : see the next step).
Use Type B when A is 165 mm while use Type A when A is less than 165 mm.



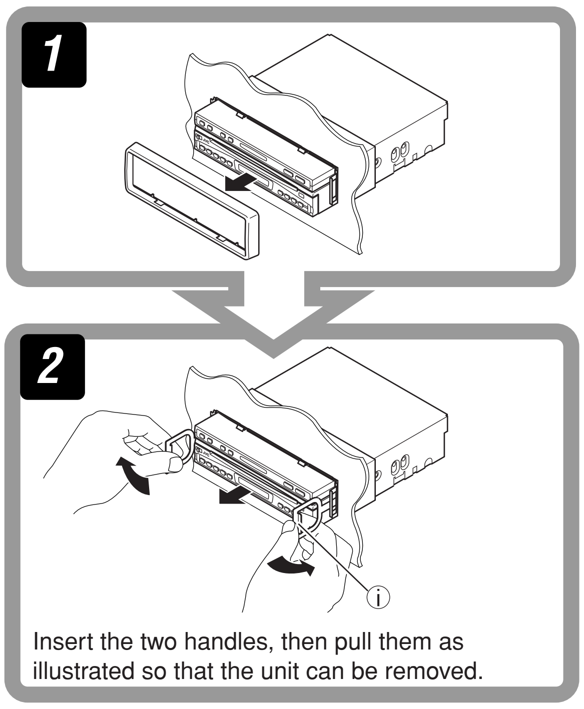
2
A
184 mm
53 mm
❶
s
❷
l
❹
p
k
❺

❸ Do the required electrical connections.

Bend the appropriate tabs to hold the sleeve firmly in place.

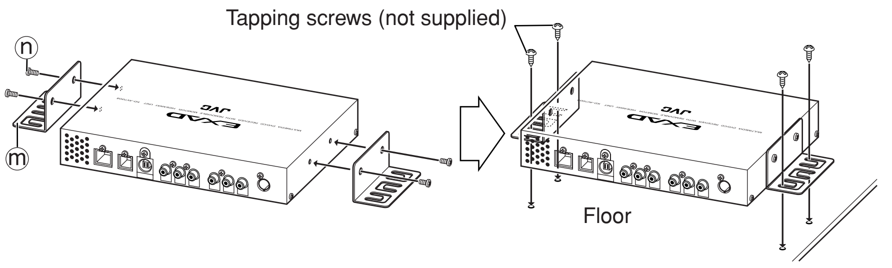
Removing the main unit

Before removing the main unit, release the rear section.



Insert the two handles, then pull them as illustrated so that the unit can be removed.

B Installing the hideaway unit (under the front seat)


Tapping screws (not supplied)
ⓝ
ⓜ
Floor

- Be sure to use the tapping screws (not supplied) of appropriate length so that they will not damage any parts of the car.

C Electrical connections

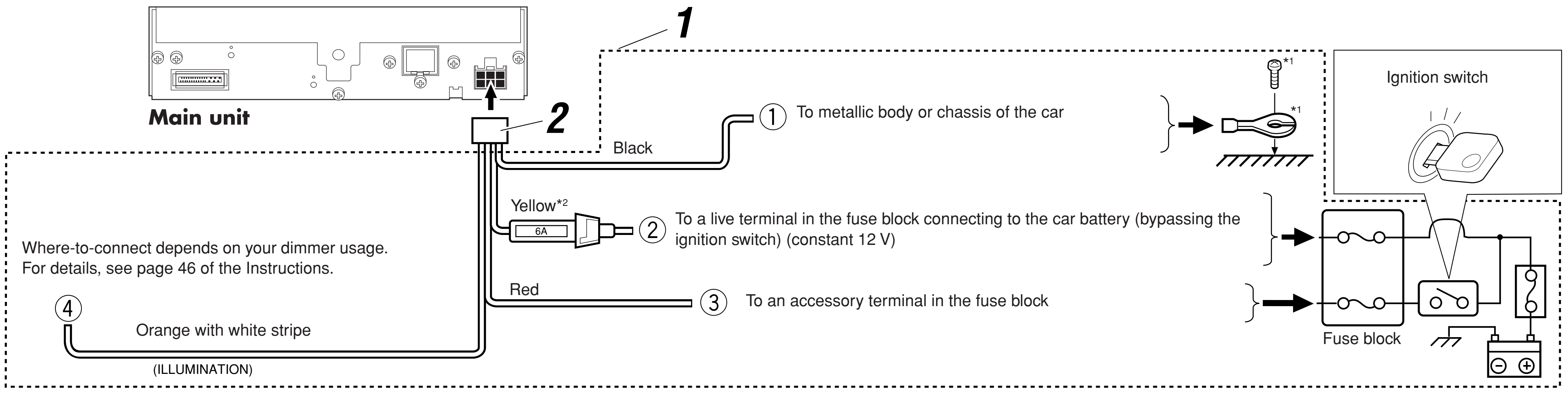
Before connecting...

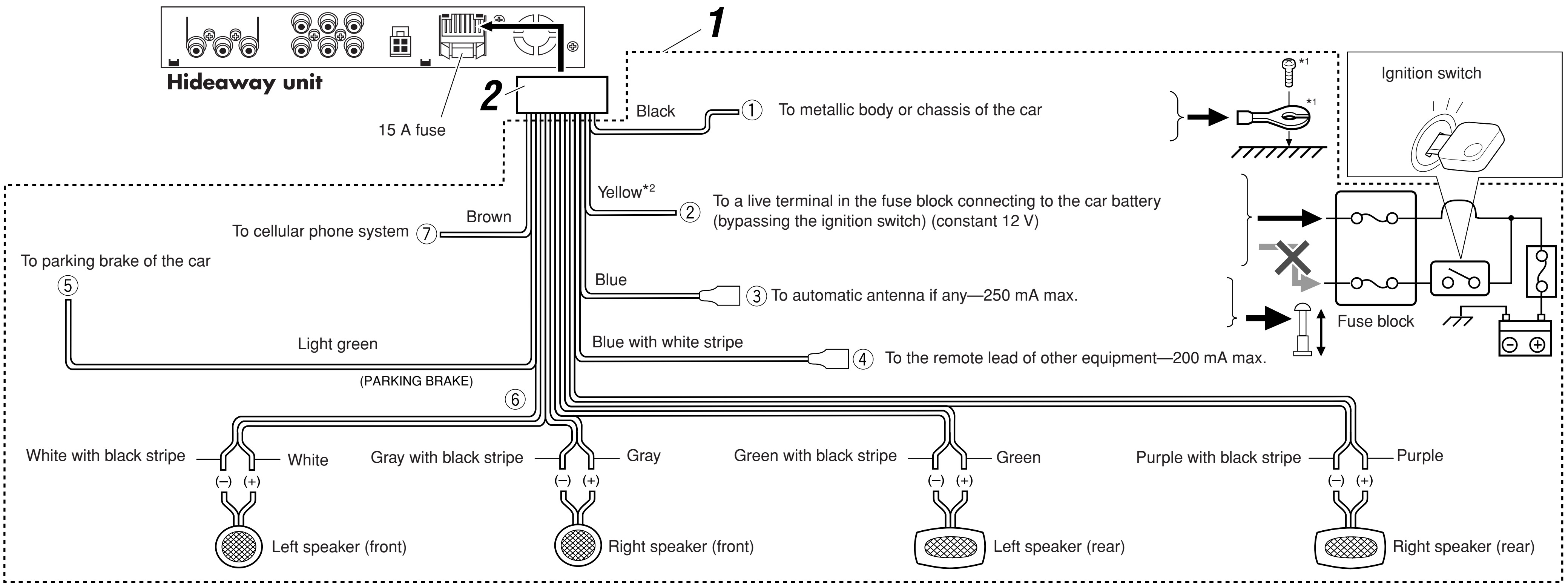
- Make sure that the antenna cord from the car is connected to the hideaway unit (see page 2). If the antenna cord is not long enough, use the extension antenna cord (supplied).
- Check the wiring in the car carefully. Incorrect connection may cause serious damage to the units. The leads of the power cord and those of the connector from the car body may be different in color.

1 Connect the colored leads of the power cord in the order specified in the illustration below.

2 Connect the wiring harness to the units.

3 Connect the main unit and the hideaway unit using AV bus cable (supplied).


1
Main unit
2
Black
① To metallic body or chassis of the car
*1
*1
Ignition switch
Yellow*2
6A
② To a live terminal in the fuse block connecting to the car battery (bypassing the ignition switch) (constant 12 V)
Where-to-connect depends on your dimmer usage.
For details, see page 46 of the Instructions.
Red
③ To an accessory terminal in the fuse block
④
Orange with white stripe
(ILLUMINATION)
Fuse block

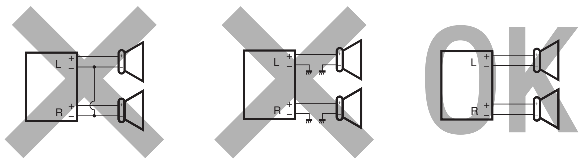

1
Hideaway unit
2
15 A fuse
Black
① To metallic body or chassis of the car
*1
*1
Ignition switch
Yellow*2
② To a live terminal in the fuse block connecting to the car battery (bypassing the ignition switch) (constant 12 V)
Brown
To cellular phone system ⑦
To parking brake of the car
⑤
Blue
③ To automatic antenna if any—250 mA max.
Fuse block
Blue with white stripe
④ To the remote lead of other equipment—200 mA max.
Light green
(PARKING BRAKE)
⑥
White with black stripe
White
Gray with black stripe
Gray
Green with black stripe
Green
Purple with black stripe
Purple
(–) (+)
Left speaker (front)
Right speaker (front)
Left speaker (rear)
Right speaker (rear)

[1] Not supplied with this unit.

[2] Before checking the operation of this unit prior to installation, this lead must be connected, otherwise power cannot be turned on.

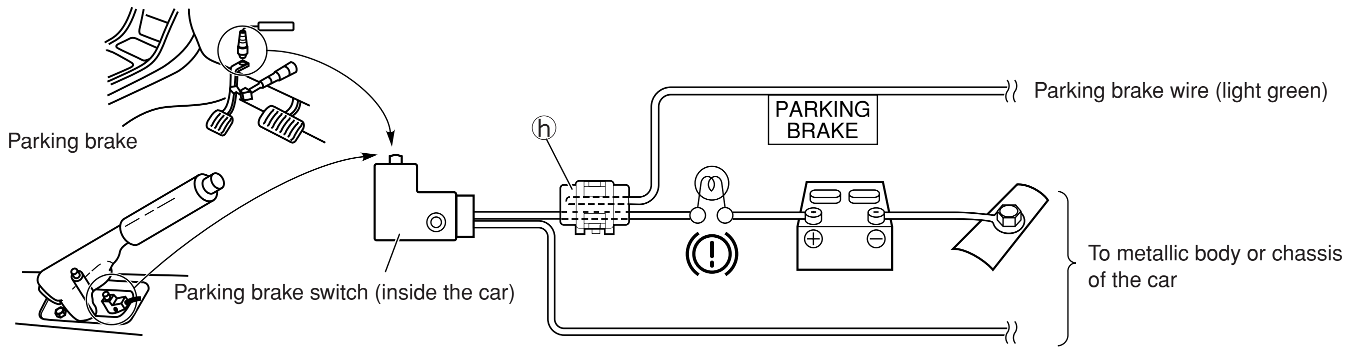
PRECAUTIONS on power supply and speaker connections:

- **DO NOT connect the speaker leads of the power cord to the car battery; otherwise, the units will be seriously damaged.**
- BEFORE connecting the speaker leads of the power cord to the speakers, check the speaker wiring in your car.



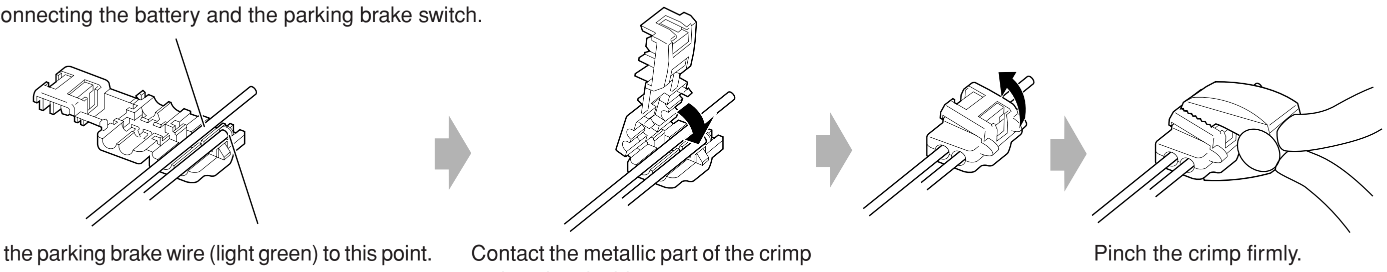
Connecting the parking brake wire

Connect the parking brake wire to the parking brake system built in the car.


Parking brake wire (light green)
PARKING BRAKE
ⓗ
Parking brake
Parking brake switch (inside the car)
To metallic body or chassis of the car

How to connect the crimp connector

Wire connecting the battery and the parking brake switch.



Attach the parking brake wire (light green) to this point.

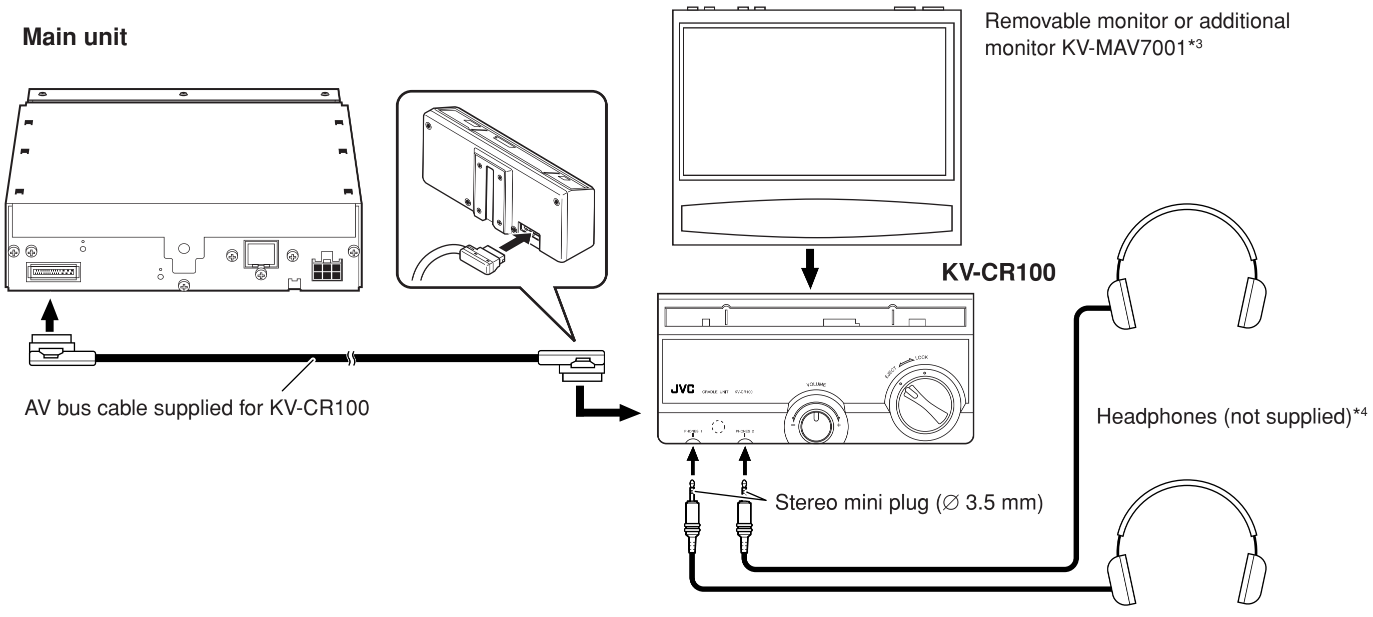
Contact the metallic part of the crimp to the wires inside.

Pinch the crimp firmly.

D Connecting the cradle

By using the cradle (KV-CR100), you can remove the monitor from the main unit and insert it into the cradle so that the persons sitting on the rear seat can view the playback picture even while the driver are driving your car.

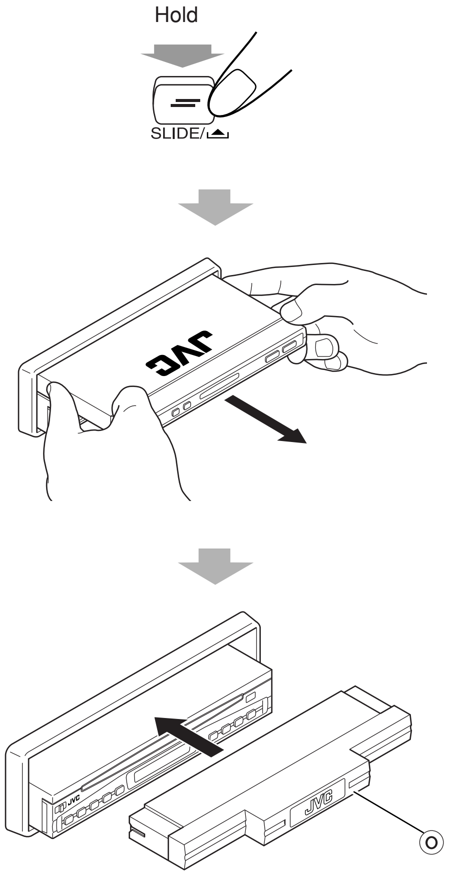
- The driver must not put on the headphones while driving. It is dangerous to shut off the outside sounds while driving.
- Additional monitor (KV-MAV7001) can also be purchased to used so that you do not need to remove the monitor from the main unit.


Main unit
Removable monitor or additional monitor KV-MAV7001*3
KV-CR100
AV bus cable supplied for KV-CR100
Headphones (not supplied)*4
Stereo mini plug (∅ 3.5 mm)

[3] When not in use, store the monitor in the supplied soft case for its protection.

[4] To listen to source sound while in Dual Mode operations. See page 33 of the INSTRUCTIONS (separate volume).

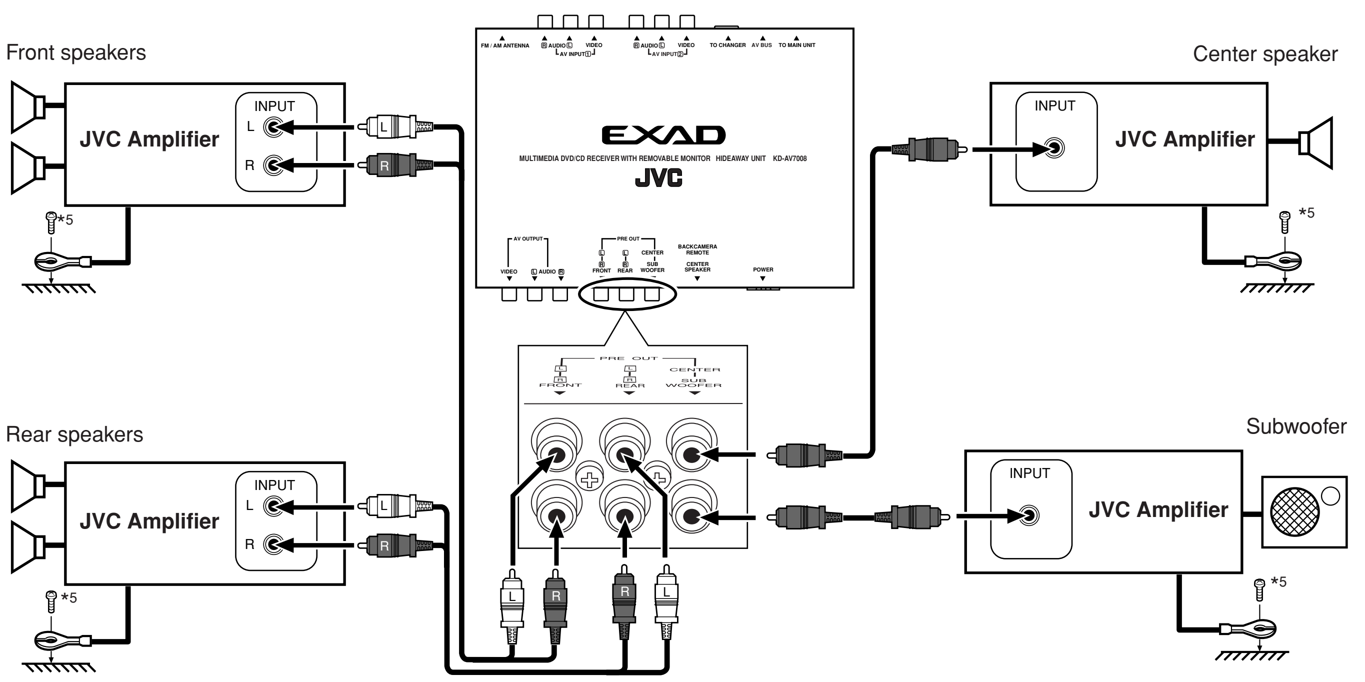
After removing the monitor from the main unit, insert the blind cover into the main unit to prevent internal dust accumulation.


Hold
SLIDE/⏏
JVC
JVC
O

E Connecting the external amplifiers

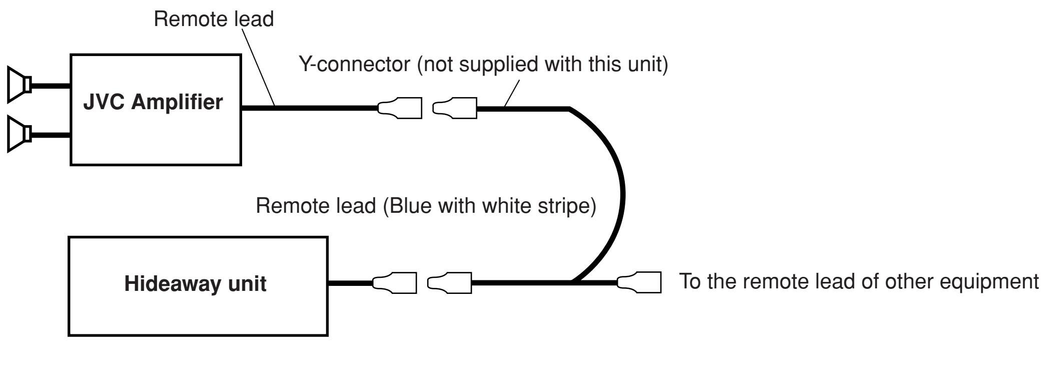
You can connect amplifiers to upgrade surround system in the car compartment.

- Connect the PRE OUT terminals of the hideaway unit to the amplifier's line-in terminals.
- **Disconnect the speakers from the hideaway unit, connect them to the amplifier. Leave the speaker leads of the unit unused.**


Front speakers
JVC Amplifier
INPUT
L
R
*5
Center speaker
JVC Amplifier
INPUT
*5
Rear speakers
JVC Amplifier
INPUT
L
R
*5
Subwoofer
JVC Amplifier
INPUT
*5
FM / AM ANTENNA
R AUDIO L
VIDEO
AV INPUT 1
R AUDIO L
VIDEO
AV INPUT 2
TO CHANGER
AV BUS
TO MAIN UNIT
EXAD
MULTIMEDIA DVD/CD RECEIVER WITH REMOVABLE MONITOR HIDEAWAY UNIT KD-AV7008
JVC
AV OUTPUT
VIDEO
L AUDIO R
PRE OUT
FRONT
REAR
CENTER
SUB WOOFER
BACKCAMERA REMOTE
CENTER SPEAKER
POWER
PRE OUT
L
R
FRONT
REAR
CENTER
SUB WOOFER
L
R
R
L

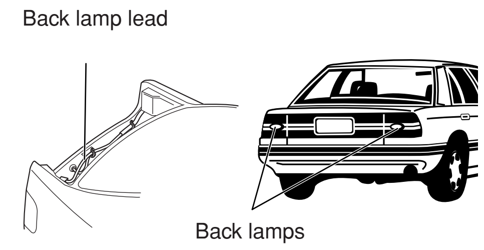
[5] Firmly attach the ground wire to the metallic body or to the chassis of the car—to the place uncoated with paint (if coated with paint, remove the paint before attaching the wire). Failure to do so may cause damage to the unit.

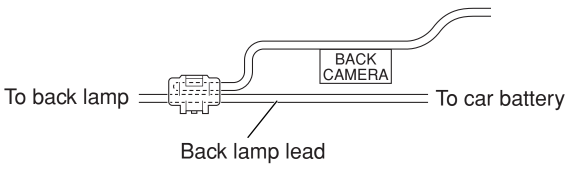
If you connect the remote lead (blue with white stripe) to the remote lead of the other equipment, they can be turned on and off automatically with this unit.


Remote lead
Y-connector (not supplied with this unit)
JVC Amplifier
Remote lead (Blue with white stripe)
Hideaway unit
To the remote lead of other equipment

F Connecting the back camera lead

Locate the back lamp lead in the trunk.


Back lamp lead
Back lamps


To back lamp
BACK CAMERA
To car battery
Back lamp lead

TROUBLESHOOTING

- **The fuse blows.**

* Are the red and black leads connected correctly?

- **Power cannot be turned on.**

* Is the yellow lead connected?

- **No sound from the speakers.**

* Is the speaker output lead short-circuited?

- **Sound is distorted.**

* Is the speaker output lead grounded?

* Are the "–" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?

- **Noise interfere with sounds.**

* Is the rear ground terminal connected to the car's chassis using shorter and thicker cords?

- **Unit becomes hot.**

* Is the speaker output lead grounded?

* Are the "–" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?

KV-MAV7001

LVT1253-002A
[A, E, EU, J]

7-inch Widescreen Detachable Monitor
Abtrennbarer 7-Zoll Breitbild-Monitor
Moniteur à écran large 7 pouces détachable
Verwijderbare 7-inch breedbeeld-monitor
Monitor desmontable de pantalla ancha de 7 pulgadas
Monitor widescreen staccabile da 7 pollici
Bortagbar 7-tums widescreenmonitor
7-дюймовый съемный монитор

Instructions
Bedienungsanleitung
Manuel d’instructions
Gebruiksaanwijzing
Manual de instrucciones
Istruzioni
Bruksanvisning
ИНСТРУКЦИИ ПО ЭКСПЛУАТАЦИИ

For customer Use:
Enter below the Model No. and Serial No. which are located on the top or bottom of the cabinet. Retain this information for future reference.

Model No. ______________________

Serial No. ______________________

0904MNMMDWJEIN
EN, GE, FR, NL, SP, IT, SW, RU
© 2004 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

INFORMATION (For U.S.A. only)

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

– Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
– Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
– Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
– Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

В соответствии с Законом Российской Федерации “О защите прав потребителей” срок службы (годности) данного товара “по истечении которого он может представлять опасность для жизни, здоровья потребителя, причинять вред его имуществу или окружающей среде” составляет семь (7) лет со дня производства. Этот срок является временем, в течение которого потребитель данного товара может безопасно им пользоваться при условии соблюдения инструкции по эксплуатации данного товара, проводя необходимое обслуживание, включающее замену расходных материалов и/или соответствующее ремонтное обеспечение в специализированном сервисном центре.

Дополнительные косметические материалы к данному товару, поставляемые вместе с ним, могут храниться в течение двух (2) лет со дня его производства.

Срок службы (годности), кроме срока хранения дополнительных косметических материалов, упомянутых в предыдущих двух пунктах, не затрагивает никаких других прав потребителя, в частности, гарантийного свидетельства JVC, которое он может получить в соответствии с законом о правах потребителя или других законов, связанных с ним.

English

Thank you for purchasing a JVC product. Please read all instructions carefully before operation, to ensure your complete understanding and to obtain the best possible performance from the unit.

This unit has been designed for an exclusive use with JVC DVD receiver with monitor KD-AV7000/KD-AV7001/KD-AV7008 and JVC cradle KV-CR100/KV-CR101.

With the DVD receiver and the cradle, the monitor allows you to do the following:
– Operating the DVD receiver through the touch panel on the monitor in the rear compartment

- For details, refer to the instructions of these models.

Warnings and Cautions

- The driver must not watch the monitor during driving. If the driver watches the monitor while driving, it may lead to carelessness and cause an accident.
- When you operate on the touch panel, make sure not to damage the monitor screen.

This product has a fluorescent lamp that contains a small amount of mercury. It also contains lead in some components. Disposal of these materials may be regulated in your community due to environmental considerations.
For disposal or recycling information please contact your local authorities, or the Electronic Industries Alliance: http://www.eiae.org./

Maintenance

Refer to the instructions of KD-AV7000/KD-AV7001/KD-AV7008.

Deutsch

Wir danken Ihnen für den Kauf eines JVC Produkts. Bitte lesen Sie die Anleitung vollständig durch, bevor Sie das Gerät in Betrieb nehmen, um sicherzustellen, daß Sie alles vollständig verstehen und die bestmögliche Leistung des Geräts erhalten.

Diese Einheit wurde für ausschließliche Verwendung mit JVC DVD-Empfänger mit Monitor KD-AV7000/KD-AV7001/KD-AV7008 und die JVC-Halterung KV-CR100/KV-CR101 ausgelegt.

Mit DVD-Receiver und Halterung erlaubt der Monitor Folgendes:
– Betrieb des DVD-Receivers über Sensorschirm auf dem Monitor im Fond

- Einzelheiten siehe Bedienungsanleitung dieser Modelle.

Warnungen und Vorsichtsmaßregeln

- Der Fahrer darf während der Fahrt keinesfalls den Monitor betrachten. Andernfalls droht Unfallgefahr durch Unachtsamkeit.
- Bei der Bedienung des Sensorschirms darauf achten, den Sensorschirm nicht zu beschädigen.

Wartung

Siehe Bedienungsanleitung von KD-AV7000/KD-AV7001/KD-AV7008.

Français

Merci pour avoir acheté un produit JVC. Veuillez lire attentivement toutes les instructions avant d’utiliser l’appareil afin de bien comprendre son fonctionnement et d’obtenir les meilleures performances possibles.

Cet appareil a été conçu pour être utilisé exclusivement avec le récepteur DVD et le moniteur KD-AV7000/KD-AV7001/KD-AV7008 JVC et le berceau KV-CR100/KV-CR101 JVC.

Avec le récepteur DVD et le berceau, ce moniteur vous permet de réaliser les choses suivantes:
– Commande du récepteur DVD à l’aide du panneau tactile du moniteur situé dans le compartiment arrière.

- Pour en savoir plus, référez-vous aux instructions fournies avec ces modèles.

Avertissements et précautions

- Le conducteur ne doit pas regarder le moniteur en conduisant. Regarder le moniteur en conduisant peut entraîner un manque d’attention et un accident de la circulation.
- Lorsque vous utilisez le panneau tactile, faites attention de ne pas endommager l’écran du moniteur.

Cet appareil contient une lampe fluorescente qui utilise une petite quantité de mercure. Il contient aussi du plomb dans certains de ses composants. La mise au rebut de ces matériaux peut être réglementée dans votre communauté pour des raisons écologiques.
Pour des informations sur la mise au rebut ou le recyclage, veuillez contacter les autorités locales ou Electronic Industries Alliance: http://www.eiae.org./

Entretien

Référez-vous au manuel d’instructions fourni avec le KD-AV7000/KD-AV7001/KD-AV7008.

Nederlands

Hartelijk dank voor de aanschaf van dit JVC-product! Wij verzoeken u de gebruiksaanwijzing goed door te lezen voordat u het apparaat gaat gebruiken. Zo krijgt u een volledig inzicht in de functies van het apparaat en kunt u de mogelijkheden optimaal benutten.

Dit toestel is exclusief ontworpen voor het gebruik met de JVC KD-AV7000/KD-AV7001/KD-AV7008 DVD-receiver met monitor en de KV-CR100/KV-CR101 JVC bak.

In combinatie met de DVD-receiver en de bak kunt u de monitor voor het volgende gebruiken:
– Bediening van de DVD-receiver met gebruik van het aanraakpaneel op de monitor achterin de auto.

- Zie de gebruiksaanwijzing van het betreffende model voor details.

Waarschuwingen en voorzorgen

- De bestuurder mag tijdens het autorijden niet de beelden op de monitor bekijken. De aandacht wordt anders mogelijk van het autorijden afgeleid met mogelijk ongelukken tot gevolg.
- Wees voorzichtig tijdens bediening met gebruik van het aanraakpaneel zodat u het monitorscherm niet beschadigt.

Onderhoud

Zie de gebruiksaanwijzing van de KD-AV7000/KD-AV7001/KD-AV7008.

Español

Muchas gracias por la compra de un producto JVC. Como primer paso, por favor lea detenidamente este manual para comprender a fondo todas las instrucciones y obtener un máximo disfrute de esta unidad.

Esta unidad ha sido diseñada para usarse exclusivamente con el receptor DVD con monitor JVC KD-AV7000/KD-AV7001/KD-AV7008 y con el cradle JVC KV-CR100/KV-CR101.

Junto con el receptor DVD y el cradle, el monitor le permite realizar lo siguiente:
– Operar el receptor DVD a través del panel táctil del monitor del compartimiento trasero

- Para los detalles, consulte las instrucciones de estos modelos.

Advertencias y precauciones

- El conductor no debe mirar el monitor mientras conduce. Si el conductor mira el monitor mientras conduce, podría distraerse y producir un accidente de tráfico.
- Asegúrese de no dañar la pantalla del monitor cuando se opera el panel táctil.

Este producto dispone de una lámpara fluorescente que contiene una pequeña cantidad de mercurio. Algunos componentes también contienen plomo. Para fines de protección ambiental, la disposición de estos materiales podría estar reglamentada por las autoridades locales.
Para solicitar información sobre la disposición y el reciclaje, sírvase ponerse en contacto con sus autoridades locales, o con Electronics Industries Alliance: http://www.eiae.org./

Mantenimiento

Consulte el manual de instrucciones del KD-AV7000/KD-AV7001/KD-AV7008.

Italiano

La ringraziamo per aver acquistato un prodotto JVC. La invitiamo a leggere le presenti istruzioni prima di utilizzare l’apparecchio in modo da poterne sfruttare al meglio le prestazioni.

Quest’unità è stata disegnata per l’uso esclusivo con il ricevitore DVD JVC con monitor KD-AV7000/KD-AV7001/KD-AV7008 e il supporto JVC KV-CR100/KV-CR101.

Con il ricevitore DVD e il supporto, il monitor permette di fare quanto segue:
– Azionare il ricevitore DVD attraverso il pannello a contatto del monitor nel compartimento posteriore

- Per maggiori dettagli, vedere le istruzioni di questi modelli.

Avvertenze e precauzioni

- Il conducente non deve guardare il monitor durante la guida. Facendolo può venire distratto e causare incidenti.
- Quando si usa il pannello a contatto, fare attenzione a non danneggiarlo.

Manutenzione

Vedere le istruzioni dei KD-AV7000/KD-AV7001/KD-AV7008.

Per l’Italia:
“Si dichiara che il questo prodotto di marca JVC è conforme alle prescrizioni del Decreto Ministeriale n.548 del 28/08/95 pubblicato sulla Gazzetta Ufficiale della Repubblica Italiana n.301 del 28/12/95”.

Svenska

Tack för att du köpt en JVC produkt. Var snäll och läs noga alla instruktioner innan du använder den, så att du vet hur den ska skötas och kan få ut mesta möjliga av den.

Denna enhet har utvecklats för exklusiv användning med JVC DVD-mottagare med monitor KD-AV7000/KD-AV7001/KD-AV7008 och JVC anlsutningsenhet KV-CR100/KV-CR101.

Tillsammans med DVD-mottagaren och anslutningsenheten, kan du göra följande med monitorn:
– Styra DVD-mottagaren från pekpanelen på monitorn i baksätet.

- Se bruksanvisningen för dessa modeller för ytterligare information.

Varningar och försiktighetsåtgärder

- Föraren får inte titta på monitorn när han/hon kör bilen. Om föraren tittar på monitorn under körning, kan det leda till vårdslöshet och kan orsaka en trafikolycka.
- Var försiktig så att du inte skadar monitorskärmen när du använder pekpanelen.

Underhåll

Se bruksanvisningen för KD-AV7000/KD-AV7001/KD-AV7008.

Русский

Благодарим за приобретение аппаратуры JVC. Перед началом эксплуатации внимательно прочитайте все инструкции, чтобы полностью изучить данное устройство и обеспечить его наилучшую производительность.

Данное устройство предназначено исключительно для использования с приемником/проигрывателем DVD-дисков компании JVC с монитором KD-AV7000/KD-AV7001/KD-AV7008 и подставкой JVC KV-CR100/KV-CR101.

В сочетании с приемником/проигрывателем DVD-дисков и подставкой монитор позволяет выполнять следующее:
– Управлять приемником/проигрывателем DVD-дисков с помощью сенсорной панели на мониторе в заднем отсеке.

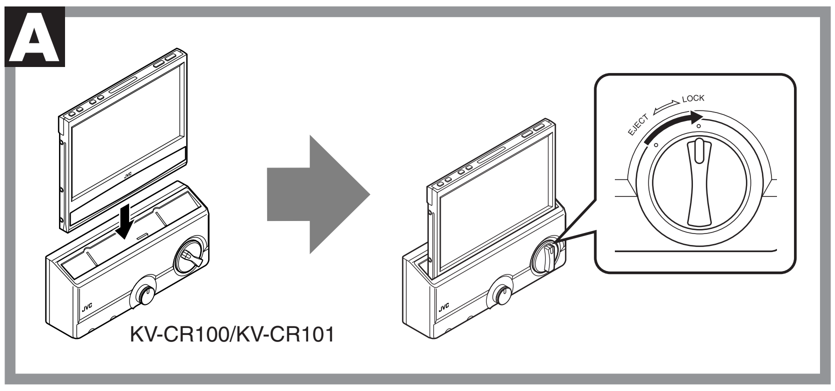
- Для получения подробной информации см. инструкции по эксплуатации этих моделей.

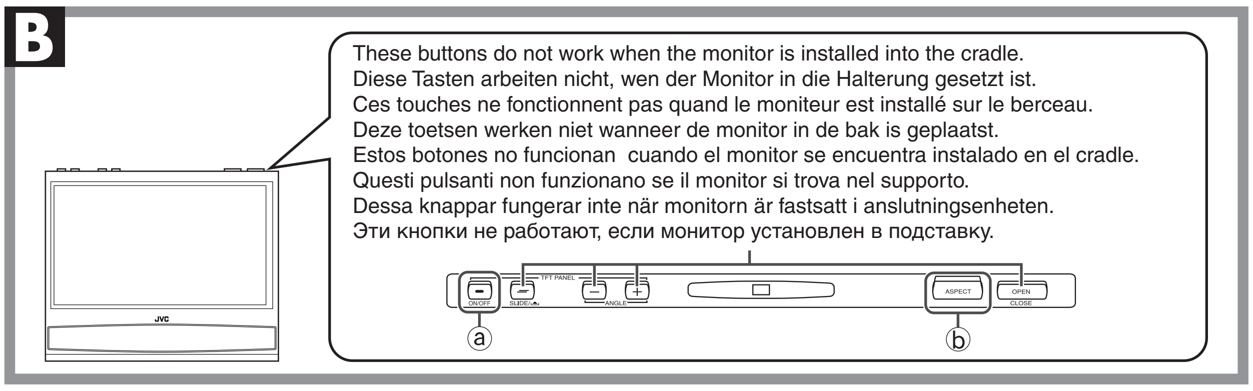
Предупреждения и меры предосторожности

- Водитель не должен смотреть на монитор во время вождения. Это может отвлечь и привести к аварии.
- При использовании сенсорной панели не повредите экран монитора.

Обслуживание

См. инструкции по эксплуатации KD-AV7000/KD-AV7001/KD-AV7008.





These buttons do not work when the monitor is installed into the cradle.
Diese Tasten arbeiten nicht, wen der Monitor in die Halterung gesetzt ist.
Ces touches ne fonctionnent pas quand le moniteur est installé sur le berceau.
Deze toetsen werken niet wanneer de monitor in de bak is geplaatst.
Estos botones no funcionan cuando el monitor se encuentra instalado en el cradle.
Questi pulsanti non funzionano se il monitor si trova nel supporto.
Dessa knappar fungerar inte när monitorn är fastsatt i anslutningsenheten.
Эти кнопки не работают, если монитор установлен в подставку.

English

A Installation

Install the monitor into the cradle as illustrated.
- After putting the monitor, set the selector to "LOCK."

When not in use, store the monitor in the supplied soft case for its protection.

B Operation

ⓐ **ON/OFF button**
- Turns on the power if pressed briefly.
- Turns off the power if pressed and held.

ⓑ **ASPECT button**
- Changes the aspect ratio if pressed briefly.
- Shows the monitor adjustment (SCREEN CONTROL) menu if pressed and held.

Notes:
- When you are using both the monitor built in your DVD receiver and the monitor inserted into the cradle, the same picture will be shown on both the monitors.
- If the parking brake is not engaged, "DRIVER MUST NOT WATCH THE MONITOR WHILE DRIVING." appears on the monitor, and no playback picture will be shown (refer to the Instructions of KD-AV7000/KD-AV7001/KD-AV7008).

Specifications

Screen Size:	7 inch wide liquid crystal display
Number of Pixel:	336 960 pixels (480 vertical × 234 horizontal × 3)
Drive Method:	TFT (Thin Film Transistor) active matrix format
Color System:	PAL/NTSC
Aspect Ratio:	16:9 (wide)
Allowable Storage Temperature:	–10°C to +60°C (14°F to 140°F)
Allowable Operating Temperature:	0°C to +40°C (32°F to 104°F)
Dimensions (W x H x D):	170 mm × 141 mm × 15 mm (6-3/4 in. × 5-5/8 in. × 5/8 in.)
Mass:	475 g (1.1 lbs)
Accessory:	Soft case

Deutsch

A Installation

Installieren Sie den Monitor in der Halterung, wie in der Abbildung gezeigt.
- Nach dem Einsetzen des Monitors den Wähler auf Stellung "LOCK" stellen.

Bei Nichtverwendung legen Sie den Monitor zum Schutz in der mitgelieferten weichen Tasche ab.

B Bedienung

ⓐ **ON/OFF-Taste**
- Schaltet das Gerät ein, wenn kurz einmal gedrückt.
- Schaltet das Gerät aus, wenn gedrückt gehalten.

ⓑ **ASPECT-Taste**
- Ändert das Seitenverhältnis bei kurzem Drücken.
- Zeigt das Monitoreinstellungsmenü (SCREEN CONTROL) wenn kurz gedrückt gehalten.

Hinweise:
- Wenn Sie sowohl den im DVD-Receiver eingebauten Monitor als auch den in die Halterung eingesetzten Monitor verwenden, wird das gleiche Bild auf beiden Monitoren gezeigt.
- Ist die Feststellbremse nicht angezogen, erscheint die Meldung "FAHRER DARF MONITOR NICHT BEIM FAHREN BETRACHTEN." auf dem Monitor, und es erfolgt keine Bildwiedergabe (siehe Bedienungsanleitung von KD-AV7000/KD-AV7001/KD-AV7008).

Technische Daten

Bildschirmgröße:	Flüssigkristalldisplay mit 7 Zoll Diagonale
Anzahl Pixel:	336 960 Pixel (480 vertikal × 234 horizontal × 3)
Ansteuerungsmethode:	TFT (Thin Film Transistor) Aktivmatrixformat
Farbsystem:	PAL/NTSC
Seitenverhältnis:	16:9 (breit)
Zulässige Lagertemperatur:	–10°C bis +60°C
Zulässige Betriebstemperatur:	0°C bis +40°C
Abmessungen (B × H × T):	170 mm × 141 mm × 15 mm
Gewicht:	475 g
Zubehör:	Weiche Tasche

Français

A Installation

Installez le moniteur dans le berceau comme montré sur l'illustration.
- Après avoir installé le moniteur, positionnez le moniteur sur "LOCK".

Quand vous ne l'utilisez pas, conservez le moniteur dans l'étui souple fourni afin de le protéger.

B Fonctionnement

ⓐ **Touche ON/OFF**
- Met l'appareil sous tension si elle est pressée brièvement.
- Met l'appareil hors tension si elle est maintenu pressée.

ⓑ **Touche ASPECT**
- Change le format de l'image si pressée brièvement.
- Affiche le menu d'ajustement (SCREEN CONTROL) du moniteur si maintenu pressé.

Remarques:
- Si vous utilisez à la fois le moniteur intégré au récepteur DVD et le moniteur inséré dans le berceau, la même image apparaît sur les deux moniteurs.
- Si le frein de stationnement n'est pas engagé, "LE CONDUCTEUR NE DOIT PAS REGARDER LE MONITEUR EN CONDUISANT." apparaît sur le moniteur mais aucune image de lecture n'apparaît (référez-vous au manuel d'instructions du KD-AV7000/KD-AV7001/KD-AV7008).

Spécifications

Taille de l'écran:	affichage à cristaux liquides de 7 pouces en diagonale
Nombre de pixels:	336 960 pixels (480 vertical × 234 horizontal × 3)
Méthode d'entraînement:	TFT (Transitors à couches minces) à matrice active
Standard de couleur:	PAL/NTSC
Format d'image:	16:9 (large)
Température de rangement autorisée:	–10°C à +60°C
Température de fonctionnement autorisée:	0°C à +40°C
Dimensions (L × H × P):	170 mm × 141 mm × 15 mm
Masse:	475 g
Accessoire:	Étui souple

Nederlands

A Installeren

Installeer de monitor zoals afgebeeld in de bak.
- Druk de schakelaar naar "LOCK" nadat de monitor in de bak is geplaatst.

Bewar de monitor, wanneer niet in gebruik, ter bescherming in dit zachte etui.

B Bediening

ⓐ **ON/OFF toets**
- Druk kort op de toets voor het inschakelen van de stroom.
- Houd ingedrukt om de stroom uit te schakelen.

ⓑ **ASPECT toets**
- Druk kort op de toets voor het veranderen van de aspectratio.
- Houd ingedrukt om het monitorinstelmenu (SCREEN CONTROL) op te roepen.

Opmerkingen:
- Indien u zowel de in de DVD-receiver ingebouwde monitor als de monitor in de bak gebruikt, zal hetzelfde beeld op beide monitors worden getoond.
- "DRIVER MUST NOT WATCH THE MONITOR WHILE DRIVING.", oftewel "de bestuurder mag tijdens het autorijden niet naar de monitor kijken" verschijnt op de monitor wanneer de handrem niet is aangetrokken. Er verschijnt dan geen beeld (zie de gebruiksaanwijzing van de KD-AV7000/KD-AV7001/KD-AV7008).

Technische gegevens

Schermformaat:	7 inch breed vloeibaar kristallen display
Aantal pixels:	336 960 pixels (480 vertikaal × 234 horizontaal × 3)
Aandrijfmethode:	TFT (Thin Film Transistor) actief matrixformaat
Kleursysteem:	PAL/NTSC
Aspectratio:	16:9 (breedbeeld)
Toelaatbare opslagtemperatuur:	–10°C t/m +60°C
Toelaatbare bedrijfstemperatuur:	0°C t/m +40°C
Afmetingen (B × H × D):	170 mm × 141 mm × 15 mm
Gewicht:	475 g
Accessoires:	Zacht etui

Español

A Instalación

Instale el monitor en el cradle, tal como se observa en la ilustración.
- Después de poner el monitor, ajuste el selector a "LOCK".

Cuando no lo utilice, guarde el monitor en el estuche blando para fines de protección.

B Operación

ⓐ **Botón ON/OFF**
- La unidad se enciende si lo pulsa brevemente.
- La unidad se apaga si lo pulsa y mantiene pulsado.

ⓑ **Botón ASPECT**
- Cambia la relación de aspecto al pulsarlo brevemente.
- Muestra el menú de ajuste (SCREEN CONTROL) del monitor si lo pulsa y mantiene pulsado.

Notas:
- Cuando se está utilizando tanto el monitor incorporado a su receptor DVD como el monitor insertado en el cradle, se mostrará la misma imagen en ambos monitores.
- Si no está aplicado el freno de estacionamiento, en el monitor aparecerpa "EL CONDUCTOR NO DEBE MIRAR EL MONITOR MIENTRAS CONDUCE." , y no se mostrará la imagen de reproducción (consulte el manual de instrucciones del KD-AV7000/KD-AV7001/KD-AV7008).

Especificaciones

Tamaño de la pantalla:	Panel de cristal líquido de 7 pulgada
Número de pixeles:	336 960 pixeles (480 vertical × 234 horizontal × 3)
Método de mando:	Formato de matriz activa TFT (Transistor de película delgada)
Sistema de color:	PAL/NTSC
Relación de aspecto:	16:9 (pantalla ancha)
Temperatura de almacenamiento admisible:	–10°C a +60°C
Temperatura de funcionamiento admisible:	0°C a +40°C
Dimensiones (An × Al × Pr):	170 mm × 141 mm × 15 mm
Peso:	475 g
Accesorio:	Estuche blando

Italiano

A Installazione

Installare il monitor nel supporto nel modo visto in figura.
- Installato il monitor, portare il selettore sulla posizione "LOCK".

Quando non è in uso, conservare il monitor nella custodia morbida in dotazione, per proteggerlo da danni.

B Funzionamento

ⓐ **Pulsante ON/OFF**
- Se premuto per breve tempo, accende l'apparecchio.
- Se mantenuto premuto, spegne l'apparecchio.

ⓑ **Pulsante ASPECT**
- Se premuto brevemente, cambia il rapporto di forma dell'immagine.
- Se viene mantenuto premuto, mostra le regolazioni fatte col menu (SCREEN CONTROL) del monitor.

Note:
- Se si usano contemporaneamente il monitor incorporato nel ricevitore DVD e quello inserito nel supporto, ambedue mostrano la stessa immagine.
- Se il freno a mano non è tirato, il messaggio "DRIVER MUST NOT WATCH THE MONITOR WHILE DRIVING." appare sul monitor e la riproduzione non avviene (vedere le istruzioni dei KD-AV7000/KD-AV7001/KD-AV7008).

Dati tecnici

Formato schermo:	Display a cristalli liquidi 7 pollici in larghezza
Numero di pixel:	336 960 pixel (480 verticale × 234 orizzontale × 3)
Metodo di pilotaggio:	Formato a matrice attiva TFT (Thin Film Transistor)
Sistema colore:	PAL/NTSC
Rapporto di forma:	16:9 (widescreen)
Temperatura permissibile di conservazione:	da –10°C a +60°C
Temperatura permissibile di funzionamento:	da 0°C a +40°C
Dimensioni (L × A × P):	170 mm × 141 mm × 15 mm
Peso:	475 g
Accessori:	Custodia morbida

Svenska

A Installation

Sätt fast monitorn i anslutningsdelen enligt bilden.
- Ställ väljaren på "LOCK" när du har satt fast monitorn.

När monitorn inte används, förvara den i det medföljande mjuka fodralet.

B Manövrering

ⓐ **ON/OFF-knapp**
- Sätter på strömmen om den trycks ned ett ögonblick.
- Stänger av strömmen om den trycks och hålls in.

ⓑ **ASPECT-knapp**
- Ändrar bildförhållandet om den trycks ned ett ögonblick.
- Visar menyn för monitorjusteringen (SCREEN CONTROL) om den trycks och hålls in.

Anmärkningar:
- När du använder monitorn som är inbyggd i DVD-mottagaren och monitorn i anslutningsenheten, visas samma bild på båda monitorer.
- Om handbromsen inte är åtdragen, visas "DRIVER MUST NOT WATCH THE MONITOR WHILE DRIVING." (Föraren får inte titta på skärmen under bilkörning) i teckenfönstret, och ingen spelbild visas (se bruksanvisningen för KD-AV7000/KD-AV7001/KD-AV7008).

Specifikationer

Skärmstorlek:	7 tums bred LCD-skärm
Antal pixlar:	336 960 pixlar (480 vertikala × 234 horisontella × 3)
Drivningsmetod:	TFT (Thin Film Transistor) aktivt matrisformat
Färgsystem:	PAL/NTSC
Sidförhållande:	16:9 (wide)
Förvaringstemperaturområde:	–10°C till +60°C
Driftstemperatur:	0°C till +40°C
Mått (B × H × D):	170 mm × 141 mm × 15 mm
Vikt:	475 g
Tillbehör:	Mjukt fodral

Русский

A Установка

Установите монитор в подставку так, как это показано на рисунке.
- После размещения монитора установите переключатель в положение "LOCK".

Если монитор не используется, храните его в поставляемом мягком футляре.

B Управление

ⓐ **Кнопка ON/OFF**
- Включение питания при кратковременном нажатии.
- Отключение питания при нажатии и удерживании.

ⓐ **Кнопка ASPECT**
- Изменение формата изображения при кратковременном нажатии.
- Отображение меню настройки монитора (SCREEN CONTROL) при нажатии и удерживании нажатой.

Примечания:
- При одновременном использовании монитора, встроенного в приемник/проигрыватель DVD-дисков, и монитора, установленного в подставку, на обоих мониторах отображается одно и тоже изображение.
- Если стояночный тормоз не активирован, на мониторе появляется сообщение "DRIVER MUST NOT WATCH THE MONITOR WHILE DRIVING.", и изображение воспроизведения отображаться не будет (см. инструкции по эксплуатации KD-AV7000/KD-AV7001/KD-AV7008).

Технические характеристики

Размер экрана:	жидкокристаллический дисплей шириной 7 дюймов
Число пикселов:	336 960 пикселов (480 по вертикали × 234 по вертикали × 3)
Метод управления:	формат активной матрицы TFT (Thin Film Transistor–тонкопленочный транзистор)
Система кодирования цвета:	PAL/NTSC
Формат изображения:	16:9 (широкий)
Допустимая температура хранения:	от –10°C до +60°C
Допустимая рабочая температура:	от 0°C до +40°C
Размеры (Ш × В × Г):	170 мм × 141 мм × 15 мм
Масса:	475 г
Дополнительная принадлежность:	мягкий футляр

JVC

LVT1253-003A
[U]

KV-MAV7002

7-inch Widescreen Detachable Monitor : Instructions
Monitor desmontable de pantalla ancha de 7 pulgadas : Manual de instrucciones
Moniteur à écran large 7 pouces détachable : Manuel d’instructions
7英吋寬屏幕可分離式顯示器：使用説明書
จอมุมกว้างที่สามารถถอดออกได้ขนาด 7 นิ้ว : คำแนะนำ

0904MNMMDWJEIN
EN, SP, FR, CT, TH

© 2004 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

English

Thank you for purchasing a JVC product. Please read all instructions carefully before operation, to ensure your complete understanding and to obtain the best possible performance from the unit.

This unit has been designed for an exclusive use with JVC DVD receiver with monitor KD-AV7005 and JVC cradle KV-CR100.

With the DVD receiver and the cradle, the monitor allows you to do the following:
– Operating the DVD receiver through the touch panel on the monitor in the rear compartment

- For details, refer to the instructions of these models.

Warnings and Cautions

- The driver must not watch the monitor during driving. If the driver watches the monitor while driving, it may lead to carelessness and cause an accident.
- When you operate on the touch panel, make sure not to damage the monitor screen.

A Installation

Install the monitor into the cradle as illustrated.
- After putting the monitor, set the selector to “LOCK.”

When not in use, store the monitor in the supplied soft case for its protection.

B Operation

ⓐ **ON/OFF button**
– Turns on the power if pressed briefly.
– Turns off the power if pressed and held.

ⓑ **ASPECT button**
– Changes the aspect ratio if pressed briefly.
– Shows the monitor adjustment (SCREEN CONTROL) menu if pressed and held.

Notes:
- When you are using both the monitor built in your DVD receiver and the monitor inserted into the cradle, the same picture will be shown on both the monitors.
- If the parking brake is not engaged, “DRIVER MUST NOT WATCH THE MONITOR WHILE DRIVING.” appears on the monitor, and no playback picture will be shown (refer to the Instructions of KD-AV7005).

Español

Muchas gracias por la compra de un producto JVC. Como primer paso, por favor lea detenidamente este manual para comprender a fondo todas las instrucciones y obtener un máximo disfrute de esta unidad.

Esta unidad ha sido diseñada para usarse exclusivamente con el receptor DVD con monitor JVC KD-AV7005 y con el cradle JVC KV-CR100.

Junto con el receptor DVD y el cradle, el monitor le permite realizar lo siguiente:
– Operar el receptor DVD a través del panel táctil del monitor del compartimiento trasero

- Para los detalles, consulte las instrucciones de estos modelos.

Advertencias y precauciones

- El conductor no debe mirar el monitor mientras conduce. Si el conductor mira el monitor mientras conduce, podría distraerse y producir un accidente de tráfico.
- Asegúrese de no dañar la pantalla del monitor cuando se opera el panel táctil.

A Instalación

Instale el monitor en el cradle, tal como se observa en la ilustración.
- Después de poner el monitor, ajuste el selector a “LOCK”.

Cuando no lo utilice, guarde el monitor en el estuche blando para fines de protección.

B Operación

ⓐ **Botón ON/OFF**
– La unidad se enciende si lo pulsa brevemente.
– La unidad se apaga si lo pulsa y mantiene pulsado.

ⓑ **Botón ASPECT**
– Cambia la relación de aspecto al pulsarlo brevemente.
– Muestra el menú de ajuste (SCREEN CONTROL) del monitor si lo pulsa y mantiene pulsado.

Notas:
- Cuando se está utilizando tanto el monitor incorporado a su receptor DVD como el monitor insertado en el cradle, se mostrará la misma imagen en ambos monitores.
- Si no está aplicado el freno de estacionamiento, en el monitor aparecerpa “EL CONDUCTOR NO DEBE MIRAR EL MONITOR MIENTRAS CONDUCE.” , y no se mostrará la imagen de reproducción (consulte el manual de instrucciones del KD-AV7005).

Français

Merci pour avoir acheté un produit JVC. Veuillez lire attentivement toutes les instructions avant d’utiliser l’appareil afin de bien comprendre son fonctionnement et d’obtenir les meilleures performances possibles.

Cet appareil a été conçu pour être utilisé exclusivement avec le récepteur DVD et le moniteur KD-AV7005 JVC et le berceau KV-CR100 JVC.

Avec le récepteur DVD et le berceau, ce moniteur vous permet de réaliser les choses suivantes:
– Commande du récepteur DVD à l’aide du panneau tactile du moniteur situé dans le compartiment arrière.

- Pour en savoir plus, référez-vous aux instructions fournies avec ces modèles.

Avertissements et précautions

- Le conducteur ne doit pas regarder le moniteur en conduisant. Regarder le moniteur en conduisant peut entraîner un manque d’attention et un accident de la circulation.
- Lorsque vous utilisez le panneau tactile, faites attention de ne pas endommager l’écran du moniteur.

A Installation

Installez le moniteur dans le berceau comme montré sur l’illustration.
- Après avoir installé le moniteur, positionnez le moniteur sur “LOCK”.

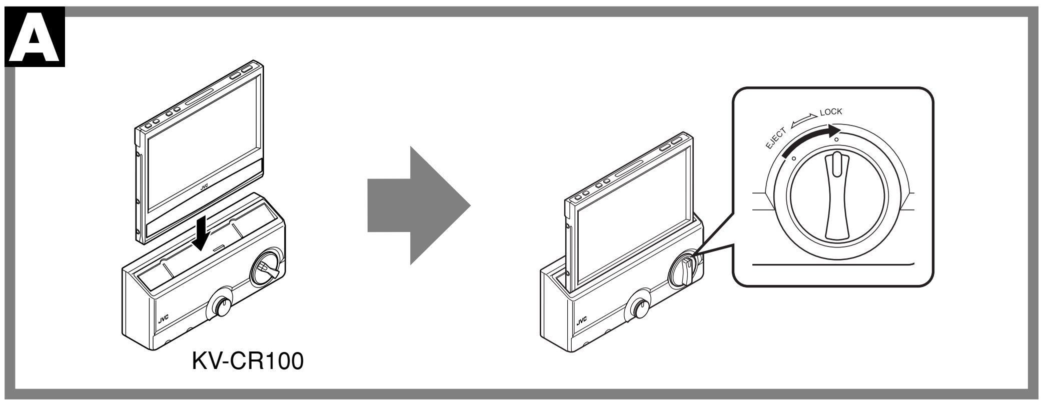
Quand vous ne l’utilisez pas, conservez le moniteur dans l’étui souple fourni afin de le protéger.

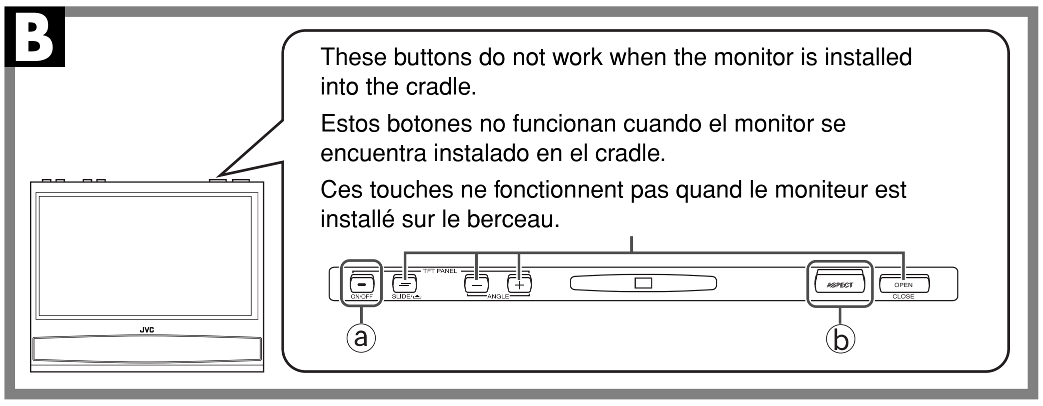
B Fonctionnement

ⓐ **Touche ON/OFF**
– Met l’appareil sous tension si elle est pressée brièvement.
– Met l’appareil hors tension si elle est maintenu pressée.

ⓑ **Touche ASPECT**
– Change le format de l’image si pressée brièvement.
– Affiche le menu d’ajustement (SCREEN CONTROL) du moniteur si maintenu pressé.

Remarques:
- Si vous utilisez à la fois le moniteur intégré au récepteur DVD et le moniteur inséré dans le berceau, la même image apparaît sur les deux moniteurs.
- Si le frein de stationnement n’est pas engagé, “LE CONDUCTEUR NE DOIT PAS REGARDER LE MONITEUR EN CONDUISANT.” apparaît sur le moniteur mais aucune image de lecture n’apparaît (référez-vous au manuel d’instructions du KD-AV7005).





These buttons do not work when the monitor is installed into the cradle.

Estos botones no funcionan cuando el monitor se encuentra instalado en el cradle.

Ces touches ne fonctionnent pas quand le moniteur est installé sur le berceau.

Maintenance

Refer to the instructions of KD-AV7005.

Specifications

Screen Size: 7 inch wide liquid crystal display
Number of Pixel:
336 960 pixels (480 vertical × 234 horizontal × 3)
Drive Method:
TFT (Thin Film Transistor) active matrix format
Color System: PAL/NTSC
Aspect Ratio: 16:9 (wide)
Allowable Storage temperature: –10°C to +60°C
Allowable Operating Temperature: 0°C to +40°C
Dimensions (W × H × D): 170 mm × 141 mm × 15 mm
Mass: 475 g
Accessory: Soft case

Mantenimiento

Consulte el manual de instrucciones del KD-AV7005.

Especificaciones

Tamaño de la pantalla: Panel de cristal líquido de 7 pulgada
Número de pixeles:
336 960 pixeles (480 vertical × 234 horizontal × 3)
Método de mando:
Formato de matriz activa TFT (Transistor de película delgada)
Sistema de color: PAL/NTSC
Relación de aspecto: 16:9 (pantalla ancha)
Temperatura de almacenamiento admisible: –10°C a +60°C
Temperatura de funcionamiento admisible: 0°C a +40°C
Dimensiones (An × Al × Pr): 170 mm × 141 mm × 15 mm
Peso: 475 g
Accesorio: Estuche blando

Entretien

Référez-vous au manuel d’instructions fourni avec le KD-AV7005.

Spécifications

Taille de l’écran:
affichage à cristaux liquides de 7 pouces en diagonale
Nombre de pixels:
336 960 pixels (480 vertical × 234 horizontal × 3)
Méthode d’entraînement:
TFT (Transitors à couches minces) à matrice active
Standard de couleur: PAL/NTSC
Format d’image: 16:9 (large)
Température de rangement autorisée: –10°C à +60°C
Température de fonctionnement autorisée: 0°C à +40°C
Dimensions (L × H × P): 170 mm × 141 mm × 15 mm
Masse: 475 g
Accessoire: Étui souple

中文

多謝您惠購 JVC 的產品。在使用之前，請詳讀全部使用說明書，以確保完全理解本機使用方法，並獲得較長的使用壽命。

本機專為使用 JVC 配備屏幕的 DVD 接收器 KD-AV7005 以及 JVC 托架 KV-CR100 而設計。

當與 DVD 接收器和托架配合使用時，其屏幕能讓您：

– 通過后格裏面的屏幕的接觸面板操作 DVD 接收器

- 請參閱相關型號的使用說明書有關詳細的資料。

警告和提示

- 司機不應在駕駛時觀看顯示屏幕。若司機在駕駛時觀看顯示屏幕，這可能會導致粗心和意外發生。
- 當您使用接觸面板時，小心避免損壞顯示屏幕。

A 安裝

按照插圖所示將屏幕安裝進托架。

- 將屏幕擺放好後，將選擇器設至 “LOCK”。

若沒有使用，請將顯示屏幕收藏在配備的軟質箱子以保護之。

B 操作

ⓐ **開關(ON/OFF)鈕**

– 若輕按即啟動電源。

– 若持續按即關閉電源。

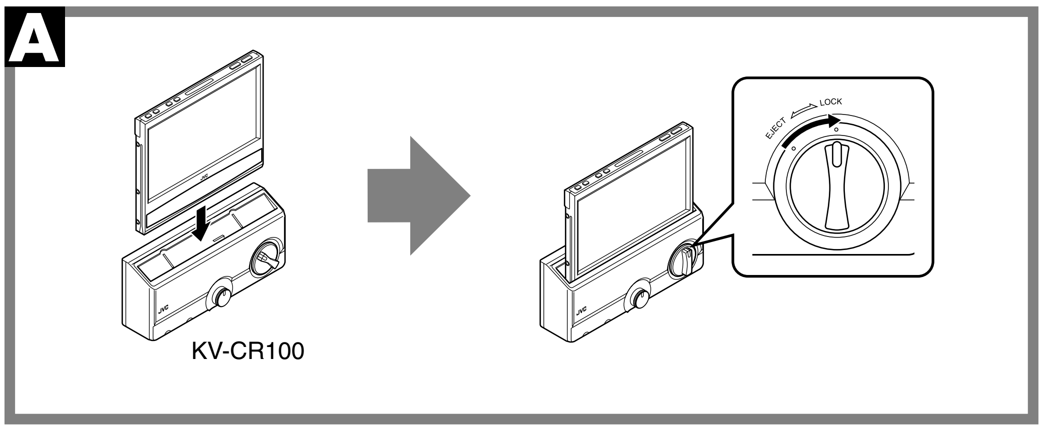
ⓑ **屏幕高闊比(ASPECT)鈕**

– 若輕按可調節屏幕高闊比。

– 若持續按可顯示屏幕調節 (SCREEN CONTROL) 選項表。

備註：

- 若您同時使用 DVD 接收器內置的顯示屏幕和安裝進托架的顯示屏幕，兩個屏幕將會顯示相同的畫面。
- 若沒有使用停車制動器，屏幕上將出現 “DRIVER MUST NOT WATCH THE MONITOR WHILE DRIVING. (司機不應在駕駛時觀看顯示屏幕。)”，同時不會播放任何畫面（請參閱 KD-AV7005 的使用說明書)。



維修

請參閱 KD-AV7005 的使用說明書。

規格

顯示屏尺寸：7 英吋寬屏幕液晶顯示器

像素： 336 960 像素 (480 垂直 x 234 水平 x 3)

驅動方式：
TFT (薄膜晶體管) 主動矩陣格式

顏色制式： PAL / NTSC

縱橫比： 16:9 (寬度）

允許存儲溫度：
–10°C 至 +60°C

允許操作溫度：
0°C 至 +40°C

體積 （寬 x 高 x 深）：
170 mm x 141 mm x 15 mm

重量： 475 g

附件： 軟質箱子

ไทย

ขอขอบคุณที่ท่านเลือกซื้อผลิตภัณฑ์ของ JVC กรุณาอ่านคำแนะนำทั้งหมดโดยละเอียด ก่อนการใช้งาน เพื่อให้เข้าใจชัดเจน และเพื่อให้ท่านได้รับประสิทธิภาพสูงสุด ในการทำงานของผลิตภัณฑ์

เครื่องนี้ได้รับการออกแบบมา เพื่อใช้กับเครื่องเล่น DVD ของ JVC พร้อมจอภาพรุ่น KD-AV7005 และแท่นวางของ JVC รุ่น KV-CR100 โดยเฉพาะ

ด้วยเครื่องเล่น DVD และแท่นวาง จอภาพรุ่นนี้จะช่วยให้ท่านใช้งานต่อไปนี้ได้:

– ใช้เครื่องเล่น DVD ผ่านจอระบบสัมผัสบนจอภาพในช่องด้านหลังได้

- ดูรายละเอียดเพิ่มเติมจากคำแนะนำ สำหรับเครื่องรุ่นนี้

คำเตือนและข้อควรระวัง

- ผู้ขับขี่จะต้องไม่มองจอภาพขณะขับขี่รถยนต์ หากมองจอภาพขณะขับขี่ อาจก่อให้เกิดความประมาทและอุบัติเหตุได้
- ขณะใช้งานบนจอระบบสัมผัส ขอให้ระวังอย่าทำหน้าจอเสียหาย

A ารติดตั้ง

ติดตั้งจอภาพลงบนแท่นวางตามรูป

- หลังจากติดตั้งจอภาพเรียบร้อยแล้ว ให้ตั้งตัวเลือกไปที่ “LOCK”

เมื่อไม่มีการใช้งาน ขอให้เก็บจอภาพลงในที่ใส่ เพื่อป้องกันความเสียหาย

B การใช้งาน

ⓐ **ปุ่มเปิด/ปิด (ON/OFF)**

– เปิดเครื่องหากกดสั้นๆ

– เปุ่มเปิดเครื่องหากกดค้างไว้

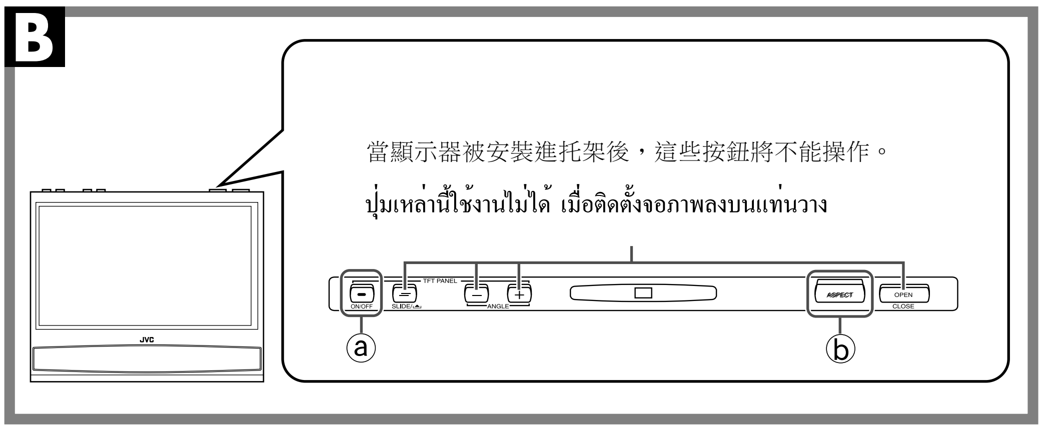
ⓑ **ปุ่ม ASPECT**

– เปลี่ยนสัดส่วนบนจอภาพ หากกดสั้นๆ

– แสดงเมนูปรับแต่งค่าบนจอภาพ (SCREEN CONTROL) หากกดค้างไว้

หมายเหตุ:

- ขณะใช้จอภาพที่ติดตั้งในตัวเครื่องรับ DVD กับจอภาพที่ติดตั้งลงบนแท่นวางพร้อมกัน เครื่องจะเล่นภาพเดียวกันบนจอทั้งสอง
- หากไม่เข้าเบรกมือไว้ ข้อความว่า “DRIVER MUST NOT WATCH THE MONITOR WHILE DRIVING.” จะปรากฎขึ้นบนจอภาพ และจะไม่มีภาพแสดงบนจอ (ดูคำแนะนำในคู่มือการใช้งาน KD-AV7005)



當顯示器被安裝進托架後，這些按鈕將不能操作。

ปุ่มเหล่านี้ใช้งานไม่ได้ เมื่อติดตั้งจอภาพลงบนแท่นวาง

การบำรุงรักษา

ดูคำแนะนำในคู่มือการใช้งาน KD-AV7005

ข้อมูลจำเพาะ

ขนาดจอภาพ: จอภาพ LCD กว้าง 7 นิ้ว

จำนวนพิกเซล: 336 960 พิกเซล (480 แนวตั้ง x 234 แนวนอน x 3)

วิธีการสำหรับไดร์ฟ:
รูปแบบ TFT (ทรานซิสเตอร์แบบแพ่นพีล์มชนิดบาง) แอ็คทีพแมทริกซ์

ระบบสี: PAL / NTSC

สัดส่วนภาพ: 16:9 (กว้าง)

อุณหภูมิที่ปลอดภัยในการเก็บรักษา:
–10°C ถึง +60°C

อุณหภูมิที่ปลอดภัยในการใช้งาน:
0°C ถึง +40°C

ขนาด (กว้าง x สูง x ลึก):
170 มม x 141 มม x 15 มม

น้ำหนัก: 475 กรัม

อุปกรณ์เสริม: ที่ใส่